

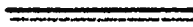
TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE

DESIGNED

FOR THE USE OF YOUNG PEOPLE

BY

CHARLES AND MARY LAMB



Allahabad:
EDUCATIONAL BOOK DEPOT.

1910

CONTENTS.

			PAGE.
		Text.	Notes.
ROMEO AND JULIET	...	1	3
KING LEAR	...	15	21
OTHELLO	...	28	46
TIMON OF ATHENS	...	39	63
MACBETH	...	50	75
THE MERCHANT OF VENICE &c.	...	60	89
THE COMEDY OF ERRORS	...	71	112
HAMLET	...	83	124
THE TEMPEST	...	96	141
AS YOU LIKE IT	...	106	161
MUCH ADO ABOUT NOTHING	...	120	184
A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM	...	131	196
MEASURE FOR MEASURE	...	141	209
THE TAMING OF THE SHREW	...	154	223
TWELFTH NIGHT	...	162	232
PERICLES	...	173	249
THE WINTER'S TALE	...	187	262
ALL'S WELL THAT ENDS WELL	...	197	272
THE TWO GENTLEMEN OF VERONA	...	207	281
CYMBELINE	...	218	293

INTRODUCTION.

Charles Lamb, a distinguished English essayist and humorist, was born in London in 1775. He was the son of a clerk in the Inner Temple. At a very early age he was sent to school at Christ's Hospital where Coleridge was his school-fellow. In 1792, he became a clerk in the India House, a post he retained during 33 years. With the exception of one terrible circumstance his life was very uneventful. In 1796, his sister, worn out by constant toil at her needle, as well as weakened in nerves by confinement within the house, took her mother's life in an uncontrollable fit of frenzy. Her insanity being established, she was allowed to remain in the charge of her brother, a duty which Charles Lamb religiously fulfilled to the end of his life. She subsequently recovered her reason, and her brother, who never married, passed his days with her, both evincing the utmost affection and devotedness to one another. Charles Lamb had himself once succumbed to the family malady, madness, and had passed some weeks in confinement. From there he addressed the following lines to his sister :—

“ If from my lips some angry accents fell,
Peevish complaint, or harsh reproof unkind,
’Twas but the error of a sickly mind
And troubled thoughts, clouding the purer well,
And waters clear of reason : and for me
Let this my verse the poor atonement be—
My verse, which thou to praise wert e’er inclined
Too highly, and with a partial eye to see
No blemish. Thou to me didst ever show
Kindest affection ; and wouldst oft-times lend
An ear to the despairing. love-sick lay,
Weeping my sorrows with me, who repay
But ill the mighty debt of Love I owe,
Mary, to thee, my sister and my friend.”

The history of many past weeks or months seems written in these lines ; the history of a hopeless attachment, a reason yielding to long distress of mind, and a

sister's love already repaying by anticipation the "mighty debt" which in after days it was itself to owe.

The circumstances in which both brother and sister were placed, the malady by which the equilibrium of their minds was alike unbalanced, acted as a strong bond of union between them. Poverty drew them together by creating a sympathy in each for the other's hard lot. Insanity, which had tainted the minds of both, whilst unfitting them for the society of others, particularly fitted them for each other's company. Charles Lamb was subject to fits of depression and to get over these he first tried and then more or less gave way to the habit of drink. As he himself tells us in his essay on '*The Confessions of a Drunkard*,' he turned to smoking to break him of his habit of drinking, but instead added that idle habit to the list of his vices, for, when he could not resist the temptation of the curling fumes issuing from the pipe which he saw in imagination and which beckoned to him to 'come,' he had raised what the world looked upon merely as an idle habit to the dignity of a vice. His sister often used to write that her brother came home late in the evening very smoky and drinky. Lamb himself often declined invitations to dine or sup with friends fearing the many cups of punch and the many pipes of tobacco, which though they would cheer him then would be followed with gloom and depression on the morrow.

Charles Lamb's "Essays of Elia," on which his fame mainly rests, were first printed in the London Magazine. He was highly esteemed by a large intellectual circle, among whom may be mentioned his life-long friend Coleridge, Leigh Hunt, Southey, Rogers and Talfourd. The brother and sister also wrote conjointly their "Tales from Shakespeare." In 1825 Lamb was superannuated from the India office, and retired to Edmonton. His death in 1834 was the consequence of what was thought but a slight accident. For quaint, genial and unconventional humour, Lamb has, perhaps, never been excelled.

But it is with the joint work of the brother and sister that we are here chiefly concerned. Their undertaking the writing of *Tales from Shakespeare* came about in the following way. In 1805, Charles Lamb made the acquaintance of Hazlitt, and Hazlitt introduced him to William Godwin. Godwin had started, as his latest venture, a series of books for children, and entrusted the work of writing in prose, the chief plays of Shakespeare, so that they might be understood by children, to Charles and Mary Lamb. Lamb, writing to his friend Manning in 1806, thus describes the task in which he and his sister were jointly engaged : "She is doing for Godwin's Bookseller twenty of Shakespeare's plays. to be made into children's tales. Six are already done by her, to wit, the *Tempest*, *Winter's Tale*, *Midsummer Night*. *Much Ado*, *Two Gentlemen of Verona* and *Cymbeline* ; and the *Merchant of Venice* is in forwardness. I have done *Othello* and *Macbeth*, and mean to do all the tragedies. I think it will be popular among the little people, besides money. It's to bring in sixty guineas. Mary has done them capitally, I think you'd think." Mary herself supplements this account in a way that makes curiously vivid to us the homely realities of their joint life. She writes about the same time : "Charles has written *Macbeth*, *Othello*, *King Lear*, and has begun *Hamlet*. You would like to see us as we often sit writing on one table (but not on one cushion sitting, like *Hermia* and *Helena* in the *Midsummer Night's Dream* ; or rather like an old literary *Darby* and *Joan*, I taking snuff, and he groaning all the while, and saying he can make nothing of it, which he always says till he has finished, and then he finds that he has made something of it." Writing these *Tales from Shakespeare* was no doubt task-work to the brother and sister, but it was task work on a congenial theme, and one for which they had special qualifications. For they had been trained upon the "self-same hill," the hill of Elizabethan literature and from that lofty position their ears had caught the cadences of the Elizabethan English. They were therefore enabled thoroughly to weave the very words of Shakespeare into

their narrative without producing any effect of discrepancy between the old and the new. They had also a profound and intimate acquaintance with their original, and this significant fact set them at an infinite distance from the usual compiler of such books for the young. They had, moreover, command of a style, Wordsworthian in its simplicity and purity, that enabled them to write down to the level of a child's understanding, without any appearance of condescension. Indeed, the style is so homely, that it may easily divert attention from the rare critical faculty, the fine analysis of character, that marks the writers' treatment of the several plays. It is a noteworthy fact, however, that the plays dealt with by the brother follow more closely the language of their original than those done by the sister. It might safely be said that there is, indeed, no better introduction to the study of Shakespeare than these *Tales*—no better initiation into the mind of Shakespeare, and into the subtilties of his language and rhythm.

TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE

ROMEO AND JULIET.

1 • THE two chief families in Verona were the rich Capulets and the Montagues. There had been an old quarrel between these families, which was grown to such a height, and so deadly was the enmity between them, that it extended to the remotest kindred, to the followers and retainers of both sides, insomuch that a servant of the house of Montague could not meet a servant of the house of Capulet, nor a Capulet encounter with a Montague by chance, but fierce words and sometimes bloodshed ensued; and frequent were the brawls from such accidental meetings which disturbed the happy quiet of Verona's estate.

2 Old lord Capulet made a great supper, to which many fair ladies and many noble guests were invited. All the admired beauties of Verona were present, and all comers were made welcome if they were not of the house of Montague. At this feast of Capulets, Rosaline, beloved of Romeo, son to the old lord Montague, was present; and though it was dangerous for a Montague to be seen in this assembly, yet Benvolio, a friend of Romeo, persuaded the young lord to go to this assembly in the disguise of a mask, that he might see his Rosaline, and seeing her, compare her with some choice beauties of Verona, who (he said) would make him think his swan a crow. Romeo had small faith in Benvolio's words; nevertheless, for the love of Rosaline, he was persuaded to go. For Romeo was a sincere and passionate lover, and one that lost his sleep for love, and fled society to be alone, thinking on Rosaline, who disdained him, and never requited his love with the least show of courtesy or affection; and Benvolio wished to cure his friend of this love by showing him diversity of ladies and company. To this feast of Capulets then young Romeo with Benvolio and their friend Mercutio went masked. Old Capulet bid them welcome, and told them that ladies who had their toes unplagued with corns would dance with them. And the old man was light-hearted and merry, and said that he had worn a mask when he was young, and could have told a whispering tale in a fair lady's ear. And they fell to dancing, and Romeo was suddenly struck with the exceeding

beauty of a lady that danced there, who seemed to him to teach the torches to burn bright, and her beauty to show by night like a rich jewel worn by a blackamoor; beauty too rich for use, too dear for earth! like a snowy dove trooping with crows (he said), so richly did her beauty and perfections shine above the ladies her companions. While he uttered these praises, he was overheard by Tybalt, a nephew of lord Capulet, who knew him by his voice to be Romeo. And this Tybalt, being of a fiery and passionate temper, could not endure that a Montague should come under cover of a mask, to flee and scorn (as he said) at their solemnities. And he stormed and raged exceedingly, and would have struck young Romeo dead. But his uncle, the old lord Capulet, would not suffer him to do any injury at that time, both out of respect to his guests and because Romeo had borne himself like a gentleman, and all tongues in Verona bragged of him to be a virtuous and well-governed youth. Tybalt, forced to be patient against his will, restrained himself, but swore that this vile Montague should at another time dearly pay for his intrusion.

The dancing being done, Romeo watched the place where the lady stood; and under favour of his masking habit, which might seem to excuse in part the liberty, he presumed in the gentlest manner to take her by the hand, calling it a shrine, which if he profaned by touching it, he was a blushing pilgrim, and would kiss it for atonement. "Good pilgrim," answered the lady, "your devotion shows by far too mannerly and too courtly: saints have hands, which pilgrims may touch, but kiss not." "Have not saints lips, and pilgrims too?" said Romeo. "Ay," said the lady, "lips, which they must use in prayer." "O then, my dear saint," said Romeo, "hear my prayer and grant it, lest I despair." In such like allusions and loving conceits they were engaged, when the lady was called away to her mother. And Romeo inquiring who her mother was, discovered that the lady whose peerless beauty he was so much struck with, was young Juliet, daughter and heir to the lord Capulet, the great enemy of the Montagues: and that he had unknowingly engaged his heart to his foe. This troubled him, but it could not dissuade him from loving. As little rest had Juliet, when she found that the gentleman that she had been talking with was Romeo and a Montague, for she had been suddenly smit with the same hasty and inconsiderate passion for

Romeo, which he had conceived for her; and a prodigious birth of love it seemed to her, that she must love her enemy, and that her affections should settle there, where family considerations should induce her chiefly to hate.

It being midnight, Romeo with her companions departed; but they soon missed him, for unable to stay away from the house where he had left his heart, he leaped the wall of an orchard which was at the back of Juliet's house. Here he had not remained long, ruminating on his new love, when Juliet appeared above at a window, through which her exceeding beauty seemed to break like the light of the sun in the east; and the moon, which shone in the orchard with a faint light, appeared to Romeo as if sick and pale with grief at the superior lustre of this new sun. And she leaning her hand upon her cheek, he passionately wished himself a glove upon that hand, that he might touch her cheek. She all this while thinking herself alone, fetched a deep sigh, and exclaimed, "Ah me!" Romeo was enraptured to hear her speak, and said softly, unheard by her, "O speak again, bright angel, for such you appear, being over my head, like a winged messenger from heaven whom mortals fall back to gaze upon." She, unconscious of being overheard, and full of the new passion which that night's adventure had given birth to, called upon her lover by name (whom she supposed absent): "O Romeo, Romeo!" said she, "wherefore art thou Romeo? Deny thy father, and refuse thy name, for my sake; or if thou wilt not, be but my sworn love, and I no longer will be a Capulet." Romeo, having this encouragement, would fain have spoken, but he was desirous of hearing more; and the lady continued her passionate discourse with herself (as she thought), still chiding Romeo for being Romeo and a Montague, and wishing him some other name, or that he would put away the hated name, and for that name, which was no part of himself, he should take all herself. At this loving word Romeo could no longer refrain, but taking up the dialogue as if her words had been addressed to him personally, and not merely in fancy, he bade her call him Love, or by whatever other name she pleased, for he was no longer Romeo, if that name was displeasing to her. Juliet, alarmed to hear a man's voice in the garden, did not at first know who it was, that by favour of the night and darkness had thus stumbled upon the discovery of her secret; but when he spoke again, though her ears had not yet drunk a hundred

words of that tongue's uttering, yet so nice is lover's hearing, that she immediately knew him to be young Romeo, and she expostulated with him on the danger to which he had exposed himself by climbing the orchard walls, for if any of her kinsmen should find him there, it would be death to him, being a Montague. "Alack," said Romeo, "there is more peril in your eye, than in twenty of their swords. Do you but look kind upon me, lady, and I am proof against their enmity. Better my life should be ended by their hate, than that hated life should be prolonged, to live without your love." "How came you into this place," said Juliet, "and by whose direction?" "Love directed me," answered Romeo: "I am no pilot, yet wert thou as far apart from me, as that vast shore which is washed with the farthest sea, I should adventure for such merchandise." A crimson blush came over the face of Juliet, yet unseen by Romeo by reason of the night, when she reflected upon the discovery which she had made, yet not meaning to make it, of her love to Romeo. She would fain have recalled her words, but that was impossible: fain would she have stood upon form, and have kept her lover at a distance, as the custom of discreet ladies is, to frown and be perverse, and give their suitors harsh denials at first; to stand off, and affect a coyness or indifference, where they most love, that their lovers may not think them too lightly or too easily won; for the difficulty of attainment increases the value of the object. But there was no room in her case for denials, or puttings off, or any of the customary arts of delay and protractive courtship. Romeo had heard from her own tongue, when she did not dream that he was near her, a confession of her love. So with an honest frankness, which the novelty of her situation excused, she confirmed the truth of what he had before heard, and addressing him by the name of *fair Montague* (love can sweeten a sour name), she begged him not to impute her easy yielding to levity or an unworthy mind, but that he must lay the fault of it (if it were a fault) upon the accident of the night which had so strangely discovered her thoughts. And she added, that though her behaviour to him might not be sufficiently prudent, measured by the custom of her sex, yet that she would prove more true than many whose prudence was dissembling, and their modesty artificial cunning.

Romeo was beginning to call the heavens to witness, that nothing was farther from his thoughts than to impute a shadow of dishonour to such an honoured lady, when she stopped him,

begged him not to swear : for although she joyed in him, yet she had no joy of that night's contract ; it was too rash, too unadvised, too sudden. But he being urgent with her to exchange a vow of love with her that night, she said that she already had given him hers before he requested it ; meaning, when he overheard her confession ; but she would retract what she then bestowed, for the pleasure of giving it again, for her bounty was as infinite as the sea, and her love as deep. From this loving conference she was called away by her nurse, who slept with her, and thought it time for her to be in bed, for it was near to day-break ; but hastily returning, she said three or four words more to Romeo, the purport of which was, that if his love was indeed honourable, and his purpose marriage, she would send a messenger to him to-morrow, to appoint a time for their marriage, when she would lay all her fortunes at his feet, and follow him as her lord through the world. While they were settling this point, Juliet was repeatedly called for by her nurse, and went in and returned, and went and returned again, for she seemed as jealous of Romeo going from her, as a young girl of her bird, which she will let hop a little from her hand, and pluck it back with a silken thread ; and Romeo was as loath to part as she : for the sweetest music to lovers is the sound of each other's tongues at night. But at last they parted, wishing mutually sweet sleep and rest for that night.

The day was breaking when they parted, and Romeo, who was too full of thoughts of his mistress and that blessed meeting to allow him to sleep, instead of going home, bent his course to a monastery hard by, to find friar Lawrence. The good friar was already up at his devotions, but seeing young Romeo abroad so early, he conjectured rightly that he had not been abed that night, but that some distemper of youthful affection had kept him waking. He was right in imputing the cause of Romeo's wakefulness to love, but he made a wrong-guess at the object, for he thought that his love for Rosaline had kept him waking. But when Romeo revealed his new passion for Juliet, and requested the assistance of the friar to marry them that day, the holy man lifted up his eyes and hands in a sort of wonder at the sudden change in Romeo's affections, for he had been privy to all Romeo's love for Rosaline, and his many complaints of her disdain ; and he said that young men's love lay not truly in their hearts, but in their eyes. But Romeo replying that he himself had often chidden him for

doting on Rosaline, who could not love him again, whereas Juliet both loved and was beloved by him. the friar assented in some measure to his reasons ; and thinking that a matrimonial alliance between young Juliet and Romeo might happily be the means of making up the long breach between the Capulets and the Montagues ; which no one more lamented than this good friar, who was a friend to both the families, and had often interposed his mediation to make up the quarrel without effect ; partly moved by policy, and partly by his fondness for young Romeo, to whom he could deny nothing, the old man consented to join their hands in marriage.

7 Now was Romeo blessed indeed, and Juliet, who knew his intent from a messenger which she had despatched according to promise, did not fail to be early at the cell of friar Lawrence, where their hands were joined in holy marriage ; the good friar praying the heavens to smile upon that act, and in the union of this young Montague and young Capulet to bury the old strife and long dissensions of their families.

8 The ceremony being over, Juliet hastened home, where she staid impatient for the coming of night, at which time Romeo promised to come and meet her in the orchard, where they had met the night before ; and the time between seemed as tedious to her, as the night before some great festival seems to an impatient child, that has got new finery which it may not put on till the morning.

9 That same day about noon, Romeo's friends, Benvolio and Mercutio, walking through the streets of Verona, were met by a party of the Capulets with the impetuous Tybalt at their head. This was the same angry Tybalt who would have fought with Romeo at old Lord Capulet's feast. He, seeing Mercutio, accused him bluntly of associating with Romeo, a Montague. Mercutio, who had as much fire and youthful blood in him as Tybalt, replied to this accusation with some sharpness : and in spite of all Benvolio could say to moderate their wrath, a quarrel was beginning, when Romeo himself passing that way, the fierce Tybalt turned from Mercutio to Romeo, and gave him the disgraceful appellation of villain. Romeo wished to avoid a quarrel with Tybalt above all men, because he was the kinsman of Juliet, and much beloved by her ; besides, this young Montague had never thoroughly entered into the family quarrel, being by nature wise

and gentle, and the name of a Capulet, which was his dear lady's name, was now rather a charm to allay resentment than a watchword to excite fury. So he tried to reason with Tybalt, whom he saluted mildly by the name of *good Capulet*, as if he, though a Montague, had some secret pleasure in uttering that name; but Tybalt, who hated all Montagues as he hated hell, would hear no reason, but drew his weapon; and Mercutio, who knew not of Romeo's secret motive for desiring peace with Tybalt, but looked upon his present forbearance as a sort of calm dishonourable submission, with many disdainful words provoked Tybalt to the prosecution of his first quarrel with him; and Tybalt and Mercutio fought, till Mercutio fell, receiving his death's wound, while Romeo and Benvolio were vainly endeavouring to part the combatants. Mercutio being dead, Romeo kept his temper no longer, but returned the scornful appellation of villain which Tybalt had given him; and they fought till Tybalt was slain by Romeo. This deadly broil falling out in the midst of Verona at noonday, the news of it quickly brought a crowd of citizens to the spot, and among them the old lords Capulet and Montague, with their wives; and soon after arrived the prince himself, who being related to Mercutio, whom Tybalt had slain, and having had the peace of his government often disturbed by these brawls of Montagues and Capulets, came determined to put the law in strictest force against those who should be found to be offenders. Benvolio, who had been eye-witness to the fray, was commanded by the prince to relate the origin of it, which he did, keeping as near to the truth as he could without injury to Romeo, softening and excusing the part which his friends took in it. Lady Capulet, whose extreme grief for the loss of her kinsman Tybalt made her keep no bounds in her revenge, exhorted the prince to do strict justice upon his murderer, and to pay no attention to Benvolio's representation, who being Romeo's friend, and a Montague, spoke partially. Thus she pleaded against her new son in law, but she knew not yet that he was her son-in-law, and Juliet's husband. On the other hand was to be seen lady Montague pleading for her child's life, and arguing with some justice that Romeo had done nothing worthy of punishment in taking the life of Tybalt, which was already forfeited to the law by his having slain Mercutio. The prince, unmoved by the passionate exclamations of these women, on a careful examination of the facts, pronounced his sentence, and by that sentence Romeo was banished from Verona.

! Heavy news to young Juliet, who had been but a few hours a bride, and now by this decree seemed everlastingly divorced! When the tidings reached her, she at first gave way to rage against Romeo, who had slain her dear cousin: she called him a beautiful tyrant, a fiend angelical, a ravenous dove, a lamb with a wolf's nature, a serpent-heart hid with a flowering face, and other like contradictory names, which denoted the struggles in her mind between her love and her resentment: but in the end love got the mastery, and the tears which she shed for grief that Romeo had slain her cousin, turned to drops of joy that her husband lived whom Tybalt would have slain. Then came fresh tears, and they were altogether of grief for Romeo's banishment. That word was more terrible to her than the death of many Tybalts.

Romeo, after the fray, had taken refuge in friar Lawrence's cell, where he was first made acquainted with the prince's sentence, which seemed to him far more terrible than death. To him it appeared there was no world out of Verona's walls, no living out of the sight of Juliet. Heaven was there where Juliet lived, and all beyond was purgatory, torture, hell. The good friar would have applied the consolation of philosophy to his griefs; but this frantic young man would hear of none, but like a madman he tore his hair, and threw himself all along upon the ground, as he said, to take the measure of his grave. From this unseemly state he was roused by a message from his dear lady, which a little revived him, and then the friar took the advantage to expostulate with him on the unmanly weakness which he had shown. He had slain Tybalt, but would he also slay himself, slay his dear lady who lived but in his life? The noble form of man, he said, was but a shape of wax, when it wanted the courage which should keep it firm. The law had been lenient to him, that, instead of death which he had incurred, had pronounced by the prince's mouth only banishment. He had slain Tybalt, but Tybalt would have slain him; there was a sort of happiness in that. Juliet was alive, and (beyond all hope) had become his dear wife, therein he was most happy. All these blessings, as the friar made them out to be, did Romeo put from him like a sullen misbehaved wench. And the friar bade him beware, for such as despaired (he said) died miserable. Then when Romeo was a little calmed, he counselled him that he should go that night and secretly take his leave of Juliet, and thence proceed straightways to Mantua,

at which place he should sojourn, till the friar found a fit occasion to publish his marriage, which might be a joyful means of reconciling their families; and then he did not doubt but the prince would be moved to pardon him, and he would return with twenty times more joy than he went forth with grief. Romeo was convinced by these wise counsels of the friar, and took his leave to go and seek his lady, purposing to stay with her that night, and by daybreak pursue his journey alone to Mantua; to which place the good friar promised to send him letters from time to time, acquainting him with the state of affairs at home.

¶ 2 That night Romeo passed with his dear wife, gaining secret admission to her chamber from the orchard in which he had heard her confession of love the night before. That had been a night of unmixed joy and rapture; but the pleasures of this night, and the delight which these lovers took in each other's society, were sadly allayed with the prospect of parting, and the fatal adventures of the past day. The unwelcome daybreak seemed to come too soon, and when Juliet heard the morning song of the lark, she would fain have persuaded herself that it was the nightingale, which sings by night; but it was too truly the lark which sung, and a discordant and displeasing note it seemed to her; and the streaks of day in the east too certainly pointed out that it was time for these lovers to part. Romeo took his leave of his dear wife with a heavy heart, promising to write to her from Mantua every hour in the day, and when he had descended from her chamber-window, as he stood below her on the ground, in that sad foreboding state of mind, in which she was, he appeared to her eyes as one dead in the bottom of a tomb. Romeo's mind misgave him in like manner; but now he was forced hastily to depart, for it was death for him to be found within the walls of Verona after daybreak.

¶ 3 This was but the beginning of the tragedy of this pair of star-crossed lovers. Romeo had not been gone many days, before the old lord Capulet proposed a match for Juliet. The husband he had chosen for her, not dreaming that she was married already, was count Paris, a gallant, young, and noble gentleman, no unworthy suitor to the young Juliet if she had never seen Romeo.

¶ The terrified Juliet was in a sad perplexity at her father's offer. She pleaded her youth unsuitable to marriage, the recent death of Tybalt, which had left her spirits too weak to meet a husband with any face of joy, and how indecorous it would she

for the family of the Capulets to be celebrating a nuptial-feast, when his funeral solemnities were hardly over : she pleaded every reason against the match, but the true one, namely that she was married already. But lord Capulet was deaf to all her excuses, and in a peremptory manner ordered her to get ready, for by the following Thursday she should be married to Paris : and having found her a husband rich, young, and noble, such as the proudest maid in Verona might joyfully accept, he could not bear that out of an affected coyness, as he construed her denial, she should oppose obstacles to her own good fortune.

In this extremity Juliet applied to the friendly friar, always her counsellor in distress, and he asking her if she had resolution to undertake a desperate remedy, and she answering that she would go into the grave alive, rather than marry Paris, her own dear husband living ; he directed her to go home, and appear merry and give her consent to marry Paris, according to her father's desire, and on the next night, which was the night before the marriage, to drink off the contents of a phial which he then gave her, the effect of which would be that for two and forty hours after drinking it she should appear cold and lifeless : that when the bridegroom came to fetch her in the morning, he would find her to appearance dead ; and then she would be borne, as the manner in that country was, uncovered, on a bier, to be buried in the family vault ; that if she could put off womanish fear, and consent to this terrible trial, in forty-two hours after swallowing the liquid (such was its certain operation) she would be sure to awake, as from a dream ; and before she should awake, he would let her husband know their drift, and he should come in the night, and bear her thence to Mantua. Love, and the dread of marrying Paris, gave young Juliet strength to undertake this horrible adventure ; and she took the phial of the friar, promising to observe his directions.

Going from the monastery, she met the young count Paris, and modestly dissembling, promised to become his bride. This was joyful news to the lord Capulet and his wife. It seemed to put youth into the old man ; and Juliet, who had displeased him exceedingly by her refusal of the count, was his darling again, now she promised to be obedient. All things in the house were in a bustle against the approaching nuptials. No cost was spared to prepare such festival rejoicings, as Verona had never before witnessed.

8 On the Wednesday night Juliet drank off the potion. She had many misgivings, lest the friar, to avoid the blame which might be imputed to him for marrying her to Romeo, had given her poison; but then he was always known for a holy man: then lest she should awake before the time that Romeo was to come for her; whether the terror of the place, a vault full of dead Capulets' bones, and where Tybalt, all bloody, lay festering in his shroud, would not be enough to drive her distracted: again she thought of all the stories she had heard of spirits haunting the places where their bodies were bestowed. But then her love for Romeo, and her aversion for Paris, returned, and she desperately swallowed the draught, and became insensible.

9 When young Paris came early in the morning with music, to awaken his bride, instead of a living Juliet, her chamber presented the dreary spectacle of a lifeless corse. What death to his hopes! What confusion then reigned through the whole house! Poor Paris lamenting his bride, whom most detestable death had beguiled him of, had divorced from him even before their hands were joined. But still more piteous it was to hear the mournings of the old lord and lady Capulet, who having but this one, one poor loving child to rejoice and solace in, cruel death had snatched her from their sight, just as these careful parents were on the point of seeing her advanced (as they thought) by a promising and advantageous match. Now all things that were ordained for the festival were turned from their properties to do the office of a black funeral. The wedding cheer served for a sad burial feast, the bridal hymns were changed to sullen dirges, the sprightly instruments to melancholy bells, and the flowers that should have been strewed in the bride's path, now served but to strew her corse. Now instead of a priest to marry her, a priest was needed to bury her; and she was borne to church indeed not to augment the cheerful hopes of the living, but to swell the dreary numbers of the dead.

10 Bad news, which always travel faster than good, now brought the dismal story of his Juliet's death to Romeo at Mantua, before the messenger could arrive, who was sent from friar Lawrence to apprise him that these were mock funerals only, and but the shadow and representation of death, and that his dear lady lay in the tomb but for a short while, expecting when Romeo should come to release her from that dreary mansion. Just before, Romeo had been unusually joyful and lighthearted. He had dreamed in

the night that he was dead (a strange dream, that gave a dead man leave to think; and that his lady came and found him dead, and breathed such life with kisses in his lips, that he revived; and was an emperor! And now that a messenger came from Verona, he thought surely it was to confirm some good news which his dreams had presaged. But when the contrary to this flattering vision appeared, and that it was his lady who was dead in truth, whom he could not revive by any kisses, he ordered horses to be got ready, for he determined that night to visit Verona, and to see his lady in her tomb. And as mischief is swift to enter into the thoughts of desperate men he called to mind a poor apothecary, whose shop in Mantua he had lately passed, and from the beggarly appearance of the man, who seemed famished, and the wretched show in his shop of empty boxes ranged on dirty shelves, and other tokens of extreme wretchedness, he had said at the time (perhaps having some misgivings that his own disastrous life might haply meet with a conclusion so desperate), "If a man were to need poison, which by the law of Mantua it is death to sell, here lives a poor wretch who would sell it him." These words of his now came into his mind, and he sought out the apothecary, who after some pretended scruples, Romeo offering him gold which his poverty could not resist, sold him a poison, which if he swallowed, he told him, if he had the strength of twenty men, would quickly despatch him.

So With this poison he set out for Verona, to have sight of his dear lady in her tomb, meaning, when he had satisfied his sight, to swallow the poison, and be buried by her side. He reached Verona at midnight, and found the churchyard in the midst of which was situated the ancient tomb of the Capulets. He had provided a light, and a spade, and wenching iron, and was proceeding to break open the monument, when he was interrupted by a voice, which by the name of *vile Montague*, bade him desist from his unlawful business. It was the young count Paris, who had come to the tomb of Juliet at that unseasonable time of the night, to strew flowers, and to weep over the grave of her that should have been his bride. He knew not what an interest Romeo had in the dead, but knowing him to be a Montague, and (as he supposed) a sworn foe to all the Capulets, he judged that he was come by night to do some villanous shame to the dead bodies; therefore in angry tone he bade him desist; and as a criminal, condemned by the laws of Verona to die if he were found within

the walls of the city, he would have apprehended him. Romeo urged Paris to leave him, and warned him by the fate of Tybalt, who lay buried there, not to provoke his anger, or draw down another sin upon his head, by forcing him to kill him. But the count in scorn refused his warning, and laid hands on him as a felon, which Romeo resisting, they fought, and Paris fell. When Romeo, by the help of a light, came to see who it was that he had slain, that it was Paris, who (he learned in his way from Mantua) should have married Juliet, he took the dead youth by the hand, as one whom misfortune had made a companion, and said that he would bury him in a triumphal grave, meaning in Juliet's grave, which he now opened; and there lay his lady, as one whom death had no power upon to change a feature or complexion in her matchless beauty, or as if Death were amorous, and the lean abhorred monster kept her there for his delight; for she lay yet fresh and blooming, as she had fallen to sleep when she swallowed that benumbing potion; and near her lay Tybalt in his bloody shroud, whom Romeo seeing, begged pardon of his lifeless corpse, and for Juliet's sake called him *cousin*, and said that he was about to do him a favour by putting his enemy to death. Here Romeo took his last leave of his lady's lips, kissing them; and here he shook the burden of his cross stars from his weary body, swallowing that poison which the apothecary had sold him, whose operation was fatal and real, not like that dissembling potion which Juliet had swallowed, the effect of which was now nearly expiring, and she about to awake to complain that Romeo had not kept his time, or that he had come too soon.

7 / For now the hour was arrived at which the friar had promised that she should awake; and he having learned that his letters which he had sent to Mantua, by some unlucky detention of the messenger, had never reached Romeo, came himself provided with a pickaxe and lantern, to deliver the lady from her confinement; but he was surprised to find a light already burning in the Capulets' monument and to see swords and blood near it, and Romeo and Paris lying breathless by the monument.

7 2-Before he could entertain a conjecture, to imagine how these fatal accidents had fallen out, Juliet awoke out of her trance, and seeing the friar near her, she remembered the place where she was, and the occasion of her being there, and asked for Romeo: but the friar, hearing a noise, bade her come out of that place of death, and of unnatural sleep, for a greater power than they could

contradict had thwarted their intents ; and being frighted by the noise of people coming, he fled ; but when Juliet saw the cup closed in her true love's hands, she guessed that poison had been the cause of his end, and she would have swallowed the dregs if any had been left, and she kissed his still warm lips to try if any poison yet did hang upon them : then hearing a nearer noise of people coming, she quickly unsheathed a dagger which she wore, and stabbing herself, died by her true Romeo's side

7 } The watch by this time had come up to the place. A page belonging to count Paris, who had witnessed the fight between his master and Romeo, had given the alarm, which had spread among the citizens, who went up and down the streets of Verona confusedly, exclaiming a Paris, a Romeo, a Juliet, as the rumour had imperfectly reached them, till the uproar brought lord Montague and Capulet out of their beds, with the prince, to inquire into the causes of the disturbance. The friar had been apprehended by some of the watch, coming from the churchyard, trembling, sighing and weeping, in a suspicious manner. A great multitude being assembled at the Capulets' monument, the friar was demanded by the prince to deliver what he knew of these strange and disastrous accidents.

8 } And there, in the presence of the old lords Montague and Capulet, he faithfully related the story of their children's fatal love, the part he took in promoting their marriage, in the hope in that union to end the long quarrels between their families ; how Romeo, there dead, was husband to Juliet ; and Juliet, there dead, was Romeo's faithful wife : how before he could find a fit opportunity to divulge their marriage, another match was projected for Juliet, who to avoid the crime of a second marriage swallowed the sleeping draught (as he advised) and all thought her dead : how meantime he wrote to Romeo, to come and take her thence when the force of the potion should cease, and by what unfortunate miscarriage of the messenger the letters never reached Romeo : further than this the friar could not follow the story, nor knew more than that, coming himself to deliver Juliet from that place of death, he found the count Paris and Romeo slain. The remainder of the transactions was supplied by the narration of the page who had seen Paris and Romeo fight, and by the servant who came with Romeo to Verona, to whom this faithful lover had given letters to be delivered to his father in the event of his death, which made good the friar's words, confessing his marriage with

Juliet, imploring the forgiveness of his parents, acknowledging the buying of the poison of the poor apothecary, and his intent in coming to the monument, to die, and lie with Juliet. All these circumstances agreed together to clear the friar from any hand he could be supposed to have had in these complicated slaughters, further than as the unintended consequences of his own, well-meant, yet too artificial and subtle contrivances.

And the prince, turning to these old lords, Montague and Capulet, rebuked them for their brutal and irrational enmities, and showed them what a scurge heaven had laid upon such offences, that it had found means even through the love of their children to punish their unnatural hate. And these old rivals, no longer enemies, agreed to bury their long strife in their children's graves; and lord Capulet requested lord Montague to give him his hand, calling him by the name of brother, as if in acknowledgment of the union of their families by the marriage of the young Capulet and Montague; and saying that lord Montague's hand (in token of reconciliation) was all he demanded for his daughter's jointure: but lord Montague said he would give him more, for he would raise her statue of pure gold, that while Verona kept its name, no figure should be so esteemed for its richness and workmanship as that of the true and faithful Juliet. And lord Capulet in return said, that he would raise another statue to Romeo. So did these poor old lords, when it was too late, strive to outgo each other in mutual courtesies: while so deadly had been their rage and enmity in past times, that nothing but the fearful overthrow of their children (poor sacrifices to their quarrels and dissensions) could remove the rooted hates and jealousies of the noble families.

KING LEAR.

LEAR, king of Britain, had three daughters; Goneril, wife to the duke of Albany; Regan, wife to the duke of Cornwall; and Cordelia, a young maid, for whose love the king of France and duke of Burgundy were joint suitors, and were at this time making stay for that purpose in the court of Lear.

The old king, worn out with age and the fatigues of government, he being more than fourscore years old, determined to take no further part in state affairs, but to leave the management to

younger strengths, that he might have time to prepare for death which must at no long period ensue. With this intent he called his three daughters to him, to know from their own lips which of them loved him best, that he might part his kingdom among them in such proportions as their affection for him should seem to deserve.

Goneril, the eldest, declared that she loved her father more than words could give out, that he was dearer to her than the light of her eyes, dearer than life and liberty, with a deal of such professing stuff, which is easy to counterfeit where there is no real love, only a few fine words delivered with confidence being wanted in that case. The king, delighted to hear from her own mouth this assurance of her love, and thinking truly that her heart went with it, in a fit of fatherly fondness bestowed upon her and her husband one-third of his ample kingdom.

Then calling to him his second daughter, he demanded what she had to say. Regan, who was made of the same hollow metal as her sister, was not a whit behind in her professions, but rather declared that what her sister had spoken came short of the love which she professed to bear for his highness: insomuch that she found all other joys dead, in comparison with the pleasures which she took in the love of her dear king and father.

Lear blessed himself in having such loving children, as he thought: and could do no less, after the handsome assurances which Regan had made, than bestow a third of his kingdom upon her and her husband, equal in size to that which he had already given away to Goneril.

Then turning to his youngest daughter Cordelia, whom he called his joy, he asked what she had to say; thinking, no doubt, that she would glad his ears with the same loving speeches which her sisters had uttered, or rather that her expressions would be so much stronger than theirs, as she had always been his darling and favoured by him above either of them. But Cordelia, disgusted with the flattery of her sisters, whose hearts she knew were far from their lips, and seeing that all their coaxing speeches were only intended to wheedle the old king out of his dominions, that they and their husbands might reign in his lifetime, made no other reply but this, that she loved his majesty according to her duty, neither more nor less.

The king, shocked with this appearance of ingratitude in his favourite child, desired her to consider her words, and to mend her speech, lest it should mar her fortunes.

Cordelia then told her father, that he was her father, that he had given her breeding, and loved her, that she returned those duties back as was most fit, and did obey him, love him, and most honour him. But that she could not frame her mouth to such large speeches as her sisters had done, or promise to love nothing else in the world. Why had her sisters husbands, if as they said) they had no love for anything but their father? If she should ever wed, she was sure the lord to whom she gave her hand would want half her love, half her care and duty; she should never marry like her sisters, to love her father all.

Cordelia, who in earnest loved her old father even almost as extravagantly as her sisters pretended to do, would have plainly told him so at any other time, in more daughter-like and loving terms, and without these qualifications which did indeed sound a little ungracious: but after the crafty flattering speeches of her sisters, which she had seen draw such extravagant rewards, she thought the handsomest thing she could do was to love and be silent. This put her affection out of suspicion of mercenary ends, and showed that she loved, but not for gain; and that her professions, the less ostentatious they were, had so much the more of truth and sincerity than her sisters'.

This plainness of speech, which Lear called pride, so enraged the old monarch--who in his best of times always showed much of spleen and rashness, and in whom the dotage incident to old age had so clouded over his reason, that he could not discern truth from flattery, nor a gay painted speech from words that came from the heart--that in a fury of resentment he retracted the third part of his kingdom which yet remained, and which he had reserved for Cordelia, and gave it away from her, sharing it equally between her two sisters and their husbands, the dukes of Albany and Cornwall; whom he now called to him, and in presence of all his courtiers, bestowing a coronet between them, invested them jointly with all the power, revenue, and execution of government, only retaining to himself the name of king; all the rest of royalty he resigned: with this reservation that himself, with a hundred knights for his attendants, was to be maintained by monthly course in each of his daughter's palaces in turn.

So preposterous a disposal of his kingdom, so little guided by reason, and so much by passion, filled all his courtiers with astonishment and sorrow ; but none of them had the courage to interpose between this incensed king and his wrath, except the earl of Kent, who was beginning to speak a good word for Cordelia, when the passionate Lear on pain of death commanded him to desist : but the good Kent was not so to be repelled. He had been ever loyal to Lear, whom he had honoured as a king, loved as a father, followed as a master ; and had never esteemed his life further than as a pawn to wage against his royal master's enemies, nor feared to lose it when Lear's safety was the motive : nor now that Lear was most his own enemy, did this faithful servant of the king forget his old principles, but manfully opposed Lear, to do Lear good ; and was unmannerly only because Lear was mad. He had been a most faithful counsellor, in times past, to the king, and he besought him now, that he would see with his eyes 'as he had done in many weighty matters), and go by his advice still ; and in his best consideration recall this hideous rashness. for he would answer with his life, his judgment, that Lear's youngest daughter did not love him least, nor were those empty-hearted whose low sound gave no token of hollowness. When power bowed to flattery, honour was bound to plainness. For Lear's threats, what could he do to him, whose life was already at his service ? That should not hinder duty from speaking.

The honest freedom of this good earl of Kent only stirred up the king's wrath the more, and like a frantic patient who kills his physician, and loves his mortal disease, he banished this true servant, and allotted him but five days to make his preparations for departure ; but if on the sixth his hated person was found within the realm of Britain, that moment was to be his death. And Kent bade farewell to the king, and said, that since he chose to show himself in such fashion, it was but banishment to stay there ; and before he went, he recommended Cordelia to the protection of the gods, the maid who had so rightly thought, and so discreetly spoken ; and only wished that her sisters' large speeches might be answered with deeds of love ; and then he went, as he said, to shape his old course to a new country.

The king of France and duke of Burgundy were now called in to hear the determination of Lear about his youngest daughter, and to know whether they would persist in their courtship to Cordelia, now that she was under her father's displeasure, and

had no fortune but her own person to recommend her ; and the duke of Burgundy declined the match, and would not take her to wife upon such conditions : but the king of France understanding what the nature of the fault had been which had lost her the love of her father, that it was only a tardiness of speech, and she not being able to frame her tongue to flattery like her sisters, took this young maid by the hand, and saying that her virtues were a dowry above a kingdom, made Cordelia to take farewell of her sisters, and of her father, though he had been unkind, and she should go with him, and be queen of him and of fair France, and reign over fairer possessions than her sisters : and he called the duke of Burgundy in contempt a waterish duke, because his love for this young maid had in a moment run all away like water.

Then Cordelia with weeping eyes took leave of her sisters, and besought them to love their father well, and make good their professions ; and they sullenly told her not to prescribe to them, for they knew their duty ; but to strive to content her husband, who had taken her (as they tauntingly expressed it) as Fortune's alms. And Cordelia with a heavy heart departed, for she knew the cunning of her sisters, and she wished her father in better hands than she was about to leave him in.

Cordelia was no sooner gone, than the devilish disposition of her sisters began to show themselves in their true colours. Even before the expiration of the first month which Lear was to spend by agreement with his eldest daughter Goneril, the old king began to find out the difference between promises and performances. This wretch having got from his father all that he had to bestow, even to the giving away of the crown from off his head, began to grudge even those small remnants of royalty which the old man had reserved to himself, to please his fancy with the idea of being still a king. She could not bear to see him and his hundred knights. Every time she met her father she put on a frowning countenance, and when the old man wanted to speak with her, she would feign sickness, or anything to be rid of the sight of him ; for it was plain that she esteemed his old age a useless burden, and his attendants an unnecessary expense : not only she herself slackened in her expressions of duty to the king, but by her example, and (it is to be feared) not without her private instructions, her very servants affected to treat him with

neglect and would either refuse to obey his orders, or still more contemptuously pretend not to hear them. Lear could not but perceive this alteration in the behaviour of his daughter, but he shut his eyes against it as long as he could, as people commonly are unwilling to believe the unpleasant consequences which their own mistake and obstinacy have brought upon them.

True love and fidelity are no more to be estranged by *ill*, than falsehood and hollow-heartedness can be conciliated by *good usage*. This eminently appears in the instance of the good earl of Kent, who, though banished by Lear, and his life made forfeit if he were found in Britain, chose to stay and abide all consequences, as long as there was a chance of his being useful to the king his master. See to what mean shifts and disguises poor loyalty is forced to submit sometimes; yet it counts nothing base or unworthy, so as it can but do service where it owes an obligation. In the disguise of a serving-man, all his greatness and pomp laid aside, this good earl proffered his services to the king, who not knowing him to be Kent in that disguise, but pleased with a certain plainness, or rather bluntness, in his answers which the earl put on (so different from that smooth oily flattery which he had so much reason to be sick of, having found the effects not answerable in his daughter), a bargain was quickly struck, and Lear took Kent into his service by the name of Caius, as he called himself, never suspecting him to be his once great favourite, the high and mighty earl of Kent.

This Caius quickly found means to show his fidelity and love to his royal master; for Goneril's steward that same day behaving in a disrespectful manner to Lear, and giving him saucy looks and language, as no doubt he was secretly encouraged to do by his mistress, Caius not enduring to hear so open an affront put upon majesty, made no more ado but presently tripped up his heels, and laid the unmannerly slave in the kennel, for which friendly service Lear became more and more attached to him.

Nor was Kent the only friend Lear had. In his degree, and as far as so insignificant a personage could show his love, the poor fool, or jester, that had been of his palace while Lear had a palace, as it was the custom of kings and great personages at that time to keep a fool (as he was called) to make them sport after serious business; this poor fool clung to Lear after he had given away his crown, and by his witty sayings would keep up his good humour, though he could not refrain sometimes from

ering at his master, for his imprudence, in interowning himself, and giving all away to his daughters: at which time, as he hymningly expressed it, these daughters

For sudden joy did weep.

And he for sorrow sung.

That such a king should play bo-peep.

And go the fools among.

And in such wild sayings and scraps of songs, of which he had plenty, this pleasant honest fool poured out his heart even in the presence of Goneril herself, in many a bitter taunt and jest which cut to the quick: such as comparing the king to the hedge-sparrow who feeds the young of the cuckoo till they grow old enough, and then has its head bit off for its pains: and saying, that an ass may know when the cart draws the horse (meaning that Lear's daughters, that ought to go behind, now ranked before their father); and that Lear was no longer Lear, but the shadow of Lear: for which free speeches he was once or twice threatened to be whipped.

The coolness and falling off of respect which Lear had begun to perceive, were not all which this foolish fond father was to suffer from his unworthy daughter: she now plainly told him that his staying in her place was inconvenient so long as he insisted upon keeping up an establishment of a hundred knights: that this establishment was useless and expensive, and only served to fill her court with riot and feasting; and she prayed him that he would lessen their number, and keep none but old men about him, such as himself, and fitting his age.

Lear at first could not believe his eyes or ears, nor that it was his daughter who spoke so unkindly. He could not believe that she who had received a crown from him could seek to cut off his train, and grudge him the respect due to his old age. But she persisting in her undutiful demand, the old man's rage was so excited, that he called her a detested kite, and said that she had spoke an untruth: and so indeed she did, for the hundred knights were all men of choice behaviour and sobriety of manners, skilled in all particulars of duty, and not given to rioting and feasting as she said. And he bid his horses to be prepared, for he would go to his other daughter, Regan, he and his hundred knights: and he spoke of ingratitude, and said it was a marble-hearted devil, and showed more hideous in a child than the sea-monster. And he cursed his eldest daughter Goneril so as was terrible to hear:

praying that she might never have a child, or if she had, that it might live to return that scorn and contempt upon her, which she had shown to him: that she might feel how sharper than a serpent's tooth it was to have a thankless child. And Goneril's husband, the duke of Albany, beginning to excuse himself for any share which Lear might suppose he had in the unkindness, Lear would not hear him out, but in a rage ordered his horses to be saddled, and set out with his followers for the abode of Regan, his other daughter. And Lear thought to himself how small the fault of Cordelia (if it was a fault) now appeared, in comparison with her sister's, and he wept; and then he was ashamed that such a creature as Goneril should have so much power over his manhood as to make him weep.

Regan and her husband were keeping their court in great pomp and state at their place: and Lear despatched his servant Caius with letters to his daughter, that she might be prepared for his reception, while he and his train followed after. But it seems that Goneril had been beforehand with him, sending letters also to Regan, accusing her father of waywardness and ill humours, and advising her not to receive so great a train as he was bringing with him. This messenger arrived at the same time with Caius, and Caius and he met: and who should it be but Caius's old enemy the steward, whom he had formerly tripped up by the heels for his saucy behaviour to Lear. Caius not liking the fellow's look, and suspecting what he came for, began to revile him, and challenged him to fight, which the fellow refusing, Caius, in a fit of honest passion, beat him soundly, as such a mischief-maker and carrier of wicked messages deserved: which coming to the ears of Regan and her husband, they ordered Caius to be put in the stocks, though he was a messenger from the king her father, and in that character demanded the highest respect: so that the first thing the king saw was when he entered the castle, was his faithful servant Caius sitting in that disgraceful situation.

This was but a bad omen of the reception which he was to expect; but a worse followed, when upon inquiry for his daughter and her husband, he was told they were weary with travelling all night, and could not see him: and when lastly, upon his insisting in a positive and angry manner to see them, they came to greet him, whom should he see in their company but the hated Goneril,

who had come to tell her own story, and set her sister against the king her father!

This sight much moved the old man, and still more to see Regan take her by the hand; and he asked Goneril if she was not ashamed to look upon his old white head. And Regan advised him to go home again with Goneril and live with her peaceably, dismissing half of his attendants, and to ask her forgiveness; for he was old and wanted discretion, and must be ruled and led by persons that had more discretion than himself. And Lear showed how preposterous that would sound, if he were to down on his knees, and beg of his own daughter for food and raiment, and he argued against such an unnatural dependence, declaring his resolution never to return with her, but to stay where he was with Regan, he and his hundred knights: for he said that she had not forgot the half of the kingdom which he had endowed her with, and that her eyes were not fierce like Goneril's, but mild and kind. And he said that rather than return to Goneril with half his train cut off, he would go over to France, and beg a wretched pension of the king there, who had married his youngest daughter without a portion.

But he was mistaken in expecting kinder treatment of Regan than he had experienced from her sister Goneril. As if willing to outdo her sister in unfilial behaviour, she declared that she thought fifty knights too many to wait upon him; that five-and-twenty were enough. Then Lear, high heart-broken, turned to Goneril, and said that he would go back with her, for her fifty doubled five-and-twenty, and so her love was twice as much as Regan's. But Goneril excused herself, and said, what need of so many as five-and-twenty? or even ten? or five? when he might be waited upon by her servants or her sister's servants? So these two wicked daughters, as if they strove to exceed each other in cruelty to their old father who had been so good to them, by little and little would have abated him of all his train, all respect (little enough for him that once commanded a kingdom), which was left him to show that he had once been a king! Not that a splendid train is essential to happiness, but from a king to a beggar is a hard change, from commanding millions to be without one attendant; and it was the ingratitude in his daughters denying it, more than what he would suffer by the want of it, which pierced this poor old king to the heart; inso much that with this double ill usage, and vexation for having so foolishly given away a

kingdom, his wits began to be unsettled, and while he said he knew not what, he vowed revenge against those unnatural hags and to make examples of them that should be a terror to the earth !

While he was thus idly threatening what his weak arm could never execute, night came on, and a loud storm of thunder and lightning with rain ; and his daughters still persisting in their resolution not to admit his followers, he called for his horses, and chose rather to encounter the utmost fury of the storm abroad, than stay under the same roof with these ungrateful daughters ; and they, saying that the injuries which wilful men procure to themselves are their just punishment, suffered him to go in that condition, and shut their doors upon him.

The winds were high, and the rain and storm increased, when the old man sallied forth to combat with the elements, less sharp than his daughters' unkindness. For many miles about, there was scarce a bush ; and there upon a heath, exposed to the fury of the storm in a dark night, did king Lear wander out, and defy the winds and the thunder : and he bid the winds to blow the earth into the sea, or swell the waves of the sea, till they drowned the earth that no token might remain of any such ungrateful animal as man. The old king was now left with no other companion than the poor fool, who still abided with him, with his merry conceits striving to outjest misfortune, saying, it was but a naughty night to swim in, and truly the king had better go in and ask his daughter's blessing :

But he that has a little tiny wit,
With bigger ho, the wind and the rain !
Must make content with his fortunes fit,
Though the rain it washeth every day .

and swearing it was a brave night to cool a lady's pride.

Thus poorly accompanied, this once great monarch was found by his ever-faithful servant the good earl of Kent, now transformed to Cains, who ever followed close at his side though the king did not know him to be the earl ; and he said, " Alas ! sir, are you here ? creatures that love night love not such nights as these. This dreadful storm has driven the beasts to their hiding-places. Man's nature cannot endure the affliction or the fear." And Lear rebuked him, and said, these lesser evils were not felt, where a greater malady was fixed. When the mind is at ease, the body has leisure to be delicate ; but the tempest in his mind did take all feeling else from his senses, but of that which beat at his

heart. And he spoke of filial ingratitude, and said it was all one as if the mouth should tear the hand for lifting food to it; for parents were hands and food and everything to children.

But the good Cains still persisting in his entreaties that the king would not stay out in the open air, at last persuaded him to enter a little wretched hovel which stood upon the heath, where he first entering, suddenly ran back terrified, saying that he had seen a spirit. But upon examination this spirit proved to be nothing more than a poor Bedlam beggar, who had crept into this deserted hovel for shelter and with his talk about devils frightened the fool, one of those poor lunatics who are either mad, or feign to be so, the better to extort charity from the compassionate country people, who go about the country, calling themselves poor Tom and poor Urlygood, saying, "Who gives anything to poor Tom?" sticking pins and nails and sprigs of rosemary into their arms to make them bleed; and with such horrible actions, partly by prayers, and partly with lunatic curses, they move or terrify the ignorant country-folks into giving them alms. This poor fellow was such a one; and the king seeing him in so wretched a plight, with nothing but a blanket about his loins to cover his nakedness, could not be persuaded but that the fellow was some father who had given all away to his daughters, and brought himself to that pass: for nothing he thought could bring a man to such wretchedness but the having unkind daughters.

And from this and many such wild speeches which he uttered, the good Cains plainly perceived that he was not in his perfect mind, but that his daughters' ill usage had really made him go mad. And now the loyalty of this worthy earl of Kent showed itself in more essential services than he had hitherto found opportunity to perform. For with the assistance of some of the king's attendants, who remained loyal, he had the person of his royal master removed at daybreak to the castle of Dover, where his own friends and influence, as earl of Kent, chiefly lay: and himself embarking for France, hastened to the court of Cordelia, and did there in such moving terms represent the pitiful condition of her royal father, and set out in such lively colours the inhumanity of her sisters, that this good and loving child, with many tears besought the king her husband, that he would give her leave to embark for England with a sufficient power to subdue these daughters and their husbands, and restore the king her father to

his throne ; which being granted, she set forth, and with a royal army landed at Dover.

Lear having by some chance escaped from the guardians which the good earl of Kent had put over him to take care of him in his lunacy, was found by some of Cordelia's train, wandering about the fields near Dover, in a pitiable condition, stark mad and singing aloud to himself, with a crown upon his head which he had made of straw and nettles, and other wild weeds that he had picked up in the corn-fields. By the advice of the physicians, Cordelia, though earnestly desirous of seeing her father, was prevailed upon to put off the meeting, till, by sleep and the operation of herbs which they gave him, he should be restored to greater composure. By the aid of these skilful physicians, to whom Cordelia promised all her gold and jewels for the recovery of the old king, Lear was soon in a condition to see his daughter.

A tender sight it was to see the meeting between this father and daughter : to see the struggles between the joy of this poor old king at beholding again his once darling child, and the shame at receiving such filial kindness from her whom he had cast off for so small a fault in his displeasure ; both these passions struggling with the remains of his malady which in his half-crazed brain sometimes made him that he scarce remembered where he was, or who it was that so kindly kissed and spoke to him : and then he would beg the standers-by not to laugh at him, if he were mistaken in thinking this lady to be his daughter Cordelia ! And then to see him fall on his knees to beg pardon of his child ; and she, good lady, kneeling all the while to ask a blessing of him, and telling him that it did not become him to kneel, but it was her duty, for she was his child, his true and very child Cordelia ! And she kissed him (as she said) to kiss away all her sisters' unkindness, and said that they might be ashamed of themselves, to turn their old kind father with his white beard out into the cold air, when her enemy's dog, though it had bit her (as she prettily expressed it), should have stayed by her fire such a night as that, and warmed himself. And she told her father how she had come from France with purpose to bring him assistance ; and he said, that she must forget and forgive, for he was old and foolish, and did not know what he did, but that to be sure she had great cause not to love him, but her sisters had none. And Cordelia said, that she had no cause, no more than they had.

So we will leave this old king in the protection of this dutiful and loving child, where, by the help of sleep and medicine, she and her physicians at length succeeded in winding up the untuned and jarring senses which the cruelty of his other daughters had so violently shaken. Let us return to say a word or two about those cruel daughters.

These monsters of ingratitude, who had been so false to their own father, could not be expected to prove more faithful to their own husbands. They soon grew tired of paying even the appearance of duty and affection, and in an open way showed they had fixed their love upon another. It happened that the object of their guilty loves was the same. It was Edmund, a natural son of the late earl of Gloucester, who by his treacheries had succeeded in disinheriting his brother Edgar, the lawful heir, from his earldom, and by his wicked practices was now earl himself: a wicked man, and a fit object for the love of such wicked creatures as Goneril and Regan. It falling out about this time that the duke of Cornwall, Regan's husband, died, Regan immediately declared her intention of wedding this earl of Gloucester, which rousing the jealousy of her sister, to whom as well as to Regan this wicked earl had at sundry times professed love, Goneril found means to make away with her sister by poison; but being detected in her practices and imprisoned by her husband the duke of Albany for this deed, and for her guilty passion for the earl which had come to his ears, she, in a fit of disappointed love and rage, shortly put an end to her own life. Thus justice of Heaven at last overtook these wicked daughters.

While the eyes of all men were upon this event, admiring the justice displayed in their deserved deaths, the same eyes were suddenly taken off from this sight to admire at the mysterious ways of the same power in the melancholy fate of the young and virtuous daughter, the lady Cordelia, whose good deeds did seem to deserve a more fortunate conclusion: but it is an awful truth, that innocence and piety are not always successful in this world. The forces which Goneril and Regan had sent out under the command of the bad earl of Gloucester were victorious, and Cordelia, by the practices of this wicked earl, who did not like that any should stand between him and the throne, ended her life in prison. Thus Heaven took this innocent lady to itself in her young years, after showing her to the world an illustrious example of filial duty. Lear did not long survive this kind child,

Before he died, the good earl of Kent, who had still attended his old master's steps from the first of his daughters' ill usage to this sad period of his decay, tried to make him understand that it was he who had followed him under the name of Caius; but Lear's care-crazed brain at that time could not comprehend how that could be, or how Kent and Caius could be the same person: so Kent thought it needless to trouble him with explanations at such a time; and Lear soon after expiring, this faithful servant to the king, between age and grief for his old master's vexations, soon followed him to the grave.

How the judgment of Heaven overtook the bad earl of Gloucester, whose treasons were discovered, and himself slain in single combat with his brother the lawful earl; and how Goneril's husband, the duke of Albany, who was innocent of the death of Cordelia, and had never encouraged his lady in her wicked proceedings against her father, ascended the throne of Britain after the death of Lear, is needless here to narrate; Lear and his Three Daughters being dead, whose adventures alone concern our story.

OTHELLO.

BRABANTIO, the rich senator of Venice, had a fair daughter the gentle Desdemona. She was sought to by divers suitors, both on account of her many virtuous qualities and for her rich expectations. But among the suitors of her own clime and complexion she saw none whom she could affect: for this noble lady, who regarded the mind more than the features of men, with a singularity rather to be admired than imitated, had chosen for the object of her affections, a Moor, a black, whom her father loved, and often invited to his house.

Neither is Desdemona to be altogether condemned for the unsuitableness of the person whom she selected for her lover. Bating that Othello was black, the noble Moor wanted nothing which might recommend him to the affections of the greatest lady. He was a soldier, and a brave one; and by his conduct in bloody wars against the Turks had risen to the rank of general in the Venetian service, and was esteemed and trusted by the state.

He had been a traveller, and Desdemona (as is the manner of ladies) loved to hear him tell the story of his adventures, which

he would run through from his earliest recollection ; the battles, sieges, and encounters which he had passed through ; the perils he had been exposed to by land and by water ; his hair breadth escapes when he had entered a breach, or marched up to the mouth of a cannon ; and how he had been taken prisoner by the insolent enemy, and sold to slavery : how he demeaned himself in that state, and how he escaped : all these accounts, added to the narration of the strange things he had seen in foreign countries, the vast wildernesses and romantic caverns, the quarries, the rocks and mountains, whose heads are in the clouds ; of the savage nations, the cannibals who are man-eaters, and a race of people in Africa whose heads do grow beneath their shoulders : these travellers' stories would so enchain the attention of Desdemona, that if she were called off at any time by household affairs, she would despatch with all haste that business, and return, and with a greedy ear devour Othello's discourse. And once he took advantage of a pliant hour, and drew from her a prayer, that he would tell her the whole story of his life at large of which she had heard so much, but only by parts : to which he consented, and beguiled her of many a tear, when he spoke of some distressful stroke which his youth suffered.

His story being done, she gave him for his pains a world of sighs : she swore a pretty oath, that it was all passing strange, and pitiful, wondrous pitiful : she wished (she said) she had not heard it, yet she wished that Heaven had made her such a man ; and then she thanked him, and told him, if he had a friend who loved her, he had only to teach him how to tell his story, and that would woo her. Upon this hint, delivered not with more frankness than modesty, accompanied with a certain bewitching prettiness, and blushes, which Othello could not but understand, he spoke more openly of his love, and in this golden opportunity gained the consent of the generous lady Desdemona privately to marry him.

Neither Othello's colour nor his fortune were such that it could be hoped Brabantio would accept him for a son-in-law. He had left his daughter free ; but he did expect that, as the manner of noble Venetian ladies was, she would choose ere long a husband of senatorial rank or expectations : but in this he was deceived ; Desdemona loved the Moor, though he was black, and devoted her heart and fortunes to his valiant parts and qualities : so was her heart subdued to an implicit devotion to the man she had

selected for a husband, that his very colour, which to all but this discerning lady would have proved an insurmountable objection, was by her esteemed above all the white skins and clear complexions of the young Venetian nobility, her suitors.

Their marriage, which, though privately carried, could not long be kept a secret, came to the ears of the old man, Brabantio, who appeared in a solemn council of the senate, as an accuser of the Moor Othello, who by spells and witch-craft (he maintained) had seduced the affections of the fair Desdemona to marry him, without the consent of her father, and against the obligations of hospitality.

At this juncture of time it happened that the state of Venice had immediate need of the services of Othello, news having arrived that the Turks with mighty preparation had fitted out a fleet, which was bending its course to the Island of Cyprus, with intent to regain that strong post from the Venetians, who then held it: in this emergency the state turned its eyes upon Othello, who alone was deemed adequate to conduct the defence of Cyprus against the Turks. So that Othello, now summoned before the senate, stood in their presence at once as a candidate for a great state employment, and as a culprit, charged with offences which by the laws of Venice were made capital.

The age and senatorial character of old Brabantio commanded a most patient hearing from that grave assembly; but the incensed father conducted his accusation with so much intemperance, producing likelihoods and allegations for proofs, that, when Othello was called upon for his defence, he had only to relate a plain tale of the course of his love; which he did with such an artless eloquence, recounting the whole story of his wooing, as we have related it above, and delivered his speech with so noble a plainness (the evidence of truth), that the duke, who sat as chief judge, could not help confessing, that a tale so told would have won his daughter too; and the spells and conjurations, which Othello had used in his courtship, plainly appeared to have been no more than the honest arts of men in love; and the only witch-craft which he had used, the faculty of telling a soft tale to win a lady's ear.

This statement of Othello was confirmed by the testimony of the lady Desdemona herself, who appeared in court, and professing a duty to her father for life and education, challenged leave

of him to profess a yet higher duty to her lord and husband, even so much as her mother had shown in preferring him (Brabantio) above her father.

The old senator unable to maintain his plea, called the Moor to him with many expressions of sorrow, and, as an act of necessity bestowed upon him his daughter, whom, if he had been free to withhold her (he told him), he would with all his heart have kept from him : adding, that he was glad at soul that he had no other child, for this behaviour of Desdemona would have taught him to be a tyrant, and hang clogs on them for her desertion.

This difficulty being got over, Othello, to whom custom had rendered the hardships of a military life as natural as food and rest are to other men, readily undertook the management of the wars in Cyprus : and Desdemona, preferring the honour of her lord (though with danger) before the indulgence of those idle delights in which new-married people usually waste their time, cheerfully consented to his going.

No sooner were Othello and his lady landed in Cyprus, than news arrived, that a desperate tempest had dispersed the Turkish fleet, and thus the island was secure from any immediate apprehension of an attack. But the war, which Othello was to suffer, was now beginning ; and the enemies, which malice stirred up against his innocent lady, proved in their nature more deadly than strangers or infidels.

Among all the general's friends no one possessed the confidence of Othello more entirely than Cassio. Michael Cassio was a young soldier, a Florentine, gay, amorous, and of pleasing address, favourite qualities with women ; he was handsome and eloquent, and exactly such a person as might alarm the jealousy of a man advanced in years (as Othello in some measure was), who had married a young and beautiful wife ; but Othello was as free from jealousy as he was noble, and as incapable of suspecting, as of doing, a base action. He had employed this Cassio in his love affair with Desdemona, and Cassio had been a sort of go-between in his suit ; for Othello, fearing that himself had not those soft parts of conversation which please ladies, and finding these qualities in his friend, would often depute Cassio to go (as he phrased it) a-courting for him : such innocent simplicity being an honour rather than a blemish to the character of the valiant Moor. So that no wonder, if next to Othello himself (but

at far distance, as beseems a virtuous wife) the gentle Desdemona loved and trusted Cassio. Nor had the marriage of this couple made any difference in their behaviour to Michael Cassio. He frequented their house, and his free and rattling talk was no displeasing variety to Othello, who was himself of a more serious temper: for such tempers are observed often to delight in their contraries, as a relief from the oppressive excess of their own: and Desdemona and Cassio would talk and laugh together, as in days when he went a-courting for his friend.

Othello had lately promoted Cassio to be the lieutenant, a place of trust, and nearest to the general's person. This promotion gave great offence to Iago, an older officer, who thought he had a better claim than Cassio, and would often ridicule Cassio, as a fellow fit only for the company of ladies, and one that knew no more of the art of war, or how to set an army in array for battle, than a girl. Iago hated Cassio, and he hated Othello as well for favouring Cassio, as for an unjust suspicion, which he had lightly taken up against Othello, that the Moor was too fond of Iago's wife Emilia. From these imaginary provocations, the plotting mind of Iago conceived a horrid scheme of revenge, which should involve both Cassio, the Moor, and Desdemona in one common ruin.

Iago was artful, and had studied human nature deeply, and he knew that of all the torments which afflict the mind of man (and far beyond bodily torture), the pains of jealousy were the most intolerable, and had the sorest sting. If he could succeed in making Othello jealous of Cassio, he thought it would be an exquisite plot of revenge, and might end in the death of Cassio or Othello, or both; he cared not.

The arrival of the general and his lady in Cyprus, meeting with the news of the dispersion of the enemy's fleet, made a sort of holiday in the island. Everybody gave themselves up to feasting and making merry. Wine flowed in abundance, and cups went round to the health of the black Othello, and his lady the fair Desdemona.

Cassio had the direction of the guard that night, with a charge from Othello to keep the soldiers from excess in drinking, that no brawl might arise, to fright the inhabitants or disgust them with the new-landed forces. That night Iago began his deep-laid plans of mischief; under colour of loyalty and love to

the general he enticed Cassio to make rather too free with the bottle (a great fault in an officer upon guard). Cassio for a time resisted, but he could not long hold out against the honest freedom which Iago knew how to put on, but kept swallowing, glass after glass (as Iago still plied him with drink and encouraging songs), and Cassio's tongue ran over in praise of the lady Desdemona, whom he again and again toasted, affirming that she was a most exquisite lady: until at last the enemy which he put into his mouth, stole away his brains; and upon some provocation given him by a fellow whom Iago had set on, swords were drawn, and Montano, a worthy officer who interfered to appease the dispute, was wounded in the scuffle. The riot now began to be general, and Iago, who had set on foot the mischief, was foremost in spreading the alarm, causing the castle-bell to be rung as if some dangerous mutiny, instead of a slight drunken quarrel, had arisen; the alarm-bell ringing awakened Othello, who, dressing in a hurry, and coming to the scene of action, questioned Cassio of the cause. Cassio was now come to himself, the effect of the wine having a little gone off, but was too much ashamed to reply; and Iago, pretending a great reluctance to accuse Cassio, but as it were forced into it by Othello, who insisted to know the truth, gave an account of the whole matter (leaving out his own share in it, which Cassio was too far gone to remember) in such a manner, as while he seemed to make Cassio's offence less, did indeed make it appear greater than it was. The result was, that Othello, who was a strict observer of discipline, was compelled to take away Cassio's place of lieutenant from him.

Thus did Iago's first artifice succeed completely: he had now undermined his hated rival, and thrust him out of his place; but a further use was hereafter to be made of the adventure of this disastrous night.

Cassio, whom this misfortune had entirely sobered, now lamented to his seeming friend Iago, that he should have been such a fool as to transform himself into a beast. He was undone, for how could he ask the general for his place again! he would tell him he was a drunkard. He despised himself. Iago, affecting to make light of it, said that he, or any man living, might be drunk upon occasion; it remained now to make the best of a bad bargain; the general's wife was now the general, and could do anything with Othello; that he were best to apply to the lady Desdemona to mediate for him with her lord; that she was of a

frank, obliging disposition, and would readily undertake a good office of this sort, and set Cassio right again in the general's favour; and then this crack in their love would be made stronger than ever. A good advice of Iago, if it had not been given for wicked purposes, which will after appear.

Cassio did as Iago advised him, and made application to the lady Desdemona, who was easy to be won over in any honest suit; and she promised Cassio, that she would be his solicitor with her lord, and rather die than give up his cause. This she immediately set about in so earnest and pretty a manner, that Othello, who was mortally offended with Cassio, could not put her off. When he pleaded delay, and that it was too soon to pardon such an offender, she would not be beat back, but insisted that it should be the next night, or the morning after, or the next morning to that at farthest. Then she showed how penitent and humbled poor Cassio was, and that his offence did not deserve so sharp a check. And when Othello still hung back, "What! my lord," said she, "that I should have so much to do to plead for Cassio, Michael Cassio, that came a-courting for you, and oftentimes, when I have spoken in dispraise of you, has taken your part? I count this but a little thing to ask of you. When I mean to try your love indeed, I shall ask a weighty matter. Othello could deny nothing to such a pleader, and only requesting that Desdemona would leave the time to him, promised to receive Michael Cassio again into favour.

It happened that Othello and Iago had entered into the room where Desdemona was, just as Cassio, who had been imploring her intercession, was departing at the opposite door; and Iago, who was full of art, said in a low voice, as if to himself, "I like not that." Othello took no great notice of what he said; indeed the conference which immediately took place with his lady put it out of his head: but he remembered it afterwards. For when Desdemona was gone, Iago, as if for mere satisfaction of his thought, questioned Othello whether Michael Cassio, when Othello was courting his lady, knew of his love. To this the general answering in the affirmative, and adding, that he had gone between them very often during the courtship, Iago knitted his brow, as if he had got fresh light of some terrible matter, and cried, "Indeed!" This brought into Othello's mind, the words which Iago had let fall upon entering the room, and seeing Cassio with Desdemona; and he began to think there was some meaning in

all this : for he deemed Iago to be a just man, and full of love and honesty, and what in a false knave would be tricks, in him seemed to be the natural workings of an honest mind, big with something too great for utterance : and Othello prayed Iago to speak what he knew, and to give his worst thoughts words. "And what," said Iago, "if some thoughts very vile should have intruded into my breast, as where is the place into which foul things do not enter?" Then Iago went on to say, what a pity it were, if any trouble should arise to Othello out of his imperfect observations ; that it would not be for Othello's peace to know his thoughts ; that people's good names were not to be taken away for slight suspicions ; and when Othello's curiosity was raised almost to distraction with these hints and scattered words, Iago, as if in earnest care for Othello's peace of mind, besought him to beware of jealousy ; with such art did this villain raise suspicions in the unguarded Othello, by the very caution which he pretended to give him against suspicion. "I know," said Othello, "that my wife is fair, loves company and feasting, is free of speech, sings, plays and dances well : where virtue is, these qualities are virtuous. I must have proof before I think her dishonest." Then Iago, as if glad that Othello was slow to believe ill of his lady, frankly declared that he had no proof, but begged Othello to observe her behaviour well, when Cassio was by ; not to be jealous nor too secure neither, for that he (Iago) knew the dispositions of the Italian ladies, his countrywomen, better than Othello could do ; and that in Venice the wives let heaven see many pranks they dared not show their husbands. Then he artfully insinuated, that Desdemona deceived her father in marrying with Othello, and carried it so closely, that the poor old man thought that witchcraft had been used. Othello was much moved with this argument, which brought the matter home to him, for if she had deceived her father, why might she not deceive her husband ?

Iago begged pardon for having moved him ; but Othello, assuming an indifference, while he was really shaken with inward grief at Iago's words, begged him to go on, which Iago did with many apologies, as if unwilling to produce anything against Cassio whom he called his friend : he then came strongly to the point, and reminded Othello how Desdemona had refused many suitable matches of her own clime and complexion, and had married him, a Moor, which showed unnatural in her, and proved her to have a headstrong will : and when her better judgment returned, how probable it was she should fall upon comparing Othello with the

fine forms and clear white complexions of the young Italians her countrymen. He concluded with advising Othello to put off his reconciliation with Cassio a little longer, and in the meanwhile to note with what earnestness Desdemona should intercede in his behalf; for that much would be seen in that. So mischievously did this artful villain lay his plots to turn the gentle qualities of the innocent lady into her destruction, and make a net for her out of her own goodness to entrap her: first setting Cassio on to entreat her mediation, and then out of that very mediation contriving stratagems for her ruin.

The conference ended with Iago's begging Othello to account his wife innocent until he had more decisive proof; and Othello promised to be patient; but from that moment the deceived Othello never tasted content of mind. Poppy nor the juice of mandragora, nor all the sleeping potions in the world, could ever again restore to him that sweet rest which he had enjoyed but yesterday. His occupation sickened upon him. He no longer took delight in arms. His heart, that used to be raised at the sight of troops, and banners, and battle-array, and would stir and leap at the sound of a drum, or a trumpet, or a neighing war-horse, seemed to have lost all that pride and ambition, which are a soldier's virtue; and his military ardour and all his old joys forsook him. Sometimes he thought his wife honest, at times he thought her not so; sometimes he thought Iago just, and at times he thought him not so; then he would wish that he had never known of it; he was not the worse for her loving Cassio, so long as he knew it not: torn in pieces with these distracting thoughts, he once laid hold on Iago's throat, and demanded proof of Desdemona's guilt, or threatened instant death for his having belied her. Iago, feigning indignation that his honesty should be taken for a vice, asked Othello, if he had not sometimes seen a handkerchief spotted with strawberries in his wife's hand. Othello answered, that he had given her such a one, and that it was his first gift. "That same handkerchief," said Iago, "did I see Michael Cassio this day wipe his face with." "If it be as you say," said Othello, "I will not rest till a wide revenge swallow them up: and first, for a token of your fidelity, I expect that Cassio shall be put to death within three days; and for that fair devil (meaning his lady), I will withdraw and devise some swift means of death for her."

Trifles, light as air, are to the jealous proofs as strong as holy writ. A handkerchief of his wife's seen in Cassio's hand, was

motive enough to the deluded Othello to pass sentence of death upon them both without once inquiring how Cassio came by it. Desdemona had never given such a present to Cassio, nor would this constant lady have wronged her lord with doing so naughty a thing as giving his presents to another man, both Cassio and Desdemona were innocent of any offence against Othello: but the wicked Iago, whose spirits never slept in contrivance of villainy, had made his wife (a good, but a weak woman) steal this handkerchief from Desdemona, under pretence of getting the work copied, but in reality, to drop it in Cassio's way, where he might find it, and give a handle to Iago's suggestion that it was Desdemona's present.

Othello, soon after meeting his wife, pretended that he had a headache (as he might indeed with truth), and desired her to lend him her handkerchief to hold his temples. She did so, "Not this," said Othello, "but that handkerchief I gave you." Desdemona had it not about her (for indeed it was stolen as we have related). "How!" said Othello, "this is a fault indeed. That handkerchief an Egyptian woman gave to my mother; the woman was a witch, and could read people's thoughts: she told my mother while she kept it, it would make her amiable, and my father would love her; but, if she lost it, or gave it away, father's fancy would turn, and he would loathe her as much as he had loved her. She dying gave it me, and bade me, if I ever married, to give it to my wife. I did so; take heed of it. Make it a darling as precious as your eye." "Is it possible?" said the frightened lady. "'Tis true;" continued Othello; "It is a magical handkerchief; a sibyl that had lived in the world two hundred years, in a fit of prophetic fury, worked it; the silkworms that furnished the silk were hallowed, and it was dyed in mummy of maidens' hearts conserved." Desdemona, hearing the wondrous virtues of the handkerchief, was ready to die with fear, for she plainly perceived she had lost it, and with it, she feared, the affections of her husband. Then Othello started, and looked as if he were going to do some rash thing, and still he demanded the handkerchief, which when she could not produce, she tried to divert her husband from too serious thoughts, and cheerfully told him, she saw all his talk about the handkerchief was only to put her off from her suit about Michael Cassio, whom she went on to praise (as Iago had foretold) till Othello in perfect distraction burst out of the room, and then Desdemona, though unwillingly, began to suspect her lord was jealous.

What cause she could have ministered to him she knew not, and then she accused herself for accusing the noble Othello, and thought to be sure that some untoward news from Venice, or some state troubles, had chafed his spirits, and made his temper not so sweet as formerly. And she said, "Men are not gods, and we must not look for that observance from them when they are married, which they show us on the bridal day." And she bestrewed herself for so unkindly judging of his unkindness.

Again Othello and Desdemona met and he accused her more plainly of being unfaithful, and of loving another man, but he did not name whom : and Othello wept, and Desdemona said, "Alas ! the heavy day ! why do you weep ?" And Othello told her, he could have borne all sorts of evils with fortitude --poverty and disease, and disgrace ; but her infidelity had broken his heart : and he called her a weed, that looked so fair, and smelled so sweet, that the sense ached at it ; and wished she had never been born. And when he had left her, this innocent lady was so stupefied with wonder at her lord's untrue suspicion of her, that a weight like sleep came over her, and she only desired her attendant to make her bed, and to lay her wedding-sheets upon it ; saying, that when people teach their babes, they do it by gentle means and easy tasks, and Othello might have chid her so ; for in good faith she was but a child when she was elidden. And this was all the complaint which this gentle lady made.

Desdemona being retired to bed, expecting her lord would follow her, soon fell into a slumber, the effect of her troubled spirits, when Othello entered the chamber, full of the black purpose which he had meditated of putting his lady to death. But when he saw her asleep, he thought he would not shed her blood, nor scar that white skin of hers, more white than alabaster. But he was resolved she should die ; else (as he said) she would live to betray more men, as she had done him. Then he kissed her for the last time (as he said), and that kiss was so sweet, he must needs kiss her again ; and he wept, but he said they were cruel tears.

Desdemona was awakened with his kisses, and she looked upon Othello, and she saw him gnaw his under lip, and roll his eyes, and she knew he was always fatal when he looked so : and he bade her prepare for death, and to say her prayers, for he would not kill her soul. And this innocent wife, as she lay at his mercy, begged for compassion, and to know her fault ; and then he named

Cassio, and the handkerchief which (he said) she had given him ; and as the guiltless lady was proceeding to clear herself, he suddenly would hear no more, but covering her up in the bedclothes, stifled her till she died.

In this instant of time was brought into the house Cassio, wounded and bleeding, whom Iago had set one of his creatures on to assassinate ; but the fellow not succeeding in his attempt to kill Cassio (whom he wounded, but not mortally), and being himself killed by Iago to prevent discovery, in his pockets were found certain letters, which made the guilt of Iago, and the innocence of Cassio, clear beyond all doubt : and Cassio now came to beg pardon of Othello, and to ask wherein he had offended him, that he had employed Iago to murder him.

This discovery was as a thunderstroke to Othello, who now plainly saw that he was no better than a murderer, and that his wife (poor innocent lady) had been ever faithful to him ; the extreme anguish of which discovery making life insupportable ; he fell upon his sword, and throwing himself upon the body of his dear injured lady, expired.

These rash acts raised much passion of horror and amazement in the bystanders, for Othello had borne a fair reputation, and till he was wrought upon by the arts of a villain, which his own noble nature never gave him leave to suspect, he was a loving and a doting husband. He had loved, not wisely, but too well, and his manly eyes (when he learned his mistake), though not used to weep on every small occasion, dropped tears as fast as the Arabian trees their gum. And when he was dead all his former merits and his valiant acts were remembered. Nothing now remained for his successor, but to put the utmost censure of the law in force against Iago, who was executed with strict tortures ; and to send word to the state of Venice of the lamentable death of their renowned general. }

TIMON OF ATHENS.

TIMON, a lord of Athens, in the enjoyment of a princely fortune, affected a humour of liberality which knew no limits. His almost infinite wealth could not flow in so fast, but he poured it out faster upon all sorts and degrees of people. Not the poor only tasted of his bounty, but great lords did not disdain to rank themselves among his dependents and followers. His table was resorted

to by all the luxurious feasters, and his house was open to all comers and goers at Athens. His large wealth combined with his free and prodigal nature to subdue all hearts to his love ; men of all minds and disposition tendered their services to lord Timon, from the glass faced flatterer, whose face reflects as in a mirror the present humour of his patron, to the rough and unbending cynic, who affecting a contempt of men's persons, and an indifference to worldly things, yet could not stand out against the gracious manners and munificent soul of lord Timon, but would come (against his nature to partake of his royal entertainments, and return most rich in his own estimation if he had received a nod or a salutation from Timon.

If a poet had composed a work which wanted a recommendatory introduction to the world, he had no more to do but to dedicate it to lord Timon, and the poem was sure of sale, besides a present purse from the patron and daily access to his house and table. If a painter had a picture to dispose of, he had only to take it to lord Timon, and pretend to consult his taste as to the merits of it ; nothing more was wanting to persuade the liberal-hearted lord to buy it. If a jeweller had a stone of price, or a mercer rich costly stuffs, which for their costliness lay upon his hands, lord Timon's house was a ready mart always open, where they might get off their wares or their jewellery at any price, and the good-natured lord would thank them into the bargain, as if they had done him a piece of courtesy in letting him have the refusal of such precious commodities. So that by this means his house was thronged with superfluous purchases of no use but to swell *uneasy and ostentatious* pomp ; and his person was still more inconveniently beset with a crowd of these idle visitors, lying poets, painters, sharking tradesmen, lords, ladies, needy courtiers, and expectants, who continually filled his lobbies, raining their fulsome flatteries in whispers in his ears, sacrificing to him with adulation as to a god, making sacred the very stirrup by which he mounted his horse, and seeming as though they drank the free air but through his permission and bounty.

Some of these daily dependents were young men of birth, who (their means not answering to their extravagance) had been put in prison by creditors, and redeemed thence by lord Timon ; these young prodigals thenceforward fastened upon his lordship, as if by common sympathy he were necessarily endeared to all such spendthrifts and loose livers, who, not being able to follow him

in his wealth, found it easier to copy him in prodigality and copious spending of what was not their own. One of these flesh-flies was Ventidius, for whose debts unjustly contracted Timon but lately had paid down the sum of five talents.

But among this confluence, this great flood of visitors, none were more conspicuous than the makers of presents and givers of gifts. It was fortunate for these men, if Timon took a fancy to a dog or a horse, or any piece of cheap furniture which was theirs. The thing so praised, whatever it was, was sure to be sent the next morning with the compliments of the giver for lord Timon's acceptance, and apologies for the unworthiness of the gift; and this dog or horse or whatever it might be, did not fail to prodnee, from Timon's bounty who would not be outdone in gifts, perhaps twenty dogs or horses, certainly presents of far richer worth, as these pretended donors knew well enough, and that their false presents were but the putting out of so much money at large and speedy interest. In this way lord Lucius had lately sent to Timon a present of four milk-white horses trapped in silver which this cunning lord had observed Timon upon some occasion to commend; and another lord Lucullus, had bestowed upon him in the same pretended way of free gift a brace of greyhounds, whose make and fleetness Timon had been heard to admire; these presents the easy-hearted lord accepted without suspicion of the dishonest views of the presenters; and the givers of course were rewarded with some rich return, a diamond or some jewel of twenty times the value of their false and mercenary donation.

Sometimes these creatures would go to work in a more direct way, and with gross and palpable artifice, which yet the credulous Timon was too blind to see, would affect to admire and praise something that Timon possessed, a bargain that he had bought, or some late purchase, which was sure to draw from this yielding and soft-hearted lord a gift of the thing commended, for no service in the world done for it but the easy expense of a little cheap and obvious flattery. In this way Timon but the other day had given to one of these mean lords the bay courser which he himself rode upon, because his lordship had been pleased to say that it was a handsome beast and went well; and Timon knew that no man ever justly praised what he did not wish to possess. For lord Timon weighed his friends' affection with his own, and so fond was he of bestowing that he could have dealt kingdoms to these supposed friends, and never have been weary.

Not that Timon's wealth all went to enrich these wicked flatterers ; he could do noble and praiseworthy actions ; and when a servant of his once loved the daughter of a rich Athenian, but could not hope to obtain her by reason that in wealth and rank the maid was so far above him, lord Timon freely bestowed upon his servant three Athenian talents, to make his fortune equal to the dowry which the father of the young maid demanded of him who should be her husband. But for the most part, knaves and parasites had the command of his fortune, false friends whom he did not know to be such, but, because they flocked around his person, he thought they must needs love him ; and because they smiled and flattered him, he thought surely that his conduct was approved by all the wise and good. And when he was feasting in the midst of all these flatterers and mock friends, when they were eating him up, and draining his fortunes dry with large draughts of richest wines drunk to his health and prosperity, he could not perceive the difference of a friend from a flatterer, but to his deluded eyes (made proud with the sight), it seemed a precious comfort to have so many like brothers commanding one another's fortunes (though it was his own fortune which paid all the costs), and with joy they would run over at the spectacle of such, as it appeared to him, truly festive and fraternal meeting.

But while he thus outwent the very heart of kindness, and poured out his bounty, as if Plutus, the god of gold, had been but his steward, while thus he proceeded without cure or stop, so senseless of expense that he would neither inquire how he could maintain it, nor cease his wild flow of riot his riches, which were not infinite, must need melt away before a prodigality which knew no limits. But who should tell him so ? his flatterers ? they had an interest in shutting his eyes. In vain did his honest steward Flavius try to represent to him his condition laying his accounts before him, begging of him, with an importunity that on any other occasion would have been unmannerly in a servant, beseeching him with tears, to look into the state of his affairs. Timon would still put him off, and turn the discourse to something else ; for nothing is so deaf to remonstrance as riches turned to poverty, nothing so unwilling to believe its situation nothing is so incredulous to its own true state and, hard to give credit to a reverse. Often had this good steward, this honest creature, when all the rooms of Timon's great house have been choked up with riotous feeders at his master's cost, when the

floors have wept with drunken spilling of wine, and every apartment has blazed with lights and resounded with music and feasting, often had he retired by himself to some solitary spot, and wept faster than the wine ran from the wasteful casks within, to see the mad bounty of his lord, and to think, when the means were gone which brought him praises from all sorts of people, how quickly the breath would be gone of which the praise was made: praises won in feasting would be lost in fasting, and at one cloud of winter-showers these flies would disappear.

But now the time was come that Timon could shut his ears no longer to the representations of this faithful steward. Money must be had; and when he ordered Flavius to sell some of his land for that purpose, Flavius informed him, what he had in vain endeavoured at several times before to make him listen to, that most of his land was already sold or forfeited, and that all he possessed at present was not enough to pay the one-half of what he owed. Struck with wonder at this representation, Timon hastily replied, "My lands extended from Athens to Lacedemon." O my good lord," said Flavius, "the world is but a world, and has bounds: were it all yours to give it in a breath, how quickly were it gone!"

Timon consoled himself that no villainous bounty had yet come from him, that if he had given his wealth away unwisely, it had not been bestowed to feed his vices, but to cherish his friends; and he bade the kind-hearted steward (who was weeping) to take comfort in the assurance that his master could never lack means, while he had so many noble friends; and this infatuated lord persuaded himself that he had nothing to do but to send and borrow to use every man's fortune (that had ever tasted his bounty) in this extremity, as freely as his own. Then with a cheerful look, as if confident of the trial, he severally despatched messengers to lord Lucius, to lords Iacullus and Sempronius, men upon whom he had lavished his gifts in past times without measure or moderation; and to Ventidius, whom he had lately released out of prison by paying his debts, and who by the death of his father was now come into the possession of an ample fortune, and well enabled to requite Timon's courtesy; to request of Ventidius the return of those five talents which he had paid for him, and to each of these noble lords the loan of fifty talents; nothing doubting that their gratitude would supply his wants (if he needed it) to the amount of five hundred times fifty talents.

Lucullus was the first applied to. This mean lord had been dreaming overnight of a silver basin and cup, and when Timon's servant was announced, his sordid mind suggested to him that this was surely the making out of his dream, and that Timon had sent him such a present but when he understood the truth of the matter, and that Timon wanted money, the quality of his faint and watery friendship showed itself, for with many protestations he vowed to the servant that he had long foreseen the ruin of his master's affairs, and many a time had he come to dinner, to tell him of it, and had come again to supper, to try to persuade him to spend less, but he would take no counsel nor warning by his coming, and true it was that he had been a constant attender (as he said) at Timon's feasts, as he had in greater things tasted his bounty, but that he ever came with that intent, or gave good counsel or reproof to Timon, was a base unworthy lie, which he suitably followed up with meanly offering the servant a bride, to go home to his master and tell him that he had not found Lucullus at home.

As little success had the messenger who was sent to lord Lucius. This lying lord, who was full of Timon's meat, and enriched almost to bursting with Timon's costly presents, when he found the wind changed, and the fountain of so much bounty suddenly stopped, at first could hardly believe it; but on its being confirmed, he affected great regret that he should not have it in his power to serve lord Timon, for unfortunately (which was a base falsehood) he had made a great purchase the day before, which had quite disfurnished him of the means at present, the more beast he, he called himself, to put it out of his power to serve so good a friend; and he counted it one of his greatest afflictions that his ability should fail him to pleasure such an honourable gentleman.

Who can call any man friend that dips in the same dish with him? just of this metal is every flatterer. In the recollection of everybody Timon had been a father to this Lucius, had kept up his credit with his purse; Timon's money had gone to pay the hire of the labourers who had sweat to build the fine houses which Lucius's pride had made necessary to him: yet, oh! the monster which man makes himself when he proves ungrateful! this Lucius now denied to Timon a sum, which, in respect of what Timon had bestowed on him, was less than charitable men afford to beggars.

Sempronius and every one of those mercenary lords to whom Timon applied in their turn, returned the same evasive answer or direct denial; even Ventidius, the redeemed and now rich Ventidius, refused to assist him with the loan of those five talents which Timon had not lent but generously given him in his distress.

Now was Timon as much avoided in his poverty as he had been courted and resorted to in his riches. Now the same tongues which had been loudest in his praises, extolling him as bountiful, liberal, and open-handed, were not ashamed to censure that very bounty as folly, that liberality as profuseness, though it had shown itself folly in nothing so truly as in the selection of such unworthy creatures as themselves for its objects. Now was Timon's princely mansion forsaken, and become a shunned and hated place, a place for men to pass by, not a place as formerly where every passenger must stop and taste of his wine and good cheer; now, instead of being thronged with feasting and tumultuous guests, it was beset with impatient and clamorous creditors, usurers extortioners, fierce and intolerable in their demands, pleading bonds, interest, mortgages, iron-hearted men that would take no denial nor putting off, that Timon's house was now his jail, which he could not pass, nor go in nor out for them; one demanding his due of fifty talents, another bringing in a bill of five thousand crowns, which if he would tell out his blood by drops, and pay them so, he had not enough in his body to discharge, drop by drop.

In this desperate and irremediable state (as it seemed) of his affairs, the eyes of all men were suddenly surprised at a new and incredible lustre, which this setting sun put forth. Once more lord Timon proclaimed a feast, to which he invited his accustomed guests, lords, ladies, all that was great or fashionable in Athens. Lords Lucius and Lucullus came, Ventidius, Sempronius, and the rest. Who more sorry now than these fawning wretches, when they found (as they thought) that lord Timon's poverty was all pretence, and had been only put on to make trial of their loves, to think that they should not have seen through the artifice at the time, and have had the cheap credit of obliging his lordship? yet who more glad to find the fountain of that noble bounty, which they had thought dried up, still fresh and running? They came dissembling, protesting, expressing deepest sorrow and shame, that when his lordship sent to them, they should have been so

unfortunate as to want the present means to oblige so honourable a friend. But Timon begged them not to give such trifles a thought, for he had altogether forgotten it. And these base fawning lords, though they had denied him money in his adversity, yet could not refuse their presence at this new blaze of his returning prosperity. For the swallow follows not summer more willingly than men of these dispositions follow the good fortunes of the great, nor more willingly leaves winter than these shrink from the first appearance of a reverse: such summer birds are men. But now with music and state the banquet of smoking dishes was served up; and when the guests had a little done admiring whence the bankrupt Timon could find means to furnish so costly a feast, some doubting whether the scene which they saw was real, as scarce trusting their own eyes; at a signal given, the dishes were uncovered, and Timon's drift appeared: instead of those varieties and far-fetched dainties which they expected, that Timon's epicurean table in past times had so liberally presented, now appeared under the covers of these dishes a preparation more suitable to Timon's poverty, nothing but a little smoke and lukewarm water, fit feast for this knot of mouth-friends, whose professions were indeed smoke, and their hearts lukewarm and slippery as the water with which Timon welcomed his astonished guests, bidding them, "Uncover, dogs, and lap;" and before they could recover their surprise, sprinkling it in their faces, that they might have enough, and throwing dishes and all after them, who now ran huddling out, lords, ladies, with their caps snatched up in haste, a splendid confusion, Timon pursuing them still, calling them what they were, "Smooth smiling parasites, destroyers under the mask of courtesy, affable wolves, meek bears, fools of fortune, feast-friends, time-flies." They, crowding out to avoid him, left the house more willingly than they had entered it: some losing their gowns and caps, and some their jewels in the hurry, all glad to escape out of the presence of such a mad lord, and the ridicule of his mock banquet.

This was the last feast which ever Timon made, and in it he took farewell of Athens and the society of men, for after that he betook himself to the woods, turning his back upon the hated city and upon all mankind, wishing the walls of that detestable city might sink, and their houses fall upon their owners, wishing all plagues which infest humanity, war, outrage, poverty, and diseases, might fasten upon its inhabitants, praying the just gods

to confound all Athenians, both young and old, high and low ; so wishing, he went to the woods, where he said he should find the unkindest beast much kinder than mankind. He stripped himself naked, that he might retain no fashion of a man, and dug a cave to live in, and lived solitary in the manner of a beast, eating the wild roots, and drinking water, flying from the face of his kind, and choosing rather to herd with wild beasts, as more harmless and friendly than man.

What a change from lord Timon the rich. lord Timon the delight of mankind, to Timon the naked, Timon the man-hater ! Where were his flatterers now ? Where were his attendants and retinue ? Would the bleak air, that boisterous servitor, be his chamberlain to put his shirt on warm ? Would those stiff trees, that had outlived the eagle, turn young and airy pages to him, to skip on his errands when he bade them ? Would the cold brook, when it was iced with winter, administer to him his warm broths and candles when sick of an overnight's surfeit ? Or would the creatures that lived in those wild woods come and lick his hand and flatter him ?

Here on a day, when he was digging for roots, his poor sustenance, his spade struck against something heavy, which proved to be gold, a great heap which some miser had probably buried in a time of alarm, thinking to have come again and taken it from its prison, but died before the opportunity had arrived, without making any man privy to the concealment ; so it lay, doing neither good nor harm, in the bowels of the earth, its mother, as if it had never come from thence, till the accidental striking of Timon's spade against it once more brought it to light.

Here was a mass of treasure which, if Timon had retained his old mind, was enough to have purchased him friends and flatterers again ; but Timon was sick of the false world, and the sight of gold was poisonous to his eyes ; and he would have restored it to the earth, but that, thinking of the infinite calamities which by means of gold happen to mankind, how the lucre of it causes robberies, oppression, injustice, briberies, violence, and murder among them, he had a pleasure in imagining (such a rooted hatred did he bear to his species) that out of this heap which in digging he had discovered, might arise some mischief to plague mankind. And some soldiers passing through the woods near to his cave at that instant, which proved to be a part of the troops of the Athenian captain Alcibiades, who upon some disgust taken against the

senators at Athens (the Athenians were ever noted to be a thankless and ungrateful people giving disgust to their generals and best friends), was marching at the head of the same triumphant army which he had formerly headed in their defence to war against them : Timon, who liked their business well, bestowed upon their captain the gold to pay his soldiers, requiring no other service from him, than that he should with his conquering army lay Athens level with the ground, and burn, slay, kill all her inhabitants ; not sparing the old men for their white beards, for (he said) they were usurers, nor the young children for their seeming innocent smiles, for those (he said) would live, if they grew up, to be traitors ; but to steal his eyes and ears against any sights or sounds that might awaken compassion ; and not to let the cries of virgins, babes, or mothers, hinder him from making one universal massacre of the city, but to confound them all in his conquest ; and when he had conquered, he prayed that the gods would confound him also, the conqueror ; so thoroughly did Timon hate Athens, Athenians, and all mankind

While he lived in this forlorn state, leading a life more brutal than human, he was suddenly surprised one day with the appearance of a man standing in an admiring posture at the door of his cave. It was Flavius, the honest steward, whom love and zealous affection to his master had led to seek him out at his wretched dwelling, and to offer his services ; and the first sight of his master, the one noble Timon, in that abject condition, naked as he was born, living in the manner of a beast among beasts, looking like his own sad ruins and a monument of decay, so affected this good servant, that he stood speechless, wrapped up in horror and confounded. And when he found utterance at last to his words, they were so choked with tears, that Timon had much ado to know him again, or to make out who it was that had come (so contrary to the experience he had had of mankind) to offer him service in extremity. And being in the form and shape of a man, he suspected him for a traitor, and his tears for false ; but the good servant by so many tokens confirmed the truth of his fidelity, and made it clear that nothing but love and zealous duty to his once dear master had brought him there, that Timon was forced to confess that the world contained one honest man ; yet, being in the shape and form of a man, he could not look upon his man's face without abhorrence, or hear words uttered from his man's lips without loathing ; and this singly honest man was forced to depart,

because he was a man, and because, with a heart more gentle and compassionate than is usual to man, he bore man's detested form and outward feature.

But greater visitants than a poor steward were about to interrupt the savage quiet of Timon's solitude. For now the day was come when the ungrateful lords of Athens sorely repented the injustice which they had done to the noble Timon. For Alcibiades, like an incensed wild boar, was raging at the walls of their city, and with his hot siege threatened to lay fair Athens in the dust. And now the memory of lord Timon's former prowess and military conduct came fresh into their forgetful minds, for Timon had been their general in past times, and was a valiant and expert soldier, who alone of all the Athenians was deemed able to cope with a besieging army such as then threatened them, or to drive back the furious approaches of Alcibiades.

A deputation of the senators was chosen in this emergency to wait upon Timon. To him they come in their extremity, to whom, when he was in extremity, they had shown but small regard; as if they presumed upon his gratitude whom they had disobliged, and had derived a claim to his courtesy from their own most discourteous and unpiteous treatment.

Now they earnestly beseech him, implore him with tears to return and save that city, from which their ingratitude had so lately driven him; now they offer him riches, power, dignities, satisfaction for past injuries, and public honours and the public love; their persons, lives, and fortunes, to be at his disposal, if he will but come back and save them. But Timon the naked, Timon the man-hater, was now no longer lord Timon, the lord of bounty, the flower of valour, their defence in war, their ornament in peace. If Alcibiades killed his countrymen, Timon cared not. If he sacked fair Athens, and slew her old men and her infants, Timon would rejoice. So he told them; and that there was not a knife in the unruly camp which he did not prize above the reverendest throat in Athens.

This was all the answer he vouchsafed to the weeping disappointed senators; only at parting, he bade them commend him to his countrymen, and tell them, that to ease them of their griefs and anxieties, and to prevent the consequences of fierce Alcibiades' wrath, there was yet a way left, which he would teach them, for he had yet so much affection left for his dear countrymen as to be

willing to do them a kindness before his death. These words a little revived the senators, who hoped that his kindness for their city was returning. Then Timon told them that he had a tree, which grew near his cave, which he should shortly have occasion to cut down, and he invited all his friends in Athens, high or low, of what degree soever, who wished to shun affliction, to come and take a taste of his tree before he cut it down; meaning that they might come and hang themselves on it, and escape affliction that way.

And this was the last courtesy, of all his noble bounties, which Timon showed to mankind, and this the last sight of him which his countrymen had : for not many days after, a poor soldier, passing by the sea beach, which was at a little distance from the woods which Timon frequented, found a tomb on the verge of the sea, with an inscription upon it, purporting that it was the grave of Timon the man-hater, who, " While he lived, did hate all living men, and dying, wished a plague might consume all caitiffs left ! "

Whether he finished his life by violence, or whether mere distaste of life and the loathing he had for mankind brought Timon to his conclusion, was not clear, yet all men admired the fitness of his epitaph, and the consistency of his end ; dying, as he had lived, a hater of mankind : and some there were who fancied a conceit in the very choice which he made of the sea beach for his place of burial, where the vast sea might weep for ever upon his grave, as in contempt for the transient and shallow tears of hypocritical and deceitful mankind.

MACBETH.

WHEN Duncan the Meek reigned king of Scotland there lived a great thane, or lord, called Macbeth. This Macbeth was a near kinsman to the king, and in great esteem at court for his valour and conduct in the wars ; an example of which he had lately given, in defeating a rebel army assisted by the troops of Norway in terrible numbers.

The two Scottish generals, Macbeth and Banquo, returning victorious from this great battle, their way lay over a blasted heath, where they were stopped by the strange appearance of three figures like women except that they had beards, and their withered skins and wild attire made them look not like any earthly

creatures. Macbeth first addressed them, when they, seemingly offended, laid each one her choppy finger upon her skinny lips, in token of silence: and the first of them saluted Macbeth with the title of thane of Glamis. The general was not a little startled to find himself known by such creatures; but how much more, when the second of them followed up that salute by giving him the title of thane of Cawdor, to which honour he had no pretensions; and again the third bid him, 'All hail! king that shall be hereafter.' Such a prophetic greeting might well amaze him, who knew that while the king's sons lived he could not hope to succeed to the throne. Then turning to Banquo, they pronounced him, in a sort of riddling terms, to be *lesser than Macbeth and greater! not so happy, but much happier!* and prophesied that though he should never reign, yet his sons after him should be kings in Scotland. They then turned into air, and vanished; by which the generals knew them to be the weird sisters, or witches.

While they stood pondering on the strangeness of this adventure, there arrived certain messengers from the king, who were empowered by him to confer upon Macbeth the dignity of thane of Cawdor. An event so miraculously corresponding with the prediction of the witches astonished Macbeth, and he stood wrapped in amazement, unable to make reply to the messengers; and in that point of time swelling hopes arose in his mind, that the prediction of the third witch might in like manner have its accomplishment, and that he should one day reign king in Scotland.

Turning to Banquo, he said, "Do you not hope that your children shall be kings, when what the witches promised to me has so wonderfully come to pass?" "That hope," answered the general "might enkindle you to aim at the throne; but oftentimes these ministers of darkness tell us truths in little things, to betray us into deeds of greatest consequence."

But the wicked suggestions of the witches had sunk too deep into the mind of Macbeth to allow him to attend to the warnings of the good Banquo. From that time he bent all his thoughts how to compass the throne of Scotland.

Macbeth had a wife, to whom he communicated the strange prediction of the weird sisters, and its partial accomplishment. She was a bad ambitious woman, and so as her husband and

herself could arrive at greatness, she cared not much by what means. She spurred on the reluctant purpose of Macbeth, who felt compunction at the thoughts of blood, and did not cease to represent the murder of the king as step absolutely necessary to the fulfilment of the flattering prophecy.

It happened at this time that the king, who out of his royal condescension would oftentimes visit his principal nobility upon gracious terms, came to Macbeth's house attended by his two sons, Malcolm and Donalrain, and a numerous train of thanes and attendants, the more to honour Macbeth for the triumphal success of his wars.

The castle of Macbeth was pleasantly situated, and the air about it was sweet and wholesome, which appeared by the nests which the martlet, or swallow, had built under all the jutting friezes and buttresses of the building, wherever it found a place of advantage : for where those birds most breed and haunt, the air is observed to be delicate. The king entered well pleased with the place, and not less so with the attentions and respect of his honoured hostess, lady Macbeth, who had the art of covering treacherous purposes with smiles ; and could look like the innocent flower, while she was indeed the serpent under it.

The king, being tired with his journey, went early to bed, and in his state-room two grooms of his chamber (as was the custom) slept beside him. He had been unusually pleased with his reception, and had made presents before he retired to his principal officers ; and among the rest, had sent a rich diamond to lady Macbeth, greeting her by the name of his most kind hostess.

Now was the middle of night, when over half the world nature seems dead, and wicked dreams abuse men's minds asleep, and none but the wolf and the murderer is abroad. This was the time when lady Macbeth waked to plot the murder of the king. She would not have undertaken a deed so abhorrent to her sex, but that she feared her husband's nature, that it was too full of the milk of human kindness, to do a contrived murder. She knew him to be ambitious, but withal to be scrupulous, and not yet prepared for that height of crime which commonly in the end accompanies inordinate ambition. She had won him to consent to the murder, but she doubted his resolution : and she feared that the natural tenderness of his disposition (more humane than her own) would come between, and defeat the purpose. So with

her own hands armed with a dagger she approached the king's bed ; having taken care to ply the grooms of his chamber so with wine, that they slept intoxicated, and careless of their charge. There lay Duncan, in a sound sleep after the fatigues of his journey, and as she viewed him earnestly there was something in his face, as he slept, which resembled her own father, and she had not the courage to proceed.

She returned to confer with her husband. His resolution had begun to stagger. He considered that there were strong reasons against the deed. In the first place, he was not only a subject, but a near kinsman to the king ; and he had been his host and entertainer that day, whose duty, by the laws of hospitality, it was to shut the door against his murderers, not bear the knife himself. Then he considered how just and merciful a king this Duncan had been, how clear of offence to his subjects, how loving to his nobility, and in particular to him ; that such kings are the peculiar care of Heaven, and their subjects doubly bound to revenge their deaths. Besides, by the favours of the king, Macbeth stood high in the opinion of all sorts of men, and how would those honours be stained by the reputation of so foul a murder !

In these conflicts of the mind lady Macbeth found her husband, inclining to the better part, and resolving to proceed no further. But she being a woman not easily shaken from her evil purpose, began to pour in at his ears words which infused a portion of her own spirit into his mind, assigning reason upon reason why he should not shrink from what he had undertaken ; how easy the deed was ; how soon it would be over ; and how the action of one short night would give to all their nights and days to come a sovereign sway and royalty ! Then she threw contempt on his change of purpose, and accused him of fickleness and cowardice ; and declared that she had given suck, and knew how tender it was to love the babe that milked her, but she would, while it was smiling in her face, have plucked it from her breast, and dashed its brains out, if she had so sworn to do it, as he had sworn to perform that murder. Then she added, how practicable it was to lay the guilt of the deed upon the drunken sleepy grooms. And with the valour of her tongue she so chastised his sluggish resolutions, that he once more summoned up courage to the bloody business.

So, taking the dagger in his hand, he softly stole in the dark to the room where Duncan lay ; and as he went, he thought

he saw another dagger in the air with the handle towards him, and on the blade and at the point of it, drops of blood ; but when he tried to grasp at it, it was nothing but air, a mere phantasm proceeding from his own hot and oppressed brain and the business he had in hand.

Getting rid of this fear, he entered the king's room, whom he dispatched with one stroke of his dagger. Just as he had done the murder, one of the grooms, who slept in the chamber, laughed in his sleep, and the other cried, " Murder," which woke them both ; but they said a short prayer ; one of them said, " God bless us !" and the other answered, " Amen ;" and addressed themselves to sleep again. Macbeth, who stood listening to them, tried to say, " Amen," when the fellow said, " God bless us !" but, though he had most need of a blessing, the word stuck in his throat, and he could not pronounce it.

Again he thought he heard a voice which cried " Sleep no more: Macbeth doth murder sleep, the innocent sleep, that nourishes life." Still it cried, " Sleep no more," to all the house. " Glamis hath murdered sleep, and therefore Cawdor shall sleep no more, Macbeth shall sleep no more."

With such horrible imaginations Macbeth returned to his listening wife, who began to think he had failed of his purpose, and that the deed was somehow frustrated. He came in so distracted a state, that she reproached him with his want of firmness and sent him to wash his hands of the blood which stained them, while she took his dagger, with purpose to stain the cheeks of the grooms with blood, to make it seem their guilt.

Morning came, and with it the discovery of the murder, which could not be concealed ; and though Macbeth and his lady made great show of grief, and the proofs against the grooms (the dagger being produced against them and their faces smeared with blood) were sufficiently strong, yet the entire suspicion fell upon Macbeth, whose inducements to such a deed were so much more forcible than such poor silly grooms could be supposed to have ; and Duncan's two sons fled. Malcolm, the eldest, sought for refuge in the English court ; and the youngest, Donalbain, made his escape to Ireland.

The king's sons, who should have succeeded him, having thus vacated the throne, Macbeth as next heir was crowned king, and thus the prediction of the weird sisters was literally accomplished.

Though placed so high, Macbeth and his queen could not forget the prophecy of the weird sisters, that though Macbeth should be king, yet not his children, but the children of Banquo, should be kings after him. The thought of this, and that they had defiled their hands with blood, and done so great crimes, only to place the posterity of Banquo upon the throne, so rankled within them, that they determined to put to death both Banquo and his son, to make void the predictions of the weird sisters, which in their own case had been so remarkably brought to pass.

For this purpose they made a great supper, to which they invited all the chief thanes ; and among the rest, with marks of particular respect, Banquo and his son Fleance were invited. The way by which Banquo was to pass to the palace at night, was beset by murderers appointed by Macbeth, who stabbed Banquo ; but in the scuffle Fleance escaped. From that Fleance descended a race of monarchs who afterwards filled the Scottish throne, ending with James the Sixth of Scotland and the First of England, under whom the two crowns of England and Scotland were united.

At supper the queen, whose manners were in the highest degree affable and royal, played the hostess with a gracefulness and attention which conciliated every one present, and Macbeth discoursed freely with his thanes and nobles, saying that all that was honourable in the country was under his roof, if he had but his good friend Banquo present, whom yet he hoped he should rather have to chide for neglect, than to lament for any mischance. Just at these words the ghost of Banquo, whom he had caused to be murdered, entered the room, and placed himself on the chair which Macbeth was about to occupy. Though Macbeth was a bold man, and one that could have faced the devil without trembling, at this horrible sight his cheeks turned white with fear, and he stood quite unmanned with his eyes fixed upon the ghost. His queen and all the nobles, who saw nothing, but perceived him gazing (as they thought) upon an empty chair, took it for a fit of distraction ; and she reproached him, whispering that it was but the same fancy which had made him see the dagger in the air, when he was about to kill Duncan. But Macbeth continued to see the ghost, and gave no heed to all they could say, while he addressed it with distracted words, yet so significant, that his queen, fearing the dreadful secret would be disclosed, in great

haste dismissed the guests, excusing the infirmity of Macbeth as a disorder he was often troubled with.

To such dreadful fancies Macbeth was subject. His queen and he had their sleeps afflicted with terrible dreams, and the blood of Banquo troubled them not more than the escape of Fleance, whom now they looked upon as father to a line of kings, who should keep their posterity out of the throne. With these miserable thoughts they found no peace, and Macbeth determined once more to seek out the weird sisters, and know from then the worst.

He sought them in a cave upon the heath, where they, who knew by foresight of his coming, were engaged in preparing their dreadful charms, by which they conjured up infernal spirits to reveal to them futurity. Their horrid ingredients were toads, bats, and serpents, the eye of a newt, and the tongue of a dog, the leg of a lizard, and the wing of the night-owl, the scale of a dragon, the tooth of a wolf, the maw of the ravenous salt sea shark, the mummy of a witch, the root of the poisonous hemlock (this to have effect must be digged in the dark), the gall of a goat, and the liver of a Jew, with slips of the yew-tree that roots itself in graves, and the finger of a dead child : all those were set on to boil in a great kettle, or caldron, which, as fast as it grew too hot, was cooled with a baboon's blood ; to these they poured in the blood of a sow that had eaten her young, and they threw into the flame the grease that had sweaten from a murderer's gibbet. By these charms they bound the infernal spirits to answer their questions.

It was demanded of Macbeth, whether he would have his doubts desolved by them, or by their masters, the spirits. He, nothing daunted by the dreadful ceremonies which he saw, boldly answered, " Where are they ? let me see them." And they called the spirits, which were three. And the first arose in the likeness of an armed head, and he called Macbeth by name, and bid him beware of the thane of Fife ; for which caution Macbeth thanked him ; for Macbeth had entertained a jealousy of Macduff, the thane of Fife.

And the second spirit arose in the likeness of a bloody child, and he called Macbeth by name, and bid him have no fear, but laugh to scorn the power of man, for none of woman born should have power to hurt him : and he advised him to be bloody, bold,

and resolute. "Then live, Macduff!" cried the king; "what need I fear of thee? but yet I will make assurance doubly sure. Thou shalt not live; that I may tell pale-hearted Fear it lies, and sleep in spite of thunder."

That spirit being dismissed, a third arose in the form of a child crowned, with a tree in his hand. He called Macbeth by name, and comforted him against conspiracies, saying, that he should never be vanquished, until the wood of Birnam to Dunsinane Hill should come against him. "Sweet bodements! good!" cried Macbeth; "who can unfix the forest, and move it from its earth-bound roots? I see I shall live the usual period of man's life, and not be cut off by a violent death. But my heart throbs to know one thing. Tell me, if your art can tell so much, if Banquo's issue shall ever reign in this kingdom?" Here the cauldron sunk into the ground, and a noise of music was heard, and eight shadows, like kings, passed by Macbeth, and Banquo last, who bore a glass which showed the figures of many more, and Banquo all bloody smiled upon Macbeth, and pointed to them; by which Macbeth knew, that these were the posterity of Banquo, who should reign after him in Scotland; and the witches, with a sound of soft music, and with dancing making a show at duty, and welcome to Macbeth, vanished. And from this time the thoughts of Macbeth were all bloody and dreadful.

The first thing he heard when he got out of the witches' cave, was, that Macduff, thane of Fife, had fled to England, to join the army which was forming against him under Malcolm, the eldest son of the late king, with intent to displace Macbeth, and set Malcolm, the right heir, upon the throne. Macbeth, stung with rage, set upon the castle of Macduff, and put his wife and children, whom the thane had left behind, to the sword, and extended the slaughter to all who claimed the least relationship to Macduff.

These and such-like deeds alienated the minds of all his chief nobility from him. Such as could, fled to join with Malcolm and Macduff, who were now approaching with a powerful army which they had raised in England; and the rest secretly wished success to their arms, though for fear of Macbeth they could take no active part. His recruits went on slowly. Everybody hated the tyrant, nobody loved or honoured him, but all suspected him, and he began to envy the condition of Duncan, whom he had murdered,

who slept soundly in his grave, against whom treason had done its worst : steel nor poison, domestic malice nor foreign levies, could hurt him any longer.

While these things were acting, the queen, who had been the sole partner in his wickedness, in whose bosom he could sometimes seek a momentary repose from those terrible dreams which afflicted them both nightly, died, it is supposed by her own hands, unable to bear the remorse of guilt, and public hate ; by which event he was left alone without a soul to love or care for him, or a friend to whom he could confide his wicked purposes.

He grew careless of life, and wished for death : but the near approach of Malcolm's army roused in him what remained of his ancient courage, and he determined to die (as he expressed it) 'with armour on his back.' Besides this the hollow promises of the witches had filled him with false confidence, and he remembered the sayings of the spirits, that none of woman born was to hurt him, and that he was never to be vanquished till Birnam wood should come to Dunsinane, which he thought could never be. So he shut himself up in his castle, whose impregnable strength was such as defied a siege : here he sullenly waited the approach of Malcolm. When upon a day, there came a messenger to him, pale and shaking with fear, almost unable to report that which he had seen : for he averred, that as he stood upon his watch on the hill, he looked towards Birnam, and to his thinking the wood began to move ! " Liar and slave," cried Macbeth, " if thou speakest false, thou shalt hang alive upon the next tree, till famine end thee. If thy tale be true, I care not if thou dost as much by me : " for Macbeth now began to faint in resolution, and to doubt the equivocal speeches of the spirits. He was not to fear, till Birnam wood should come to Dunsinane : and now a wood did move. " However," said he, " if this which he avouches be true, let us arm and out. There is no flying hence, nor staying here. I begin to be weary of the sun, and wish my life at an end." With these desperate speeches he sallied forth upon the besiegers, who had now come up to the castle.

The strange appearance, which had given the messenger an idea of a wood moving, is easily solved. When the besieging army marched through the wood of Birnam, Malcolm, like a skilful general, instructed his soldiers to hew down every one a bough and bear it before him, by way of concealing true numbers of his host. This marching of the soldiers with boughs had at a

distance the appearance which had frightened the messenger. Thus were the words of the spirits brought to pass, in a sense different from that in which Macbeth had understood them, and one great hold of his confidence was gone.

And now a severe skirmishing took place, in which Macbeth, though feebly supported by those who called themselves his friends, but in reality hated the tyrant and inclined to the party of Malcolm and Macduff, yet fought with the extreme of rage and valour, cutting to pieces all who were opposed to him, till he came to where Macduff was fighting. Seeing Macduff, and remembering the caution of the spirit who had counselled him to avoid Macduff above all men, he would have turned, but Macduff, who had been seeking him through the whole fight, opposed his turning, and a fierce contest ensued; Macduff giving him many foul reproaches for the murder of his wife and children. Macbeth, whose soul was charged enough with blood of that family already, would still have declined the combat; but Macduff still urged him to it, calling him tyrant, murderer, hell-bound, and villain.

Then Macbeth remembered the words of the spirit, how none of woman born should hurt him; and smiling confidently he said to Macduff, "Thou losest thy labour, Macduff. As easily thou mayest impress the air with thy sword, as make me vulnerable. I bear a charmed life, which must not yield to one of woman born."

"Despair thy charm," said Macduff, "and let that lying spirit, whom thou hast served, tell thee, that Macduff was never born of woman, never as the ordinary manner of men is to be born, but was untimely taken from his mother."

"Accursed be the tongue which tells me so," said the trembling Macbeth, who felt his last hold of confidence give way; "and let never man in future believe the lying equivocations of witches and juggling spirits, who deceive us in words which have double senses, and while they keep their promise literally, disappoint our hopes with a different meaning. I will not fight with thee."

"Then live!" said the scornful Macduff; "we will have a show of thee, as men show monsters, and a painted board, on which shall be written, 'Here men may see the tyrant!'"

"Never," said Macbeth, whose courage returned, with despair; "I will not live to kiss the ground before young Malcolm's feet, to be baited with the curses of the rabble. Though Birnam wood

be come to Dunsinane, and thou oppose to me who wast never born of woman, yet will I try the last." With these frantic words he threw himself upon Macduff, who after a severe struggle in the end overcame him, and cutting off his head, made a present of it to the young and lawful king, Malcolm; who took upon him the government which, by the machinations of the usurper, he had so long been deprived of, and ascended the throne of Duncan the Meek amid the acclamations of the nobles and the people.

THE MERCHANT OF VENICE.

SHYLOCK, the Jew, lived at Venice; he was a usurer who had amassed an immense fortune by lending money at great interest to Christian merchants. Shylock, being a hard-hearted man, exacted the payment of the money he lent with such severity, that he was much disliked by all good men, and particularly by Antonio, a young merchant of Venice; and Shylock as much hated Antonio, because he used to lend money to people in distress and would never take any interest for the money he lent; therefore there was great enmity between this covetous Jew and the generous merchant Antonio. Whenever Antonio met Shylock on the Rialto (or Exchange, he used to reproach him with his usuries and hard dealings; which the Jew would bear with seeming patience, while he secretly meditated revenge.

Antonio was the kindest man that lived, the best conditioned and had the most unwearied spirit in doing courtesies; indeed he was one in whom the ancient Roman honour more appeared than in any that drew breath in Italy. He was greatly beloved by all his fellow-citizens; but the friend who was nearest and dearest to his heart was Bassanio, a noble Venetian, who, having but a small patrimony, had nearly exhausted his little fortune by living in too expensive a manner for his slender means, as young men of high rank with small fortunes are too apt to do. Whenever Bassanio wanted money, Antonio assisted him; and it seemed as if they had but one heart and one purse between them.

One day Bassanio came to Antonio, and told him that he wished to repair his fortune by a wealthy marriage with a lady whom he dearly loved, whose father that was lately dead, had left her sole heiress to a large estate; and that in her father's lifetime he used to visit at her house, when he thought he had observed this lady had sometimes from her eyes sent speechless

messages, that seemed to say he would be no unwelcome suitor ; but not having money to furnish himself with an appearance befitting the lover of so rich an heiress, he besought Antonio to add to the many favours he had shown him by lending him three thousand ducats.

Antonio had no money by him at that time to lend his friend ; but expecting soon to have some ships come home laden with merchandise, he said he would go to Shylock, the rich money-lender, and borrow the money upon the credit of those ships.

Antonio and Bassanio went together to Shylock, and Antonio asked the Jew to lend him three thousand ducats upon an interest he should require, to be paid out of the merchandise contained in his ships at sea. On this, Shylock thought within himself, " If I can once catch him on the hip, I will feed fat the ancient grudge I bear him ; he hates our Jewish nation ; he lends out money gratis ; and among the merchants he rails at me and my well-earned bargains, which he calls interest. Cursed be my tribe if I forgive him ! " Antonio finding he was musing within himself and did not answer, and being impatient for the money, said, " Shylock, do you hear ? will you lend the money ? " To this question the Jew replied, " Signior Antonio, on the Rialto many a time and often you have railed at me about my monies and my usuries, and I have borne it with a patient shrug, for sufferance is the badge of all our tribe ; and then you have called me unbeliever, cut-throat dog, and spit upon my Jewish garments, and spurned at me with your foot, as if I was a cur. Well then, it now appears you need my help ; and you come to me, and say, *Shylock lend me monies*. Has a dog money ? Is it possible a cur should lend three thousand ducats ? Shall I bend low and say Fair Sir, you spit upon me on Wednesday last, another time you called me dog, and for these courtesies I am to lend you monies ? " Antonio replied, " I am as like to call you so again, to spit on you again, and spurn you too. If you will lend me this money, lend it not to me as to a friend, but rather lend it to me as to an enemy, that, if I break, you may with better face exact the penalty. " " Why, look you, " said Shylock, " How you storm ! I would be friends with you, and have your love. I will forget the shames you have put upon me. I will supply your wants, and take no interest for my money. " This seemingly kind offer greatly surprised Antonio and then Shylock, still pretending kindness, and that all he did was to gain Antonio's

love, again said he would lend him the three thousand ducats, and take no interest for his money ; only Antonio should go with him to a lawyer, and there sign in merry sport a bond, that if he did not repay the money by a certain day, he would forfeit a pound of flesh, to be cut off from any part of his body that Shylock pleased.

"Content," said Antonio ; "I will sign to this bond, and say there is much kindness in the Jew."

Bassanio said, Antonio should not sign to such a bond for him ; and still Antonio insisted that he would sign it, for that before the day of payment came his ships would return laden with many times the value of the money.

Shylock, hearing this debate, exclaimed, "O father Abraham, what suspicious people these Christians are ! Their own hard dealings teach them to suspect the thoughts of others. I pray you tell me this, Bassanio : if he should break this day, what should I gain by the execution of the forfeiture ? A pound of man's flesh, taken from a man, is not so estimable nor profitable neither, as the flesh of mutton or of beef. I say, to buy his favour I offer this friendship ; if he will take it, so ; if not, adieu."

At last, against the advice of Bassanio, who, notwithstanding all the Jew had said of his kind intentions, did not like his friend should run the hazard of this shocking penalty for his sake, Antonio signed the bond, thinking it really was (as the Jew said) merely in sport.

The rich heiress that Bassanio wished to marry lived near Venice, at a place called Belmont ; her name was Portia, and in the graces of her person and her mind she was nothing inferior to that Portia, of whom we read, who was Cato's daughter, and the wife of Brutus.

Bassanio being so kindly supplied with money by his friend Antonio, at the hazard of his life, set out for Belmont with a splendid train and, attended by a gentleman of the name of Gratiano.

Bassanio proving successful in his suit, Portia in a short time consented to accept of him for a husband.

Bassanio confessed to Portia that he had no fortune, and that his high birth and noble ancestry was all that he could boast of ; she, who loved him for his worthy qualities, and had riches

enough not to regrad wealth in a husband, answered with a graceful modesty that she would wish herself a thousand times more fair, and ten thousand times more rich, to be more worthy of him; and then the accomplished Portia prettily dispraised herself, and said she was an unlessoned girl, unschooled, unpracticed, yet not so old but that she could learn and that she would commit her gentle spirit to be directed and governed by him in all things; and she said, "Myself and what is mine, to you and yours is now converted. But yesterday, Bassanio, I was the lady of this fair mansion, queen of myself, and mistress over these servants; and now this house, these servants and myself, are yours, my lord; I give them with this ring," presenting a ring to Bassanio.

Bassanio was so overpowered with gratitude and wonder at the gracious manner in which the rich and noble Portia accepted of a man of his humble fortunes, that he could not express his joy and reverence to the dear lady who so honoured him, by anything but broken words of love and thankfulness, and taking the ring, he vowed never to part with it.

Gratiano, and Nerissa, Portia's waiting-maid, were in attendance upon their lord and lady, when Portia so gracefully promised to become the obedient wife of Bassanio; and Gratiano, wishing Bassanio and the generous lady joy, desired permission to be married at the same time.

"With all my heart, Gratiano," said Bassanio, "if you can get a wife."

Gratiano then said that he loved the lady Portia's fair waiting gentlewoman, Nerissa, and that she had promised to be his wife, if her lady married Bassanio. Portia asked Nerissa if this was true. Nerissa replied, "Madam, it is so, if you approve of it." Portia willingly consenting. Bassanio pleasantly said, "Then our wedding-feast shall be much honoured by your marriage, Gratiano."

The happiness of these lovers was sadly crossed at this moment by the entrance of a messenger, who brought a letter from Antonio containing fearful tidings. When Bassanio read Antonio's letter, Portia feared it was to tell him of the death of some dear friend, he looked so pale; and inquiring what was the news which had so distressed him, he said, "O sweet Portia, here are a few of the unpleasantest words that ever blotted paper: gentle lady, when I first imparted my love to you, I freely told you all the

wealth I had ran in my veins ; but I should have told you that I had less than nothing, being in debt." Bassanio then told Portia what has been here related, of his borrowing the money of Antonio, and of Antonio's procuring it of Shylock the Jew, and of the bond by which Antonio had engaged to forfeit a pound of flesh, if it was not repaid by a certain day ; and then Bassanio read Antonio's letter ; the words of which were, *Sweet Bassanio, my ships are all lost, my bond to the Jew is forfeited, and since in paying it is impossible I should live, I could wish to see you at my death ; notwithstanding, use your pleasure ; if your love for me do not persuade you to come, let not my letter.*" " Oh my dear love," said Portia, " despatch the business and be gone ; you shall have gold to pay the money twenty times over, before this kind friend shall lose a hair by my Bassanio's fault ; and as you are so dearly bought, I will dearly love you." Portia then said she would be married to Bassanio before he set out, to give him a legal right to her money ; and that same day they were married, and Gratiano was also married to Nerissa ; and Bassanio and Gratiano, the instant they were married, set out in great haste for Venice, where Bassanio found Antonio in prison.

The day of payment being past, the cruel Jew would not accept of the money which Bassanio offered him, but insisted upon having a pound of Antonio's flesh. A day was appointed to try this shocking cause before the Duke of Venice, and Bassanio awaited in dreadful suspense the event of the trial.

When Portia parted with her husband, she spoke cheeringly to him, and bade him bring his dear friend along with him when he returned ; yet she feared it would go hard with Antonio, and when she was left alone, she began to think and consider within herself, if she could by any means be instrumental in saving the life of her dear Bassanio's friend ; and notwithstanding, when she wished to honour her Bassanio, she had said to him with such a meek and wife-like grace, that she would submit in all things to be governed by his superior wisdom, yet being now called forth into action by the peril of her honoured husband's friend, she did nothing doubt her own powers, and by the sole guidance of her own true and perfect judgment, at once resolved to go herself to Venice, and speak in Antonio's defence.

Portia had a relation who was a counsellor in the law ; to this gentleman, whose name was Bellario, she wrote, and stating the case to him, desired his opinion, and that with his advice he

would also send her the dress worn by a counsellor. When the messenger returned, he brought letters from Bellario of advice how to proceed, and also everything necessary for her equipment.

Portia dressed herself and her maid Nerissa in men's apparel, and putting on the robes of a counsellor, she took Nerissa along with her as her clerk ; and setting out immediately, they arrived at Venice on the very day of the trial. The cause was just going to be heard before the duke and senators of Venice in the senate-house, when Portia entered this high court of justice, and presented a letter from Bellario, in which that learned counsellor wrote to the duke, saying he would have come himself to plead for Antonio, but that he was prevented by sickness, and he requested that the learned young doctor Balthazar (so he called Portia) might be permitted to plead in his stead. This the duke granted, much wondering at the youthful appearance of the stranger, who was prettily disguised by her counsellor's robes and her large wig.

And now began this important trial. Portia looked around her, and she saw the merciless Jew ; and she saw Bassanio, but he knew her not in her disguise. He was standing beside Antonio, in an agony of distress and fear for his friend.

The importance of the arduous task Portia had engaged in gave this tender lady courage, and she boldly proceeded in the duty she had undertaken to perform ; and first of all she addressed herself to Shylock, and allowing that he had a right by the Venetian law to have the forfeit expressed in the bond, she spoke so sweetly of the noble quality of *mercy*, as would have softened any heart but the unfeeling Shylock's ; saying, that it dropped as the gentle rain from heaven upon the place beneath ; and how mercy was a double blessing, it blessed him that gave, and him that received it ; and how it became monarchs better than their crowns, being an attribute of God himself ; and that earthly power came nearest to God's in proportion as mercy tempered justice : and she bid Shylock remember that as we all pray for mercy, that same prayer should teach us to show mercy. Shylock only answered her by desiring to have the penalty forfeited in the bond. " Is he not able to pay the money ? " asked Portia. Bassanio then offered the Jew the payment of the three thousand ducats as many times over as he should desire ; which Shylock refusing, and still insisting upon having a pound of Antonio's flesh, Bassanio begged the learned young counsellor would endeavour to wrest

the law a little to save Antonio's life. But Portia gravely answered, that laws once established must never be altered. Shylock hearing Portia say that the law might not be altered, it seemed to him that she was pleading in his favour, and he said, "A Daniel is come to judgment! O wise young judge, how I do honour you! How much elder are you than your looks!"

Portia now desired Shylock to let her look at the bond; and when she had read it, she said, "This bond is forfeited, and by this the Jew may lawfully claim a pound of flesh, to be by him cut off nearest Antonio's heart." Then she said to Shylock, "Be merciful; take the money, and bid me tear the bond." But no mercy would the cruel Shylock show; and he said, "By my soul I swear there is no power in the tongue of man to alter me." "Why then, Antonio," said Portia, "you must perpare your bosom for the knife;" and while Shylock was sharpening a long knife with great eagerness to cut off the pound of flesh, Portia said to Antonio, "Have you anything to say?" Antonio with a calm resignation replied, that he had but little to say, for that he had prepared his mind for death. Then he said to Bassanio, "Give me your hand, Bassanio! Fare you well! Grieve not that I am fallen into this misfortune for you. Commend me to your honourable wife, and tell her how I have loved you!" Bassanio in the deepest affliction replied, "Antonio, I am married to a wife, who is as dear to me as life itself; but life itself, my wife, and all the world, are not esteemed with me above your life: I would lose all, I would sacrifice all to this devil here, to deliver you."

Portia, hearing this, though the kind-hearted lady was not at all offended with her husband for expressing the love he owed to so true a friend as Antonio in these strong terms, yet could not help answering, "Your wife would give you little thanks if she were present, to hear you make this offer." And then Gratiano, who loved to copy what his lord did, thought he must make a speech like Bassanio's, and he said in Nerissa's hearing, who was writing in her clerk's dress by the side of Portia, "I have a wife, whom I protest I love: I wish she were in heaven, if she could but entreat some power there to change the cruel temper of this currish Jew." "It is well you wish this behind her back, else you would have but an unquiet house," said Nerissa.

Shylock now cried out impatiently, "We trifle time; I pray pronounce the sentence." And now all was awful expectation in the court, and every heart was full of grief for Antonio.

Portia asked if the scales were ready to weigh the flesh and she said to the Jew, "Shylock, you must have some surgeon by, lest he bleed to death." Shylock, whose whole intent was that Antonio should bleed to death, said, "It is not so named in the bond." Portia replied, "It is not so named in the bond, but what of that? It were good you did so much for charity." To this all the answer Shylock would make was, "I cannot find it; it is not in the bond." "Then," said Portia, "a pound of Antonio's flesh is thine. The law allows it, and the court awards it." And you may cut this flesh from off his breast. The law allows it, and the court awards it." Again Shylock exclaimed, "O wise and upright Judge! A Daniel is come to judgment!" And then he sharpened his long knife again, and looking eagerly on Antonio, he said, "Come prepare!"

act "Tarry a little, Jew," said Portia; "there is something else. This bond here gives you no drop of blood; the words expressly are, 'a pound of flesh.' If in the cutting off the pound of flesh you shed one drop of Christian blood, your land and goods are by the law to be confiscated to the state of Venice." Now as it was utterly impossible for Shylock to cut off the pound of flesh without shedding some of Antonio's blood, this wise discovery of Portia's, that it was flesh and not blood that was named in the bond, saved the life of Antonio; and all admiring the wonderful sagacity of the young counsellor who had so happily thought of this expedient, plaudits resounded from every part of the senate-house; and Gratiano exclaimed, in the words which Shylock had used, "O wise and upright judge! mark, Jew, a Daniel is come to judgment!"

Shylock, finding himself defeated in his cruel intent, said with a disappointed look that he would take the money; and Bassanio, rejoiced beyond measure at Antonio's unexpected deliverance, cried out, "Here is the money!" But Portia stopped him, saying, "Softly; there is no haste; the Jew shall have nothing but the penalty; therefore prepare, Shylock, to cut off the flesh; but mind you shed no blood; nor do not cut of more nor less than just a pound; be it more or less by one poor scruple, nay if the scale turn by the weight of a single hair, you are condemned by the laws of Venice to die, and all your wealth is forfeited to the senate." "Give me my money, and let me go," said Shylock. "I have it ready," said Bassanio: "Here it is."

Shylock was going to take the money, when Portia again stopped him, saying, "Tarry, Jew; I have yet another hold upon you. By the laws of Venice, your wealth is forfeited to the state, for having conspired against the life of one of its citizens, and your life lies at the mercy of the duke; therefore down on your knees, and ask him to pardon you."

The duke then said to Shylock, "That you may see the difference of our Christian spirit, I pardon you your life before you ask it; half your wealth belongs to Antonio, the other half comes to the state."

The generous Antonio then said, that he would give up his share of Shylock's wealth, if, Shylock would sign a deed to make it over at his death to his daughter and her husband; for Antonio knew that the Jew had an only daughter who had lately married against his consent to a young Christian, named Lorenzo, a friend of Antonio's which had so offended Shylock that he had disinherited her.

The Jew agreed to this: and being thus disappointed in his revenge, and despoiled of his riches, he said, "I am ill. Let me go home; send the deed after me, and I will sign over half my riches to my daughter." "Get thee gone, then," said the duke, "and sign it, and if you repent your cruelty and turn Christian, the state will forgive you the fine of the other half of your riches."

The duke now released Antonio, and dismissed the court. He then highly praised the wisdom and ingenuity of the young counsellor, and invited him home to dinner. Portia, who meant to return to Belmont before her husband, replied, "I humbly thank your grace, but I must away directly." The duke said he was sorry he had not leisure to stay and dine with him; and turning to Antonio, he added, "Reward this gentleman; for in my mind you are much indebted to him."

The duke and senators left the court; and then Bassanio said to Portia, "Most worthy gentleman, I and my friend Antonio have by your wisdom been this day acquitted of grievous penalties, and I beg you will accept of three thousand ducats due unto the Jew." "And we shall stand indebted to you over and above," said Antonio, "in love and service evermore."

Portia could not be prevailed upon to accept the money; but upon Bassanio still pressing her to accept of some reward, she said, "Give me your gloves: I will wear them for your sake;"

and then Bassanio taking off his gloves, she espied the ring which she had given him upon his finger ; now it was the ring the wily lady wanted to get from him to make a merry jest when she saw Bassanio again, that made her ask him for his gloves ; and she said, when she saw the ring. " And for your love I will take this ring from you." Bassanio was sadly distressed, that the counsellor should ask him for the only thing he could not part with, and he replied in great confusion, that he could not give him that ring, because it was his wife's gift, and he had vowed never to part with it ; but that he would give him the most valuable ring in Venice, and find it out by proclamation. On this Portia affected to be affronted, and left the court, saying, " You teach me, sir, how a beggar should be answered."

" Dear Bassanio," said Antonio, " let him have the ring, let my love and the great service he has done for me be valued against your wife's displeasure." Bassanio, ashamed to appear so ungrateful, yielded, and sent Gratiano after Portia with the ring ; and then the *clerk* Nerissa, who had also given Gratiano a ring, she begged his ring, and Gratiano (not choosing to be outdone in generosity by his lord) gave it to her. And there was laughing among these ladies, to think, when they got home, how they would tax their husbands with giving away their rings, and swear that they had given them as a present to some woman.

Portia, when she returned, was in that happy temper of mind which never fails to attend the consciousness of having performed a good action ; her cheerful spirits enjoyed everything she saw : the moon never seemed to shine so bright before ; and when that pleasant moon was hid behind a cloud, then a light which she saw from her house at Belmont as well pleased her charmed fancy, and she said to Nerissa, " That light we see is burning in my hall ; how far that little candle throws its beams, so shines a good deed in a naughty world : " and hearing the sound of music from her house, she said, " Methinks that music sounds much sweeter than by day."

And now Portia and Nerissa entered the house, and dressing themselves in their own apparel, they awaited the arrival of their husbands, who soon followed them with Antonio : and Bassanio presenting his dear friend to the lady Portia, the congratulations and welcomes of that lady were hardly over, when they perceived Nerissa and her husband quarrelling in a corner of the room. " A quarrel already ? " said Portia. " What is the matter ? "

Gratiano replied, "Lady, it is about a paltry gilt ring that Nerissa gave me, with words upon it like the poetry on a cutler's knife : *Love me, and leave me not.*"

"What does the poetry or the value of the ring signify?" said Nerissa. "You swore to me, when I gave it to you, that you would keep it till the hour of death ; and now you say you gave it to the lawyer's clerk. I know you gave it to a woman." "By this hand," replied Gratiano, "I gave it to a youth, a kind of boy, a little scrubbed boy no higher than yourself ; he was clerk to the young counsellor, that by his wise pleading saved Antonio's life : this prating boy begged it for a fee, and I could not for my life deny him." Portia said, "You were to blame, Gratiano, to part with your wife's first gift. I gave my lord Bassanio a ring, and I am sure he would not part with it for all the world." Gratiano in excuse for his fault now said, "My lord Bassanio gave his ring away to the counsellor, and then the boy, his clerk, that took some pains in writing, he begged my ring."

Portia, hearing this, seemed very angry, and reproached Bassanio for giving away her ring ; and she said, Nerissa had taught her what to believe, and that she knew some women had the ring. Bassanio was very unhappy to have so offended his dear lady, and he said with great earnestness, "No, by my honour no woman had it, but a civil doctor who refused three thousand ducats of me, and begged the ring, which when I denied him, he went displeased away. What could I do, sweet Portia ? I was so beset with shame for my seeming ingratitude, that I was forced to send the ring after him. Pardon me, good lady ; had you been there, I think you would have begged the ring of me to give the worthy doctor."

"Ah !" said Antonio, "I am the unhappy cause of these quarrels."

Portia bid Antonio not to grieve at that, for that he was welcome notwithstanding ; and then Antonio said, "I once did lend my body for Bassanio's sake ; and but for him to whom your husband gave the ring, I should have now been dead. I dare be bound again, my soul upon the forfeit, your lord will never more break his faith with you." "Then you shall be his surety," said Portia ; "give him this ring, and bid him keep it better than the other."

When Bassanio looked at this ring, he was strangely surprised to find it the same he gave away ; and then Portia told him, how she was the young counsellor, and Nerissa was her clerk ; and Bassanio found, to his unspeakable wonder and delight, that it was by the noble courage and wisdom of his wife that Antonio's life was saved.

And Portia again welcomed Antonio, and gave him letters which by some chance had fallen into her hands, which contained an account of Antonio's ships, that were supposed lost, being safely arrived in the harbour. So these tragical beginnings of this rich merchant's story were all forgotten in the unexpected good fortune which ensued ; and there was leisure to laugh at the comical adventure of the rings, and the husbands that did not know their own wives : Grantiano merrily swearing, in a sort of rhyming speech, that

———— while he lived, he'd fear no other thing.
No more, as I keep safe Nerissa's ring.

THE COMEDY OF ERRORS.

THE states of Syracuse and Ephesus being at variance, there was a cruel law made at Ephesus, ordaining that if any merchant of Syracuse was seen in the city of Ephesus, he was to be put to death, unless he could pay a thousand marks ^{for} for the ransom of his life.

Ægeon, an old merchant of Syracuse, was discovered in the streets of Ephesus, and brought before the duke, either to pay this heavy fine, or to receive sentence of death.

Ægeon had no money to pay the fine, and the duke, before he pronounced the sentence of death upon him, desired him to relate the history of his life, and to tell for what cause he had ventured to come to the city of Ephesus which it was death for any Syracusan merchant to enter.

Ægeon said, that he did not fear to die, for sorrow had made him weary of his life, but that a heavier task could not have been imposed upon him than to relate the events of his unfortunate life. He then began his own history, in the following words :

"I was born at Syracuse, and brought up to the profession of a merchant. I married a lady with whom I lived very happily, but being obliged to go to Epidamnium, I was detained there by my

business six months, and then, finding I should be obliged to stay some time longer, I sent for my wife, who, as soon as she arrived, was brought to bed of two sons, and what was very strange, they were both so exactly alike, that it was impossible to distinguish the one from the other. At the same time that my wife was brought to bed of these twin boys, a poor woman in the inn where my wife lodged was brought to bed of two sons, and these twins were as much like each other as my two sons were. The parents of these children being exceeding poor, I bought the two boys, and brought them up to attend upon my sons.

“ My sons were very fine children, and my wife was not a little proud of two such boys : and she daily wishing to return home, I unwillingly agreed, and in an evil hour we got on shipboard ; for we had not sailed above a league from Epidamnium before a dreadful storm arose, which continued with such violence, that the sailors seeing no chance of saving the ship, crowded into the boat to save their own lives, leaving us alone in the ship, which we every moment expected would be destroyed by the fury of the storm.

“ The incessant weeping of my wife, and the piteous complaints of the pretty babes, who not knowing what to fear, wept for fashion, because they saw their mother weep, filled me with terror for them, though I did not for myself fear death ; and all my thoughts were bent to contrive means for their safety ; I tied my youngest son to the end of a small spare mast, such as seafaring men provide against storms ; at the other end I bound the youngest of the twin slaves, and at the same time I directed my wife how to fasten the other children in like manner to another mast. She thus having the care of the two eldest children, and I of the two younger, we bound ourselves separately to these masts with the children ; and but for this contrivance we had all been lost, for the ship split on a mighty rock and was dashed in pieces, and we clinging to these slender masts were supported above the water, where I, having the care of two children, was unable to assist my wife, who with the other children was soon separated from me but while they were yet in my sight, they were taken up by a boat of fishermen. from Corinth (as I supposed) and seeing them in safety, I had no care but to struggle with the wild sea-waves, to preserve my dear son and the youngest slave. At length we in our turn were taken up by a ship, and the sailors, knowing me, gave us kind welcome and assistance, and landed us in safety at Syracuse;

but from that sad hour I have never known what became of my wife and eldest child.

"My youngest son, and now my only care, when he was eighteen years of age, began to be inquisitive after his mother and his brother, and often importuned me that he might take his attendant, the young slave, who had also lost his brother, and go in search of them: at length I unwillingly gave consent, for though I anxiously desired to hear tidings of my wife and eldest son, yet in sending my younger one to find them, I hazarded the loss of him also. It is now seven years since my son left me: five years have I passed in travelling through the world in search of him: I have been in farthest Greece, and through the bounds of Asia, and coasting homewards, I landed here in Ephesus, being unwilling to leave any place unsought that harbours men; but this day must end the story of my life, and happy should I think myself in my death, if I were assured my wife and sons were living."

After the hapless Ægeon ended the account of his misfortunes; and the duke, pitying this unfortunate father, who had brought upon himself this great peril by his love for his lost son, said, if it were not against the laws, which his oath and dignity did not permit him to alter, he would freely pardon him; yet instead of dooming him to instant death, as the strict letter of the law required, he would give him that day, to try if he could beg or borrow the money to pay the fine.

This day of grace did seem no great favour to Ægeon, for not knowing any man in Ephesus, there seemed to him but little chance that any stranger would lend or give him a thousand marks to pay the fine: and helpless and hopeless of any relief, he retired from the presence of the duke in the custody of a jailor.

Ægeon supposed he knew no person in Ephesus; but at the very time he was in danger of losing his life through the careful search he was making after his youngest son, that son and his eldest son also were both in the city of Ephesus.

Ægeon's sons besides being exactly alike in face and person, were both named alike, being both called Antipholus, and the two twin slaves were also both named Dromio. Ægeon's youngest son Antipholus of Syracuse he whom the old man had come to Ephesus to seek, happened to arrive at Ephesus with his slave Dromio, that very same day that Ægeon did; and he being also a

merchant of Syracuse, he would have been in the same danger that his father was, but by good fortune he met a friend who told him the peril an old merchant of Syracuse was in, and advised him to pass for a merchant of Epidamnium; this Antipholus agreed to do, and he was sorry to hear one of his own countrymen was in this danger, but he little thought this old merchant was his own father.

The oldest son of Egeon (who must be called Antipholus of Ephesus, to distinguish him from his brother Antipholus of Syracuse) had lived at Ephesus twenty years, and being a rich man, was well able to have paid the money for the ransom of his father's life, but Antipholus knew nothing of his father, being so young when he was taken out of the sea with his mother by the fishermen, that he only remembered he had been so preserved, but he had no recollection of either his father or his mother; the fishermen, who took up this Antipholus and his mother and the young slave Dromio, having carried the two children away from her (to the great grief of that unhappy lady, intending to sell them. .

Antipholus and Dromio were sold by them to duke Menaphon, a famous warrior, who was uncle to the duke of Ephesus, and he carried the boys to Ephesus, when he went to visit the duke his nephew.

The duke of Ephesus taking a fancy to young Antipholus, when he grew up, made him an officer in his army, in which he distinguished himself by his great bravery in the wars, where he saved the life of his patron the duke, who rewarded his merit by marrying him to Adriana, a rich lady of Ephesus; with whom he was living (his slave Dromio still attending him) at the time his father came there .

Antipholus of Syracuse, when he parted with his friend, who advised him to say he came from Epidamnium, gave his slave Dromio some money to carry to the inn where he intended to dine, and in the meantime he said he would walk about and view the city, and observe the manners of the people.

Dromio was a pleasant fellow, and when Antipholus was dull and melancholy he used to divert himself with the odd humours and merry jests of his slave, so that the freedoms of speech he allowed in Dromio were greater than is usual between masters and their servants.

When Antipholus of Syracuse had sent Dromio away, he stood awhile thinking over his solitary wanderings in search of his mother and his brother, of whom in no place where he landed could he hear the least tidings; and he said sorrowfully to himself, "I am like a drop of water in the ocean, which seeking to find its fellow drop, loses itself in the wide sea. So I unhappily, to find a mother and a brother, do lose myself."

While he was thus meditating on his weary travels, which had hitherto been so useless, Dromio (as he thought) returned. Antipholus, wondering that he came back so soon, asked him where he had left the money. Now it was not his own Dromio, but the twin-brother that lived with Antipholus of Ephesus, that he spoke to. "The two Dromios and the two Antipholuses were still as much like as Ægeon had said they were in their infancy; therefore no wonder Antipholus thought it was his own slave returned and asked him why he came back so soon. Dromio replied, "My mistress sent me to bid you come to dinner. The capon burns, and the pig falls from the spit, and the meat will be all cold if you do not come home." "These jests are out of season," said Antipholus: "where did you leave the money?" Dromio still answering, that his mistress had sent him to fetch Antipholus to dinner: "What mistress?" said Antipholus. "Why your worship's wife, sir," replied Dromio. Antipholus having no wife, he was very angry with Dromio, and said, "Because I familiarly sometimes chat with you, you presume to jest with me in this free manner. I am not in a sportive humour now: where is the money? we being strangers here, how dare you trust so great a charge from your own custody?" Dromio hearing his master, as he thought him, talk of their being strangers, supposing Antipholus was jesting, replied merrily, "I pray you, sir, jest as you sit at dinner: I had no charge but to fetch you home, to dine with my mistress and her sister." Now Antipholus lost all patience, and beat Dromio, who ran home, and told his mistress that his master had refused to come to dinner, and said that he had no wife.

Adriana, the wife of Antipholus, of Ephesus, was very angry, when she heard that her husband said he had no wife; for she was of a jealous temper, and she said her husband meant that he loved another lady better than herself; and she began to fret, and say unkind words of jealousy and reproach of her husband; and her sister Luciana, who lived with her, tried in vain to persuade her out of her groundless suspicions.

Antipholus of Syracuse went to the inn, and found Dromio with the money in safety there, and seeing his own Dromio, he was going again to chide him for his free jests, when Adriana came up to him, and not doubting but it was her husband she saw, she began to reproach him for looking strange upon her (as well he might, never having seen this angry lady before: and then she told him how well he loved her before they were married, and that now he loved some other lady instead of her "How comes it now, my husband," said she, "oh how comes it that I have lost your love?" "Plead you to me, fair dame?" said the astonished Antipholus. It was in vain he told her he was not her husband, and that he had been in Ephesus but two hours; she insisted on his going home with her, and Antipholus, at last, being unable to get away, went with her to his brother's house, and dined with Adriana and her sister, the one calling him husband, and the other, brother, he, all amazed, thinking he must have been married to her in his sleep, or that he was sleeping now. And Dromio, who followed them, was no less surprised, for the cook-maid, who was his brother's wife, also claimed him for her husband.

While Antipholus of Syracuse was dining with his brother's wife, his brother, the real husband, returned home to dinner with his slave Dromio; but the servants would not open the door, because their mistress had ordered them not to admit any company; and when they repeatedly knocked, and said they were Antipholus and Dromio, the maids laughed at them, and said that Antipholus was at dinner with their mistress, and Dromio was in the kitchen: and though they almost knocked the door down, they could not gain admittance, and at last Antipholus went away very angry, and strangely surprised at hearing a gentleman was dining with his wife.

When Antipholus of Syracuse had finished his dinner, he was so perplexed at the lady's still persisting in calling him husband, and at hearing that Dromio had also been claimed by the cook-maid, that he left the house, as soon as he could find any pretence to get away; for though he was very much pleased with Luciana, the sister, yet the jealous-tempered Adriana he disliked very much, nor was Dromio at all better satisfied with his fair wife in the kitchen; therefore both master and man were glad to get away from their new wives as fast as they could.

The moment Antipholus of Syracuse had left the house, he was met by a goldsmith, who mistaking him, as Adriana had done, for Antipholus of Ephesus, gave him a gold chain, calling him by his name; and when Antipholus would have refused the chain, saying it did not belong to him, the goldsmith replied he made it by his own orders; and went away, leaving the chain in the hand of Antipholus, who ordered his man Dromio to get his things on board a ship, not choosing to stay in a place any longer, where he met with such strange adventures that he surely thought himself bewitched.

The goldsmith who had given the chain to the wrong Antipholus, was arrested immediately after for a sum of money he owed; and Antipholus, the married brother, to whom the goldsmith thought he had given the chain, happened to come to the place where the officer was arresting the goldsmith, who, when he saw Antipholus, asked him to pay for the gold chain he had just delivered to him, the price amounting to nearly the same sum as that for which he had been arrested. Antipholus denying the having received the chain, and the goldsmith persisting to declare that he had but a few minutes before given it to him they disputed the matter a long time, both thinking they were right, for Antipholus knew the goldsmith never gave him the chain, and, so like were the two brothers, the goldsmith was as certain he had delivered the chain into his hands, till at last the officer took the goldsmith away to prison for the debt he owed, and at the same time the goldsmith made the officer arrest Antipholus for the price of the chain; so that at the conclusion of their dispute, Antipholus and the merchant were both taken away to prison together.

As Antipholus was going to prison, he met Dromio of Syracuse, his brother's slave, and mistaking him for his own, he ordered him to go to Adriana, his wife, and tell her to send the money for which he was arrested. Dromio wondering that his master should send him back to the strange house where he dined, and from which he had just before been in such haste to depart, did not dare to reply, though he came to tell his master the ship was ready to sail; for he saw Antipholus was in no humour to be jested with. Therefore he went away, grumbling within himself that he must return to Adriana's house, "Where" said he, "Dowsabel claims me for a husband: but I must go, for servants must obey their master's commands."

Adriana gave him the money, and as Dromio was returning, he met Antipholus of Syracuse, who was still in amaze at the surprising adventures he met with ; for his brother being well known in Ephesus, there was hardly a man he met in the streets but saluted him as an old acquaintance : some offered him money which they said was owing to him, some invited him to come and see them, and some gave him thanks for kindnesses they said he had done them, all mistaking him for his brother. A tailor showed him some silks he had bought for him, and insisted upon taking measure of him for some clothes.

Antipholus began to think he was among a nation of sorcerers and witches, and Dromio did not at all relieve his master from his bewildered thoughts, by asking him how he got free from the officer who was carrying him to prison, and giving him the purse of gold which Adriana had sent to pay the debt with. This talk of Dromio's of the arrest and of a prison, and the money he had brought from Adriana, perfectly confounded Antipholus, and he said, "This fellow Dromio is certainly distracted, and we wander here in illusions ;" and quite terrified at his own confused thoughts he cried out, "Some blessed power deliver us from this strange place !"

And now another stranger came up to him, and she was a lady, and she too called him Antipholus, and told him he had dined with her that day, and asked him for a gold chain which she said he had promised to give her. Antipholus now lost all patience, and calling her a sorceress, he denied that he had ever promised her a chain, or dined with her, or had ever seen her face before that moment. The lady persisted in affirming he had dined with her, and had promised her a chain, which Antipholus still denying, she farther said, that she had given him a valuable ring, and if he would not give her the gold chain, she insisted upon having her own ring again. On this Antipholus became quite frantic, and again calling her sorceress and witch, and denying all knowledge of her and her ring, ran away from her, leaving her astonished at his words and his wild looks, for nothing to her appeared more certain than that he had dined with her, and that she had given him a ring in consequence of his promising to make her a present of a gold chain. But this lady had fallen into the same mistake the others had done, for she had taken him for his brother : the married Antipholus had done all the things she taxed this Antipholus with.

When the married Antipholus was denied entrance into his own house (those within supposing him to be already there) he had gone away very angry, believing it to be one of his wife's jealous freaks to which she was very subject, and remembering that she had often falsely accused him of visiting other ladies, he, to be revenged on her for shutting him out of his own house, determined to go and dine with this lady, and she receiving him with great civility, and his wife having so highly offended him, Antipholus promised to give her a gold chain, which he had intended as a present for his wife; it was the same chain which the goldsmith by mistake had given to his brother. The lady liked so well the thoughts of having a fine gold chain, that she gave the married Antipholus a ring, which when, as she supposed (taking his brother for him), he denied, and said he did not know her, and left her in such a wild passion, she began to think he was certainly out of his senses; and presently she resolved to go and tell Adriana that her husband was mad. And while she was telling it to Adriana, he came, attended by the jailor (who allowed him to come home to get the money to pay the debt), for the purse of money which Adriana had sent by Dromio, and he had delivered to the other Antipholus.

Adriana believed the story the lady told her of her husband's madness must be true, when he reproached her for shutting him out of his own house; and remembering how he had protested all dinner-time that he was not her husband, and had never been in Epheesus till that day, she had no doubt that he was mad; she therefore paid the jailor the money, and having discharged him, she ordered her servants to bind her husband with ropes, and had him conveyed into a dark room, and sent for a doctor to come and cure him of his madness: Antipholus all the while hotly exclaiming against this false accusation, which the exact likeness he bore to his brother had brought upon him. But his rage only the more confirmed them in the belief that he was mad: and Dromio persisting in the same story, they bound him also, and took him away along with his master.

Soon after Adriana had put her husband into confinement, a servant came to tell her that Antipholus and Dromio must have broken loose from their keepers, for that they were both walking at liberty in the next street. On hearing this, Adriana ran out to fetch him home, taking some people with her to secure her husband again; and her sister went along with her. When

they came to the gates of a convent in their neighbourhood, there they saw Antipholus and Dromio, as they thought, being again deceived by the likeness of the twin brothers.

Antipholus of Syracuse was still beset with the perplexities this likeness had brought upon him. The chain which the goldsmith had given him was about his neck, and the goldsmith was reproaching him for denying that he had it, and refusing to pay for it, and Antipholus was protesting that the goldsmith freely gave him the chain in the morning, and that from that hour he had never seen the goldsmith again.

And now Adriana came up to him, and claimed him as her lunatic husband, who had escaped from his keepers: and the men she brought with her were going to lay violent hands on Antipholus and Dromio: but they ran into the convent, and Antipholus begged the abbess to give him shelter in her house.

And now came out the lady abbess herself to inquire into the cause of this disturbance. She was a grave and venerable lady, and wise to judge of what she saw, and she would not too hastily give up the men who had sought protection in her house; so she strictly questioned the wife about the story she told of her husband's madness, and she said, "What is the cause of this sudden distemper of your husband's? Has he lost his wealth at sea? Or is it the death of some dear friend that has disturbed his mind?" Adriana replied, that no such things as these had been the cause. "Perhaps," said the abbess, "he has fixed his affections on some other lady than you his wife; and that has driven him into this state." Adriana said she had long thought the love of some other lady was the cause of his frequent absences from home. Now it was not his love for another, but the teasing jealousy of his wife's temper, that often obliged Antipholus to leave his home; and (the abbess suspecting this from the vehemence of Adriana's manner) to learn the truth, she said, "You should have reprehended him for this." "Why so I did," replied Adriana. "Ay," said the abbess, "but perhaps not enough." Adriana, willing to convince the abbess that she had said enough to Antipholus on this subject, replied, "It was the constant subject of our conversation: in bed I would not let him sleep for speaking of it. At table I would not let him eat for speaking of it. When I was alone with him I talked of nothing else; and in company I gave him frequent hints of it. Still all my talk was how vile and bad it was in him to love any lady better than me."

The lady abbess, having drawn this full confession from the jealous Adriana, now said, "And therefore comes it that your husband is mad. The venomous clamour of a jealous woman is a more deadly poison than a mad dog's tooth. It seems his sleep was hindered by your railing: no wonder that his head is light: and his meat was sauced with your upbraidings; unquiet meals make ill digestions, and that has thrown him into this fever. You say his sports were disturbed by your brawls; being debarred from the enjoyment of society and recreation, what could ensue but dull melancholy and comfortless despair? The consequence is, then, that your jealous fits have made your husband mad."

Luciana would have excused her sister, saying, she always reprehended her husband mildly; and she said to her sister, "Why do you hear these rebukes without answering them?" But the abbess had made her so plainly perceive her fault, that she could only answer, "She has betrayed me to my own reproof."

Adriana, though ashamed of her own conduct, still insisted on having her husband delivered up to her; but the abbess would suffer no person to enter her house, nor would she deliver up this unhappy man to the care of the jealous wife, determining herself to use gentle means for his recovery; and she retired into her house again, and ordered her gates to be shut against them.

During the course of this eventful day, in which so many errors had happened from the likeness the twin brothers bore to each other, old Egeon's day of grace was passing away, it being now near sunset: and at sunset he was doomed to die if he could not pay the money.

The place of his execution was near this convent, and here he arrived just as the abbess retired into the convent; the duke attending in person, that if any offered to pay the money, he might be present to pardon him.

Adriana stopped this melancholy procession, and cried out to the duke for justice, telling him that the abbess had refused to deliver up her lunatic husband to her care. While she was speaking, her real husband and his servant Dromio, who had got loose, came before the duke to demand justice, complaining that his wife had confined him on a false charge of lunacy; and telling in what manner he had broken his bands, and eluded the

vigilance of his keepers. Adriana was strangely surprised to see her husband, when she thought he had been within the convent.

Ægeon, seeing his son, concluded this was the son who had left him to go in search of his mother and his brother; and he felt sure that this dear son would readily pay the money demanded for his ransom. He therefore spoke to Antipholus in words of fatherly affection, with joyful hope that he should now be released. But to the utter astonishment of Ægeon, his son denied all knowledge of him, as well he might, for this Antipholus had never seen his father since they were separated in the storm in his infancy; but while the poor old Ægeon was in vain endeavouring to make his son acknowledge him, thinking surely that either his griefs and the anxieties he had suffered had so strangely altered him that his son did not know him, or else that he was ashamed to acknowledge his father in his misery; in the midst of this perplexity, the lady abbess and the other Antipholus and Dromio came out, and the wondering Adriana saw two husbands and two Dromios standing before her.

And now these riddling errors, which had so perplexed them all, were clearly made out. When the duke saw the two Antipholuses and the two Dromios both so exactly alike, he at once conjectured aright of these seeming mysteries, for he remembered the story Ægeon had told him in the morning; and he said, these men must be the two sons of Ægeon and their twin slaves.

But now an unlooked-for joy indeed completed the history of Ægeon; and the tale he had in the morning told in sorrow, and under sentence of death, before the setting sun went down, was brought to a happy conclusion, for the venerable lady abbess made herself known to be the long-lost wife of Ægeon, and the fond mother of the two Antipholuses.

When the fisherwoman took the eldest Antipholus and Dromio away from her, she entered a nunnery, and by her wise and virtuous conduct she was at length made lady abbess of this convent, and in discharging the rights of hospitality to an unhappy stranger she had unknowingly protected her own son.

Joyful congratulations and affectionate greetings between these long-separated parents and their children, made them for awhile forget that Ægeon was yet under sentence of death; but when they were become a little calm, Antipholus of Ephesus offered the duke the ransom money for his father's life; but the duke

freely pardoned Ægeon, and would not take the money. And the duke went with the abbess and her newly-found husband and children into the convent, to hear this happy family discourse at leisure of the blessed ending of their adverse fortunes. And the two Dromios' humble joy must not be forgotten, they had their congratulations and greetings too, and each Dromio pleasantly complimented his brother on his good looks, being well pleased to see his own person (as in a glass) show so handsome in his brother.

Adriana had so well profited by the good counsel of her mother-in-law, that she never after cherished unjust suspicions, or was jealous of her husband.

Antipholus of Syracuse married the fair Luciana, the sister of his brother's wife; and the good old Ægeon, with his wife and sons, lived at Ephesus many years. Nor did the unravelling of these perplexities so entirely remove every ground of mistake for the future, but that sometimes, to remind them of adventures past comical blunders would happen, and the one Antipholus, and the one Dromio be mistaken for the other, making altogether a pleasant and diverting Comedy of Errors.

HAMLET, PRINCE OF DENMARK.

GERTRUDE, queen of Denmark, becoming a widow by the sudden death of king Hamlet, in less than two months after his death married his brother Claudius, which was noted by all people at the time for a strange act of indiscretion, or unfeelingness, or worse for this Claudius did noways resemble her late husband in the qualities of his person or his mind, but was as contemptible in outward appearance, as he was base and unworthy in disposition; and suspicions did not fail to arise in the minds of some, that he had privately made away with his brother, the late king, with the view of marrying his widow, and ascending the throne of Denmark, to the exclusion of young Hamlet, the son of the buried king, and lawful successor to the throne.

But upon no one did this unadvised action of the queen make such impression as upon this young prince who loved and venerated the memory of his dead father almost to idolatry, and being of a nice sense of honour, and a most exquisite practiser of propriety himself, did sorely take to heart this unworthy conduct of

his mother Gertrude : insomuch that, between grief for his father's death and shame for his mother's marriage, this young prince was overclouded with a deep melancholy, and lost all his mirth and all his good looks ; and his customary pleasure in books forsook him, his princely exercises and sports, proper to his youth, were no longer acceptable ; he grew weary of the world, which seemed to him an unweeded garden, where all the wholesome flowers were choked up, and nothing but weeds could thrive. Not that the prospect of exclusion from the throne, his lawful inheritance, weighed so much upon his spirits, though that to a young and high-minded prince was a bitter wound and a sore indignity ; but what so galled him, and took away all his cheerful spirits, was, that his mother had shown herself so forgetful to his father's memory : and such a father ! who had been to her so loving and gentle a husband ! and then she always appeared as loving and obedient a wife to him, and would hang upon him as if her affection grew to him : and now within two months, or, as it seemed to young Hamlet, less than two months, she had married again, married his uncle, her dead husband's brother, in itself a highly improper and unlawful marriage, from the nearness of relationship, but made much more so by the indecent haste with which it was concluded, and the unkingly character of the man whom she had chosen to be the partner of her throne and bed. This it was, which, more than the loss of ten kingdoms, dashed the spirits, and brought a cloud over the mind of this honourable young prince.

In vain was all that his mother Gertrude or the king could do or contrive to divert him ; he still appeared in court in a suit of deep black, as mourning for the king his father's death, which mode of dress he had never laid aside, not even in compliment to his mother upon the day she was married, nor could he be brought to join in any of the festivities or rejoicings of that (as appeared to him) disgraceful day.

What mostly troubled him was an uncertainty about the manner of his father's death. It was given out by Claudius, that a serpent had stung him : but young Hamlet had shrewd suspicions that Claudius himself was the serpent ; in plain English, that he had murdered him for his crown, and that the serpent who stung his father did now sit on his throne.

How far he was right in this conjecture, and what he ought to think of his mother,—how far she was privy to this murder, and

whether by her consent or knowledge, or without, it came to pass,—were the doubts which continually harassed and distracted him.

A rumour had reached the ear of young Hamlet, that an apparition exactly resembling the dead king his father, had been seen by the soldiers upon watch, on the platform before the palace at midnight, for two or three nights successively. The figure came constantly clad in the same suit of armour, from head to foot, which the dead king was known to have worn : and they who saw it (Hamlet's bosom-friend Horatio was one) agreed in their testimony as to the manner and time of its appearance : that it came just as the clock struck twelve ; that it looked pale, with a face more of sorrow than of anger ; that its beard was grisly, and the colour a *sable silvered*, as they had seen it in his lifetime that it made no answer when they spoke to it, yet once they thought it lifted up its head, and addressed itself to motion as if it were about to speak ; but in that moment the morning cock crew, and it shrunk in haste away, and vanished out of their sight.

The young prince, strangely amazed at their relation, which was too consistent and agreeing with itself to disbelieve, concluded that it was his father's ghost which they had seen, and determined to take his watch with the soldiers that night, that he might have a chance of seeing it, for he reasoned with himself, that such an appearance did not come for nothing, but that the ghost had something to impart, and though it had been silent hitherto, yet it would speak to him. And he waited with impatience for the coming of night.

When night came he took his stand with Horatio and Marcellus, one of the guard, upon the platform, where this apparition was accustomed to walk : and it being a cold night, and the air unusually raw and nipping, Hamlet and Horatio and their companion fell into some talk about the coldness of the night, which was suddenly broken off by Horatio announcing that the ghost was coming.

At the sight of his father's spirit, Hamlet was struck with a sudden surprise and fear. He at first called upon the angels and heavenly ministers to defend them, for he knew not whether it were a good spirit or bad : whether it came for good or for evil : but he gradually assumed more courage : and his father (as it seemed to

him) looked upon him so piteously, and as it were desiring to have conversation with him, and did in all respects appear so like himself as he was when he lived, that Hamlet could not help addressing him: he called him by his name Hamlet, King, Father! and conjured him that he would tell the reason why he had left his grave, were they had seen him quietly bestowed, to come again and visit the earth and the moonlight: and besought him that he would let them know if there was anything which they could do to give peace to his spirit. And the ghost beckoned to Hamlet, that he should go with him to some more removed place, where they might be alone: and Horatio and Marcellus would have dissuaded the young prince from following it, for they feared lest it should be some evil spirit, who would tempt him to the neighbouring sea, or to the top of some dreadful cliff, and there put on some horrible shape which might deprive the prince of his reason. But their counsels and entreaties could not alter Hamlet's determination, who cared too little about life to fear the losing of it; and as to his soul, he said, what could the spirit do to that, being a thing immortal as itself? And he felt as hardy as a lion; and bursting from them, who did all they could to hold him, he followed whithersoever the spirit led him.

And when they were alone together, the spirit broke silence, and told him that he was the ghost of Hamlet, his father, who had been cruelly murdered, and he told the manner of it; that it was done by his own brother Claudius, Hamlet's uncle, as Hamlet had already but too much suspected for the hope of succeeding to his bed and crown. That as he was sleeping in his garden, his custom always in the afternoon, this treasinous brother stole upon him in his sleep and poured the juice of poisonous henbane into his ears, which has such an antipathy to the life of man, that swift as quicksilver it courses through all the veins of the body, baking up the blood, and spreading a crust-like leprosy all over the skin; thus sleeping, by a brother's hand he was cut off at once, from his crown, his queen, and his life: and he adjured Hamlet if he did ever his dear father love, that he would revenge his foul murder. And the ghost lamented to his son, that his mother should so fall off from virtue, as to prove false to the wedded love of her first husband, and to marry his murderer: but he cautioned Hamlet, however he proceeded in his revenge against his wicked uncle, by no means to act any violence against the person of his mother, but to leave her to

Heaven, and to the stings and thorns of conscience. And Hamlet promised to observe the ghost's direction in all things, and the ghost vanished.

And when Hamlet was left alone, he took up a solemn resolution, that all he had in his memory, all that he had ever learned by books or observation, should be instantly forgotten by him, and nothing live in his brain but the memory of what the ghost had told him, and enjoined him to do. And Hamlet related the particulars of the conversation which had passed to none but his dear friend Horatio; and he enjoined both to him and Marcellus the strictest secrecy as to what they had seen that night.

The terror which the sight of the ghost had left upon the senses of Hamlet, he being weak and dispirited before, almost unhinged his mind, and drove him beside his reason. And he, fearing that it would continue to have this effect, which might subject him to observation, and set his uncle upon his guard, if he suspected that he was meditating anything against him, or that Hamlet really knew more of his father's death than he professed, took up a strange resolution, from that time to counterfeit as if he were really and truly mad; thinking that he would be less an object of suspicion when his uncle should believe him incapable of any serious project, and that his real perturbation of mind would be best covered and pass concealed under a disguise of pretended lunacy.

From this time Hamlet affected a certain wildness and strangeness in his apparel, his speech, and behaviour, and did so excellently counterfeit the madman, that the king and queen were both deceived, and not thinking his grief for his father's death a sufficient cause to produce such a distemper, for they knew not of the appearance of the ghost, they concluded that his malady was love, and they thought they had found out the object.

Before Hamlet fell into the melancholy way which has been related, he had dearly loved a fair maid called Ophelia, the daughter of Polonius, the king's chief counsellor in affairs of state. He had sent her letters and rings, and made many tenders of his affection to her, and importuned her with love in honourable fashion; and she had given belief to his vows and importunities. But the melancholy which he fell into latterly had made him neglect her, and from the time he conceived the project of counterfeiting madness, he affected to treat her with unkindness, and a

sort of rudeness ; but she, good lady, rather than reproach him with being false to her persuaded herself that it was nothing but the disease in his mind, and no settled unkindness, which had made him less observant of her than formerly : and she compared the faculties of his once noble mind and excellent understanding, impaired as they were with the deep melancholy that oppressed him, to sweet bells which in themselves are capable of most excellent music, but when jangled out of tune, or rudely handled, produce only a harsh and unpleasant sound.

Though the rough business which Hamlet had in hand, the revenging of his father's death upon his murderer, did not suit with the playful state of courtship, or admit of the society of so idle a passion as love now seemed to him, yet it could not hinder but that soft thoughts of his Ophelia would come between ; and in one of these moments, when he thought that his treatment of this gentle lady had been unreasonably harsh, he wrote her a letter full of wild starts of passion, and extravagant terms, such as agreed with his supposed madness, but mixed with some gentle touches of affection, which could not but show to this honoured lady, that a deep love for her yet lay at the bottom of his heart. He bade her to doubt the stars were fire, and to doubt that the sun did move, to doubt truth to be a liar, but never to doubt that he loved ; with more of such extravagant phrases. This letter Ophelia dutifully showed to her father, and the old man thought himself bound to communicate it to the king and queen, who from that time supposed that the true cause of Hamlet's madness was love. And the queen wished that the good beauties of Ophelia might be the happy cause of his wildness, for so she hoped that her virtues might happily restore him to his accustomed way again, to both their honours.

But Hamlet's malady lay deeper than she supposed, or than could be so cured. His father's ghost, which he had seen, still haunted his imagination, and the sacred injunction to revenge his murder gave him no rest till it was accomplished. Every hour of delay seemed to him a sin, and a violation of his father's commands. Yet how to compass the death of the king, surrounded as he constantly was with his guards, was no easy matter. Or if it had been, the presence of the queen, Hamlet's mother, who was generally with the king, was a restraint upon his purpose, which he could not break through. Besides, the very circumstance that the usurper was his mother's husband, filled him with some

remorse, and still blunted the edge of his purpose. The more act of putting a fellow-creature to death was in itself odious and terrible to a disposition naturally so gentle as Hamlet's was. His very melancholy, and the dejection of spirits he had so long been in, produced an irresoluteness and wavering of purpose, which kept him from proceeding to extremities. Moreover, he could not help having some scruples upon his mind, whether the spirit which he had seen was indeed his father, or whether it might not be the devil, who he had heard has power to take any form he pleases, and who might have assumed his father's shape only to take advantage of his weakness and his melancholy, to drive him to the doing of so desperate an act as murder. And he determined that he would have more certain grounds to go upon than a vision, or apparition, which might be a delusion.

While he was in this irresolute mind, there came to the court certain players, in whom Hamlet formerly used to take delight, and particularly to hear one of them speak a tragical speech, describing the death of old Priam, king of Troy, with the grief of Hecuba, his queen. Hamlet welcomed his old friends, the players, and remembering how that speech had formerly given him pleasure, requested the player to repeat it; which he did in so lively a manner, setting forth the cruel murder of the feeble old king, with the destruction of his people and city by fire, and the mad grief of the old queen, running barefoot up and down the palace, with a poor clout upon that head where a crown had been, and with nothing but a blanket upon her loins, snatched up in haste, where she had worn a royal robe; that not only it drew tears from all that stood by who thought they saw the real scene, so lively was it represented but even the player himself delivered it with a broken voice and real tears. This put Hamlet upon thinking, if that player could so work himself up to passion by a mere fictitious speech, to weep for one that he had never seen, for Hecuba, that had been dead so many hundred years, how dull was he, who having a real motive and cue for passion, a real king and a dear father murdered, was yet so little moved, that his revenge all this while had seemed to have slept in dull and muddy forgetfulness! And while he meditated on actors and acting, and the powerful effects which a good play, represented to the life, has upon the spectator, he remembered the instance of some murderer, who seeing a murder on the stage, was by the mere force of the scene and resemblance of circumstances

so affected, that on the spot he confessed the crime which he had committed. And he determined that these players should play something like the murder of his father before his uncle, and he would watch narrowly what effect it might have upon him, and from his looks he would be able to gather with more certainty if he were the murderer or not. To this effect he ordered a play to be prepared, to the representation of which he invited the king and queen.

The story of the play was of a murder done in Vienna upon a duke. The duke's name was Gonzago, his wife Baptista. The play showed how one Lucianus, a near relation to the duke, poisoned him in his garden for his estate, and how the murderer in a short time after got the love of Gonzago's wife.

At the representation of his play, the king, who did not know the trap which was laid for him, was present, with his queen and the whole court; Hamlet sitting attentively near him to observe his looks. The play began with a conversation between Gonzago and his wife, in which the lady made many protestations of love, and of never marrying a second husband, if she should outlive Gonzago; wishing she might be accursed if ever she took a second husband, and adding that no woman ever did so but those wicked women who kill their first husbands. Hamlet observed the king his uncle, change colour at this expression, and that it was as bad as wormwood both to him and to the queen. But when Lucianus, according to the story, came to poison Gonzago sleeping in the garden, the strong resemblance which it bore to his own wicked net upon the late king, his brother, whom he had poisoned in his garden, so struck upon the conscience of this usurper, that he was unable to sit out the rest of the play, but on a sudden calling for lights to his chamber, and asserting or partly feeling a sudden sickness, he abruptly left the theatre. The king being departed, the play was given over. Now Hamlet had seen enough to feel satisfied that the words of the ghost were true and no illusion; and in a fit of gaiety, like that which comes over a man who suddenly has some great doubt or scruple resolved he swore to Horatio, that he would take the ghost's word for a thousand pounds. But before he could make up his resolution as to what measures of revenge he should take, now he was certainly informed that his uncle was his father's murderer, he was sent for by the queen, his mother, to a private conference in her closet.

It was by desire of the king that the queen sent for Hamlet, that she might signify to her son how much his late behaviour had displeased them both ; and the king, wishing to know all that passed at that conference, and thinking that the too partial report of a mother might let slip some part of Hamlet's words, which it might much import the king to know, Polonius, the old counsellor of state, was ordered to plant himself behind the hangings in the queen's closet, where he might unseen hear all that passed. This artifice was particularly adapted to the disposition of Polonius, who was a man grown old in crooked maxims and policies of state, and delighted to get at the knowledge of matters in an indirect and cunning way.

Hamlet being come to his mother, she began to tax him in the roundest way with his actions and behaviour, and she told him that he had given great offence to *his father*, meaning the king his uncle, whom, because he had married her, she called Hamlet's father. Hamlet, sorely indignant that she should give so dear an honoured a name as father seemed to him, to a wretch who was indeed no better than the murderer of his true father, with some sharpness replied, "Mother, *you* have much offended *my father*." The queen said that was but an idle answer. "As good as the question deserved," said Hamlet. The queen asked him if he had forgotten who it was he was speaking to? "Alas!" replied Hamlet. "I wish I could forget. You are the queen, your husband's brother's wife ; and you are my mother ; I wish you were not what you are." "Nay, then," said the queen, "if you show me so little respect, I will send those to you that can speak," and was going to send the king or Polonius to him. But Hamlet would not let her go, now he had her alone, till he had tried if his words could not bring her to some sense of her wicked life ; and, taking her by the wrist, he held her fast, and made her sit down. She, affrighted at his earnest manner, and fearful lest in his lunacy he should do her a mischief, cried out : and a voice was heard from behind the hangings, "Help, help the queen !" which Hamlet hearing, and verily thinking it was the king himself there concealed, he drew his sword, and stabbed at the place where the voice came from, as he would have stabbed a rat that ran there, till the voice ceasing, he concluded the person to be dead. But when he dragged forth the body, it was not the king, but Polonius the old officious counsellor, that had planted himself as a spy behind the hangings. "O me !"

exclaimed the queen, "what a rash and bloody deed you have done!" "A bloody deed, mother," replied Hamlet, "but not so bad as yours, who killed a king, and married his brother." Hamlet had gone too far to leave off here. He was now in the humour to speak plainly to his mother, and he pursued it. And though the faults of parents are to be tenderly treated by their children, yet in the case of great crimes the son may have leave to speak even to his own mother with some harshness, so as that harshness is meant for her good, and to turn her from her wicked ways, and not done for the purpose of upbraiding. And now this virtuous prince did in moving terms represent to the queen the heinousness of her offence, in being so forgetful of the dead king, his father, as in so short a space of time to marry with his brother and reputed murderer: such an act as, after the vows which she had sworn to her first husband, was enough to make all vows of women suspected, and all virtue to be accounted hypocrisy, wedding contracts to be less than gamesters' oaths, and religion to be a mockery and a mere form of words. He said she had done such a deed, that the heavens blushed at it, and the earth was sick of her because of it. And he showed her two pictures, the one of the late king, her first husband, and the other of the present king, her second husband and he bade her mark the difference: what a grace was on the brow of his father, how like a god he looked! the curls of Apollo, the forehead of Jupiter, the eye of Mars, and a posture like to Mercury newly alighted on some heaven-kissing hill: this man *had been* her husband. And then he showed her whom she had got in his stead: how like a blight or a mildew he looked, for so he had blasted his wholesome brother. And the queen was sore ashamed that he should so turn her eyes inward upon her soul, which she now saw so black and deformed. And he asked her how she could continue to live with this man, and be a wife to him, who had murdered her first husband, and got the crown by as false means as a thief—And just as he spoke, the ghost of his father, such as he was in his lifetime, and such as he had lately seen it, entered the room, and Hamlet, in great terror, asked what it would have; and the ghost said that it came to remind him of the revenge he had promised, which Hamlet seemed to have forgot: and the ghost bade him speak to his mother, for the grief and terror she was in would else kill her. It then vanished, and was seen by none but Hamlet, neither could he by pointing to where it stood, or by any description, make his mother perceive it, who was

terribly frightened all this while to hear him conversing, as it seemed to her, with nothing : and she imputed it to the disorder of his mind. But Hamlet begged her not to flatter her wicked soul in such a manner as to think that it was his madness, and not her own offences, which had brought his father's spirit again on the earth. And he bade her feel his pulse, how temperately it beat, not like a madman's. And he begged of her with tears, to confess herself to Heaven for what was passed, and for the future to avoid the company of the king, and be no more as a wife to him : and when she should show herself a mother to him, by respecting his father's memory, he would ask a blessing of her as a son. And she promising to observe his directions, the conference ended.

And now Hamlet was at leisure to consider who it was that in his unfortunate rashness he had killed : and when he came to see that it was Polonius, the father of the lady Ophelia, whom he so dearly loved, he drew apart the dead body, and, his spirits being a little quieter, he wept for what he had done.

This unfortunate death of Polonius gave the king a pretence for sending Hamlet out of the kingdom. He would willingly have put him to death, fearing him as dangerous ; but he dreaded the people, who loved Hamlet ; and the queen, who with all her faults, doted upon the prince, her son. So this subtle king under pretence of providing for Hamlet's safety, that he might not be called to account for Polonius's death, caused him to be conveyed on board a ship bound for England, under the care of two courtiers, by whom he despatched letters to the English court, which at that time was in subjection and paid tribute to Denmark, requiring, for special reasons there pretended, that Hamlet should be put to death as soon as he landed on English ground. Hamlet, suspecting some treachery, in the night time secretly got at the letters, and skilfully erasing his own name, he in the stead of it put in the name of those two courtiers, who had the charge of him to be put to death : then sealing up the letters, he put them into their place again. Soon after the ship was attacked by pirates and a sea-fight commenced ; in the course of which Hamlet, desirous to show his valour, with sword in hand singly boarded the enemy's vessel : while his own ship, in a cowardly manner, bore away, and leaving him to his fate, the two courtiers made the best of their way to England, charged with those letters the sense of which Hamlet had altered to their own deserved destruction.

The pirates, who had the prince in their power, showed themselves gentle enemies: and knowing whom they had got prisoner, in the hope that the prince might do them a good turn at court in recompense for any favour they might show him, they set Hamlet on shore at the nearest port in Denmark. From that place Hamlet wrote to the king, acquainting him with the strange chance which had brought him back to his own country, and saying that on the next day he should present himself before his Majesty. When he got home a sad spectacle offered itself the first thing to his eyes.

This was the funeral of the young and beautiful Ophelia, his once dear mistress. The wits of this young lady had begun to turn ever since her poor father's death. That he should die a violent death, and by the hands of the prince whom she loved, so affected this tender young maid, that in a little time she grew perfectly distracted, and would go about giving flowers away to the ladies of the court, and saying that they were for her father's burial, singing songs about love and about death, and sometimes such as had no meaning at all, as if she had no memory of what happened to her. There was a willow which grew slanting over a brook, and reflected its leaves in the stream. To this brook she came one day when she was unwatched, with garlands she had been making, mixed up of daisies and nettles, flowers and weeds together, and clambering up to hang her garland upon the boughs of the willow, a bough broke and precipitated this fair young maid, garland, and all that she had gathered, into the water, where her clothes bore her up for a while, during which she chanted scraps of old tunes like one insensible to her own distress, or as if she were a creature natural to that element: but long it was not, before her garments, heavy with the wet, pulled her in from her melodious singing to a muddy and miserable death. It was the funeral of this fair maid which her brother Laertes was celebrating, the king and queen and whole court being present, when Hamlet arrived. He knew not what all this show imported, but stood on one side, not inclining to interrupt the ceremony. He saw the flowers strewed upon her grave, as the custom was in maiden burials, which the queen herself threw in: and as she threw them, she said, "Sweets to the sweet! I thought to have decked thy bride-bed, sweet maid, not to have strewed thy grave. Thou shouldst have been my Hamlet's wife." And he heard her brother wish that violets might spring from

her gave ; and he saw him leap into the grave all frantic with grief, and bid the attendants pile mountains of earth upon him, that he might be buried with her. And Hamlet's love for this fair maid came back to him, and he could not bear that a brother should show so much transport of grief, for he thought that he loved Ophelia better than forty thousand brothers. Then discovering himself, he leaped into the grave where Laertes was, all as frantic or more frantic than he, and Laertes knowing him to be Hamlet, who had been the cause of his father's and his sister's death, grappled him by the throat as an enemy, till the attendants parted them : and Hamlet, after the funeral, excused his hasty act in throwing himself into the the grave as if to brave Laertes ; but he said he could not bear that any one should seem to outgo him in grief for the death of the fair Ophelia. And for the time these two noble youths seemed reconciled.

But out of the grief and anger of Laertes for the death of his father and Ophelia, the king, Hamlet's wicked uncle, contrived destruction for Hamlet. He set on Laertes, under cover of peace and reconciliation, to challenge Hamlet to a friendly trial of skill at fencing, which Hamlet accepting, a day was appointed to try the match. At this match all the court was present, and Laertes, by direction of the king prepared a poisoned weapon. Upon this match great wagers were laid by the courtiers, as both Hamlet and Laertes were known to excel at this sword-play ; and Hamlet taking up the foils chose one, not at all suspecting the treachery of Laertes or being careful to examine Laertes' weapon, who, instead of a foil or blunted sword, which the laws of fencing require, made use of one with a point, and poisoned. At first Laertes did but play with Hamlet, and suffered him to gain some advantages, which the dissembling king magnified and extolled beyond measure, drinking to Hamlet's success, and wagering rich bets upon the issue : but after a few passes, Laertes growing warm, made a deadly thrust at Hamlet with his poisoned weapon, and gave him a mortal blow. Hamlet incensed, but not knowing the whole of the treachery, in the scuffle exchanged his own innocent weapon for Laertes' deadly one, and with a thrust of Laertes' own sword repaid Laertes home, who was thus justly caught in his own treachery. In this instant the queen shrieked out that she was poisoned. She had inadvertently drunk out of a bowl which the king had prepared for Hamlet, in case that being warm in fencing he should call for drink ; into this the treacherous king

had infused a deadly poison, to make sure of Hamlet, if Laertes had failed. He had forgotten to warn the queen of the bowl, which she drank of, and immediately died, exclaiming with her last breath that she was poisoned. Hamlet suspecting some treachery, ordered the doors to be shut, while he sought it out. Laertes told him to seek no further, for he was the traitor; and feeling his life go away with the wound which Hamlet had given him, he made confession of the treachery he had used, and how he had fallen a victim to it: and he told Hamlet of the envenomed point, and said that Hamlet had not half an hour to live, for no medicine could cure him; and begging forgiveness of Hamlet, he died, with his last words accusing the king of being the contriver of the mischief. When Hamlet saw his end draw near, there being yet some venom left upon the sword, he suddenly turned upon his false uncle, and thrust the point of it to his heart, fulfilling the promise which he had made to his father's spirit whose injunction was now accomplished, and his foul murder revenged upon the murderer. Then Hamlet feeling his breath fail and life departing, turned to his dear friend Horatio, who had been spectator of this fatal tragedy; and with his dying breath requested him that he would live to tell his story to the world (for Horatio had made a motion as if he would slay himself to accompany the prince in death; and Horatio promised that he would make a true report, as one that was privy to all the circumstances. And, thus satisfied, the noble heart of Hamlet cracked: and Horatio and the bystanders with many tears commended the spirit of their sweet prince to the guardianship of angels. For Hamlet was a loving and a gentle prince, and greatly beloved for his many noble and prince-like qualities: and if he had lived, would no doubt have proved a most royal and complete king to Denmark

THE TEMPEST.

THERE was a certain island in the sea, the only inhabitants of which were an old man, whose name was Prospero, and his daughter Miranda, a very beautiful young lady. She came to this island so young, that she had no memory of having seen any other human face than her father's.

They lived, in a cave or cell, made out of a rock: it was divided into several apartments, one of which Prospero called his

study ; there he kept his books, which chiefly treated of magic ; a study at that time much affected by all learned men : and the knowledge of this art he found very useful to him ; for being thrown by a strange chance upon this island, which had been enchanted by a witch called Sycorax, who died there a short time before his arrival, Prospero, by virtue of his art, released many good spirits that Sycorax had imprisoned in the bodies of large trees, because they had refused to execute her wicked commands. These gentle spirits were ever after obedient to the will of Prospero. Of these Ariel was the chief.

The lively little sprite Ariel had nothing mischievous in his nature, except that he took rather too much pleasure in tormenting an ugly monster called Caliban, for he owed him a grudge because he was the son of his old enemy Sycorax. This Caliban Prospero found in the woods, a strange misshapen thing, far less human in form than an ape ; he took him home to his cell, and taught him to speak, and Prospero would have been very kind to him, but the bad nature which Caliban inherited from his mother Sycorax, would not let him learn any thing good or useful ; therefore he was employed like a slave, to fetch wood, and do the most laborious offices, and Ariel had the charge of compelling him to these services.

When Caliban was lazy and neglected his work, Ariel (who was invisible to all eyes but Prospero's) would come slyly and pinch him, and sometimes tumble him down in the mire : and then Ariel, in the likeness of an ape, would make mouths at him. Then swiftly changing his shape, in the likeness of a hedgehog he would lie tumbling in Caliban's way, who feared the hedgehog's sharp quills would prick his bare feet. With a variety of such like vexations tricks Ariel would often torment him whenever Caliban neglected the work which Prospero commanded him to do.

Having these powerful spirits obedient to his will, Prospero could by their means command the winds, and the waves of the sea. By his orders they raised a violent storm, in the midst of which, and struggling with the wild sea-waves that every moment threatened to swallow it up, he showed his daughter a fine large ship, which he told her was full of living beings like themselves. "O my dear father," said she, "if by your art you have raised this dreadful storm, have pity on their sad distress. See ! the vessel will be dashed to pieces. Poor souls ! they will all perish. If

I had power, I would sink the sea beneath the earth, rather than the good ship should be destroyed, with all the precious souls within her."

"Be not so amazed, daughter Miranda," said Prospero; "there is no harm done. I have so ordered it, that no person in the ship shall receive any hurt. What I have done has been in care of you, my dear child. You are ignorant who you are, or where you came from, and you know no more of me, but that I am your father, and live in this poor cave. Can you remember a time before you came to this cell? I think you cannot, for you were not then three years of age."

"Certainly I can, sir," replied Miranda.

"By what?" asked Prospero; "by any other house or person? Tell me what you can remember, my child."

Miranda said, "It seems to me like the recollection of a dream. But had I not once four or five women who attended upon me?"

Prospero answered, "You had, and more. How is it that this still lives in your mind? Do you remember how you came here?"

"No, sir," said Miranda, "I remember nothing more."

"Twelve years ago, Miranda," continued Prospero, "I was duke of Milan, and you were a princess and my only heir. I had a younger brother, whose name was Antonio, to whom I trusted everything; and as I was fond of retirement and deep study, I commonly left the management of my state affairs to your uncle, my false brother (for so indeed he proved). I, neglecting all worldly ends, buried among my books, did dedicate my whole time to the bettering of my mind. My brother Antonio being thus in possession of my power, began to think himself the duke indeed. The opportunity I gave him of making himself popular among my subjects awakened in his bad nature a proud ambition to deprive me of my dukedom; this he soon effected with the aid of the king of Naples, a powerful prince, who was my enemy."

"Wherefore," said Miranda, "did they not that hour destroy us?"

"My child," answered her father, "they durst not, so dear was the love that my people bore me. Antonio carried us on board a ship, and when we were some leagues out at sea, he

forced us into a small boat, without either tackle, sail, or mast : there he left us as he thought to perish. But a kind lord of my court, one Gonzalo, who loved me, had privately placed in the boat water, provision, apparel, and some books which I prize above my dukedom."

"O my father," said Miranda, "what a trouble must I have been to you then!"

"No, my love," said Prospero, "you were a little cherub that did preserve me. Your innocent smiles made me to bear up against my misfortunes. Our food lasted till we landed on this desert island, since when my chief delight has been in teaching you, Miranda, and well have you profited by my instructions."

"Heaven thank you, my dear father," said Miranda. "Now pray tell me, sir, your reason for raising this sea storm."

"Know then," said her father, "that by means of this storm my enemies, the king of Naples, and my cruel brother, are cast ashore upon this island."

Having so said, Prospero gently touched his daughter with his magic wand, and she fell fast asleep: for the spirit Ariel just then presented himself before his master, to give an account of the tempest, and how he had disposed of the ship's company; and, though the spirits were always invisible to Miranda, Prospero did not choose she should hear him holding converse (as would seem to her) with the empty air.

"Well, my brave spirit," said Prospero to Ariel, "how have you performed your task?"

Ariel gave a lively description of the storm, and of the terror of the mariners; and how the king's son Ferdinand, was the first who leaped into the sea, and his father thought he saw this dear son swallowed up by the waves and lost. "But he is safe," said Ariel. "in a corner of the isle, sitting with his arms folded sadly, lamenting the loss of the king his father whom he concludes drowned. Not a hair of his head is injured, and his princely garments, though drenched in the sea-waves, look fresher than before."

"That's my delicate Ariel," said Prospero. Bring him hither: my daughter must see this young prince. Where is the king and my brother?"

"I left them," answered Ariel, "searching for Ferdinand, whom they have little hopes of finding thinking they saw him perish. Of the ship's crew not one is missing; though each one thinks himself the only one saved; and the ship, though invisible to them, is safe in the harbour."

"Ariel," said Prospero, "thy charge is faithfully performed; but there is more work yet."

"Is there more work?" said Ariel. Let me remind you, master, you have promised me my liberty. I pray, remember, I have done you worthy service, told you no lies, made no mistakes, served you without grudge or grumbling."

"How now," said Prospero. "You do not recollect what a torment I freed you from. Have you forgotten the wicked witch Sycorax, who with age and envy was almost bent double? Where was she born? Speak: tell me."

"Sir, in Algiers," said Ariel.

"Oh, was she so?" said Prospero. "I must recount what you have been, which I find you do not remember. This bad witch Sycorax, for her witchcrafts, too terrible to enter human hearing, was banished from Algiers, and here left by the sailors; and because you were a spirit too delicate to execute her wicked commands, she shut you up in a tree, where I found you howling. This torment, remember, I did free you from."

"Pardon me dear master," said Ariel, ashamed to seem ungrateful; "I will obey your commands."

"Do so," said Prospero, "and I will set you free." He then gave orders what farther he would have him do, and away went Ariel, first to where he had left Ferdinand, and found him still sitting on the grass in the same melancholy posture."

"O my young gentleman," said Ariel, when he saw him. "I will soon move you. You must be brought, I find, for the Lady Miranda to have a sight of your pretty person. Come sir, follow me." He then began singing—

"Full fathom five thy father lies;
Of his bones are coral made;
Those are pearls that were his eyes:
Nothing of him that doth fade,
But doth suffer a sea-change
Into something rich and strange
Sea-nymphs hourly ring his knell:
Hark now I hear them, ding-dong-bell!"

This strange news of his lost father soon roused the prince from the stupid fit into which he had fallen. He followed in amazement the sound of Ariel's voice, till it led him to Prospero and Miranda, who were seated under the shade of a large tree. Now Miranda had never seen a man before, except her own father.

"Miranda," said Prospero, "tell me what you are looking at yonder."

"O father," said Miranda, in a strange surprise, "surely that is a spirit. Lord! how it looks about! Believe me, sir, it is a beautiful creature. Is it not a spirit?"

"No, girl," answered her father: "it eats, and sleeps, and has senses such as we have. This young man you see was in the ship. He is somewhat altered by grief, or you might call him a handsome person. He has lost his companions, and is wandering about to find them."

Miranda, who thought all men had grave faces and gray beards like her father, was delighted with the appearance of this beautiful young prince; and Ferdinand, seeing such a lovely lady in this desert place, and from the strange sounds he had heard expected nothing but wonders, thought he was upon an enchanted island, and that Miranda was the goddess of the place, and as such he began to address her.

She timidly answered, she was no goddess, but a simple maid, and was going to give an account of herself when Prospero interrupted her. He was well pleased to find they admired each other, for he plainly perceived they had (as we say) fallen in love at first sight; but to try Ferdinand's constancy, he resolved to throw some difficulties in their way: therefore advancing forward, he addressed the prince with a stern air, telling him, came to the island as a spy, to take it from him who was the lord of it." "Follow me," said he, "I will tie you neck and feet together. You shall drink sea-water: shell fish, withered roots, and husks of acorns, shall be your food." "No," said Ferdinand, "I will resist such entertainment, till I see a more powerful enemy," and drew his sword: but Prospero, waving his magic wand, fixed him to the spot where he stood, so that he had no power to move.

Miranda hung upon her father, saying. "Why are you so nugentle? Have pity, sir; I will be his surety. This is the second man I ever saw, and to me he seems a true one."

"Silence," said her father, "one word more will make me chide you, girl! What! an advocate for an impastor! You think there are no more such fine men, having seen only him and Caliban. I tell you, foolish girl, most men as far excel this, as he does Caliban." This he said to prove his daughter's constancy and she replied, "My affections are most humble. I have no wish to see a goodlier man."

"Come on, young man," said Prospero to the Prince, "you have no power to disobey me."

"I have not indeed," answered Ferdinand; and not knowing it was by magic he was deprived of all power of resistance, he was astonished to find he was so strangely compelled to follow Prospero: looking back on Miranda as long as he could see her, he said, as he went after Prospero into the cave, "My spirits are all bound up, as if I were in a dream; but this man's threats, and the weakness which I feel, would seem light to me if from my prison I might once a day behold this fair maid."

Prospero kept Ferdinand not long confined within the cell; he soon brought out his prisoner, and set him a severe task to perform, taking care to let his daughter know the hard labour he had imposed on him and then pretending to go into his study, he secretly watched them both.

Prospero had commanded Ferdinand to pile up some heavy logs of wood Kings' sous not being much used to laborious work, Miranda soon after found her lover almost dying with fatigue. "Alas" said she, "do not work so hard; my father is at his studies, he is safe for these three hours: pray rest yourself."

"O my dear lady," said Ferdinand, "I dare not. I must finish my task before I take my rest."

"If you will sit down," said Miranda, "I will carry your logs the while." But this Ferdinand would by no means agree to. Instead of a help, Miranda became a hinderance, for they began a long conversation, so that the business of log-carrying went on very slowly.

Prospero, who had enjoined Ferdinand this task merely as a trial of his love, was not at his books as his daughter supposed, but was standing by them invisible, to overhear, what they said.

Ferdinand inquired her name, which she told him, saying it was against her father's express command she did so.

Prospero only smiled at this first instance of his daughter's disobedience, for having by his magic art caused his daughter to fall in love so suddenly he was not angry that she showed her love by forgetting to obey his commands. And he listened well pleased to a long speech of Ferdinand's in which he professed to love her above all the ladies he ever saw.

In answer to his praises of her beauty, which he said exceeded all the women in the world, she replied, I do not remember the face of any woman. nor have I seen any more men than you, my good friend, and my dear father. How features are abroad, I know not; but believe me, sir, I would not wish any companion in the world but you, nor can my imagination form any shape but yours that I could like. But, sir, I fear I talk to you too freely, and my father's precepts I forget."

At this Prospero smiled, and nodded his head, as much as to say, "This goes on exactly as I could wish; my girl will be queen of Naples."

And then Ferdinand, in another fine long speech (for young princes speak in courtly phrases) told the innocent Miranda he was heir to the crown of Naples, and that she should be his queen.

"Ah! sir," said she, "I am a fool to weep at what I am glad of. I will answer you in plain and holy innocence. I am your wife, if you will marry me."

Prospero prevented Ferdinand's thanks by appearing visible before them.

"Fear nothing, my child," said he; "I have overheard, and approve of all you have said. And, Ferdinand, if I have too severely used you, I will make you nice amends, by giving you my daughter. All your vexations were but my trials of your love, and you have nobly stood the test. Then as my gift, which your true love has worthily purchased, take my daughter, and do not smile that I boast she is above all praise." He then, telling them that he had business which required his presence, desired they would sit down and talk together, till he returned; and this command Miranda seemed not at all disposed to disobey.

When Prospero left them, he called his spirit Ariel, who quickly appeared before him eager to relate what he had done with Prospero's brother and the king of Naples. Ariel said, he had left them almost out of their senses with fear, at the strange things he had caused them to see and hear. When fatigued with wandering about, and famished for want of food, he had suddenly set before them a delicious banquet, and then, just as they were going to eat, he appeared visible before them in the shape of a harpy, a voracious monster with wings, and the feast vanished away. Then, to their utter amazement this seeming harpy spoke to them, reminding them of their cruelty in driving Prospero from his dukedom, and leaving him and his infant daughter to perish in the sea; saying, that for this cause these terrors were suffered to afflict them.

The king of Naples, and Antonio the false brother, repented the injustice they had done to Prospero: and Ariel told his master he was certain their penitence was sincere, and that he, though a spirit, could not but pity them.

"Then bring them hither Ariel," said Prospero: "if you, who are but a spirit, feel for their distress, shall not I, who am a human being like themselves have compassion on them? Bring them quickly, my dainty Ariel."

Ariel soon returned with the king, Antonio, and old Gonzalo in their train, who had followed him wondering at the wild music he played in the air to draw them on to his master's presence. This Gonzalo was the same who had so kindly provided Prospero formerly with books and provisions, when his wicked brother left him, as he thought, to perish in an open boat in the sea.

Grief and terror had so stupefied their senses, that they did not know Prospero. He first discovered himself to the good old Gonzalo, calling him the preserver of his life; and then his brother and the king knew that he was the injured Prospero.

Antonio with tears, and sad words of sorrow and true repentance, implored his brother's forgiveness; and the king expressed his sincere remorse for having assisted Antonio to depose his brother: and Prospero forgave them; and, upon their engaging to restore his dukedom, he said to the king of Naples, "I have a gift in store for you too," and opening a door, showed him his son Ferdinand, playing at chess with Miranda.

Nothing could exceed the joy of the father and the son at this unexpected meeting, for they each thought the other drowned in the storm.

"O wonder!" said Miranda, "what noble creatures these are! it must surely be a brave world that has such people in it."

The king of Naples was almost as much astonished at the beauty and excellent graces of the young Miranda, as his son had been. "Who is this maid?" said he; "she seems the goddess that has parted us, and brought us thus together." "No, sir," answered Ferdinand, smiling to find his father had fallen into the same mistake that he had done when he first saw Miranda, "she is a mortal, but by immortal Providence she is mine: I chose her when I could not ask you, my father, for your consent, not thinking you were alive. She is the daughter to this Prospero, who is the famous duke of Milan, of whose renown I have heard so much, but never saw him till now: of him I have received new life: he has made himself to me a second father, giving me this dear lady."

"Then I must be her father," said the king: "but oh! how oddly will it sound, that I must ask my child forgiveness"

"No more of that," said Prospero: "let us not remember our troubles past, since they so happily have ended." And then Prospero embraced his brother, and again assured him of his forgiveness; and said that a wise, overruling Providence had permitted that he should be driven from his poor dukedom of Milan, that his daughter might inherit the crown of Naples, for that by their meeting in this desert island, it had happened that the king's son had loved Miranda.

These kind words which Prospero spoke, meaning to comfort his brother, so filled Antonio with shame and remorse, that he wept and was unable to speak; and the kind old Gonzalo wept to see this joyful reconciliation, and prayed for blessings on the young couple.

Prospero now told them that their ship was safe in the harbour, and the sailors all on board her, and that he and his daughter would accompany them home the next morning. "In the meantime," said he, "partake of such refreshments as my poor cave affords; and for your evening's entertainment I will relate the history of my life from my first landing in this desert island." He then called for Caliban to prepare some food, and set the cave

in order and the company were astonished at the uncouth form and savage appearance of this ugly monster, who (Prospero said) was the only attendant he had to wait upon him.

Before Prospero left the island he dismissed Ariel from his service, to the great joy of that lively little spirit, who though he had been a faithful servant to his master, was always longing to enjoy his free liberty, to wander uncontrolled in the air, like a wild bird, under green trees, among pleasant fruits, and sweet-smelling flowers. "My quaint Ariel," said Prospero to the little sprite when he made him free, "I shall miss you; yet you shall have your freedom." "Thank you, my dear master," said Ariel; "but give me leave to attend your ship home with prosperous gales, before you bid farewell to the assistance of your faithful spirit: and then, master, when I am free how merrily I shall live!" Here Ariel sung this pretty song:

"Where the bee sucks, there suck I;
In a cowslip's bell I lie:
There I couch when owls do cry.
On the bat's back I do fly
After summer merrily
Merrily, merrily, shall I live now
Under the blossom that hangs on the bough."

Prospero then buried deep in the earth his magical books and wand, for he was resolved never more to make use of the magic art. And having thus overcome his enemies, and being reconciled to his brother and the king of Naples, nothing now remained to complete his happiness, but to revisit his native land, to take possession of his dukedom, and to witness the happy nuptials of his daughter Miranda and Prince Ferdinand, which the king said should be instantly celebrated with great splendour on their return to Naples. At which place, under the safe convoy of the spirit Ariel, they after a pleasant voyage soon arrived.

AS YOU LIKE IT.

DURING the time that France was divided into provinces (or dukedoms as they were called) there reigned in one of these provinces an usurper, who had deposed and banished his elder brother, the lawful duke.

The duke, who was thus driven from his dominions, retired with a few faithful followers to the forest of Arden; and here the

they wished to see a wrestling match, which was just going to begin, they must come instantly to the court before the palace; and Celia, thinking it would amuse Rosalind, agreed to go and see it.

In those times wrestling, which is only practised now by country clowns, was a favourite sport even in the courts of princes, and before fair ladies and princesses. To this wrestling match therefore Celia and Rosalind went. They found that it was likely to prove a very tragical sight; for a large and powerful man, who had long been practised in the art of wrestling, and had slain many men in contests of this kind, was just going to wrestle with a very young man, who, from his extreme youth and inexperience in the art, the beholders all thought would certainly be killed.

When the duke saw Celia and Rosalind, he said, "How now, daughter and niece, are you crept hither to see the wrestling? You will take little delight in it, there is such odds in the men: in pity to this young man, I would wish to persuade him from wrestling. Speak to him, ladies, and see if you can move him."

The ladies were well pleased to perform this humane office, and first Celia entreated the young stranger that he would desist from the attempt; and then Rosalind spoke so kindly to him, and with such feeling consideration for the danger he was about to undergo, that instead of being persuaded by her gentle words to forego his purpose, all his thoughts were bent to distinguish himself by his courage in this lovely lady's eyes. He refused the request of Celia and Rosalind in such graceful and modest words, that they felt still more concern for him: he concluded his refusal with saying, "I am sorry to deny such fair and excellent ladies anything. But let your fair eyes and gentle wishes go with me to my trial, wherein if I be conquered, there is one shamed that was never gracious; if I am killed, there is one dead that is willing to die. I shall do my friends no wrong, for I have none to lament me: the world no injury, for in it I have nothing; for I only fill up a place in the world which may be better supplied when I have made it empty."

And now the wrestling match began. Celia wished the young stranger might not be hurt: but Rosalind felt most for him. The friendless state which he said he was in, and that he wished to die, made Rosalind think that he was, like herself, unfortunate; and she pitied him so much, and so deep an interest she

took in his danger while he was wrestling, that she might almost be said at that moment to have fallen in love with him.

The kindness shown this unknown youth by these fair and noble ladies gave him courage and strength, so that he performed wonders ; and in the end completely conquered his antagonist, who was so much hurt, that for a while he was unable to speak or move.

The duke Frederick was much pleased with the courage and skill shown by this young stranger ; and desired to know his name and parentage, meaning to take him under his protection.

The stranger said his name was Orlando, and that he was the youngest son of Sir Rowland de Boys.

Sir Rowland de Boys, the father of Orlando, had been dead some years ; but when he was living, he had been a true subject and dear friend to the banished duke ; therefore when Frederick heard Orlando was the son of his banished brother's friend all his liking for this brave young man was changed into displeasure, and he left the place in very ill humour. Hating to hear the very name of any of his brother's friends, and yet still admiring the valour of the youth, he said, as he went out, that he wished Orlando had been the son of any other man.

Rosalind was delighted to hear that her new favourite was the son of her father's old friend : and she said to Celia, " My father loved Sir Rowland de Boys, and if I had known this young man was his son, I would have added tears to my entreaties before he should have ventured."

The ladies then went up to him ; and seeing him abashed by the sudden displeasure shown by the duke, they spoke kind and encouraging words to him ; and Rosalind, when they were going away, turned back to speak some more civil things to the brave young son of her father's old friend ; and taking a chain from off her neck, she said, " Gentleman, wear this for me. I am out of suits with fortune, or I would give you a more valuable present."

When the ladies were alone, Rosalind's talk being still of Orlando, Celia began to perceive her cousin had fallen in love with the handsome young wrestler, and she said to Rosalind, " Is it possible you should fall in love so suddenly ? " Rosalind replied, " The duke, my father, loved his father dearly." But, said Celia, " does it therefore follow that you should love his son

dearly ? for then I ought to hate him, for my father hated his father ; yet I do not hate Orlando."

Frederick being enraged at the sight of Sir Rowland de Boys' son, which reminded him of the many friends the banished duke had among the nobility, and having been for some time displeased with his niece, because the people praised her for her virtues, and pitied her for her good father's sake, his malice suddenly broke out against her ; and while Celia and Rosalind were talking of Orlando, Frederick entered the room, and with looks full of anger ordered Rosalind instantly to leave the palace, and follow her father into banishment ; telling Celia, who in vain pleaded for her, that he had only suffered Rosalind to stay upon her account. " I did not then," said Celia, " entreat you to let her stay ; for I was too young at that time to value her ; but now that I know her worth, and that we so long have slept together, rose at the same instant, learned, played, and eat together, I cannot live out of her company." Frederick replied, " She is too subtle for you ; her smoothness, her very silence, and her patience speak to the people, and they pity her. You are a fool to plead for her, for you will seem more bright and virtuous when she is gone ; therefore open not your lips in her favour, for the doom which I have passed upon her is irrevocable."

When Celia found she could not prevail upon her father to let Rosalind remain with her, she generously resolved to accompany her, and leaving her father's palace that night, she went along with her friend to seek Rosalind's father, the banished duke, in the forest of Arden.

Before they set out, Celia considered that it would be unsafe for two young ladies to travel in the rich clothes they then wore : she therefore proposed that they should disguise their rank by dressing themselves like country maids. Rosalind said it would be a still greater protection if one of them was to be dressed like a man ; and so it was quickly agreed on between them, that as Rosalind was the tallest, she should wear the dress of a young countryman, and Celia should be habited like a country lass, and that they should say they were brother and sister, and Rosalind said she would be called Ganymede, and Celia chose the name of Aliena.

In this disguise, and taking their money and jewels to defray their expenses, these fair princesses set out on their long travel :

for the forest of Arden was a long way off, beyond the boundaries of the duke's dominions.

The lady Rosalind (or Ganymede as she must now be called) with her manly garb seemed to have put on a manly courage. The faithful friendship Celia had shown in accompanying Rosalind so many weary miles, made the new brother, in recompense for this true love, exert a cheerful spirit, as if he were indeed Ganymede the rustie and stout-hearted brother of the gentle village maiden, Aliena.

When at last they came to the forest of Arden, they no longer found the convenient inns and good accommodations they had met with on the road; and being in want of food and rest, Ganymede, who had so merrily cheered his sister with pleasant speeches and happy remarks all the way, now owned to Aliena that he was so weary he could find in his heart to disgrace his man's apparel, and cry like a woman; and Aliena declared she could go no farther and then again Ganymede tried to recollect that it was a man's duty to comfort and console a woman, as the weaker vessel - and to seem couragous to his new sister, he said, "Come, have a good heart. my sister Aliena; we are now at the end of our travel, in the forest of Arden." But feigned manliness and forced courage would no longer support them; for though they were in the forest of Arden, they knew not where to find the duke; and here the travel of these weary ladies might have come to a sad conclusion, for they might have lost themselves, and have perished for want of food; but, providentially, as they were sitting on the grass, almost dying with fatigue and hopeless of any relief, a countryman chanced to pass that way, and Ganymede once more tried to speak with a manly boldness, saying, "Shepherd, if love or gold can in this desert place procure us entertainment, I pray you bring us where we may rest ourselves; for this young maid, my sister, is much fatigued with travelling, and faints for want of food."

The man replied, that he was only servant to a shepherd, and that his master's house was just going to be sold, and therefore they would find but poor entertainment; but that if they would go with him, they should be welcome to what there was. They followed the man, the near prospect of relief giving them fresh strength; and bought the house and sheep of the shepherd, and took the man who conducted them to the shepherd's house, to wait on them; and being by this means fortunately provided with a neat

cottage, and well supplied with provisions. they agreed to stay here till they could learn in what part of the forest the duke dwelt.

When they were rested after the fatigue of their journey. they began to like their new way of life, and almost fancied themselves the shepherd and shepherdess they feigned to be ; yet sometimes Ganymede remembered he had once been the same lady Rosalind who had so dearly loved the brave Orlando, because he was the son of old Sir Rowland, her father's friend ; and though Ganymede thought that Orlando was many miles distant, even so many weary miles as they had travelled, yet it soon appeared that Orlando was also in the forest of Arden : and in this manner this strange event came to pass.

Orlando was the youngest son of Sir Rowland de Boys, who, when he died, left him (Orlando being then very young) to the care of his eldest brother Oliver, charging Oliver[†] on his blessing, to give his brother a good education, and provide for him as became the dignity of their ancient house. Oliver proved an unworthy brother : and disregarding the commands of his dying father, he never put his brother to school, but kept him at home untought and entirely neglected. But in his nature and in the noble qualities of his mind Orlando so much resembled his excellent father, that without any advantages of education he seemed like a youth who had been bred with the utmost care ; and Oliver so envied the fine person and dignified manners of his untutored brother, that at last he wished to destroy him ; and to effect this he set on people to persuade him to wrestle with the famous wrestler, who, as has been before related, had killed so many men. Now it was this cruel brother's neglect of him which made Orlando say he wished to die, being so friendless.

When, contrary to the wicked hopes he had formed, his brother proved victorious, his envy and malice knew no bounds. and he swore he would burn the chamber where Orlando slept. He was overheard making this vow by one that had been an old and faithful servant to their father, and that loved Orlando because he resembled Sir Rowland. This old man went out to meet him when he returned from the duke's palace, and when he saw Orlando, the peril his dear young master was in made him break out into these passionate exclamations : " O my gentle master, my sweet master. O you memory of Old Sir Rowland ! why are you virtuous ? why are you gentle, strong, and valiant ? and why would you be so fond to overcome the famous wrestler ? Your

praise is come too swiftly home before you,' Orlando, wondering what all this meant, asked him what was the matter. And then the old man told him how his wicked brother, envying the love all people bore him, and now hearing the fame he had gained by his victory in the duke's palace, intended to destroy him, by setting fire to his chamber that night; and in conclusion, advised him to escape the danger he was in by instant flight: and knowing Orlando had no money, Adam (for that was the good old man's name) had brought out with him his own little hoard, and he said, "I have five hundred crowns, the thrifty hire I saved under your father, and laid by to be provision for me when my old limbs should become unfit for service; take that, and He that doth the ravens feed be comfort to my age! Here is the gold - all this I give to you: let me be your servant; though I look old, I will do the service of a younger man in all your business and necessities." "O good old man!" said Orlando, "how well appears in you the constant service of the old world! You are not for the fashion of these times. We will go along together, and before your youthful wages are spent, I shall light upon some means for both our maintenance."

Together then the faithful servant and his loved master set out; and Orlando and Adam travelled on uncertain what course to pursue, till they came to the forest of Arden, and there they found themselves in the same distress for want of food that Ganymede and Aliena had been. They wandered on, seeking some human habitation, till they were almost spent with hunger and fatigue. Adam at last said, "O my dear master, I die for want of food, I can go no farther!" He then laid himself down, thinking to make that place his grave, and bade his dear master farewell. Orlando, seeing him in this weak state, took his old servant up in his arms, and carried him under the shelter of some pleasant trees; and he said to him, "Cheerly, old Adam, rest your weary limbs here a while, and do not talk of dying!"

Orlando then searched about to find some food, and he happened to arrive at that part of the forest where the duke was; and he and his friends were just going to eat their dinner, this royal duke being seated on the grass under no other canopy than the shady cover of some large trees.

Orlando, whom hunger had made desperate, drew his sword intending to take their meat by force, and said, "Forbear, and eat no more; I must have your food!" The duke asked him, if

distress had made him so bold, or if he were a rude despiser of good manners? On this Orlando said, he was dying with hunger; and then the duke told him he was welcome to sit down and eat with them. Orlando hearing him speak so gently, put up his sword, and blushed with shame at the rude manner in which he had demanded all their food. "Pardon me, I pray you," said he: "I thought that things had been savage here, and therefore I put on the countenance of stern command; but whatever men you are, that in this desert, under the shade of melancholy boughs, lose and neglect the creeping hours of time; if ever you have looked on better days; if ever you have been where bells have knolled to church: if you have ever sat at any good man's feast; if ever from your eyelids you have wiped a tear, and know what it is to pity or be pitied, may gentle speeches now move you to do me human courtesy!" The duke replied, "True it is that we are men (as you say) who have seen better days, and though we have now our habitation in this wild forest, we have lived in towns and cities, and have with holy bell been knolled to church, have sat at good men's feasts, and from our eyes have wiped the drops which sacred pity has engendered: therefore sit you down, and take of our refreshment as much as will minister to your wants." "There is an old poor man," answered Orlando, "who has limped after me many a weary step in pure love, oppressed at once with two sad infirmities, age and hunger; till he be satisfied. I must not touch a bit." Go, find him out, and bring him hither," said the duke; "we will forbear to eat till you return." Then Orlando went like a doe to find its fawn and give it food; and presently returned bringing Adam in his arms; and the duke said, "Set down your venerable burthen; you are both welcome:" and they fed the old man, and cheered his heart, and he revived, and recovered his health and strength again.

The duke inquired who Orlando was: and when he found that he was the son of his old friend, Sir Rowland de Boys, he took him under his protection, and Orlando and his old servant lived with the duke in the forest.

Orlando arrived in the forest not many days after Ganymede and Aliena came there, and (as has been before related) bought the shepherd's cottage.

Ganymede and Aliena were strangely surprised to find the name of Rosalind carved on the trees, and love-sonnets fastened

to them, all addressed to Rosalind : and while they were wondering how this could be, they met Orlando, and they perceived the chain which Rosalind had given him about his neck.

Orlando little thought that Ganymede was the fair princess Rosalind, who, by her noble condescension and favour, had so won his heart that he passed his whole time in carving her name upon the trees, and writing sonnets in praise of her beauty : but being much pleased with the graceful air of this pretty shepherd-youth, he entered into conversation with him, and he thought he saw a likeness in Ganymede to his beloved Rosalind, but that he had none of the dignified deportment of that noble lady ; for Ganymede assumed the forward manners often seen in youths when they are between boys and men, and with much archness and humour talked to Orlando of a certain lover, " who," said he, " haunts our forest, and spoils our young trees with carving Rosalind upon their barks ; and he hangs odes upon hawthorns, and elegies on brambles, all praising this same Rosalind. If I could find this lover, I would give him some good counsel that would soon cure him of his love.

Orlando confessed that he was the fond lover of whom he spoke and asked Ganymede to give him the good counsel he talked of. The remedy Ganymede proposed, and the counsel he gave him, was that Orlando should come every day to the cottage where he and his sister Aliena dwelt. " And then," said Ganymede, " I will feign myself to be Rosalind, and you shall feign to court me in the same manner as you would do if I was Rosalind, and then I will imitate the fantastic ways of whimsical ladies to their lovers, till I make you ashamed of your love ; and this is the way I propose to cure you." Orlando had no great faith in the remedy, yet he agreed to come every day to Ganymede's cottage, and feign a playful courtship ; and every day Orlando visited Ganymede and Aliena, and Orlando called the shepherd Ganymede his Rosalind, and every day talked over all the fine words and flattering compliments, which young men delight to use when they court their mistresses. It does not appear, however, that Ganymede made any progress in curing Orlando of his love for Rosalind.

Though Orlando thought all this was but a sportive play (not dreaming that Ganymede was his very Rosalind), yet the opportunity it gave him of saying all the fond things he had in his heart, pleased his fancy almost as well as it did Ganymede's who

enjoyed the secret jest in knowing these fine love-speeches were all addressed to the right person.

In this manner many days passed pleasantly on with these young people: and the good-natured Aliena, seeing it made Ganymede happy, let him have his own way, and was diverted at the mock courtship, and did not care to remind Ganymede that the lady Rosalind had not yet made herself known to the duke her father, whose place of resort in the forest they had learnt from Orlando. Ganymede met the duke one day, and had some talk with him, and the duke asked of what parentage he came. Ganymede answered, that he came of as good a parentage as he did; which made the duke smile, for he did not suspect the pretty shepherd-boy came of royal lineage. Then seeing the duke look well and happy, Ganymede was content to put off all further explanation for a few days longer.

One morning as Orlando was going to visit Ganymede, he saw a man lying asleep on the ground, and a large green snake had twisted itself about his neck. The snake, seeing Orlando approach, glided away among the bushes. Orlando went nearer, and then he discovered a lioness lie crouching, with her head on the ground, with a cat-like watch waiting till the sleeping man awaked (for it is said that lions will prey on nothing that is dead or sleeping). It seemed as if Orlando was sent by Providence to free the man from the danger of the snake and lioness: but when Orlando looked in the man's face, he perceived that the sleeper, who was exposed to the double peril, was his own brother Oliver, who had so cruelly used him, and had threatened to destroy him by fire, and he was almost tempted to leave him a prey to the hungry lioness; but brotherly affection and the gentleness of his nature soon overcame his first anger against his brother; and he drew his sword and attacked the lioness, and slew her, and thus preserved his brother's life both from the venomous snake and from the furious lioness: but before Orlando could conquer the lioness, she had torn one of his arms with her sharp claws.

While Orlando was engaged with the lioness, Oliver awaked, and perceiving that his brother Orlando, whom he had so cruelly treated, was saving him from the fury of a wild beast at the risk of his own life, shame and remorse at once seized him, and he repented of his unworthy conduct, and besought with many tears his brother's pardon for the injuries he had done him. Orlando rejoiced to see him so penitent, and readily forgave him: they

embraced each other ; and from that hour Oliver loved Orlando with a true brotherly affection, though he had come to the forest bent on his destruction.

The wound in Orlando's arm having bled very much, he found himself too weak to go to visit Ganymede, and therefore he desired his brother to go and tell Ganymede. "whom," said Orlando, "I in sport do call my Rosalind," the accident which had befallen him.

Thither then Oliver went, and told to Ganymede and Aliena how Orlando had saved his life : and when he had finished the story of Orlando's bravery, and his own providential escape, he owned to them that he was Orlando's brother, who had so cruelly used him ; and then he told them of their reconciliation.

The sincere sorrow that Oliver expressed for his offences made such a lively impression on the kind heart of Aliena, that she instantly fell in love with him ; and Oliver observing how much she pitied the distress he told her he felt for his fault, he as suddenly fell in love with her. But while love was thus stealing into the hearts of Aliena and Oliver, he was no less busy with Ganymede, who hearing of the danger Orlando had been in, and that he was wounded by the lioness, fainted ; and when he recovered he pretended that he had counterfeited the swoon in the imaginary character of Rosalind, and Ganymede said to Oliver, "Tell your brother Orlando how well I counterfeited a swoon." But Oliver saw by the paleness of his complexion that he did really faint, and much wondering at the weakness of the young man, he said, "Well, if you did counterfeit take a good heart, and counterfeit to be a man." "So I do," replied Ganymede, truly, "but I should have been a woman by right."

Oliver made this visit a very long one and when at last he returned back to his brother, he had much news to tell him ; for, besides the account of Ganymede's fainting at the hearing that Orlando was wounded, Oliver told how he had fallen in love with the fair shepherdess Aliena, and that she had lent a favourable ear to his suit, even in this their first interview ; and he talked to his brother, as of a thing almost settled, that he should marry Aliena, saying, that he so well loved her, that he would live here as a shepherd, and settle his estate and house at home upon Orlando.

"You have my consent," said Orlando, "Let your wedding be to-morrow, and I will invite the duke and his friends. Go.

and persuade your shepherdess to agree to this : she is now alone ; for look, here comes her brother." Oliver went to Aliena ; and Ganymede, whom Orlando had perceived approaching, came to inquire after the health of his wounded friend.

When Orlando and Ganymede began to talk over the sudden love which had taken place between Oliver and Aliena, Orlando said he had advised his brother to persuade his fair shepherdess to be married on the morrow, and then he added how much he could wish to be married on the same day to his Rosalind.

Ganymede, who well approved of this arrangement, said that if Orlando really loved Rosalind as well as he professed to do, he should have his wish ; for on the morrow he would engage to make Rosalind appear in her own person, and also that Rosalind should be willing to marry Orlando.

This seemingly wonderful event, which, as Ganymede was the lady Rosalind, he could so easily perform, he pretended he would bring to pass by the aid of magic, which he said he had learnt of an uncle who was a famous magician.

The fond lover Orlando, half believing and half doubting what he heard, asked Ganymede if he spoke in sober meaning. " By my life I do," said Ganymede, " therefore put on your best clothes, and bid the duke and your friends to your wedding, for if you desire to be married to-morrow to Rosalind, she shall be here."

The next morning, Oliver having obtained the consent of Aliena, they came into the presence of the duke, and with them also came Orlando.

They being all assembled to celebrate this double marriage, and as yet only one of the brides appearing, there was much of wondering and conjecture, but they mostly thought that Ganymede was making a jest of Orlando.

The duke, hearing that it was his own daughter that was to be brought in this strange way asked Orlando if he believed the shepherd-boy could really do what he had promised ; and while Orlando was answering that he knew not what to think, Ganymede entered, and asked the duke, if he brought his daughter, whether he would consent to her marriage with Orlando. " That I would," said the duke, " if I had kingdoms to give with her." Ganymede then said to Orlando, " And you say you will marry

her if I bring her here?" "That I would," said Orlando, "if I were king of many kingdoms."

Ganymede and Aliena then went out together, and Ganymede throwing off his male attire, and being once more dressed in woman's apparel, quickly became Rosalind without the power of magic; and Aliena, changing her country garb for her own rich clothes, was with as little trouble transformed into the lady Celia.

While they were gone, the duke said to Orlando, that he thought the shepherd Ganymede very like his daughter Rosalind; and Orlando said, he also had observed the resemblance.

They had no time to wonder how all this would end, for Rosalind and Celia in their own clothes entered; and no longer pretending that it was by the power of magic that she came there, Rosalind threw herself on her knees before her father, and begged his blessing. It seemed so wonderful to all present that she should so suddenly appear, that it might well have passed for magic: but Rosalind would no longer trifle with her father, and told him the story of her banishment, and of her dwelling in the forest as a shepherd-boy, her cousin Celia passing as her sister.

The duke ratified the consent he had already given to the marriage; and Orlando and Rosalind, Oliver and Celia, were married at the same time. And though their wedding could not be celebrated in this wild forest with any of the parade or splendour usual on such occasions, yet a happier wedding-day was never passed: and while they were eating their venison under the cool shade of the trees, as if nothing should be wanting to complete the felicity of this good duke and the true lovers, an unexpected messenger arrived to tell the duke the joyful news, that his dukedom was restored to him.

The usurper, enraged at the flight of his daughter Celia, and hearing that every day men of great worth resorted to the forest of Arden to join the lawful duke in his exile, much envying that his brother should be so highly respected in his adversity, put himself at the head of a large force, and advanced to the forest, intending to seize his brother, and put him, with all his faithful followers, to the sword; but, by a wonderful interposition of Providence, this bad brother was converted from his evil intention: for just as he entered the skirts of the wild forest, he was met by an old religious man, a hermit, with whom he had much talk, and who in the end completely turned his heart from

his wicked design Thenceforward he became a true penitent, and resolved, relinquishing his unjust dominion, to spend the remainder of his days in a religious house. The first act of his newly-conceived penitence was to send a messenger to his brother (as has been related); to offer to restore to him his dukedom, which he had usurped so long, and with it the lands and revenues of his friends, the faithful followers of his adversity.

This joyful news, as unexpected as it was welcome, came opportunely to heighten the festivity and rejoicings at the wedding of the princesses. Celia complimented her cousin on this good fortune which had happened to the duke, Rosalind's father, and wished her joy very sincerely, though she herself was no longer heir to the dukedom, but by this restoration which her father had made, Rosalind was now the heir : so completely was the love of these two cousins unmingled with anything of jealousy or envy.

The duke had now an opportunity of rewarding those true friends who had stayed with him in his banishment ; and these worthy followers, though they had patiently shared his adverse fortune, were very well pleased to return in peace and prosperity to the palace of their lawful duke.

MUCH ADO ABOUT NOTHING.

THERE lived in the palace at Messina two ladies, whose names were Hero and Beatrice. Hero was the daughter, and Beatrice the niece, of Leonato, the governor of Messina.

Beatrice was of a lively temper, and loved to divert her cousin Hero, who was of a more serious disposition, with her sprightly sallies. Whatever was going forward was sure to make matter of mirth for the light-hearted Beatrice.

At the time the history of these ladies commences, some young men of high rank in the army, as they were passing through Messina on their return from a war that was just ended, in which they had distinguished themselves by their great bravery, came to visit Leonato. Among these were Don Pedro, the prince of Arragon, and his friend Claudio, who was a lord of Florence ; and with them came the wild and witty Benedick, and he was a lord of Padua.

These strangers had been at Messina before, and the hospitable governor introduced them to his daughter and his niece as their old friends and acquaintance.

Benedick, the moment he entered the room, began a lively conversation with Leonato and the prince. Beatrice, who liked not to be left out of any discourse, interrupted Benedick with saying, "I wonder that you will still be talking, signior Benedick; nobody marks you," Benedick was just such another rattle-brain as Beatrice, yet he was not pleased at this free salutation: he thought it did not become a well-bred lady to be so flippant with her tongue; and he remembered, when he was last at Messina, that Beatrice use to select him to make her merry jests upon. And as there is no one who so little likes to be made a jest of as those who are apt to take the same liberty themselves, so it was with Benedick and Beatrice; these two sharp wits never met in former times but a perfect war of raillery was kept up between them, and they always parted mutually displeased with each other. Therefore when Beatrice stopped him in the middle of his discourse with telling him nobody marked what he was saying, Benedick, affecting not to have observed before that she was present, said, "What, my dear lady Disdain, are you yet living?" And now war broke out afresh between them, and a long jangling argument ensued, during which Beatrice, although she knew he had so well approved his valour in the last war, said that she would eat all he had killed there: and observing the prince take delight in Benedick's conversation, she called him "the prince's jester." This sarcasm suuk deeper into the mind of Benedick than all Beatrice had said before. The hint she gave him that he was a coward, by saying she would eat all he had killed he did not regard, knowing himself to be a brave man: but there is nothing that great wits so much dread as the imputation of buffoonery, because the charge comes sometimes a little too near the truth: therefore Benedick perfectly hated Beatrice when she called him "the prince's jester."

The modest lady Hero was silent before the noble guests; and while Claudio was attentively observing the improvement, which time had made in her beauty, and was contemplating the exquisite graces of her fine figure (for she was an admirable young lady), the prince was highly amused with listening to the humorous dialogue between Benedick and Beatrice; and he said in a whisper to Leonato, "This is a pleasant-spirited young lady.

She were an excellent wife for Benedick." Leonato replied to this suggestion, "O my lord, my lord, if they were but a week married, they would talk themselves mad." But though Leonato thought they would make a discordant pair, the prince did not give up the idea of matching these two keen wits together.

When the prince returned with Claudio from the palace, he found that the marriage he had devised between Benedick and Beatrice was not the only one projected in that good company, for Claudio spoke in such terms of Hero, as made the prince guess at what was passing in his heart; and he liked it well, and he said to Claudio, "Do you affect Hero?" To this question Claudio replied, "O my lord, when I was last at Messina, I looked upon her with a soldier's eye, that liked, but had no leisure for loving: but now, in this happy time of peace, thoughts of war have left their places vacant in my mind, and in their room come thronging soft and delicate thoughts, all prompting me how fair young Hero is reminding me that I liked her before I went to the wars," Claudio's confession of his love for Hero so wrought upon the prince, that he lost no time in soliciting the consent of Leonato to accept Claudio for a son-in-law. Leonato agreed to this proposal, and the prince found no great difficulty in persuading the gentle Hero herself to listen to the suit of the noble Claudio, who was a lord of rare endowments, and highly accomplished; and Claudio, assisted by his kind prince, soon prevailed upon Leonato to fix an early day for the celebration of his marriage with Hero.

Claudio was to wait but a few days before he was to be married to his fair lady; yet he complained of the interval being tedious, as indeed most young men are impatient, when they are waiting for the accomplishment of any event they have set their hearts upon: the prince, therefore, to make the time seem short to him, proposed, as a kind of merry pastime, that they should invent some artful scheme to make Benedick and Beatrice fall in love with each other. Claudio entered with great satisfaction into this whim of the prince, and Leonato promised them his assistance, and even Hero said she would do any modest office to help her cousin to a good husband.

The device the prince invented was, that the gentlemen should make Benedick believe that Beatrice was in love with him, and that Hero should make Beatrice believe that Benedick was in love with her.

The prince, Leonato, and Claudio began their operations first ; and, watching an opportunity when Benedick was quietly seated reading in an arbour, the prince and his assistants took their station among the trees behind the arbour, so near that Benedick could not choose but hear all they said ; and after some careless talk, the prince said, " Come hither, Leonato. What was it you told me the other day -- that your niece Beatrice was in love with signior Benedick ? I did never think that lady would have loved any man." " No, nor I neither, my lord," answered Leonato. " It is most wonderful that she should so dote on Benedick, whom she in all outward behaviour seemed ever to dislike." Claudio confirmed all this, with saying that Hero had told him Beatrice was so in love with Benedick, that she would certainly die of grief, if he could not be brought to love her ; which Leonato and Claudio seemed to agree was impossible, he having always been such a railer against all fair ladies, and in particular against Beatrice.

The prince affected to hearken to all this with great compassion for Beatrice, and he said, " It were good that Benedick were told of this." " To what end ? " said Claudio ; " he would but make sport of it, and torment the poor lady worse." " And if he should," said the prince, " it were a good deed to hang him ; for Beatrice is an excellent sweet lady, and exceeding wise in everything but in loving Benedick." Then the prince motioned to his companions that they should walk on, and leave Benedick to meditate upon what he had overheard.

Benedick had been listening with great eagerness to this conversation ; and he said to himself when he heard Beatrice loved him, " Is it possible ? Sits the wind in that corner ? " And when they were gone, he began to reason in this manner with himself. " This can be no trick ! they were very serious, and they have the truth from Hero, and seem to pity the lady. Love me ! Why, it must be requited ! I did never think to marry. But when I said I should die a bachelor, I did not think I should live to be married. They say the lady is virtuous and fair. She is so. And wise in everything but in loving me. Why, that is no great argument of her folly. But here comes Beatrice. By this day, she is a fair lady. I do spy some marks of love in her," Beatrice now approached him, and said with her usual tartness, " Against my will I am sent to bid you come in to dinner." Benedick, who never felt himself disposed to speak so politely to her before, replied, " Fair Beatrice, I thank you for

your pains:" and when Beatrice, after two or three more rude speeches, left him, Benedick thought he observed a concealed meaning of kindness under the unkind words she uttered, and he said aloud, "If I do not take pity on her, I am a villain. If I do not love her, I am a Jew. I will go get her picture."

The gentleman being thus caught in the net they had spread for him, it was now Hero's turn to play her part with Beatrice: and for this purpose she sent for Ursula and Margaret, two gentlewomen who attended upon her, and she said to Margaret, "Good Margaret, run to the parlour; there you will find my cousin Beatrice talking with the prince and Claudio. Whisper in her ear, that I and Ursula are walking in the orchard, and that our discourse is all of her. Bid her steal into that pleasant arbour, where honeysuckles, ripened by the sun, like ungrateful minions, forbid the sun to enter." This arbour, into which Hero desired Margaret to entice Beatrice, was the very same pleasant arbour where Benedick had so lately been an attentive listener. "I will make her come, I warrant, presently," said Margaret.

Hero then, taking Ursula with her into the orchard, said to her, "Now Ursula, when Beatrice comes, we will walk up and down this alley, and our talk must be only of Benedick, and when I name him, let it be your part to praise him more than ever man did merit. My talk to you must be how Benedick is in love with Beatrice. Now begin; for look where Beatrice like a lapwing runs close by the ground, to hear our conference. They then began; Hero saying, as if in answer to something which Ursula had said, "No, truly, Ursula. She is too disdainful; her spirits are as coy as wild birds of the rock." "But are you sure," said Ursula, "that Benedick loves Beatrice so entirely?" Hero replied, "So says the prince, and my lord Claudio, and they entreated me to acquaint her with it; but I persuaded them, if they loved Benedick, never to let Beatrice know of it." "Certainly," replied Ursula, "it were not good she knew his love, lest she made sport of it." "Why, to say truth," said Hero. "I never yet saw a man, how wise soever, or noble, young, or rarely featured, but she would dispraise him." "Sure, sure, such carping is not commendable," said Ursula. "No," replied Hero, "but who dare tell her so? if I should speak, she would mock me into air." "O you wrong your cousin," said Ursula: "she cannot be so much without true judgment as to refuse so rare a gentleman as Signior Benedick." "He hath

an excellent good name," said Hero; "indeed he is the first man in Italy, always excepting my dear Claudio." And now, Hero giving her attendant a hint that it was time to change the discourse, Ursula said, "And when are you to be married, madam?" Hero then told her, that she was to be married to Claudio the next day, and desired she would go in with her, and look at some new attire, as she wished to consult with her on what she would wear on the morrow. Beatrice, who had been listening with breathless eagerness to this dialogue, when they went away, exclaimed, "What fire is in my ears? Can this be true? Fare well, contempt, and scorn and maiden pride, adieu! Benedick, love on; I will requite you, taming my wild heart to your loving hand."

It must have been a pleasant sight to see these old enemies converted into new and loving friends; and to behold their first meeting after being cheated into mutual liking by the merry artifice of the good-humoured prince. But a sad reverse in the fortunes of Hero must now be thought of. The morrow, which was to have been her wedding day, brought sorrow on the heart of Hero and her good father, Leonato.

The prince had a half-brother, who came from the wars along with him to Messina. This brother (his name was Don John) was a melancholy, discontented man, whose spirits seemed to labour in the contriving of villainies. He hated the prince his brother, and he hated Claudio, because he was the prince's friend, and determined to prevent Claudio's marriage with Hero only for the malicious pleasure of making Claudio and the prince unhappy; for he knew the prince had set his heart upon this marriage, almost as much as Claudio himself: and to effect this wicked purpose, he employed one Borachio, a man as bad as himself, whom he encouraged with the offer of a great reward. Thus Borachio paid his court to Margaret, Hero's attendant; and Don John, knowing this, prevailed upon him to make Margaret promise to talk with him from her lady's chamber window that night, after Hero was asleep, and also to dress herself in Hero's clothes, the better to deceive Claudio into the belief that it was Hero, for that was the end he meant to compass by this wicked plot.

Don John then went to the prince and Claudio, and told them that Hero was an imprudent lady, and that she talked with men from her chamber window at midnight. Now this was the

evening before the wedding, and he offered to take them that night, where they should themselves hear Hero discoursing with a man from her window; and they consented to go along with him, and Claudio said, "If I see anything to night why I should not marry her to-morrow in the congregation, where I intended to wed her, there will I shame her." The prince also said, "And as I assisted you to obtain her, I will join with you to disgrace her."

When Don John brought them near Hero's chamber that night, they saw Borachio standing under the window, and they saw Margaret looking out of Hero's window, and heard her talking with Borachio and Margaret being dressed in the same clothes they had seen Hero wear, the prince and Claudio believed it was the lady Hero herself.

Nothing could equal the anger of Claudio, when he had made (as he thought) this discovery. All his love for the innocent Hero was at once converted into hatred, and he resolved to expose her in the church, as he had said he would, the next day; and the prince agreed to this, thinking no punishment could be too severe for the naughty lady, who talked with a man from her window the very night before she was going to be married to the noble Claudio.

The next day they were all met to celebrate the marriage, and Claudio and Hero were standing before the priest, and the priest, or friar, as he was called, was proceeding to pronounce the marriage ceremony, when Claudio, in the most passionate language, proclaimed the guilt of the blameless Hero, who, amazed at the strange words he uttered, said meekly.

"Is my lord well, that he does speak so wide?"

Leonato, in the utmost horror, said to the prince, "My lord, why speak not you?"

"What should I speak?" said the prince: "I stand dishonoured that have gone about to link my dear friend to an unworthy woman. Leonato, upon my honour, myself, my brother, and this grieved Claudio, did see and hear her last night at midnight talk with a man at her chamber window."

"Benedick, in astonishment at what he heard, said, "This looks not like a nuptial."

"True, O God!" replied the heart-struck Hero; and then this hapless lady sunk down in a fainting fit, to all appearance dead.

The prince and Claudio left the church, without staying to see if Hero would recover. or at all regarding the distress into which they had thrown Leonato. So hard-hearted had their anger made them.

Benedick remained, and assisted Beatrice to recover Hero from her swoon, saying, "How does the lady?" "Dead, I think," replied Beatrice in great agony, for she loved her cousin; and knowing her virtuous principles, she believed nothing of what she had heard spoken against her. Not so the poor old father; he believed the story of his child's shame, and it was piteous to hear him lamenting over her, as she lay like one dead before him, wishing she might never more open her eyes.

But the ancient friar was a wise man, and full of observation of human nature, and he had attentively marked the lady's countenance when she heard herself accused, and noted a thousand blushing shames to start into her face, and then he saw an angel-like whiteness bear away those blushes, and in her eye he saw a fire that did belie the error that the prince did speak against her maiden truth, and he said to the sorrowing father, "Call me a fool; trust not my reading, nor my observation; trust not my age, my reverence, nor my calling; if this sweet lady lie not guiltless here under some biting error."

When Hero recovered from the swoon into which she had fallen, the friar said to her, "Lady, what man is he you are accused of?" Hero replied, "They know that to accuse me; I know of none:" then turning to Leonato, she said, "O my father, if you can prove that any man has ever conversed with me at hours unmeet, or that I yesternight changed words with any creature, refuse me, hate me, torture me to death."

"There is," said the friar, "some strange misunderstanding in the prince and Claudio;" and then he counselled Leonato, that he should report that Hero was dead; and he said, that the death-like swoon in which they had left Hero, would make this easy of belief: and he also advised him, that he should put on mourning, and erect a monument for her, and do all rites that appertain to a burial. "What will this do?" The friar replied, "This report of her death shall change slander into pity: that is some good, but that is not all the good I hope for. When

Claudio shall hear she died upon hearing his words, the idea of her life shall sweetly creep into his imagination. Then shall he mourn, if ever love had interest in his heart, and wish he had not so accused her : yea, though he thought his accusation truer."

Benedick now said, "Leonato, let the friar advise you ; and though you know how well I love the prince and Claudio yet on my honour I will not reveal this secret to them."

Leonato, thus persuaded, yielded ; and he said sorrowfully, "I am so grieved, that the smallest twine may lead me." The kind friar then led Leonato and Hero away to comfort and console them, and Beatrice and Benedick remained alone ; and this was the meeting from which their friends, who contrived the merry plot against them, expected so much diversion ; those friends who were now overwhelmed with affliction, and from whose minds all thoughts of merriment seemed for ever banished.

Benedick was the first who spoke, and he said, "Lady Beatrice, have you wept all this while?" "Yea, and I will weep a while longer," said Beatrice. "Surely," said Benedick, "I do believe your fair cousin is wronged." "Ah !" said Beatrice, "how much might that man deserve of me who would right her!" Benedick then said. "Is there any way to show such friendship?" "I do love nothing in the world so well as you ; is not that strange?" "It were as possible," said Beatrice, "for me to say I love nothing in the world so well as you ; but believe me not, and yet I lie not. I confess nothing, nor I deny nothing. I am sorry for my cousin." "By my sword," said Benedick, "you," love me, and I protest I loved. Come, bid me do anything for you." "Kill Claudio," said Beatrice. "Ha ! not for the wide world," said Benedick ; for he loved his friend Claudio, and he believed he had been imposed upon. "Is not Claudio a villain, that has slandered, scorned, and dishonoured my cousin?" said Beatrice : "O that I were a man !" "Here me, Beatrice !" said Benedick. But Beatrice would hear nothing in Claudio's defence ; and she continued to urge on Benedick to revenge her cousin's wrongs : and she said, "Talk with a man out of the window ; a proper saying ! Sweet Hero ! she is wronged ; she is slandered ; she is undone. O that I were a man for Claudio's sake ! or that I had any friend, who would be a man
ⁱⁿ my sake ! but valour is melted in courtesies and compli-
 "I cannot be man with wishing, therefore I will die a
 look with grieving." "Tarry, good Beatrice," said Benedick :

"by this hand, I love you." "Use it for my love some other way than by swearing by it," said Beatrice. "Think you, on your soul, that Claudio has wronged Hero?" asked Benedick. "Yea," answered Beatrice; "as sure as I have a thought, or a soul." "Enough," said Benedick; "I am engaged; "I will challenge him. I will kiss your hand, and so leave you. By this hand, Claudio shall render me a dear account! As you hear from me, so think of me. Go, comfort your cousin."

While Beatrice was thus powerfully pleading with Benedick, and working his gallant temper by the spirit of her angry words, to engage in the cause of Hero, and fight even with his dear friend Claudio, Leonato was challenging the prince and Claudio to answer with their swords the injury they had done his child, who, he affirmed, had died for grief. But they respected his age and his sorrow, and they said, "Nay, do not quarrel with us, good old man." And now came Benedick, and he also challenged Claudio to answer with his sword the injury he had done to Hero; and Claudio and the prince said to each other, "Beatrice has set him on to do this." Claudio nevertheless must have accepted this challenge of Benedick, had not the justice of Heaven at the moment brought to pass a better proof of the innocence of Hero than the uncertain fortune of a duel.

While the prince and Claudio were yet talking of the challenge of Benedick, a magistrate brought Borachio as a prisoner before the prince. Borachio had been overheard talking with one of his companions of the mischief he had been employed by Don John to do.

Borachio made a full confession to the prince in Claudio's hearing, that it was Margaret dressed in her lady's clothes that he had talked with from the window, whom they had mistaken for the lady Hero herself; and no doubt continued on the minds of Claudio and the prince of the innocence of Hero. If a suspicion had remained it must have been removed by the flight of Don John, who, finding his villainies were detected, fled from Messina to avoid the just anger of his brother.

The heart of Claudio was sorely grieved when he found he had falsely accused Hero, who, he thought, died upon hearing his cruel words: and the memory of his beloved Hero's image came over him in the rare semblance that he loved it first; and the prince asking him if what he heard did not run like iron through

his soul, he answered, that he felt as if he had taken poison while Borachio was speaking.

And the repentant Claudio implored forgiveness of the old man Leonato for the injury he had done his child ; and promised that whatever penance Leonato would lay upon him for his fault in believing the false accusation against his betrothed wife, for her dear sake he would endure it.

The penance Leonato enjoined him was, to marry the next morning a cousin of Hero's, who, he said, was now his heir, and in person very like Hero. Claudio, regarding the solemn promise he made to Leonato, said he would marry this unknown lady, even though she were an Ethiop ; but his heart was very sorrowful, and he passed that night in tears, and in remorseful grief, at the tomb which Leonato had erected for Hero.

When the morning came, the prince accompanied Claudio to the church, where the good friar, and Leonato and his niece, were already assembled, to celebrate a second nuptial : and Leonato presented to Claudio his promised bride : and she wore a mask, that Claudio might not discover her face. And Claudio said to the lady in the mask, " Give me your hand, before this holy friar ; I am your husband, if you will marry me. " " And when I lived I was your other wife," said this unknown lady ; and taking off her mask, she proved to be no niece (as was pretended), but Leonato's very daughter, the lady Hero herself. We may be sure that this proved a most agreeable surprise to Claudio who thought her dead, so that he could scarcely for joy believe his eyes : and the prince, who was equally amazed at what he saw, exclaimed, " Is not this Hero, Hero that was dead ? " Leonato replied, " She died, my lord, but while her slander lived." The friar promised them an explanation of this seeming miracle, after the ceremony was ended, and was proceeding to marry them, when he was interrupted by Benedick, who desired to be married at the same time to Beatrice. Beatrice making some demur to this match, and Benedick challenging her with her love for him, which he had learned from Hero a pleasant explanation took place : and they found they had both been tricked into a belief of love, which had never existed, and had become lovers in truth by the power of a false jest : but the affection, which a merry invention had cheated them into, was grown too powerful to be shaken by a serious explanation ; and since Benedick proposed to

marry, he was resolved to think nothing to the purpose that the world could say against it; and he merrily kept up the jest, and swore to Beatrice that he took her but for pity, and because he heard she was dying of love for him; and Beatrice protested, that she yielded but upon great persuasion, and partly to save his life, for she heard he was in a consumption. So these two mad wits were reconciled, and made a match of it, after Claudio and Hero were married: and to complete the history, Don John the contriver of the villainy, was taken in his fight, and brought back to Messina: and a brave punishment it was to this gloomy and discontented man, to see the joy and feastings which, by the disappointment of his plots, took place at the palace in Messina.

A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM.

THERE was a law in the city of Athens which gave to its citizens the power of compelling their daughters to marry whomsoever they pleased: for upon a daughter's refusing to marry the man her father had chosen to be her husband, the father was empowered by this law to cause her to be put to death; but as fathers do not often desire the death of their own daughters, even though they do happen to prove a little refractory, this law was seldom or never put in execution, though perhaps the young ladies of that city were not unfrequently threatened by their parents with the terrors of it.

There was one instance, however, of an old man, whose name was Egeus, who actually did come before Theseus (at that time the reigning duke of Athens), to complain that his daughter Hermia, whom he had commanded to marry Demetrius, a young man of a noble Athenian family, refused to obey him, because she loved another young Athenian, named Lysander. Egeus demanded justice of Theseus, and desired that this cruel law might be put in force against his daughter.

✕ Hermia pleaded in excuse for her disobedience, that Demetrius had formerly professed love for her dear friend Helena, and that Helena loved Demetrius to distraction: but this honourable reason, which Hermia gave for not obeying her father's command, moved not the stern Egeus.

Theseus, though a great and merciful prince, had no power to alter the laws of his country; therefore he could only give Hermia

four days to consider of it: and at the end of that time, if she still refused to marry Demetrius, she was to be put to death.

When Hermia was dismissed from the presence of the duke, she went to her lover Lysander, and told him the peril she was in, and that she must either give up him and marry Demetrius, or lose her life in four days.

Lysander was in great affliction at hearing these evil tidings; but recollecting that he had an aunt who lived at some distance from Athens, and that at the place where she lived the cruel law could not be put in force against Hermia (this law not extending beyond the boundaries of the city), he proposed to Hermia, that she should steal out of her father's house that night, and go with him to his aunt's house, where he would marry her. "I will meet you," said Lysander, "in the wood a few miles without the city; in that delightful wood, where we have so often walked with Helena in the pleasant month of May.

To this proposal Hermia joyfully agreed; and she told no one of her intended flight but her friend Helena. Helena (as maidens will do foolish things for love) very ungenerously resolved to go and tell this to Demetrius, though she could hope no benefit from betraying her friend's secret, but the poor pleasure of following her faithless lover to the wood; for she well knew that Demetrius would go thither in pursuit of Hermia.

The wood, in which Lysander and Hermia proposed to meet, was the favourite haunt of those little beings known by the name of *Fairies*.

Oberon the king, and Titania the queen of the Fairies, with all their tiny train of followers, in this wood held their midnight revels.

Between this little king and queen of sprites there happened, at this time, a sad disagreement: they never met by moonlight in the shady walls of this pleasant wood, but they were quarrelling, till all their fairy elves would creep into acorn-cups and hide themselves for fear.

The cause of this unhappy disagreement was Titania's refusing to give Oberon a little changeling boy, whose mother had been Titania's friend: and upon her death the fairy queen stole the child from its nurse, and brought him up in the woods.

The night on which the lovers were to meet in this wood, as Titania was walking with some of her maids of honour, she met Oberon attended by his train of fairy courtiers.

"Ill met by moonlight, proud Titania," said the fairy king. The queen replied, "What jealous Oberon, is it you? Fairies, skip hence; I have foresworn his company." "Tarry, rash fairy," said Oberon; 'am not I thy lord? Why does Titiana cross her Oberon? Give me your little changeling boy to be my page."

"Set your heart at rest," answered the queen; "your whole fair kingdom buys not the boy of me." She then left her lord in great anger. "Well, go your way," said Oberon; "before the morning dawns I will torment you for this injury."

Oberon then sent for Puck, his chief favourite and privy councillor.

Puck (or, as he was sometimes called, Robin Goodfellow) was a shrewd and knavish sprite, and used to play comical pranks in the neighbouring villages; sometimes getting into the dairies and skimming the milk, sometimes plunging his light and airy form into the butter churn, and while he was dancing his fantastic shape in the churn, in vain the dairymaid would labour to change her cream into butter: nor had the village swains any better success; whenever Puck chose to play his freaks in the brewing copper, the ale was sure to be spoiled. When a few good neighbours were met to drink some comfortable ale together, Puck would jump into the bowl of ale in the likeness of a roasted crab, and when some old goody was going to drink, he would bob against her lips, and spill the ale over her withered chin; and presently after, when the same old dame was gravely seating herself to tell her neighbours a sad and melancholy story, Puck would slip her three-legged stool from under her, and down toppled the poor old woman, and then the old gossips would hold their sides and laugh at her, and swear they never wasted a merrier hour. ✓

"Come hither, Puck," said Oberon to this little merry wanderer of the night; "fetch me the flower which maids call *Love-in-Idleness*; the juice of that little purple flower laid on the eyelids of these who sleep, will make them, when they awake, dote on the first thing they see. Some of the juice of that flower-


I will drop on the eyelids of my Titania when she is asleep ; and the first thing she looks upon when she opens her eyes she will fall in love with, even though it be a lion, or a bear, a meddling monkey, or a busy ape ; and before I will take this charm from off her sight, which I can do with another charm I know of, I will make her give me that boy to be my page."

Puck, who loved mischief to his heart, was highly diverted with this intended frolic of his master, and ran too seek the lower, and while Oberon was waiting the return of Puck, he observed Demetrius and Helena enter the wood : he overheard Demetrius reproaching Helena for following him, and after many unkind words on this part, and gentle expostulations from Helena, reminding him of his former love and professions of true faith to her, he left her (as he said) to the mercy of the wild beasts, and she ran after him as swiftly as he could.

The fairy king, who was always friendly to true lovers, felt great compassion for Helena ; and perhaps, as Lysander said they used to walk by moonlight in this pleasant wood, Oberon might have seen Helena in those happy times when she was beloved by Demetrius. However that might be, when Puck returned with the little purple flower, Oberon said to his favourite, "Take a part of this flower : there has been a sweet Athenian lady here, who is in love with a disdainful youth ; if you find him sleeping, drop some of the love juice in his eyes, but contrive so do it when she is near him, that the first thing he sees when he awakes may be this despised lady. You will know the man by the Athenian garments which he wears." Puck promised to manage this matter very dexterously ; and then Oberon went, unperceived by Titania, to her bower, where she was preparing to go to rest. Her fairy bower was a bank where grew wild thyme, cowslips, and sweet violets under a canopy of woodbine, musk-roses, and eglantine. There Titania always slept some part of the night ; her coverlet the enamelled skin of a snake, which, though a small mantle, was wide enough to wrap a fairy in.

He found Titania giving orders to her fairies, how they were to employ themselves while she slept. "Some of you," said her Majesty, "must kill cankers in the musk-rose buds, and some wage war with the bats for their leathern wings, to make small elves coats : and some of you keep watch that the

clamorous owl, that nightly hoots, come not near me ; but first sing me to sleep." Then they began to sing this song :--

" You spotted snakes with double tongue,
Thorny hedgehogs be not seen ;
Newts and blind-worms, do not wrong,
Come not near our Fairy Queen.
Phaenamel, with melody, 
Sing in your sweet lullaby.
Lulla, lulla, lullaby ; lulla, lulla, lullaby :
Sever harm, nor spell, nor charm,
Come our lovely lady nigh :
So good night with lullaby "

When the faeries had sung their queen asleep with this pretty lullaby, they left her, to perform the important services she had enjoined them. Oberon then softly drew near his Titania, and dropped some of the love-juice on her eyelids, saying,

" What thou seest when thou dost wake,
Do it for thy true-love sake."

But to return to Hermia, who made her escape out of her father's house that night, to avoid the death she was doomed to for refusing to marry Demetrius. When she entered the wood, she found her dear Lysander waiting for her, to conduct her to his aunt's house ; but before they had passed half through the wood, Hermia was so much fatigued, that Lysander, who was very careful of this dear lady, who had proved her affection for him even by hazarding her life for his sake, persuaded her to rest till morning on a bank of soft moss, and lying down himself on the ground at some little distance, they soon fell fast asleep. Here they were found by Puck, who seeing a handsome young man asleep, and perceiving that his clothes were made in the Athenian fashion, and that a pretty lady was sleeping near him, concluded that this must be the Athenian maid and her disdainful lover whom Oberon had sent him to seek ; and he naturally enough conjectured that, as they were alone together, she must be the first thing he would see when he awoke : so without more ado, he proceeded to pour some of the juice of the little purple flower into his eyes. But it so fell out, that Helena came that way, and, instead of Hermia, was the first object Lysander beheld when he opened his eyes : and strange to relate, so powerful was the love-charm, all his love for Hermia vanished away, and Lysander fell in love with Helena.

Had he first seen Hermia when he awoke, the blunder Puck committed would have been of no consequence, for he could not love that faithful lady too well; but for poor Lysander to be forced by a fairy love-charm to forget his own true Hermia, and to run after another lady, and leave Hermia asleep quite alone in wood at midnight was a sad chance indeed.

Thus this fortune happened. Helena, as has been before related, endeavoured to keep pace with Demetrius when he ran away so rudely from her: but she could not continue this unequal race long, men being always better runners in a long race than ladies. Helena soon lost sight of Demetrius; and as she was wandering about, dejected and forlorn, she arrived at the place where Lysander was sleeping. "Ah!" said she, "this is Lysander lying on the ground, is he dead or asleep?" Then gently touching him, she said, "Good, sir, if you are alive, awake." Upon this Lysander opened his eyes, and (the love-charm beginning to work) immediately addressed her in terms of extravagant love and admiration telling her, she as much excelled Hermia in beauty as a dove does a raven, and that he would run through fire for her sweet sake; and many more such lover-like speeches. Helena knowing Lysander was her friend Hermia's lover, and that he was solemnly engaged to marry her, was in the utmost rage when she heard herself addressed in this manner; for she thought (as well she might) that Lysander was making a jest of her. "Oh!" said she, "why was I born to be mocked and scorned by every one? Is it not enough, is it not enough, young man, that I can never get a sweet look or a kind word from Demetrius; but you, sir, must pretend in this disdainful manner to court me? I thought, Lysander, you were a lord of more true gentleness." Saying these words in great anger, she ran away; and Lysander followed her, quite forgetful of his own Hermia, who was still asleep.

When Hermia awoke, she was in a sad fright at finding herself alone. She wandered about the wood, not knowing what was become of Lysander, or which way to go to seek for him. In the meantime Demetrius, not being able to find Hermia and his rival Lysander, and fatigued with his fruitless search, was observed by Oberon fast asleep. Oberon had learnt by some questions he had asked of Puck, that he had applied the love-charm to the wrong person's eyes; and now, having found the person first intended, he touched the eyelids of the sleeping Demetrius with the love-juice, and he instantly awoke; and the first

thing he saw being Helena, lie, as Lysander had done before, began to address love-speeches to her : and just at that moment Lysander followed by Hermia (for through Puck's unlucky mistake it was now become Hermia's turn to run after her lover), made his appearance, and then Lysander and Demetrius, both speaking together, made love to Helena, they being each one under the influence of the same potent charm.

The astonished Helena thought that Demetrius, Lysander, and her once dear friend Hermia, were all in a plot together to make a jest of her.

Hermia was as much surprised as Helena ; she knew not why Lysander and Demetrius, who both before loved her, were now become the lovers of Helena : and to Hermia the matter seemed to be no jest.

The ladies, who before had always been the dearest of friends, now fell to high words together.

"Unkind Hermia," said Helena, "it is you have set Lysander on, to vex me with mock praises ; and your other lover Demetrius, who used almost to spurn me with his foot, have you not bid him call me Goddess, Nymph, rare, precious, and celestial ? He would not speak thus to me, whom he hates, if you did not set him on to make a jest of me. Unkind Hermia, to join with men in scorning your poor friend. Have you forgot our school-day friendship ? How often, Hermia, have we two, sitting on one cushion, both singing one song, with our needles working the same flower, both on the same sampler wrought : growing up together in fashion of a double cherry, scarcely seeming parted ? Hermia, it is not friendly in you, it is not maidenly, to join with men in scorning your poor friend."

"I am amazed at your passionate words," said Hermia : "I scorn you not ; it seems you scorn me." "Ay, do," returned Helena, "persevere, counterfeit serious looks, and make mouths at me when I turn my back ; then wink at each other, and hold the sweet jest up. If you had any pity, grace, or manners, you would not use me thus."

While Helena and Hermia were speaking these angry words to each other, Demetrius and Lysander left them, to fight together in the wood for the love of Helena.

When they found the gentlemen had left them, they departed, and once more wandered weary in the wood in search of their lovers.

As soon as they were gone, the fairy king, who with little Puck had been listening to their quarrels, said to him, "This is your negligence, Puck; or did you do this wilfully?" "Believe me, king of shadows," answered Puck, "it was a mistake: did not you tell me I should know the man by his Athenian garments? However, I am not sorry this has happened, for I think their jangling makes me excellent sport." "You heard," said Oberon, "that Demetrius and Lysander are gone to seek a convenient place to fight in. I command you to overhang the night with a thick fog, and lead these quarrelsome lovers so astray in the dark, that they shall not be able to find each other. Counterfeit each of their voices to the other, and with bitter taunts provoke them to follow you, while they think it is their rival's tongue they hear. See you do this, till they are so weary that they can go no farther; and when you find they are asleep, drop the juice of this other flower into Lysander's eyes, and when he awakes he will forget his new love for Helena, and return to his old passion for Hermia; and then the two fair ladies may each one be happy with the man she loves; and they will think all that has passed a vexatious dream. About this quickly, Puck; and I will go and see what sweet love my Titania has found."

Titania was still sleeping, and Oberon seeing a clown near her, who had lost his way in the wood, and likewise asleep: "This fellow," said he, "shall be my Titania's true love"; and clapping an ass's head over the clown's, it seemed to fit him as well as if it had grown upon his own shoulders. Though Oberon fixed the ass's head on very gently, it awakened him, and rising up, unconscious of what Oberon had done to him, he went towards the bower where the fairy queen slept.

"Ah! what angel is that I see?" said Titania, opening her eyes, and the juice of the little purple flower beginning to take effect: "Are you as wise as you are beautiful?"

"Why, mistress," said the foolish clown, "if I have wit enough to find the way out of this wood, I have enough to serve my turn."

"Out of the wood do not desire to go," said the enamoured queen. "I am a spirit of no common rate. I love you. Go with me, and I will give you fairies to attend upon you."

She then called four of her fairies : their names were Pease-blossom, Cobweb, Moth and Mustard-seed.

"Attend," said the queen, "upon this sweet gentleman : hop in his walks, and gambol in his sight ; feed him with grapes and apricots, and steal for him the honey-bags from the bees. Come, sit with me," said she to the clown, "and let me play with your amiable hairy cheeks, my beautiful ass ! and kiss your fair large ears, my gentle joy !"

"Where is Pease-blossom ?" said the ass-headed clown ; not much regarding the fairy-queen's courtship, but very proud of his new attendants.

"Here, sir," said little Pease-blossom.

"Scratch my head," said the clown. "Where is Cobweb ?"

"Here, sir," said Cobweb.

"Good, Mr. Cobweb," said the foolish clown, "kill me the red humble bee on the top of that thistle yonder ; and good Mr. Cobweb, bring me the honey-bag. Do not fret yourself too much in the action, Mr. Cobweb, and take care the honey-bag break not ; I should be sorry to have you over-flown with a honey-bag. Where is Mustard-seed ?"

"Here, sir," said Mustard-seed ; "what is your will ?"

"Nothing," said the clown, "good Mr. Mustard-seed, but to help Mr. Pease-blossom to scratch : I must go to a barber's, Mr. Mustard seed, for methinks I am marvellous hairy about the face."

"My sweet love," said the queen, "what will you have to eat ? I have a venturous fairy shall seek the squirrel's hoard, and fetch you some new nuts."

"I had rather have a handful of dried pease," said the clown, who with his ass's head had got an ass's appetite. "But, I pray, let none of your people disturb me, for I have a mind to sleep."

"Sleep then," said the queen, "and I will wind you in my arms. O how I love you ! How I dote upon you !"

When the fairy king saw the clown sleeping in the arms of his queen, he advanced within her sight, and reproached her with having lavished her favours upon an ass.

This she could not deny, as the clown was then sleeping within her arms, with his ass's head crowned by her with flowers,

When Oberon had teased her for some time, he again demanded the changeling-boy ; which she, ashamed of being discovered by her lord with her new favourite, did not dare to refuse him.

Oberon, having thus obtained the little boy he had so long wished for to be his page, took pity on the disgraceful situation into which, by his merry contrivance, he had brought his Titania, and threw some of the juice of the other flower into her eyes ; and the fairy queen immediately recovered her senses, and wondered at her late dotage, saying how she now loathed the sight of the strange monster.

Oberon likewise took the ass's head from off the clown, and left him to finish his nap with his own fool's head upon his shoulders

Oberon and his Titania being now perfectly reconciled, he related to her the history of the lovers, and their midnight quarrels, and she agreed to go with him, and see the end of their adventures.

The fairy king and queen found the lovers and their fair ladies, at no great distance from each other, sleeping on a grass-plot ; for Puck, to make amends for his former mistake, had contrived with the utmost diligence to bring them all to the same spot, unknown to each other ; and he had carefully removed the fairy charm from off the eyes of Lysander with the antidote the king gave to him.

Hermia first awoke, and finding her lost Lysander asleep so near her, was looking at him and wondering at his strange inconstancy. Lysander presently opening his eyes, and seeing his dear Hermia, recovered his reason which the fairy-charm had before clouded, and with his reason, his love for Hermia ; and they began to talk over the adventures of the night, doubting if these things had really happened ; or if they had both been dreaming the same bewildering dream.

Helena and Demetrius were by this time awake ; and a sweet sleep having quited Helena's disturbed and angry spirits, she listened with delight to the professions of love which Demetrius still made to her, and which, to her surprise as well as pleasure, she began to perceive were sincere.

These fair night-wandering ladies, now no longer rivals, became once more true friends : all the unkind words which had passed

were forgiven, and they calmly consulted together what was best to be done in their present situation. It was soon agreed that as Demetrius had given up his pretensions to Hermia, he should endeavour to prevail upon her father to revoke the cruel sentence of death which had been passed against her. Demetrius was preparing to return to Athens for this friendly purpose, when they were surprised with the sight of Egeus, Hermia's father, who came to the wood in pursuit of his runaway daughter.

When Egeus understood that Demetrius would not now marry his daughter, he no longer opposed her marriage with Lysander, but gave his consent that they should be wedded on the fourth day from that time, being the same day on which Hermia had been condemned to lose her life; and on that same day Helena joyfully agreed to marry her beloved and now faithful Demetrius.

The fairy king and queen, who were invisible spectators of this reconciliation, and now saw the happy ending of the lovers' history brought about through the good offices of Oberon, received so much pleasure, that these kind spirits resolved to celebrate the approaching nuptials with sports and revels throughout their fairy kingdom.

And now, if any are offended with this story of fairies and their pranks, as judging it incredible and strange, they have only to think that they have been asleep and dreaming and that all these adventures were visions which they saw in their sleep: and I hope none of my readers will be so unreasonable as to be offended with a pretty harmless *Midsummer Night's Dream*.

MEASURE FOR MEASURE.

IN the city of Vienna there once reigned a duke of such a mild and gentle temper, that he suffered his subjects to neglect the laws with impunity; and there was in particular one law, the existence of which was almost forgotten, the duke never having put it in force during his whole reign. This was a law dooming any man to the punishment of death, who should live with a woman that was not his wife; and this law through the lenity of the duke being utterly disregarded, the holy institution of marriage became neglected, and complaints were every day made to the duke by the parents of the young ladies in Vienna, of the continual non-enforcement of this important law.

The good duke perceived with sorrow this growing evil among his subjects; but he thought that a sudden change in himself from the indulgence he had hitherto shown, to the strict severity requisite to check this abuse, would make his people (who had hitherto loved him) consider him as a tyrant; therefore he determined to absent himself a while from his dukedom and depute another to the full exercise of his power, that the law against these dishonourable persons might be put in effect, without giving offence by an unusual severity in his own person.

Angelo, a man who bore the reputation of a saint in Vienna for his strict and rigid life, was chosen by the duke as a fit person to undertake this important charge; and when the duke imparted his design to lord Escalus, his chief counsellor, Escalus said, "If any man in Vienna be of worth to undergo such ample grace and honour, it is lord Angelo." And now the duke departed from Vienna under pretence of making a journey into Poland, leaving Angelo to act as the lord deputy in his absence; but the duke's absence was only a feigned one, for he privately returned to Vienna, habited like a friar, with the intent to watch unseen the conduct of the saintly-seeming Angelo.

It happened just about the time that Angelo was invested with his new dignity, that a gentleman, whose name was Claudio, had persuaded a young lady to leave her parents; and for this offence, by command of the new lord deputy, Claudio was taken up and committed to prison, and by virtue of the old law which had so long been neglected, Angelo sentenced Claudio to be beheaded. Great interest was made for the pardon of young Claudio, and the good old lord Escalus himself interceded for him. "Alas," said he, "this gentleman whom I would save had an honourable father, for whose sake I pray you pardon the young man's transgression." But Angelo replied, "We must not make a scarecrow of the law, setting it up to frighten birds of prey, till custom, finding it harmless, makes it their prey, and not their terror. Sir, he must die."

Lucio, the friend of Claudio, visited him in the prison and Claudio said to him, "I pray you, Lucio, do me this kind service. Go to my sister Isabella, who this day proposes to enter the convent of Saint Clare; acquaint her with the danger of my state; implore her that she make friends with the strict deputy, bid her go herself to Angelo. I have great hopes in that; for she can discourse with prosperous art, and well she can persuade; besides.

there is a speechless dialect in youthful sorrow, such as moves men."

Isabella, the sister of Claudio, had, as he said, that day entered upon her noviciate in the convent, and it was her intent, after passing through her probation as a novice, to take the veil, and she was inquiring of a nun concerning the rules of the convent, when she heard the voice of Lucio, who, as he entered that religious house, said, "Peace be in this place!" "Who is it that speaks?" said Isabella. "It is a man's voice," replied the nun: "Gentle Isabella, go to him, and learn his business; you may, I may not. When you have taken the veil, you must not speak with men but in the presence of the prioress; then if you speak, you must not show your face, or if you show your face, you must not speak." "And have you nuns no farther privileges?" said Isabella. "Are not these large enough?" replied the nun. "Yes truly," said Isabella: "I speak not as desiring more, but rather wishing a more, strict restraint upon the sisterhood, the votarists of Saint Clare." Again they heard the voice of Lucio, and the nun said, "He calls again. I pray you answer him." Isabella then went out to Lucio, and in answer to his salutation, said, "Peace and prosperity. Who is it that calls?" Then Lucio, approaching her with reverence, said, "Hail, lady, if such you be, as the roses in your cheeks proclaim you are no less! can you bring me to the sight of Isabella, a novice of this place, and the fair sister to her unhappy brother Claudio?" "Why her unhappy brother?" said Isabella, "let me ask: for I am that Isabella, and his sister." "Fair and gentle lady," he replied, "your brother kindly greets you by me; he is in prison." "Woe is me! for what?" said Isabella. Lucio then told her, Claudio was imprisoned for enticing a young lady from her home. "Ah," said she, "I fear it is my cousin Juliet." Juliet and Isabella were not related, but they called each other cousin in remembrance of their school-days' friendship; and as Isabella knew that Juliet loved Claudio, she feared she had been led by her affection for him into this transgression. "She it is," replied Lucio, "Why then, let my brother marry Juliet," said Isabella. Lucio replied, that Claudio would gladly marry Juliet, but that the lord deputy had sentenced him to die for his offence; "Unless," said he, "you have the grace by your fair prayer to soften Angelo, and that is my business between you and your poor brother." "Alas," said Isabella, "what poor ability is there in me to do him

good ? I doubt I have no power to move Angelo." "Our doubts are traitors," said Lucio, "and make us lose the good we might often win, by fearing to attempt it. Go to lord Angelo ! When maidens sue, and kneel and weep, men give like gods." "I will see what I can do," said Isabella : "I will but stay to give the prioress notice of the affair, and then I will go to Angelo. Commend me to my brother : soon at night I will send him word of my success."

Isabella hastened to the palace, and threw herself on her knees before Angelo, saying, "I am a woful suitor to your honour, if it will please your honour to hear me." "Well, what is your suit ?" said Angelo. She then made her petition in the most moving terms for her brother's life. But Angelo said, "Maiden, there is no remedy. your brother is sentenced, and he must die." "O just, but severe law !" said Isabella : "I had a brother then -- Heaven keep your honour !" and she was about to depart. But Lucio, who had accompanied her said, "Give it not over so ; return to him again, entreat him, kneel down before him, hang upon his gown. You are too cold ; if you should need a pin, you could not with a more tame tongue desire it." Then again Isabella on her knees implored for mercy. "He is sentenced," said Angelo : "it is too late." "Too late !" said Isabella : "Why, no ; I that do speak a word, may call it back again. Believe this, my lord, no ceremony that to great ones belong, not the king's crown, nor the deputed sword, the marshal's truncheon, nor the judge's robe becomes them with one half so good a grace as mercy does." "Pray you begone," said Angelo. But still Isabella entreated ; and she said, "If my brother had been as you, and you as he, you might have slipped like him, but he like you would not have been so stern. I would to Heaven I had your power, and you were Isabella. Should it then be thus ? No, I would tell you what it were to be a judge, and what a prisoner." "Be content, fair maid !" said Angelo ! "it is the law, not I, condemns your brother. Were he my kinsman, my brother, or my son, it should be thus with him. He must die to-morrow." "To morrow ?" said Isabella : "Oh, that is sudden : spare him, spare him ; he is not prepared for death. Even for our kitchens we kill the fowl in season ; shall we serve Heaven with less respect than we minister to our gross selves ? Good, good, my lord, bethink you, none have died for my brother's offence, though many have committed it. So you would be the first that

gives this sentence, and he the first that suffers it. Go to your own bosom, my lord : knock there, and ask your heart what it does know that is like my brother's fault ; if it confess a natural guiltiness such as his is, let it not sound a thought against my brother's life ! " Her last words more moved Angelo than all she had before said, for the beauty of Isabella had raised a guilty passion in his heart, and he began to form thoughts of dishonourable love, such as Claudio's crime had been ; and the conflict in his mind made him turn away from Isabella : but she called him back, saying, " Gentle, my lord, turn back ; hark how I will bribe you. Good, my lord, back ! " " How, bribe me ! " said Angelo, astonished that she should think of offering him a bribe. " Ay," said Isabella, " with such gifts that Heaven itself shall share with you : not with golden treasures, or those glittering stones, whose price is either rich or poor as fancy values them, but with true prayers that shall be up to Heaven before sunrise---prayers from preserved souls, from fasting maids whose minds are dedicated to nothing temporal." " Well, come to me to-morrow," said Angelo. And for this short respite of her brother's life, and for this permission that she might be heard again, she left him with the joyful hope that she should at last prevail over his stern nature : and as she went away, she said, " Heaven keep your honour safe ! Heaven save your honour ! " Which when Angelo heard, he said within his heart, " Amen, I would be saved from thee and from thy virtues : " and then, affrighted at his own evil thoughts, he said, " What is this ! What is this ! Do I love her, that I desire to hear her speak again, and feast upon her eyes ! What is it I dream on ? The cunning enemy of mankind, to catch a saint, with saints does bait the hook. Never could an immodest woman once stir my temper, but this virtuous woman subdues me quite. Even till now, when men were fond, I smiled and wondered at them."

In the guilty conflict in his mind Angelo suffered more that night than the prisoner he had so severely sentenced : for in the prison Claudio was visited by the good duke, who, in his friar's habit taught the young man the way to Heaven, preaching to him the words of penitence and peace. But Angelo felt all the pangs of irresolute guilt : now wishing to entice Isabella from the paths of innocence and honour, and now suffering remorse and horror for a crime as yet but intentional. But in the end evil thoughts prevailed ; and he who had so lately started at the offer of a bribe, resolved to tempt this maiden with so high a bribe as she might

not be able to resist, even with the precious gift of her dear brother's life.

When Isabella came in the morning, Angelo desired she might be admitted alone to his presence: and being there, he said to her, if she would listen to his dishonourable proposals, he would give her her brother's life. "For," said he, "I love you, Isabella." "My brother," said Isabella, "did so love Juliet, and yet you tell me he shall die for it." "But," said Angelo. "Claudio shall not die, if you will consent to visit me by stealth at night, even as Juliet left her father's house at night to come to Claudio." Isabella, in amazement at his words, that he should tempt her to the same fault for which he passed sentence of death upon her brother, said, "I would do as much for my poor brother as for myself; that is, were I under sentence of death, the impression of keen whips I would wear as rubies, and go to my death as to a bed that longing I had been sick for, ere I would yield myself up to this shame." And then she told him, she hoped he only spoke these words to her in jest. But he said, "Believe me on my honour, my words express my purpose." Isabella, angered to the heart to hear him use the word honour to express such dishonourable purposes, said, "Ha! little honour, to be much believed; and most pernicious purpose. I will proclaim thee, Angelo; look for it! Sign me a present pardon for my brother, or I will tell the world aloud what man thou art!" "Who will believe you, Isabella?" said Angelo; "my unsoiled name, the austereness of my life, my word vouched against yours, will outweigh your accusation. Redeem your brother by yielding to my will, or he shall die to-morrow. As for you, say what you can, my false will outweigh your true story. Answer me to-morrow."

"To whom should I complain? Did I tell this, who would believe me?" said Isabella, as she went towards the dreary prison where her brother was confined. When she arrived there, her brother was in pious conversation with the duke, who, in his friar's habit, had also visited Juliet, and brought both these guilty lovers to a proper sense of their fault; and unhappy Juliet with tears and a true remorse confessed that she herself was more to blame than Claudio.

As Isabella entered the room where Claudio was confined, she said, "Peace be here, grace and good company!" "Who is there?" said the disguised duke: "come in; the wish deserves a welcome." "My business is a word or two with Claudio," said

Isabella. Then the duke left them together, and desired the provost, who had the charge of the prisoners, to place him where he might overhear their conversation.

"Now, sister, what is the comfort?" said Claudio. Isabella told him he must prepare for death on the morrow. "Is there no remedy?" said Claudio. "Yes, brother," replied Isabella, "there is; but such a one as, if you consented to it, would strip your honour from you, and leave you naked." "Let me know the point," said Claudio. "O, I do fear you, Claudio!" replied his sister; "and I quake, lest you should wish to live, and more respect the trifling term of six or seven winters added to your life, than your perpetual honour! Do you dare to die? The sense of death is most in apprehension, and the poor beetle that we tread upon feels a pang as great as when a giant dies." "Why do you give me this shame?" said Claudio. "Think you I can fetch a resolution from flowery tenderness? If I must die, I will encounter darkness as a bride, and hug it in my arms." "There spoke my brother," said Isabella; "there my father's grave did utter forth a voice. Yes, you must die; yet, would you think it, Claudio! this outward sainted deputy, if I would yield to his base proposals, would grant your life. O, were it but my life, I would lay it down for your deliverance as frankly as a pin!" "Thanks, dear Isabella," said Claudio. "Be ready to die to-morrow," said Isabella. "Death is a fearful thing," said Claudio. "And shamed life a hateful," replied his sister. But the thoughts of death overcame the constancy of Claudio's temper and terrors, such as the guilty only at their deaths do know, assailing him, he cried out, "Sweet sister, let me live! The sin you do to save a brother's life, nature dispenses with the deed so far, that it becomes a virtue." "O faithless coward! O dishonest wretch!" said Isabella; "would you preserve your life by your sister's shame? O fie, fie, fie! I thought, my brother, you had in you such a mind of honour, that had you twenty heads to render upon twenty blocks, you would have yielded them up all before your sister should stoop to such dishonour." "Nay, hear me, Isabella!" said Claudio. But what he would have said in defence of his weakness, in desiring to live was interrupted by the entrance of the duke, who said, "Claudio, I have overheard what has passed between you and your sister. Angelo had never the purpose to corrupt her; what he said has only been to make trial of her virtue. She, having the truth of honour in her, has given

him that gracious denial which he is most glad to receive. There is no hope that he will pardon you ; therefore pass your hours in prayer, and make ready for death." Then Claudio repented of his weakness, and said, "Let me ask my sister's pardon ! I am so out of love with life that I will sue to be rid of it." And Claudio retired, overwhelmed with shame and sorrow for his fault.

The duke being now alone with Isabella, commended her virtuous resolution, saying, "The hand that made you fair has made you good." "O," said Isabella, "how much is the good duke deceived in Angelo ! if ever he return, and I can speak to him, I will discover his government." Isabella knew not that she was even now making the discovery she threatened. The duke replied, "That shall not be much amiss ; yet, as the matter now stands, Angelo will repel your accusation ; therefore lend an attentive ear to my advisings. I believe that you may most righteously do a poor wronged lady a merited benefit, redeem your brother from the angry law, do no stain to your own most gracious person, and much please the absent duke, if peradventure he shall ever return to have notice of this business." Isabella said, she had a spirit to do anything he desired, provided it was nothing wrong. "Virtue is bold, and never fearful," said the duke, and then he asked her, if she had ever heard of Mariana, the sister of Frederick, the great soldier who was drowned at sea. "I have heard of the lady," said Isabella, "and good words went with her name." "This lady," said the duke, "is the wife of Angelo, but her marriage dowry was on board the vessel in which her brother perished, and mark how heavily this befell to the poor gentlewoman ! for, besides the loss of a most noble and renowned brother, who in his love towards her was the most kind and natural, in the wreck of her fortunes he lost the affection of her husband, the well-seeming Angelo ; who, pretending to discover some dishonour in this honourable lady (though the true cause was the loss of her dowry), left her in her tears, and dried not one of them with his comfort. His unjust unkindness, that in all reason should have quenched her love, has, like an impediment in the current, made it more unruly, and Mariana loves her cruel husband with the full of continuance of her first affection." The duke then more plainly unfolded his plan. It was, that Isabella should go to lord Angelo, and seemingly consent to come to him as he desired, at midnight ; that by this means she would obtain the promised pardon ; and that

Mariana should go in her stead to the appointment, and pass herself upon Angelo in the dark for Isabella. "Nor, gentle daughter," said the feigned friar, "fear you to do this thing; Angelo is her husband; and to bring them thus together is no sin." Isabella being pleased with this project, departed to do as he directed her; and he went to apprize Mariana of their intention. He had before this time visited this unhappy lady in his assumed character, giving her religious instruction and friendly consolation at which times he had learned her sad story from her own lips; and now she, looking upon him as a holy man, readily consented to be directed by him in his undertaking.

When Isabella returned from her interview with Angelo, to the house of Mariana, where the duke had appointed her to meet him, he said, "Well met, and in good time; what is the news from this good deputy?" Isabella related the manner in which she had settled the affair. "Angelo," said she, "has a garden surrounded with a brick wall, on the western side of which is a vineyard, and to that vineyard is a gate." And then she showed to the duke and Mariana two keys that Angelo had given her; and she said, "This bigger key opens the vineyard gate; this other a little door which leads from the vineyard to the garden. There I have made my promise at the dead of the night to call upon him, and have got from him his word of assurance for my brother's life. I have taken a due and wary note of the place; and with whispering and most guilty diligence he showed me the way twice over." "Are there no other tokens agreed upon between you, that Mariana must observe?" said the duke. "No, none," said Isabella, "only to go when it is dark. I have told him my time can be but short; for I have made him think a servant come along with me, and that this servant is persuaded I come about my brother." The duke commended her discreet management, and she, turning to Mariana, said, "Little have you to say to Angelo, when you depart from him, but, soft and low, *Remember now my brother!*"

Mariana was that night conducted to the appointed place by Isabella, who rejoiced that she had, as she supposed, by this device preserved both her brother's life and her own honour. But that her brother's life was safe the duke was not well satisfied, and therefore at midnight he again repaired to the prison; and it was well for Claudio that he did so, else would Claudio have that night been beheaded; for, soon after the duke entered the prison, an order came from the cruel deputy, commanding that Claudio

should be beheaded, and his head sent to him by five o'clock in the morning. But the duke persuaded the provost to put off the execution of Claudio, and to deceive Angelo, by sending him the head of a man who died that morning in the prison. And to prevail upon the provost to agree to this, the duke, whom still the provost suspected not to be anything more or greater than he seemed, showed the provost a letter written with the duke's hand, and sealed with his seal, which when the provost saw, he concluded this friar must have some secret order from the absent duke, and therefore he consented to spare Claudio; and he cut off the dead man's head, and carried it to Angelo.

Then the duke, in his own name, wrote to Angelo a letter, saying that certain accidents had put a stop to his journey, and that he should be in Vienna by the following morning, requiring Angelo to meet him at the entrance of the city, there to deliver up his authority; and the duke also commanded it to be proclaimed, that if any of his subjects craved redress for injustice, they should exhibit their petitions in the street on his first entrance into the city.

Early in the morning Isabella came to the prison, and the duke, who there awaited her coming, for secret reasons thought it good to tell her that Claudio was beheaded; therefore, when Isabella inquired if Angelo had sent the pardon for her brother, he said, "Angelo has released Claudio from this world. His head is off, and sent to the deputy." The much-grieved sister cried out, "O unhappy Claudio, wretched Isabella, injurious world, most wicked Angelo!" The seeming friar bid her take comfort, and when she was become a little calm, he acquainted her with the near prospect of the duke's return, and told her in what manner she should proceed in preferring her complaint against Angelo; and he bade her not to fear if the cause should seem to go against her for a while. Leaving Isabella sufficiently instructed, he next went to Mariana, and gave her counsel in what manner she also should act.

Then the duke laid aside his friar's habit, and in his own royal robes, amidst a joyful crowd of his faithful subjects assembled to greet his arrival, entered the city of Vienna, where he was met by Angelo, who delivered up his authority in the proper form. And there came Isabella, in the manner of a petitioner for redress, and said, "Justice, most royal duke! I am the sister of one Claudio, who was cruelly condemned to lose his head. I

made my suit to lord Angelo for my brother's pardon. It were needless to tell your Grace how I prayed and kneeled, how he repelled me, and how I replied ; for this was of much length. The vile conclusion I now begin with grief and shame to utter. Angelo would not, but by my yielding to his dishonourable love, release my brother ; and after much debate within myself, my sisterly remorse overcame my virtue, and I did yield to him. But the next morning betimes, Angelo, forfeiting his promise, sent a warrant for my brother's head ! " The duke affected to disbelieve her story ; and Angelo said that grief for her brother's death, who had suffered by the due course of the law, had disordered her senses. And now another approached, which was Mariana ; and Mariana said, " Noble prince, as there comes light from heaven, and truth from breath, as there is sense in truth, and heaven, and truth from breath, as there is sense in truth, and truth in virtue, I am this man's wife, and, my good lord, the words of Isabella are false, for the night she says she was with Angelo, I passed that night with him in the garden-house. As this is true, let me in safety rise, or else for ever be fixed here a marble monument." Then did Isabella appeal for the truth of what she had said to friar Lodowick, that being the name the duke had assumed in his disguise. Isabella and Mariana had both obeyed his instructions in what they said, the duke intending that the innocence of Isabella should be plainly proved in that public manner before the whole city of Vienna : but Angelo little thought that it was from such a cause that they thus differed in their story, and he hoped from their contradictory evidence to be able to clear himself from the accusation of Isabella, and he said, assuming the look of offended innocence, " I did but smile till now ; but, good my lord, my patience here is touched, and I perceive these poor distracted women are but the instruments of some greater one, who sets them on. Let me have way, my lord, to find this practice out." " Ay, with all my heart," said the duke, " and punish them to the height of your pleasure. You, lord Escalus, sit with lord Angelo, lend him your pains to discover this abuse ; this friar is sent for that set them on, and when he comes, do with your injuries as may seem best in any chastisement. I for a while will leave you, but stir not you, lord Angelo, till you have well determined upon this slander." The duke then went away, leaving Angelo well pleased to be deputed judge and umpire in his own cause. But the duke was absent only while he threw off his royal robes and put on his friar's habit ; and in that disguise

again he represented himself before Angelo and Escalus ; and the good Escalus, who thought Angelo had been falsely accused, said to the supposed friar. "Come, sir did you set these women on to slander lord Angelo?" He replied, "Where is the duke? It is he should hear me speak." Escalus said, "The duke is in us, and we will hear you. Speak justly." "Boldly at least," retorted the friar: and then he blamed the duke for leaving the cause of Isabella in the hands of him she had accused, and spoke so freely of many corrupt practices he had observed, while, as he said, he had been a looker-on in Vienna, that Escalus threatened him with the torture for speaking words against the state, and for censuring the conduct of the duke, and ordered him to be taken away to prison. Then, to the amazement of all present, and to the utter confusion of Angelo, the supposed friar threw off his disguise, and they saw it was the duke himself.

The duke first addressed Isabella. He said to her, "Come hither, Isabella. Your friar is now your prince, but with my habit I have not changed my heart. I am still devoted to your service." "O give me pardon," and Isabella, "that I, your vassal, have employed and troubled your unknown sovereignty." He answered that he had most need of forgiveness from her, for not having prevented the death of her brother—for not yet would he tell her that Claudio was living; meaning first to make a farther trial of her goodness. Angelo now knew the duke had been a secret witness of his bad deeds, and he said, "O my dread lord, I should be guiltier than my guiltiness, to think I can be undiscernible, when I perceive your Grace, like power divine, has looked upon my actions. Then, good prince, no longer prolong my shame, but let my trial be my own confession. Immediate sentence and death is all the grace I beg." The duke replied, "Angelo, thy faults are manifest. We do condemn thee to the very block where Claudio stooped to death; and with like haste away with him; and for his possessions, Mariana, we do instate and widow you withal, to buy you a better husband." "O my dear lord," said Mariana, "I crave no other, nor no better man:" and then on her knees, even as Isabella had begged the life of Claudio, did this kind wife of an ungrateful husband beg the life of Angelo; and she said, "Gentle, my liege, O good my lord! Sweet Isabella, take my part! Lend me your knees, and, all my life to come, I will lend you all my life to do you service!" The duke said, "Against all sense you importune her. Should Isabella kneel down to beg for mercy, her brother's ghost would

break his paved bed, and take her hence in horror." Still Mariana said, "Isabella, sweet Isabella, do but kneel by me, hold up your hand, say nothing! I will speak all. They say, best men are moulded out of faults, and for the most part become much the better for being a little bad. So may my husband. Oh, Isabella, will you not lend a knee?" The duke then said, "He dies for Claudio." But much pleased was the good duke, when his own Isabella, from whom he expected all gracious and honourable acts, kneeled down before him, and said, "Most bounteous sir, look, if it please you, on this man condemned, as if my brother lived. I partly think a due sincerity governed his deeds till he did look on me. Since it is so, let him not die! My brother had but justice, in that he did the thing for which he died."

The duke, as the best reply he could make to this noble petitioner for her enemy's life, sending for Claudio from his prison-house, where he lay doubtful of his destiny, presented to her this lamented brother living; and he said to Isabella, "Give me your hand, Isabella; for your lovely sake I pardon Claudio. Say you will be mine, and he shall be my brother too." By this time lord Angelo perceived he was safe; and the duke, observing his eye to brighten up a little said, "Well, Angelo, look that you love your wife; her worth has obtained your pardon: joy to you, Mariana! Love her, Angelo! I have confessed her, and know her virtue." Angelo remembered, when dressed in a little brief authority, how hard his heart had been, and felt how sweet is mercy.

The duke commanded Claudio to marry Juliet, and offered himself again to the acceptance of Isabella, whose virtuous and noble conduct had won her prince's heart. Isabella, not having taken the veil, was free to marry; and the friendly offices, while hid under the disguise of a humble friar, which the noble duke had done for her, made her with grateful joy accept the honour he offered her; and when she became duchess of Vienna, the excellent example of the virtuous Isabella worked such a complete reformation among the young ladies of that city, that from that time none ever fell into the transgression of Juliet, the repentant wife of the reformed Claudio. And the mercy-loving duke long reigned with his beloved Isabella, the happiest of husbands and of princes.

THE TAMING OF THE SHREW.

KATHERINE, the Shrew, was the eldest daughter of Baptista, a rich gentleman of Padua. She was a lady of such an ungovernable spirit and fiery temper, such a loud-tongued scold, that she was known in Padua by no other name than Katherine the Shrew. It seemed very unlikely, indeed impossible, that any gentleman would ever be found who would venture to marry this lady, and therefore Baptista was much blamed for deferring his consent to many excellent offers that were made to her gentle sister Bianca, putting off all Bianca's suitors with this excuse, that when the eldest sister was fairly off his hands, they should have free leave to address young Bianca.

It happened, however, that a gentleman named Petruchio came to Padua, purposely to look out for a wife, who, nothing discouraged by these reports of Katherine's temper, and hearing she was rich and handsome, resolved upon marrying this famous termagant, and taming her into a meek and manageable wife. And truly none was so fit to set about this Herculean labour as Petruchio, whose spirit was as high as Katherine's and he was a witty and most happy-tempered humourist, and withal so wise, and of such a true judgment, that he well knew how to feign a passionate and furious deportment, when his spirits were so calm that himself could have laughed merrily at his own angry feigning, for his natural temper was careless and easy : the boisterous airs he assumed when he became the husband of Katherine being but in sport, or, more properly speaking, affected by his excellent discernment, as the only means to overcome in her own way the passionate ways of the furious Katherine.

A courting then Petruchio went to Katherine the Shrew, and first of all he applied to Baptista, her father, for leave to woo his *gentle daughter* Katherine, as Petruchio called her, saying archly, that having heard of her bashful modest, *and mild* behaviour, he had come from Verona to solicit her love. Her father, though he wished her married, was forced to confess Katherine would ill answer this character, it being soon apparent of what manner of gentleness she was composed, for her music-master rushed into the room to complain that the gentle Katherine, his pupil, had broken his head with her lute, for presuming to find fault with her performance ; which, when Petruchio heard, he said, "It is a brave wench ; I love her more than ever, and long to have some chat with her ;" and hurrying the old gentleman

for a positive answer, he said, "My business is in haste, Signior Baptista, I cannot come every day to woo. You knew my father. He is dead, and has left me heir to all his lands and goods. Then tell me, if I get your daughter's love what dowry you will give with her." Baptista thought his manner was somewhat blunt for a lover, but being glad to get Katherine married, he answered that he would give her twenty thousand crowns for her dowry, and half his estate at his death : so this odd match was quickly agreed on, and Baptista went to apprize his shrewish daughter of her lover's addresses, and sent her in to Petruchio to listen to his suit.

In the meantime, Petruchio was settling with himself the mode of courtship he should pursue : and he said, "I will woo her with some spirit when she comes. If she rails at me, why then I will tell her she sings as sweetly as a nightingale ; and if she frowns, I will say she looks as clear as roses newly washed with dew. If she will not speak a word, I will praise the eloquence of her language ; and if she bids me leave her, I will give her thanks as if she had me stay with her a week." Now the stately Katherine entered, and Petruchio first addressed her with "Good morrow, Kate, for that is your name, I hear." Katherine, not liking this plain salutation, said disdainfully, "They call me Katherine who do speak to me." "You lie," replied the lover ; "for you are called plain Kate, and bonny Kate, and sometimes Kate the Shrew ; but, Kate, you are the prettiest Kate in Christendom, and therefore, Kate, hearing your mildness praised in every town, I am come to woo you for my wife."

A strange courtship they made of it. She in loud and angry terms showing him how justly she had gained the name of Shrew, while he still praised her sweet and courteous words, till at length, hearing her father coming, he said (intending to make as quick a wooing as possible), "Sweet Katherine, let us set this idle chat aside, for your father has consented that you shall be my wife, your dowry is agreed on, and whether you will or no, I will marry you."

And now Baptista entering, Petruchio told him his daughter had received him kindly, and that she had promised to be married the next Sunday. This Katherine denied, saying she would rather see him hanged on Sunday, and reproached her father for wishing to wed her to such a mad-cap ruffian as Petruchio. Petruchio desired her father not to regard her angry words, for they had

agreed she should seem reluctant before him, but that when they were alone he had found her very fond and loving ; and he said to her, " Give me your hand, Kate ; I will go to Venice to buy you fine apparel against our wedding-day. Provide the feast, father, and bid the wedding guests. I will be sure to bring rings, fine array, and rich clothes, that my Katherine may be fine ; and kiss me, Kate, for we will be married on Sunday."

On the Sunday all the wedding guests were assembled, but they waited long before Petruchio came, and Katherine wept for vexation to think that Petruchio had only been making a jest of her. At last, however, he appeared, but he brought none of the bridal finery he had promised Katherine, nor was he dressed himself like a bridegroom, but in strange disordered attire, as if he meant to make a sport of the serious business he came about ; and his servant and the very horses on which they rode were in like manner in mean and fantastic fashion habited.

Petruchio could not be persuaded to change his dress ; he said Katherine was to be married to him, and not to his clothes ; and finding it was in vain to argue with him, to the church they went, he still behaving in the same mad way, for when the priest asked Petruchio if Katherine should be his wife, he swore so loud that she should, that, all-amazed, the priest let fall his book, and as he stooped to take it up this mad-brained bridegroom gave him such a cuff, that down fell the priest and his book again. And all the while they were being married he stamped and swore so, that the high-spirited Katherine trembled and shook with fear. After the ceremony was over, while they were yet in the church, he called for wine, and drank a loud health to the company, and threw a sop which was at the bottom of the glass full in the sexton's face, giving no other reason for this strange act, than that the sexton's beard grew thin and hungerly, and seemed to ask the sop as he was drinking. Never sure was there such a mad marriage ; but Petruchio did but put this wildness on. the better to succeed in the plot he had formed to tame his shrewish wife.

Baptista had provided a sumptuous marriage feast, but when they returned from church, Petruchio, taking hold of Katherine, declared his intention of carrying his wife home instantly ; and no remonstrance of his father-in-law, or angry words of the enraged Katherine, could make him change his purpose ; he claimed a husband's right to dispose of his wife as he pleased, and away he

hurried Katherine : he seeming so daring and resolute that no one dared attempt to stop him.

Petruchio mounted his wife upon a miserable horse, lean and lank, which he had picked out for the purpose, and himself and his servant no better mounted ; they journeyed on through rough and miry ways, and ever when this horse of Katherine stumbled, he would storm and swear at the poor jaded beast, who could scarce crawl under his burthen, as if he had been the most passionate man alive.

At length, after a weary journey, during which Katherine had heard nothing but the wild ravings of Petruchio at the servant and the horses? Petruchio welcomed her kindly to her home, but he resolved she should have neither rest nor food that night. The tables were spread, and supper soon served ; but Petruchio, pretending to find fault with every dish, threw the meat about the floor, and ordered the servants to remove it, and all this he did, as he said, in love for his Katherine, that she might not eat meat that was not well dressed. And when Katherine, weary and supperless, retired to rest, ¹⁵⁰⁶ she found the same fault with the bed, throwing the pillows and bed-clothes about the room, so that she was forced to sit down in a chair, where if she chanced to drop asleep, she was presently wakened by the loud voice of her husband, storming at the servants for the ill-making of his wife's bridal-bed.

The next day Petruchio pursued the same course, still speaking kind words to Katherine, but when she attempted to eat, finding fault with everything that was set before her, throwing the breakfast on the floor as he had done the supper ; and Katherine, the haughty Katherine, was fain to beg the servants would bring her secretly a morsel of food, but they, being instructed by Petruchio, replied, they dared not give her anything unknown to their master. " Ah," said she, " did he marry me to famish me ? Beggars that come to my father's door have food given them. But I, who never knew what to entreat for anything, am starved for want of food, giddy for want of sleep, with oaths kept waking, and with hawling fed, and that which vexes me more than all, he does it under the name of perfect love, pretending that if I sleep or eat, it were present death to me. Here her soliloquy was interrupted by the entrance of Petruchio : he not meaning she should be quite starved, had brought her a small portion of meat, and he said to her, " Now fares my sweet

Kate? Here, love; you see how diligent I am, I have dressed your meat myself. I am sure this kindness merits thanks. What, not a word! Nay, then you love not the meat, and all the pains I have taken is to no purpose." He then ordered the servant to take the dish away. Extreme hunger, which had abated the pride of Katherine, made her say, though angered to heart, "I pray, you let it stand." But this was not all Petruchio intended to bring her to, and he replied, "The poorest service is repaid with thanks, and so shall mine before you touch the meat." On this Katherine brought out a reluctant "I thank you, sir." And now he suffered her to make a slender meal, saying, "Much good may it do your gentle heart, Kate: eat apace! And now, my honey love, we will return to your father's house, and revel it as bravely as the best, with silken coats and caps and golden rings, with ruffs and scarfs and fans and double change of finery;" and to make her believe he really intended to give her these gay things, he called in a tailor and a haberdasher, who brought some new clothes he had ordered for her, and then giving her plate to the servant to take away, before she had half said, ^{and} her hunger, he said, "What have you dined?" The haberdasher presented a cap, saying, "Here is the cap your worship bespoke;" on which Petruchio began to storm afresh, saying, the cap was moulded in a porringer, and that it was no bigger than a cockle or walnut shell, desiring the haberdasher to take it away and make a bigger. Katherine said, "I will have this: all gentlewomen wear such caps as these." "When you are gentle," replied Petruchio, "you shall have one too, and not till then." The meat Katherine had eaten had a little revived her fallen spirits, and she said, "Why, sir, I trust I may have leave to speak, and speak I will: I am no child, no babe; your betters have endured to hear me say my mind; and if you cannot, you had better stop your ears." Petruchio would not hear these angry words, for he had happily discovered a better way of managing his wife than keeping up a jangling argument with her; therefore his answer was, "Why, you say true, it is a paltry cap, and I love you for not liking it." "Love me, or love me not," said Katherine, "I like the cap, and I will have this cap, or none." "You say you wish to see the gown," said Petruchio, still affecting to misunderstand her. The tailor then came forward, and showed her a fine gown he had made for her. Petruchio, whose intent was that she should have neither cap nor gown, found as much fault with that. "O mercy, heaven!" said he "what stuff is here! What, do you call this a sleeve? it is like a demi-cannon, carved

up and down like an apple tart." The tailor said, "You bid me make it according to the fashion of the times;" and Katherine said, she never saw a better fashioned gown. This was enough for Petruchio, and privately desiring these people might be paid for their goods, had excuses made to them for the seemingly strange treatment he bestowed upon them, he with fierce words and furious gestures drove the tailor and the haberdasher out of the room: and then, turning to Katherine, he said, "Well, come, my Kate, we will go to your father's even in these mean garments we now wear." And then he ordered his horses, affirming they should reach Baptista's house by dinner-time, for that it was but seven o'clock. Now it was not early morning, but the very middle of the day, when he spoke this; therefore Katherine ventured to say, though modestly, being almost overcome by the vehemence of his manner, "I dare assure you, sir, it is two o'clock, and will be supper-time before we get there." But Petruchio meant that she should be so completely subdued, that she should assent to everything he said, before he carried her to her father; and therefore, as if he were lord even of the sun, and could command the hours, he said it should be what time he pleased to have it, before he set forward; "For," said he, "whatever I say or do, you still are crossing it. I will not go to-day, and when I go, it shall be what o'clock I say it is." Another day Katherine was forced to practise her newly-found obedience, and not till he had brought her proud spirit to such a perfect subjection that she dared not remember there was such a word as contradiction, would Petruchio allow her to go to her father's house; and even while they were upon their journey thither, she was in danger of being turned back again, only because she happened to hint it was the sun, when he affirmed the moon shone brightly at noon-day. "Now, by my mother's son," said he, "and that is myself, it shall be the moon, or stars, or what I list, before I journey to your father's house." He then made as if he were going back again; but Katherine, no longer Katherine the Shrew, but the obedient wife, said, "Let us go forward, I pray, now we have come so far, and it shall be the sun, or moon, or what you please, and if you please to call it a rush candle henceforth, I vow it shall be so for me." This he was resolved to prove, therefore he said again, "I say, it is the moon." "I know it is the moon," replied Katherine. "You lie, it is the blessed sun," said Petruchio. "Then it is the blessed sun," replied Katherine; "but sun it is not, when you say it is not. What you will have it named even so it is, and so it ever shall be for Katherine."

Now then he suffered her to proceed on her journey : but further to try if this yielding humour would last, he addressed an old gentleman they met on the road as if he had been a young woman, saying to him, "Good morrow, gentle mistress:" and asked Katherine if she had ever beheld a fairer gentlewoman, praising the red and white of the old man's cheeks, and comparing his eyes to two bright stars ; and again he addressed him, saying, "Fair lovely maid, once more good day to you !" and said to his wife, "Sweet Kate, embrace her for her beauty's sake." The now completely vanquished Katherine quickly adopted her husband's opinion and made her speech in like sort to the old gentleman, saying to him, "Young budding virgin, you are fair, and fresh, and sweet ; whither are you going, and where is your dwelling ? Happy are parents of so fair a child." "Why, how now, Kate," said Petruchio ; "I hope you are not mad. This is a man, old and wrinkled, faded and withered, and not a maiden, as you say he is." On this Katherine said, "Pardon me, old gentleman ; the sun has so dazzled my eyes that everything I look on seemeth green. Now I perceive you are a reverend father : I hope you will pardon me for my sad mistake." "Do, good old grandsire," said Petruchio, "and tell us which way you are travelling. We shall be glad of your good company, if you are going our way." The old gentleman replied, "Fair sir, and you my merry mistress, your strange encounter has much amazed me. My name is Vincentio, and I am going to visit a son of mine who lives at Padua." Then Petruchio knew the old gentleman to be the father of Lucentio, a young gentleman who was to be married to Baptista's younger daughter, Bianca, and he made Vincentio very happy, by telling him the rich marriage his son was about to make ; and they all journeyed on pleasantly together till they came to Baptista's house, where there was a large company assembled to celebrate the wedding of Bianca and Lucentio, Baptista having willingly consented to the marriage of Bianca when he had got Katherine off his hands.

When they entered, Baptista welcomed them to the wedding feast, and there was present also another newly married pair.

Lucentio, Bianca's husband, and Hortensio, the other new married man, could not forbear sly jests, which seemed to hint at the shrewish disposition of Petruchio's wife, and these fond bridegrooms seemed highly pleased with the mild tempers of

the ladies they had chosen, laughing at Petruchio for his less fortunate choice. Petruchio took little notice of their jokes till the ladies were retired after dinner, and then he perceived Baptista himself joined in the laugh against him: for when Petruchio affirmed that his wife would prove more obedient than theirs, the father of Katherine said, "Now, in good sadness, son Petruchio, I fear you have got the veriest shrew of all." "Well," said Petruchio, "I say no, and therefore for assurance that I speak the truth, let us each one send for his wife, and he whose wife is most obedient to come at first when she is sent for, shall win a wager which we will propose." To this the other two husbands willingly consented, for they were quite confident that their gentle wives would prove more obedient than the headstrong Katherine; and they proposed a wager of twenty crowns, but Petruchio merrily said, he would lay as much as that upon his hawk or hounds, but twenty times as much upon his wife. Lucentio and Hortensio raised the wager to a hundred crowns, and Lucentio first sent his servant to desire Bianca would come to him. But the servant returned, and said, "Sir, my mistress sends you word she is busy and cannot come." "Now," said Petruchio, "does she say she is busy and cannot come? Is that an answer for a wife?" Then they laughed at him, and said, it would be well if Katherine did not send him a worse answer. And now it was Hortensio's turn to send for his wife; and he said to his servant, "Go, and entreat my wife to come to me." "Oh ho! entreat her!" said Petruchio. "Nay, then, she needs must come." "I am afraid, sir," said Hortensio, "your wife will not be entreated." But presently this civil husband looked a little blank, when the servant returned without his mistress; and he said to him, "How now! Where is my wife?" "Sir," said the servant, "my mistress says you have some goodly jest in hand, and therefore she will not come. She bids you come to her." "Worse and worse!" said Petruchio; and then he sent his servant, saying, "Sirrah, go to your mistress, and tell her I command her to come to me." The company had scarcely time to think she would not obey this summons, when Baptista, all in amaze; exclaimed, "Now, by my halidom, here comes Katherine!" and she entered, saying meekly to Petruchio, "What is your will, sir, that you send for me?" "Where is your sister and Hortensio's wife?" said he. Katherine replied, "They sit conferring by the parlour fire." "Go fetch them hither," said Petruchio. Away went Katherine without reply to perform

her husband's command. "Here is a wonder," said Lucentio, "if you talk of a wonder." "And so it is," said Hortensio; "I marvel what it bodes." "Marry, peace it bodes," said Petruchio, "and love, and quiet life, and right supremacy; and to be short, everything that is sweet and happy." Katherine's father, overjoyed to see this reformation in his daughter, said, "Now, fair befall thee, son Petruchio! you have won the wager, and I will add another twenty thousand crowns to her dowry, as if she were another daughter, for she is changed as if she had never been." "Nay," said Petruchio, "I will win the wager better yet, and show more signs of her new-built virtue and obedience." Katherine now entering with the two ladies, he continued, "See where she comes, and brings your froward wives as prisoners to her womanly persuasion. Katherine, that cap of yours does not become you; off with that bauble, and throw it under foot." Katherine instantly took off her cap, and threw it down. "Lord!" said Hortensio's wife, "may I never have a cause to sigh till I am brought to such a silly pass!" And Bianca, she too said, "Fie, what foolish duty call you this?" On this Bianca's husband said to her, "I wish your duty were as foolish too! The wisdom of your duty, fair Bianca, has cost me a hundred crowns since dinner-time." "The more fool you," said Bianca, "for laying on my duty." "Katherine," said Petruchio, "I charge you tell these headstrong women what duty they owe their lords and husbands." And, to the wonder of all present, the reformed shrewish lady spoke as eloquently in praise of the wifelike duty of obedience, as she had practised it implicitly in a ready submission to Petruchio's will. And Katherine once more became famous in Padua, not as heretofore, as Katherine the Shrew, but as Katherine the most obedient and dutiful wife in Padua.

TWELFTH NIGHT OR WHAT YOU WILL

SERAFIAN and his sister Viola, a young gentleman and lady of Messina, were twins, and (which was accounted a great wonder) from their birth they so much resembled each other, that, but for the difference in their dress, they could not be known apart. They were both born in one hour, and in one hour they both were in danger of perishing, for they were shipwrecked on the coast of Illyria as they were making a sea-voyage together. The ship, on

board of which they were, split on a rock in a violent storm, and a very small number of the ship's company escaped with their lives. The captain of the vessel, with a few of the sailors that were saved, got to land in a small boat, and with them they brought Viola safe on shore, where she, poor lady, instead of rejoicing at her own deliverance, began to lament her brother's loss; but the captain comforted her with assurance that he had seen her brother, when the ship split, fasten himself to a strong mast, on which, as long as he could see anything of him for the distance, he perceived him borne up above the waves. Viola was much consoled by the hope this account gave her, and now considered how she was to dispose of herself in a strange country, so far from home; and she asked the captain if he knew anything of Illyria. "Ay, very well, madam," replied the captain, "for I was born not three hours' travel from this place." "Who governs here?" said Viola. The captain told her, Illyria was governed by Orsino, a duke noble in nature as well as dignity. Viola said, she had heard her father speak of Orsino, and that he was unmarried then. "And he is so now," said the captain; "or was so very lately, for but a month ago I went from here, and then it was the general talk (as you know what great ones do, the people will prattle of) that Orsino sought the love of fair Olivia, a virtuous maid, the daughter of a count who died twelve months ago, leaving Olivia to the protection of her brother, who shortly after died also; and for the love of this dear brother, they say, she has abjured the sight and company of men." Viola, who was herself in such a sad affliction for her brother's loss, wished she could live with this lady, who so tenderly mourned a brother's death. She asked the captain if he could introduce her to Olivia, saying she would willingly serve this lady. But he replied, this would be a hard thing to accomplish, because the lady Olivia would admit no person into her house since her brother's death, not even the duke himself. Then Viola formed another project in her mind, which was, in a man's habit to serve the duke Orsino as a page. It was a strange fancy in a young lady to put on male attire and pass for a boy; but the forlorn and unprotected state of Viola, who was young and of uncommon beauty, alone and in a foreign land, must plead her excuse.

She having observed a fair behaviour in the captain, and that he showed a friendly concern for her welfare, entrusted him with her design, and he readily engaged to assist her. Viola gave

him money, and directed him to furnish her with suitable apparel, ordering her clothes to be made of the same colour and in the same fashion her brother Sebastian used to wear; and when she was dressed in her manly garb, she looked so exactly like her brother, that some strange errors happened by means of their being mistaken for each other; for, as will afterwards appear, Sebastian was also saved.

Viola's good friend, the captain, when he had transformed this pretty lady into a gentleman, having some interest at court, got her presented to Orsino under the feigned name of Cesario. The duke was wonderfully pleased with the address and graceful deportment of this handsome youth, and made Cesario one of his pages, that being the office Viola wished to obtain: and she so well fulfilled the duties of her new station, and showed such a ready observance and faithful attachment to her lord, that she soon became his most favoured attendant. To Cesario Orsino confided the whole history of his love for the lady Olivia. To Cesario he told the long and unsuccessful suit he had made to one, who, rejecting his long services, and despising his person, refused to admit him to her presence; and for the love of this lady who had so unkindly treated him, the noble Orsino, forsaking the sports of the field, and all manly exercises in which he used to delight, passed his hours in ignoble sloth, listening to the effeminate sounds of soft music, gentle airs, and passionate love-songs; and neglecting the company of the wise and learned lords with whom he used to associate, he was now all day long conversing with young Cesario. Unmeet companion, no doubt, his grave courtiers thought Cesario was for their once noble master, the great duke Orsino.

It is a dangerous matter for young maidens to be the confidants of handsome young dukes: which Viola too soon found to her sorrow, for all that Orsino told her he endured for Olivia, she presently perceived she suffered for the love of him: and much it moved her wonder, that Olivia could be so regardless of this peerless lord and master, whom she thought no one should behold without the deepest admiration, and she ventured gently to hint to Orsino, that it was pity he should affect a lady who was so blind to his worthy qualities; and she said, "If a lady were to love you, my lord, as you love Olivia (and perhaps there may be one who does), if you could not love her in return, would you not tell her that you could not love, and must not she be content with

this answer ?" But Orsino would not admit of this reasoning, for he denied that it was possible for any woman to love as he did. He said, no woman's heart was big enough to hold no much love, and therefore it was unfair to compare the love of any lady for him to his love for Olivia. Now, though Viola had the utmost deference for the duke's opinions, she could not help thinking this was not quite true, for she thought her heart had full as much love in it as Orsino's had ; and she said, " Ah, but I know, my lord."—" What do you know, Cesario ?" said Orsino. " Too well I know," replied Viola, " what love women may owe to men. They are as true of heart as we are. My father had a daughter loved a man, as I perhaps, were I a woman, should love your lordship." " And what is her history ?" said Orsino. " A blank, my lord," replied Viola : " she never told her love, but let concealment, like a worm in the bud, prey on her damask cheek. She pined in thought, and with a green and yellow melancholy, she sat like Patience on a monument, smiling at grief." The duke inquired if this lady died of her love, but to this question Viola returned an evasive answer ; as probably she had feigned the story, to speak words expressive of the secret love and silent grief she suffered for Orsino.

While they were talking, a gentleman entered whom the duke had sent to Olivia, and he said, " So please you, my lord. I might not be admitted to the lady, but by her handmaid she returned you this answer : Until seven years hence, the element itself shall not behold her face : but like a cloistress she will walk veiled, watering her chamber with her tears for the sad remembrance of her dead brother." On hearing this, the duke exclaimed, " O she that has a heart of this fine frame, to pay this debt of love to a dead brother, how will she love, when the rich golden shaft has touched her heart !" And then he said to Viola, " You know, Cesario, I have told you all the secrets of my heart ; therefore, good youth, go to Olivia's house. Be not denied access ; stand at the doors, and tell her there your fixed foot shall grow till you have audience." And if I do speak to her, my lord, what then ?" said Viola. " O then," replied Orsino, " unfold to her the passion of my love. Make a long discourse to her of my dear faith. It will well become you to act my woes, for she will attend more to you than to one of graver aspect."

Away then went Viola ; but not willingly did she undertake this courtship, for she was to woo a lady to become a wife to him

she wished to marry ; but having undertaken the affair, she performed it with fidelity : and Olivia soon heard that a youth was at her door who insisted upon being admitted to her presence. " I told him," said the servant, " that you were sick : he said he knew you were, and therefore he came to speak with you. I told him that you were asleep ; he seemed to have a foreknowledge of that too, and said, that therefore he must speak with you. What is to be said to him, lady ? for he seems fortified against all denial, and will speak with you, whether you will or no." Olivia, curious to see who this peremptory messenger might be, desired he might be admitted ; and throwing her veil over her face, she said she would once more hear Orsino's embassy, not doubting but that he came from the duke, by his importunity. Viola, entering, put on the most manly air she could assume, and affecting the fine courtier's language of great men's pages, she said to the veiled lady, " Most radiant, exquisite, and matchless beauty, I pray you tell me if you are the lady of the house : for I should be sorry to cast away my speech upon another ; for besides that it is excellently well penned, I have taken great pains to learn it." " Whence come you, sir ?" said Olivia. " I can say little more than I have studied," replied Viola : " and that question is out of my part." " Are you a comedian ?" said Olivia. " No," replied Viola ; " and yet I am not that which I play ;" meaning, that she, being a woman, feigned herself to be a man. And again she asked Olivia if she were the lady of the house. Olivia said she was ; and then Viola, having more curiosity to see her rival's features than haste to deliver her master's message, said, " Good madam, let me see your face." With this bold request Olivia was not averse to comply ; for this haughty beauty, whom the duke Orsino had loved so long in vain, at first sight conceived a passion for the supposed page, the humble Cesario.

When Viola asked to see her face, Olivia said, " Have you any commission from your lord and master to negotiate with my face ?" And then, forgetting her determination to go veiled for seven long years, she drew aside her veil, saying, " But I will draw the curtain and show the picture. Is it not well done ?" Viola replied, " It is beauty truly mixed : the red and white upon your cheeks is by Nature's own cunning hand laid on. You are the most cruel lady living, if you will lead these graces to the grave, and leave the world no copy." " O, sir," replied Olivia, " I will not be so cruel. The world may have an inventory of my beauty. As, *item*, two lips,

indifferent red ; *item*, two grey eyes, with lids to them ; one neck ; one chin, and so forth. Were you sent here to praise me ?" Viola replied, " I see what you are : you are too proud, but you are fair. My lord and master loves you. O such a love could but be recompensed, though you were crowned the queen of beauty : for Orsino loves you with adoration and with tears, with groans that thunder love, and sighs of fire." " Your lord," said Olivia, " knows well my mind. I cannot love him ; yet I doubt not he is virtuous ; I know him to be noble and of high estate, of fresh and spotless youth. All voices proclaim him learned, courteous, and valiant ; yet I cannot love him, he might have taken his answer long ago." " If I did love you as my master does," said Viola, " I would make me a willow cabin at your gates, and call upon your name. I would write complaining sonnets on Olivia, and sing them in the dead of the night : your name should sound among the hills, and I would make Echo, the babbling gossip of the air, cry out *Olivia*. O you should not rest between the elements of earth and air, but you should pity me." " You might do much," said Olivia ; " what is your parentage ?" Viola replied, " Above my fortunes, yet my state is well. I am a gentleman." Olivia now reluctantly dismissed Viola, saying, " Go to your master, and tell him, I cannot love him. Let him send no more unless perchance you come again to tell me how he takes it." And Viola departed, bidding the lady farewell by the name of Fair Cruelty. When she was gone, Olivia repeated the words, *Above my fortunes, yet my state is well. I am a gentleman*. And she said aloud, " I will be sworn he is ; his tongue, his face, his limbs, action, and spirit, plainly show he is a gentleman." And then she wished Cesario was the duke ; and perceiving the fast hold he had taken on her affections, she blamed herself for her sudden love ; but the gentle blame which people lay upon their own faults has no deep root : and presently the noble lady Olivia so far forgot the inequality between her fortunes and those of this seeming page, as well as the maidenly reserve which is the chief ornament of a lady's character, that she resolved to court the love of young Cesario, and sent a servant after him with a diamond ring, under the pretence that he had left it with her as a present from Orsino. She hoped, by thus artfully making Cesario a present of the ring, she should give him some intimation of her design ; and truly it did make Viola suspect ; for knowing that Orsino had sent no ring by her, she began to recollect that Olivia's looks and manner were expressive of admiration, and she presently guessed her master's mistress had fallen in love with

her. "Alas," said she, "the poor lady might as well love a dream. Disguise I see is wicked, for it has caused Olivia to breathe as fruitless sighs for me as I do for Orsino."

Viola returned to Orsino's palace, and related to her lord the ill success of the negotiation, repeating the command of Olivia, that the duke should trouble her no more. Yet still the duke persisted in hoping that the gentle Cesario would in time be able to persuade her to show some pity, and therefore he bade him he should go to her again the next day. In the meantime, to pass away the tedious intervals, he commanded a song which he loved to be sung; and he said, "My good Cesario, when I heard that song last night, methought it did relieve my passion much. Mark it, Cesario, it is old and plain. The spinsters and the knitters when they sit in the sun, and the young maids that weave their thread with bone, chant this song. It is silly, yet I love it, for it tells of the innocence of love in the old times."

SONG.

Come away, come away, Death,
And in sad eyness let me be laid.
Fly away, fly away, breath,
I am slain by a fair cruel maid.
My shroud of white stuck all with yew, O prepare it,
My part of death no one so true did share it.
Not a flower, not a flower sweet,
On my black coffin let there be strown :
Not a friend, not a friend greet
My poor corpse, where my bones shall be thrown
A thousand, thousand sighs to save, lay me O where
Sad true lover never find my grave, to weep there.

Viola did not fail to mark the words of the old song, which in such true simplicity described the pangs of unrequited love, and she bore testimony in her countenance of feeling what the song expressed. Her sad looks were observed by Orsino, who said to her, "My life upon it, Cesario, though you are so young, your eye has looked upon some face that it loves; has it not, boy?" "A little, with your leave," replied Viola. "And what kind of woman, and of what age is she?" said Orsino. "Of your age, and of your complexion, my lord," said Viola; which made the duke smile to hear this fair young boy loved a woman so much older than himself, and of a man's dark complexion; but Viola secretly meant Orsino, and not a woman like him.

When Viola made her second visit to Olivia, she found no difficulty in gaining access to her. Servants soon discover when their ladies delight to converse with handsome young messengers; and the instant Viola arrived the gates were thrown wide open, and the duke's page was shown into Olivia's apartment with great respect; and when Viola told Olivia that she was come once more to plead in her lord's behalf, this lady said, "I desire you never to speak of him again; but if you would undertake another suit, I had rather hear you solicit, than music from the spheres." This was pretty plain speaking, but Olivia soon explained herself still more plainly, and openly confessed her love; and when she saw displeasure with perplexity expressed in Viola's face, she said, "O what a deal of scorn looks beautiful in the contempt and anger of his lip! Cesario, by the roses of the spring, by maidenhood honour, and by truth, I love you so, that, in spite of your pride, I have neither wit nor reason to conceal my passion." But in vain the lady wooed; Viola hastened from her presence, threatening never more to come to plead Orsino's love; and all the reply she made to Olivia's fond solicitations was a declaration of a resolution *Never to love any woman*.

No sooner had Viola left the lady than a claim was made upon her valour. A gentleman, a rejected suitor of Olivia, who had learned how that lady had favoured the duke's messenger, challenged him to fight duel. What should poor Viola do, who, though she carried a manlike outside, had a true woman's heart, and feared to look on her own sword!

When she saw her formidable rival advancing towards her with his sword drawn, she began to think of confessing that she was a woman; but she was relieved at once from her terror, and the shame of such a discovery, by a stranger that was passing by, who made up to them, and as if he had been long known to her, and were her dearest friend, said to her opponent, "If this young gentleman has done offence, I will take the fault on me; and if you offend him, I will for his sake defy you." Before Viola had time to thank him for his protection, or to inquire the reason of his kind interference, her new friend met with an enemy where his bravery was of no use to him: for the officers of justice coming up in that instant, apprehended the stranger in the duke's name to answer for an offence he had committed some years before; and he said to Viola, "This comes with seeking you;" and then he asked her for a purse, saying, "Now my necessity makes me ask

for my purse, and it grieves me much more for what I cannot do for you, than for what befalls myself. Yon stand amazed, but he of comfort." His words did indeed amaze Viola, and she protested she knew him not, nor had ever received a purse from him; but for the kindness he had just shown her, she offered him a small sum of money, being nearly the whole she possessed. And now the stranger spoke severe things, charging her with ingratitude and unkindness. He said, "This youth whom you see here, I snatched from the jaws of death, and for his sake alone I came to Illyria, and have fallen into this danger." But the officers cared little for hearkening to the complaints of their prisoner, and they hurried him off, saying, "What is that to us?" And as he was carried away, he called Viola by the name of Sebastian, reproaching the supposed Sebastian for disowning his friend, as long as he was within hearing. When Viola heard herself called Sebastian, though the stranger was taken away too hastily for her to ask an explanation, she conjectured that this seeming mystery might arise from her being mistaken for her brother; and she began to cherish hopes that it was her brother whose life this man said he had preserved. And so indeed it was. The stranger, whose name was Antonio, was a sea-captain. He had taken Sebastian up into his ship, when, almost exhausted with fatigue, he was floating on the mast to which he had fastened himself in the storm. Antonio conceived such a friendship for Sebastian, that he resolved to accompany him whithersoever he went; and when the youth expressed a curiosity to visit Orsino's court, Antonio, rather than part from him, came to Illyria, though he knew, if his person should be known there, his life would be in danger, because in a sea-fight he had once dangerously wounded the duke Orsino's nephew. This was the offence for which he was now made a prisoner.

Antonio and Sebastian had landed together but a few hours before Antonio met Viola. He had given his purse to Sebastian desiring him to use it freely if he saw anything he wished to purchase, telling him he would wait at the inn, while Sebastian went to view the town: but Sebastian not returning at the time appointed, Antonio had ventured out to look for him, and Viola being dressed the same, and in face so exactly resembling her brother, Antonio drew his sword (as he thought) in defence of the youth he had saved, and when Sebastian (as he supposed) disowned him, and denied him his own purse, no wonder he accused him of ingratitude.

Viola, when Antonio was gone, fearing a second invitation to fight, slunk home as fast as she could. She had not long gone, when her adversary thought he saw her return; but it was her brother Sebastian who happened to arrive at this place, and he said, "Now sir, have I met with you again? There's for you;" and struck him a blow. Sebastian was no coward; he returned the blow with interest, and drew his sword.

A lady now put a stop to this duel, for Olivia came out of the house, and she too mistaking Sebastian for Cesario, invited him to come into her house, expressing much sorrow at the rude attack he had met with. Though Sebastian was as much surprised at the courtesy of this lady as at the rudeness of his unknown foe, yet he went very willingly into the house, and Olivia was delighted to find Cesario (as she thought him) become more sensible of her attentions; for though their features were exactly the same, there was none of the contempt and anger to be seen in his face, which she had complained of when she told her love to Cesario.

Sebastian did not at all object to the fondness the lady lavished on him. He seemed to take it in very good part, yet he wondered how it had come to pass, and he was rather inclined to think Olivia was not in her right senses; but perceiving that she was mistress of a fine house, and that she ordered her affairs and seemed to govern her family discreetly, and that in all but her sudden love for him she appeared in the full possession of her reason, he well approved of the courtship; and Olivia finding Cesario in this good humour, and fearing he might change his mind, proposed that, as she had a priest in the house, they should be instantly married. Sebastian assented to this proposal; and when the marriage ceremony was over, he left his lady for a short time, intending to go and tell his friend Antonio the good fortune that he had met with. In the meantime Orsino came to visit Olivia, and at the moment he arrived before Olivia's house, the officers of justice brought their prisoner, Antonio, before the duke. Viola was with Orsino, her master; and when Antonio saw Viola, whom he still imagined to be Sebastian, he told the duke in what manner he had rescued this youth from the perils of the sea; and after fully relating all the kindness he had really shown to Sebastian, he ended his complaint with saying, that for three months, both day and night, this ungrateful youth had been with him. But now the lady Olivia coming forth from her house, the duke could no longer attend to Antonio's story; and he said, "Here

comes the countess: now Heaven walks on earth! but for thee, fellow, thy words are madness. Three months has this youth attended on me:" and then he ordered Antonio to be taken aside. But Orsino's heavenly countess soon gave the duke cause to accuse Cesario as much of ingratitude as Antonio had done, for all the words he could hear Olivia speak were words of kindness to Cesario; and when he found his page had obtained this high place in Olivia's favour he threatened him with all the terrors of his just revenge; and as he was going to depart, he called Viola to follow him saying, "Come, boy, with me. My thoughts are ripe for mischief." Though it seemed in his jealous rage he was going to doom Viola to instant death, yet her love made her no longer a coward, and she would most joyfully suffer death to give her master ease. But Olivia would not so lose her husband, and she cried. "Where goes my Cesario?" Viola replied, "After him I love more than my life." Olivia, however, prevented their departure by loudly proclaiming that Cesario was her husband and sent for the priest, who declared that not two hours had passed since he had married the lady Olivia to this young man. In vain Viola protested she was not married to Olivia: the evidence of that lady and the priest made Orsino believe that his page had robbed him of the treasure he prized above his life. But thinking that it was past recall, he was bidding farewell to his faithless mistress, and the young *dissembler*, her husband, as he called Viola, warning her never to come in his sight again, when (as it seemed to them) a miracle appeared! for another Cesario entered, and addressed Olivia as his wife. This new Cesario was Sebastian, the real husband of Olivia: and when their wonder had a little ceased at seeing two persons with the same face, the same voice, and the same habit, the brother and sister began to question each other, for Viola could scarce be persuaded that her brother was living, and Sebastian knew not how to account for the sister he supposed drowned being found in the habit of a young man. But Viola presently acknowledged that she was indeed Viola and his sister under that disguise.

When all the errors were cleared up which the extreme likeness between this twin brother and sister had occasioned, they laughed at the lady Olivia for the pleasant mistake she had made in falling in love with a woman; and Olivia showed no dislike to her exchange, when she found she had wedded the brother instead of the sister.

The hopes of Orsino were for ever at an end by this marriage of Olivia, and with his hopes, all his fruitless love seems to vanish away, and all his thoughts were fixed on the event of his favourite, young Cesario, being changed into a fair lady. He viewed Viola with great attention, and he remembered how very handsome he had always thought Cesario was and he concluded she would look very beautiful in a woman's attire; and then he remembered how often she had said *she loved him*, which at the time seemed only the dutiful expression of a faithful page, but now he guessed that something more was meant, for many of her pretty sayings, which were like riddles to him, came now into his mind, and he no sooner remembered all these things than he resolved to make Viola his wife; and he said to her (he still could not help calling her *Cesario* and *boy*). "Boy, you have said to me a thousand times that you should never love a woman like to me, and for the faithful service you have done for me so much beneath your soft and tender breeding, and since you have called me master so long you shall now be your master's mistress, and Orsino's true duchess."

Olivia, perceiving Orsino was making over that heart, which she had so ungraciously rejected, to Viola, invited them to enter her house, and offered the assistance of the good priest, who had married her to Sebastian in the morning, to perform the same ceremony in the remaining part of the day for Orsino and Viola. Thus the twin brother and sister were both wedded on the same day: the storm and shipwreck, which had separated them, being the means of bringing to pass their high and mighty fortunes. Viola was the wife of Orsino, the duke of Illyria, and Sebastian the husband of the rich and noble countess, the lady Olivia.

PERICLES, PRINCE OF TYRE.

PERICLES, prince of Tyre, became a voluntary exile from his dominions, to avert the dreadful calamities which Antiochus, the wicked emperor of Greece, threatened to bring upon his subjects and city of Tyre, in revenge for a discovery which the prince had made of a shocking deed which the emperor had done in secret; as commonly it proves dangerous to pry into the hidden crimes of great ones. Leaving the government of his people in the hands of his able and honest minister, Helicanns, Pericles set sail from Tyre, thinking to absent himself till the wrath of Antiochus, who was mighty, should be appeased.

The first place which the prince directed his course to was Tharsus, and hearing that the city of Tharsus was at that time suffering under a severe famine, he took with him store of provisions for its relief. On his arrival he found the city reduced to the utmost distress; and, he coming like a messenger from heaven with this unhopèd for succour, Cleon, the governor of Tharsus, welcomed him with boundless thanks. Pericles had not been here many days, before letters came from his faithful minister, warning him that it was not safe for him to stay at Tharsus, for Antiochus knew of his abode, and by secret emissaries, despatched for that purpose, sought his life. Upon receipt of these letters Pericles put out to sea again, amidst the blessings and prayers of a whole people who had been fed by his bounty.

He had not sailed far, when his ship was overtaken by a dreadful storm, and every man on board perished except Pericles, who was cast by the sea-waves naked on an unknown shore, where he had not wandered long before he met with some poor fishermen, who invited him to their homes, giving him clothes and provisions. The fishermen told Pericles the name of their country was Pentapolis, and that their king was Symonides, commonly called the good Symonides, because of his peaceable reign and good government. From them he also learned that king Symonides had a fair young daughter, and that the following day was her birthday, when a grand tournament was to be held at court, many princes and knights being come from all parts to try their skill in arms for the love of Tharsa, this fair princess. While the prince was listening to this account, and secretly lamenting the loss of his good armour, which disabled him from making one among these valiant knights, another fisherman brought in a complete suit of armour that he had taken out of the sea with his fishing net, which proved to be the very armour he had lost. When Pericles beheld his own armour, he said, "Thanks, Fortune; after all my crosses you give me somewhat to repair myself. This armour was bequeathed to me by my dead father, for whose dear sake I have so loved it, that whithersoever I went, I still have kept it by me, and the rough sea that parted it from me, having now become calm, hath given it back again, for which I thank it, for, since I have my father's gift again, I think my shipwreck no misfortune."

The next day Pericles, clad in his brave father's armour, repaired to the royal court of Symonides, where he performed wonders at the tournament, vanquishing with ease all the brave knights and valiant princes who contended with him in arms for the honour of Thaisa's love. When brave warriors contended at court-tournaments for the love of kings' daughters, if one proved sole victor over all the rest, it was usual for the great lady for whose sake these deeds of valour were undertaken, to bestow all her respect upon the conqueror, and Thaisa did not depart from this custom, for she presently dismissed all the princes and knights whom Pericles had vanquished, and distinguished him by her especial favour and regard, crowning him with the wreath of victory, as king of that day's happiness; and Pericles became a most passionate lover of this beauteous princess from the first moment he beheld her.

The good Symonides so well approved of the valour and noble qualities of Pericles, who was indeed a most accomplished gentleman, and well learned in all excellent arts, that though he knew not the rank of this royal stranger (for Pericles for fear of Antiochus gave out that he was a private gentleman of Tyre), yet did not Symonides disdain to accept of the valiant unknown for a son-in-law, when he perceived his daughter's affections were firmly fixed upon him.

Pericles had not been many months married to Thaisa, before he received intelligence that his enemy Antiochus was dead; and that his subjects of Tyre, impatient of his long absence, threatened to revolt, and talked of placing Heliannus upon his vacant throne. This news came from Heliannus himself, who being a loyal subject to his royal master, would not accept of the high dignity offered him, but sent to let Pericles know their intentions, that he might return home and resume his lawful right. It was a matter of great surprise and joy to Symonides, to find that his son-in-law (the obscure knight) was the renowned prince of Tyre; yet again he regretted that he was not the private gentleman he supposed him to be, seeing that he must now part both with his admired son-in-law, and his beloved daughter, whom he feared to trust to the perils of the sea, because Thaisa was with child; and Pericles himself wished her to remain with her father till after her confinement, but the poor lady so earnestly desired to go with her husband, that

at last they consented, hoping she would reach Tyre before she was brought to bed.

The sea was no friendly element to unhappy Pericles, for long before they reached Tyre another dreadful tempest arose, which so terrified Thaisa that she was taken ill, and in a short space of time her nurse Lychorida came to Pericles with a little child in her arms, to tell the prince the sad tidings that his wife died the moment her little babe was born. She held the babe towards its father, saying, "Here is a thing too young for such a place. This is the child of your dead queen." No tongue can tell the dreadful sufferings of Pericles when he heard his wife was dead. As soon as he could speak, he said, "O you gods, why do you make us love your goodly gifts, and then snatch those gifts away?" "Patience, good sir," said Lychorida, "here is all that is left alive of our dead queen, a little daughter, and for your child's sake be more nianly. Patience, good sir, even for the sake of this precious charge." Pericles took the new-born infant in his arms, and he said to the little babe, "Now may your life be mild, for a more blnsterous birth had never babe! May your condition be mild and gentle, for you have had the rudest welcome that ever prince's child did meet with! May that which follows be happy, for you have had as chiding a nativity as fire, air, water, earth, and heaven, could make, to herald you from the womb! Even at the first, your loss," meaning in the death of her mother, "is more than all the joys which you shall find upon this earth, to which you are come a new visitor, shall be able to recompense."

The storm still continuing to rage furiously, and the sailors having a superstition that while a dead body remained in the ship the storm would never cease, they came to Pericles to demand that his queen should be thrown overboard; and they said, "What courage, sir? God save you!" "Courage enough," said the sorrowing prince: "I do not fear the storm; it has done to me its worst: yet for the love of this poor infant, this fresh new sea-farer, I wish the storm was over." "Sir," said the sailors, "your queen must overboard. The sea works high, the wind is loud, and the storm will not abate till the ship be cleared of the dead." Though Pericles knew how weak and unfounded this superstition was, yet he patiently submitted, saying, "As you think meet. Then she must overboard, most wretched queen!" And now this unhappy prince went to take a last view of his dear wife, and as he looked upon his Thaisa,

he said, "A terrible childhed hast thou had, my dear; no light, no fire, the unfriendly elements forgot thee utterly, nor have I time to bring thee hallowed to thy grave, but must cast thee scarcely confined into the sea, where for a monument upon the bones the humming waters must overwhelm thy corpse, lying with simple shells. O Lychorida, bid Nestor bring me spices, ink, and paper, my casket and my jewels, and bid Nicandor bring me the satin coffin. Lay the babe upon the pillow, and go about this suddenly, Lychorida, while I say a priestly farewell to my Thaisa."

They brought Pericles a large chest, in which (wrapped in a satin shroud) he placed his queen, and sweet-smelling spices he strewed over her, and beside her he placed rich jewels, and a written paper, telling who she was, and praying if haply and one should find the chest which contained the body of his wife, they would give her burial: and then with his own hands he cast the chest into the sea. When the storm was over, Pericles ordered the sailors to make for Tharsus "For," said Pericles, "the babe cannot hold out till we come to Tyre. At Tharsus I will leave it at careful nursing."

After that tempestuous night when Thaisa was thrown into the sea, and while it was yet early morning, as Cerimon, a worthy gentleman of Ephesus, and a most skilful physician, was standing by the sea-side, his servant brought to him a chest, which they said the sea-waves had thrown on the land. "I never saw," said one of them, "so huge a hallow as cast it on our shore." Cerimon ordered the chest to be conveyed to his own house, and when it was opened he beheld with wonder the body of a young and lovely lady; and the sweet-smelling spices, and rich casket of jewels, made him conclude it was some great person who was thus strangely entombed: searching further, he discovered a paper, from which he learned that the corpse which lay as dead before him had been a queen, and wife to Pericles, prince of Tyre; and much admiring at the strangeness of that accident, and more pitying the husband who had lost this sweet lady, he said, "If you are living, Pericles, you have a heart that even cracks with woe." Then observing attentively Thaisa's face, he saw how fresh and unlike death her looks were; and he said, "They were too hasty that threw you into the sea:" for he did not believe her to be dead. He ordered a fire to be made, and proper cordials to be brought, and soft music to be played, which

might help to calm her amazed spirits if she should revive; and he said to those who crowded round her, wondering at what they saw, "I pray you, gentlemen, give her air; this queen will live; she has not been entranced above five hours; and see, she begins to blow into life again: she is alive; behold, her eyelids move; this fair creature will live to make us weep to hear her fate." Thaisa had never died, but after the birth of her little baby had fallen into a deep swoon, which made all that saw her conclude her to be dead; and now by the care of this kind gentleman she once more revived to light and life; and opening her eyes she said, "Where am I? Where is my lord? What world is this?" By gentle degrees Cerimon let her understand what had befallen her; and when he thought she was enough recovered to bear the sight, he showed her the paper written by her husband, and the jewels; and she looked on the paper, and said, "It is my lord's writing. That I was shipped at sea I well remember, but whether there delivered of my babe, by the holy gods I cannot rightly say; but since my wedded lord I never shall see again, I will put on a vestal livery, and never more have joy." "Madam," said Cerimon, "if you purpose as you speak, the temple of Diana is not far distant from hence, there you may abide as a vestal. Moreover, if you please, a niece of mine shall there attend you." This proposal was accepted with thanks by Thaisa; and when she was perfectly recovered, Cerimon placed her in the temple of Diana, where she became a vestal or priestess of that goddess, and passed her days in sorrowing for her husband's supposed loss, and in the most devout exercises of those times.

Pericles carried his young daughter (whom he named Marina, because she was born at sea) to Tharsus, intending to leave her with Cleon, the governor of that city, and his wife Dionysia, thinking, for the good he had done to them at the time of their famine, they would be kind to his little motherless daughter. When Cleon saw prince Pericles, and heard of the great loss which had befallen him, he said, "O your sweet queen, that it had pleased heaven you could have brought her hither to have blessed my eyes with the sight of her!" Pericles replied, "We must obey the powers above us. Should I rage and roar as the sea does in which my Thaisa lies, yet the end must be as it is. My gentle babe, Marina here, I must charge your charity with her. I leave her the infant of your care, beseeching you to give her princely training." And then turning to Cleon's wife, Dionysia,

he said, " Good madam, make me blessed in your care in bringing up my child : " and she answered, " I have a child myself who shall not be more dear to my respect than yours, my lord ; " and Cleon made the like promise, saying, " Your noble services, prince Pericles, in feeding my whole people with your corn (for which in their prayers they daily remember you) must in your child be thought on. If I should neglect your child, my whole people that were by you relieved would force me to my duty ; but if to that I need a spur, the gods revenge it on me and mine to the end of generation." Pericles being thus assured that his child would be carefully attended to, left her to the protection of Cleon and his wife Dionysia, and with her he left the nurse Lychorida. When he went away, the little Marina knew not her loss, but Lychorida wept sadly at parting with her royal master " O, no tears, Lychorida," said Pericles ; " no tears ; look to your little mistress, on whose grace you may depend hereafter."

Pericles arrived in safety at Tyre ; and was once more settled in the quiet possession of his throne, while his woful queen, whom he thought dead, remained at Ephesus. Her little babe Marina, whom this hapless mother had never seen, was brought up by Cleon in a manner suitable to her high birth. He gave her the most careful education, so that by the time Marina attained the age of fourteen years, the most deeply-learned men were not more studied in the learning of those times than was Marina. She sang like one immortal, and danced as goddess-like, and with her needle she was so skilful that she seemed to compose nature's own shapes, in birds, fruits, or flowers, the natural roses being scarcely more like to each other than they were to Marina's silken flowers. But when she had gained from education all these graces, which made her the general wonder, Dionysia, the wife of Cleon, became her mortal enemy from jealousy, by reason that her own daughter, from the slowness of her mind, was not able to attain to that perfection wherein Marina excelled : and finding that all praise was bestowed on Marina, whilst her daughter, who was of the same age, and had been educated with the same care as Marina, though not with the same success, was in comparison disregarded, she formed a project to remove Marina out of the way, vainly imagining that her untoward daughter would be more respected when Marina was no more seen. To encompass this she employed a man to murder Marina, and she well timed her wicked design, when Lychorida, the faithful nurse, had just died. Dionysia

was discoursing with the man she had commanded to commit this murder, when the young Marina was weeping over the dead Lychorida. Leonine, the man she employed to this bad deed, though he was a very wicked man, could hardly be persuaded to undertake it, so had Marina won all hearts to love her. He said, "She is a goodly creature!" "The fitter then the gods should have her," replied her merciless enemy: "here she comes weeping for the death of her nurse Lychorida: are you resolved to obey me?" Leonine, fearing to disobey her, replied, "I am resolved." And so, in that one short sentence, was the matchless Marina doomed to an untimely death. She now approached, with a basket of flowers in her hand, which, she said, she would daily strew over the grave of good Lychorida. The purple violet and the marigold should as a carpet hang upon her grave, while summer days did last. "Alas, for me!" she said, "poor unhappy maid, born in a tempest, when my mother died. This world to me is like a lasting storm, hurrying me from my friends." "How now, Marina," said the dissembling Dionysia, "do you weep alone? How does it chance my daughter is not with you? Do not sorrow for Lychorida, you have a nurse in me. Your beauty is quite changed with unprofitable woe. Come, give me your flowers, the sea-air will spoil them; and walk with Leonine: the air is fine, and will enliven you. Come, Leonine, take her by the arm and walk with her." "No, madam," said Marina, "I pray you let me not deprive you of your servant;" for Leonine was one of Dionysia's attendants. "Come, come," said this artful woman, who wished for a pretence to leave her alone with Leonine, "I love the prince, your father, and I love you. We every day expect your father here; and when he comes, and finds you so changed by grief from the paragon of beauty we have reported you, he will think we have taken no care of you. Go, I pray you, walk, and be cheerful once again. Be careful of that excellent complexion, which stole the hearts of old and young." Marina, being thus importuned, said, "Well, I will go, but yet I have no desire to it." As Dionysia walked away, she said to Leonine, "*Remember what I have said!*"—shocking words, for their meaning was that he should remember to kill Marina.

Marina looked towards the sea, her birth-place, and said, "Is the wind westerly that blows?" "South-west," replied Leonine. "When I was born the wind was north," said she: and then the storm and tempest, and all her father's sorrows, and her mother's

death, came full into her mind ; and she said, " My father, as Lychorida told me, did never fear, but cried, *Courage, good seamen*, to the sailors, galling his princely hands with the ropes, and, clasping to the mast, he endured a sea that almost split the deck." " When was this ?" said Leonine. " When I was born," replied Marina : " never were waves nor wind more violent." And then she described the storm, the action of the sailors, the boatswain's whistle, and the loud call of the master. " Which," said she, " trebled the confusion of the ship." Lychorida had so often recounted to Marina the story of her hapless birth, that these things seemed ever present to her imagination. But here Leonine interrupted her with desiring her to say her prayers. " What mean you ?" said Marina, who began to fear, she knew not why. " If you require a little space for prayer, I grant it," said Leonine ; " but be not tedious ; the gods are quick of ear, and I am sworn to do my work in haste." " Will you kill me ?" said Marina : " alas ! why ?" " To satisfy my lady," replied Leonine. " Why would she have me killed ?" said Marina : " now, as I can remember, I never hurt her in all my life. I never spake bad word, nor did any ill turn to any living creature. Believe me now, I never killed a mouse, nor hurt a fly. I trod upon a worm once against my will, but wept for it. How have I offended ?" The murderer replied, " My commission is not to reason on the deed, but to do it." And he was just going to kill her, when certain pirates happened to land at that very moment, who, seeing Marina, bore her off as a prize to their ship.

The pirate, who had made Marina his prize, carried her to Metaline, and sold her for a slave, where, though in that humble condition, Marina soon became known throughout the whole city of Metaline for her beauty and her virtues ; and the person to whom she was sold became rich by the money she earned for him. She taught music, dancing and fine needleworks, and the money she got by her scholars she gave to her master and mistress ; and the fame of her learning and her great industry came to the knowledge of Lysimachus, a young nobleman who was the governor of Metaline, and Lysimachus went himself to the house where Marina dwelt, to see this paragon of excellence, whom all the city praised so highly. Her conversation delighted Lysimachus beyond measure, for though he had heard much of this admired maiden, he did not expect to find her so sensible a lady, so virtuous, and so good, as he perceived Marina to be ;

and he left her, saying, he hoped she would persevere in her industrious and virtuous course, and that if ever she heard from him again it should be for her good. Lysimachus thought Marina such a miracle for sense, fine breeding and excellent qualities, as well as for beauty and all outward graces, that he wished to marry her, and notwithstanding her humble situation, he hoped to find that her birth was noble; but ever when they asked her parentage, she would sit still and weep.

Meantime, at Tharsus, Leonine, fearing the anger of Dionysia told her he killed Marina, and that wicked woman gave out that she was dead, and made a pretended funeral for her, and erected a stately monument; and shortly after Pericles, accompanied by his loyal minister Helicanus, made a voyage from Tyre to Tharsus, on purpose to see his daughter, intending to take her home with him; and, he never having beheld her since he left her an infant in the care of Cleon and his wife, how did this good prince rejoice at the thoughts of seeing this dear child of his buried queen! but when they told him Marina was dead, and showed the monument they had erected for her, great was the misery this most wretched father endured, and not being able to bear the sight of that country where his last hope and only memory of his dear Thaisa was entombed, he took ship, and hastily departed from Tharsus. From the day he entered the ship a dull and heavy melancholy seized him. He never spoke, and seemed totally insensible to everything around him.

Sailing from Tharsus to Tyre, the ship in its course passed by Metaline, where Marina dwelt; the governor of which place, Lysimachus, observing this royal vessel from the shore, and desirous of knowing who was on board, went in a barge to the side of the ship, to satisfy his curiosity. Helicanus received him very courteously, and told him that the ship came from Tyre, and that they were conducting thither Pericles, their prince; "A man, sir," said Helicanus, "who has not spoken to any one these three months, nor taken any sustenance, but just to prolong his grief; it would be tedious to repeat the whole ground of his distemper, but the main springs from the loss of a beloved daughter and a wife." Lysimachus begged to see this afflicted prince, and when he beheld Pericles, he saw he had been once a goodly person, and he said to him, "Sir king, all hail, the gods preserve you, hail, royal sir!" But in vain Lysimachus spoke to him. Pericles made no answer, nor did he appear to perceive any stranger approached.

And then Lysimachus bethought him of the peerless maid Marina, that haply with her sweet tongue she might win some answer from the silent prince : and with the consent of Helicanns he sent for Marina, and when she entered the ship in which her own father sat motionless with grief, they welcomed her on board, as if they had known she was their princess : and they cried, "She is a gallant lady." Lysimachus was well pleased to hear their commendations, and he said, "She is such a one, that were I well assured she came of noble birth, I would wish no better choice, and think me rarely blessed in a wife." And then he addressed her in courtly terms, as if the lowly-seeming maid had been the high-born lady he wished to find her, calling her *Fair and beautiful Marina*, telling her a great prince on board that ship had fallen into a sad and mournful silence ; and as if Marina had the power of conferring health and felicity, he begged she would undertake to cure the royal stranger of his melancholy. "Sir," said Marina, "I will use my uttermost skill in his recovery, provided none but I and my maid be suffered to come near him."

She, who at Metaline had so carefully concealed her birth, ashamed to tell that one of royal ancestry was now a slave, first began to speak to Pericles of the wayward changes in her own fate, telling him from what a high estate herself had fallen. As if she had known it was her royal father she stood before, all the words she spoke were of her own sorrows ; but her reason for doing so was, that she knew nothing more wins the attention of the unfortunate than the recital of some sad calamity to match their own. The sound of her sweet voice aroused the drooping prince : he lifted up his eyes, which had been so long fixed and motionless ; and Marina, who was the perfect image of her mother, presented to his amazed sight the features of his beloved queen. The long-silent prince was once more heard to speak. "My dearest wife," said the awakened Pericles, "was like this maid, and such a one might my daughter have been. My queen's square brows, her stature to an inch, as wandlike straight, as silver-voiced, her eyes as jewel-like. Where do you live, young maid ? Report your parentage. I think you said you had been tossed from wrong to injury, and that you thought your griefs would equal mine, if both were opened." "Some such thing I said," replied Marina, "and said no more than what my thoughts did warrant me as likely." "Tell me your story," answered Pericles ; "if I find you have known the thousandth part of my endurance, you have borne your sorrows

like a man, and I have suffered like a girl, yet you do look like Patience gazing on kings' graves, and smiling Extremity out of act. How lost you your name, my most kind virgin? Recount your story, I beseech you. Come sit by me." How was Pericles surprised when she said her name was *Marina*, for he knew it was no usual name, but had been invented by himself for his own child to signify *scaborn*: "O, I am mocked," said he, "and you are sent hither by some incensed god to make the world laugh at me." "Patience, good sir," said Marina, "or I must cease here." "Nay," said Pericles, "I will be patient; you little know how you do startle me, to call yourself Marina." "The name," she replied, "was given me by one that had some power, my father, and a king." "How, a king's daughter!" said Pericles, "and called Marina! But are you flesh and blood? Are you no fairy? Speak on; where were you born? and wherefore called Marina?" She replied, "I was called Marina, because I was born at sea, My mother was the daughter of a king; she died the minute I was born, as my good nurse Lychorida has often told me weeping. The king my father left me at Tharsus, till the cruel wife of Cleon sought to murder me. A crew of pirates came and rescued me, and brought me here to Metaline. But, good sir, why do you weep? It may be, you think me an impostor. But indeed, sir, I am the daughter to prince Pericles, if good king Pericles be living." Then Pericles, terrified as it seemed at his own sudden joy, and doubtful if this could be real, loudly called for his attendants, who rejoiced at the sound of their beloved king's voice; and he said to Helicanus, "O Helicanus, strike me, give me a gash, put me to present pain, lest this great sea of joys rushing upon me, overbear the shores of my mortality. O, come hither, thou that wast born at sea, buried at Tharsus, and found at sea again. O Helicanus, down on your knees, thank the holy gods! This is Marina. Now blessings on thee, my child! Give me fresh garments, mine own Helicanus! She is not dead at Tharsus, as she should have been by the savage Dionysia. She shall tell you all, when you shall kneel to her, and call her your very princess. Who is this?" (observing Lysimachus for the first time.) "Sir," said Helicanus, "it is governor of Metaline, who, hearing of your melancholy, came to see you." "I embrace you, sir," said Pericles. "Give me my robes! I am well with beholding—O Heaven, bless my girl! But hark! what music is that?—" for now, either sent by some kind god, or by his own delighted fancy deceived, he seemed to hear soft music.

"My lord, I hear none," replied Helicanns. "None!" said Pericles: "why, it is the music of the spheres." As there was no music to be heard, Lysimachus concluded that the sudden joy had unsettled the prince's understanding; and he said, "It is not good to cross him; let him have his way:" and then they told him they heard the music; and he now complaining of a drowsy slumber coming over him, Lysimachus persuaded him to rest on a couch, and placing a pillow under his head, he, quite overpowered with excess of joy, sunk into a sound sleep and Marina watched in silence by the couch of her sleeping parent.

While he slept, Pericles dreamed a dream which made him resolve to go to Ephesus. His dream was, that Diana, the goddess of the Ephesians, appeared to him, and commanded him to go to her temple at Ephesus, and there before her altar to declare the story of his life and misfortunes; and by her silver bow she swore, that if he performed her injunction, he should meet with some rare felicity. When he awoke, being miraculously refreshed, he told his dream, and that his resolution was to obey the bidding of the goddess.

Then Lysimachus invited Pericles to come on shore, and refresh himself with such entertainment as he should find at Metaline, which courteous offer Pericles accepting, agreed to tarry with him for the space of a day or two. During which time we may well suppose what feastings, what rejoicings, what costly shows and entertainments the governor made in Metaline, to greet the royal father of his dear Marina, whom in her obscure fortunes he had so respected. Nor did Pericles frown upon Lysimachus's suit, when he understood how he had honoured his child in the days of her low estate, and that Marina showed herself not averse to his proposals; only he made it a condition, before he gave his consent, that they should visit with him the shrine of the Ephesian Diana: to whose temple they shortly after all three undertook a voyage; and, the goddess herself filling their sails with prosperous winds, after a few weeks they arrived in safety at Ephesus.

There was standing near the altar of the goddess, when Pericles with his train entered the temple, the good Cerimon (now grown very aged) who had restored Thaisa, the wife of Pericles, to life; and Thaisa, now a priestess of the temple, was standing before the altar and though the many years he had passed in sorrow for her loss had much altered Pericles, Thaisa

thought she knew her husband's features, and when he approached the altar and began to speak, she remembered his voice, and listened to his words with wonder and a joyful amazement. And these were the words that Pericles spoke before the altar: "Hail, Diana! to perform thy just commands, I here confess myself the prince of Tyre, who, frightened from my country, at Pentapolis wedded the fair Thaisa: she died at sea in child-bed, but brought forth a maid-child called Marina. She at Tharsus was nursed with Dionysia, who at fourteen years thought to kill her, but her better stars brought her to Metaline, by whose shores as I sailed, her good fortunes brought this maid on board, where by her most clear remembrance she made herself known to be my daughter".

Thaisa, unable to hear the transports which his words had raised in her, cried out, "You are, you are, O royal Pericles"—and fainted. "What means this woman?" said Pericles: "she dies! gentlemen, help."—"Sir," said Cerimon, "If you have told Diana's altar true, this is your wife." "Reverend gentleman, no;" said Pericles: "I threw her overboard with these very arms." Cerimon then recounted how, early one tempestuous morning, this lady was thrown upon the Ephesian shore; how, opening the coffin, he found therein rich jewels and a paper: how happily he recovered her, and placed her here in Diana's temple. And now, Thaisa being restored from her swoon, said, "O my lord, are you not Pericles? Like him you speak, like him you are. Did you not name a tempest, a birth, and a death?" He, astonished, said, "The voice of dead Thaisa?" "That Thaisa am I," she replied, "supposed dead and drowned." "O true Diana!" exclaimed Pericles, in a passion of devout astonishment. "And now," said Thaisa, "I know you better. Such a ring as I see on your finger did the king my father give you, when we with tears parted from him at Pentapolis." "Enough, you gods!" cried Pericles, "your present kindness makes my past miseries sport. O come, Thaisa, be buried a second time within these arms."

And Marina said, "My heart leaps to be gone into my mother's bosom." Then did Pericles show his daughter to her mother, saying, "Look who kneels here, flesh of thy flesh, thy burthen at sea, and called Marina, because she was yielded there." "Blessed and own!" said Thaisa: and while she hung in rapturous joy over her child Pericles knelt before the altar, saying, "Pure Diana,

bless thee for thy vision. For this, I will offer oblations nightly to thee." And then and there did Pericles, with the consent of Thaisa, solemnly affiance their daughter, the virtuous Marina, to the well-deserving Lysimachus in marriage.

Thus have we seen in Pericles, his queen, and daughter, a famous example of virtue assailed by calamity (through the sufferance of Heaven, to teach patience and constancy to men), under the same guidance becoming finally successful, and triumphing over chance and change. In Helicanus we have beheld a notable pattern of truth, of faith, and loyalty, who, when he might have succeeded to a throne, chose rather to recall the rightful owner to his possession than to become great by another's wrong. In the worthy Cerimon, who restored Thaisa to life, we are instructed how goodness directed by knowledge, in bestowing benefits upon mankind, approaches to the nature of the gods. It only remains to be told that Dionysia, the wicked wife of Cleon, met with an end proportionable to her deserts; the inhabitants of Tharsus, when her cruel attempt upon Marina was known, rising in a body to revenge the daughter of their benefactor, and setting fire to the palace of Cleon, burnt both him and her, and their whole household: the gods seeming well pleased, that so foul a murder, though but intentional, and never carried into act, should be punished in a way befitting its enormity.

THE WINTER'S TALE.

LEONTES, king of Sicily, and his queen, the beautiful and virtuous Hermione, once lived in the greatest harmony together. So happy was Leontes in the love of this excellent lady, that he had no wish ungratified, except that he sometimes desired to see again, and to present to his queen, his old companion and school-fellow, Polixenes, king of Bohemia. Leontes and Polixenes were brought up together from their infancy, but being by the death of their fathers called to reign over their respective kingdoms, they had not met for many years, though they frequently interchanged gifts, letters, and loving embassies.

At length, after repeated invitations, Polixenes came from Bohemia to the Sicilian court, to make his friend Leontes a visit.

At first this visit gave nothing but pleasure to Leontes. He recommended the friend of his youth to the queen's particular attention, and seemed in the presence of his dear friend and

old companion to have his felicity quite completed. They talked over old times : their school-days and their youthful pranks were remembered, and recounted to Hermione, who always took a cheerful part in these conversations.

When after a long stay, Polixenes was preparing to depart, Hermione, at the desire of her husband, joined her entreaties to his that Polixenes would prolong his visit.

And now began this good queen's sorrow ; for Polixenes, refusing to stay at the request of Leontes, was won over by Hermione's gentle and persuasive words to put off his departure for some weeks longer. Upon this, although Leontes had so long known the integrity and honourable principles of his friend Polixenes, as well as the excellent disposition of his virtuous queen, he was seized with an ungovernable jealousy. Every attention Hermione showed to Polixenes, though by her husband's particular desire, and merely to please him, increased the unfortunate king's jealousy ; and from being a loving and true friend, and the best and fondest of husbands, Leontes became suddenly a savage and inhuman monster. Sending for Camillo, one of the lords of his court, and telling him of the suspicion he entertained, he commanded him to poison Polixenes.

Camillo was a good man : and he, well knowing that the jealousy of Leontes had not the slightest foundation in truth, instead of poisoning Polixenes, acquainted him with the king his master's orders, and agreed to escape with him out of the Sicilian dominions ; and Polixenes, with the assistance of Camillo, arrived safe in his own kingdom of Bohemia, where Camillo lived from that time in the king's court, and became the chief friend and favourite of Polixenes.

The flight of Polixenes enraged the jealous Leontes still more ; he went to the queen's apartment, where the good lady was sitting with her little son Mamillus, who was just beginning to tell one of his stories to amuse his mother, when the king entered, and taking the child away, sent Hermione to prison.

Mamillus, though but a very young child, loved his mother tenderly ; and when he saw her so dishonoured, and found she was taken from him to be put into a prison, he took it deeply to heart, and drooped and pined away by slow degrees, losing his appetite and his sleep, till it was thought his grief would kill him.

The king, when he had sent his queen to prison, commanded Cleomenes and Dion, two Sicilian lords, to go to Delphos, there to inquire of the oracle at the temple of Apollo, if his queen had been unfaithful to him.

When Hermione had been a short time in prison, she was brought to bed of a daughter; and the poor lady received much comfort from the sight of her pretty baby, and she said to it, "My poor little prisoner, I am as innocent as you are."

Hermione had a kind friend in the noble-spirited Paulina, who was the wife of Antigonus, a Sicilian lord; and when the lady Paulina heard her royal mistress was brought to bed, she went to the prison where Hermione was confined; and she said to Emilia, a lady who attended upon Hermione, "I pray you, Emilia, tell the good queen, if her Majesty dare trust me with her little babe, I will carry it to the king, its father; we do not know how he may soften at the sight of his innocent child." "Most worthy madam," replied Emilia, "I will acquaint the queen with your noble offer: she was wishing to-day that she had any friend who would venture to present the child to the king." "And tell her," said Paulina, "that I will speak boldly to Leontes in her defence." "May you be for ever blessed," said Emilia, "for your kindness to our gracious queen!" Emilia then went to Hermione, who joyfully gave up her baby to the care of Paulina, for she had feared that no one would dare venture to present the child to its father.

Paulina took the new-born infant, and forcing herself into the king's presence, notwithstanding her husband, fearing the king's anger, endeavoured to prevent her, she laid the babe at its father's feet, and Paulina made a noble speech to the king in defence of Hermione, and she reproached him severely for his inhumanity, and implored him to have mercy on his innocent wife and child. But Paulina's spirited remonstrances only aggravated Leontes' displeasure, and he ordered her husband Antigonus to take her from his presence.

When Paulina went away, she left the little baby at its father's feet, thinking, when he was alone with it, he would look upon it, and have pity on helpless innocence.

The good Paulina was mistaken; for no sooner was she gone than the merciless father ordered Antigonus, Paulina's husband, to take the child, and carry it out to sea, and leave it upon some desert shore to perish.

Antigonns, unlike the good Camillo, too well obeyed the orders of Leontes; for he immediately carried the child on shipboard, and put out to sea, intending to leave it on the first desert coast he could find.

So firmly was the king persuaded of the guilt of Hermione, that he would not wait for the return of Cleomenes and Dion, whom he had sent to consult the oracle of Apollo at Delphos; but before the queen was recovered from her lying-in and from her grief for the loss of her precious baby, he had her brought to a public trial before all the lords and nobles of his court. And when all the great lords, the judges, and all the nobility of the land were assembled together to try Hermione, and that unhappy queen was standing as a prisoner before her subjects to receive their judgment, Cleomenes and Dion entered the assembly, and presented to the king the answer of the oracle sealed up; and Leontes commanded the seal to be broken, and the words of the oracle to be read aloud, and these were the words:—

“Hermione is innocent, Polixenes blameless, Camillo a true subject, Leontes a jealous tyrant, and the king shall live without an heir if that which is lost be not found.” The king would give no credit to the words of the oracle: he said it was a falsehood invented by the queen’s friends, and he desired the judge to proceed in the trial of the queen; but while Leontes was speaking a man entered and told him the prince Mamillus, hearing his mother was to be tried for her life, struck with grief and shame, had suddenly died.

Hermione, upon hearing of the death of this dear affectionate child, who had lost his life in sorrowing for her misfortune, fainted; and Leontes, pierced to the heart by the news, began to feel pity for his unhappy queen, and he ordered Paulina, and the ladies who were her attendants, to take her away, and use means for her recovery. Paulina soon returned, and told the king that Hermione was dead.

When Leontes heard that the queen was dead, he repented of his cruelty to her; and now that he thought his ill usage had broken Hermione’s heart, he believed her innocent; and he now thought the words of the oracle were true, as he knew “if that which was lost was not found,” which he concluded was his young daughter, he should be without an heir, the young prince Mamillus being dead: and he would give his kingdom now

to recover his lost daughter : and Leontes gave himself up to remorse, and passed many years in mournful thoughts and repentant grief.

The ship in which Antigonus carried the infant princess out to sea, was driven by a storm upon the coast of Bohemia, the very kingdom of the good king Polixenes. Here Antigonus landed, and here he left the little baby.

Antigonus never returned to Sicily to tell Leontes where he had left his daughter, for as he was going back to the ship, a bear came out of the woods, and tore him to pieces ; a just punishment on him for obeying the wicked order of Leontes.

The child was dressed in rich clothes and jewels ; for Hermione had made it very fine when she sent it to Leontes, and Antigonus had pinned a paper to its mantle, with the name of *Perdita* written thereon, and words obscurely intimating its high birth and untoward fate.

This poor deserted baby was found by a shepherd. He was a humane man, and so he carried the little *Perdita* home to his wife, who nursed it tenderly ; but poverty tempted the shepherd to conceal the rich prize he had found : therefore he left that part of the country, that no one might know where he got his riches, and with part of *Perdita's* jewels he bought herds of sheep, and became a wealthy shepherd. He brought up *Perdita* as his own child, and she knew not she was any other than a shepherd's daughter.

The little *Perdita* grew up a lovely maiden ; and though she had no better education than that of a shepherd's daughter, yet so did the natural graces she inherited from her royal mother shine forth in her untutored mind, that no one from her behaviour would have known she had not been brought up in her father's court,

Polixenes, the king of Bohemia, had an only son, whose name was Florizel. As this young prince was hunting near the shepherd's dwelling, he saw the old man's supposed daughter ; and the beauty, modesty, and queen-like deportment of *Perdita* caused him instantly to fall in love with her. He soon, under the name of Doricles, and in the disguise of a private gentleman, became a constant visitor at the old shepherd's house.

Florizel's frequent absence from court alarmed Polixenes ; and setting people to watch his son, he discovered his love for the shepherd's fair daughter.

Polixenes then called for Camillo, the faithful Camillo, who had preserved his life from the fury of Leontes ; and desired that he would accompany him to the house of the shepherd, the supposed father of Perdita.

Polixenes and Camillo, both in disguise, arrived at the old shepherd's dwelling while they were celebrating the feast of sheep-shearing : and though they were strangers, yet at the sheep-shearing every guest being made welcome, they were invited to walk in and join in the general festivity.

Nothing but mirth and jollity was going forward. Tables were spread, and great preparations were making for the rustic feast. Some lads and lasses were dancing on the green before the house, while others of the young men were buying ribands, gloves, and such toys, of a pedlar at the door.

While this busy scene was going forward, Florizel and Perdita sat quietly in a retired corner seemingly more pleased with the conversation of each other, than desirous of engaging in the sports and silly amusements of those around them.

The king was so disguised that it was impossible his son could know him : he therefore advanced near enough to hear the conversation. The simple yet elegant manner in which Perdita conversed with his son did not a little surprise Polixenes : he said to Camillo, "This is the prettiest low-born lass I ever saw ; nothing she does or says but looks like something greater than herself, too noble for this place."

Camillo replied, "Indeed she is the very queen of curds and cream."

"Pray, my good friend," said the king to the old shepherd, "what fair swain is that talking with your daughter ?" "They call him Doricles," replied the shepherd. "He says he loves my daughter ; and to speak truth, there is not a kiss to choose which loves the other best. If young Doricles can get her, she shall bring him that he little dreams of : " meaning the remainder of Perdita's jewels ; which, after he had bought herds of sheep with part of them, he had carefully hoarded up for her marriage portion.

Polixenes then addressed his son. "How now, young man!" said he: "your heart seems full of something that takes off your mind from feasting. When I was young, I used to load my love with presents but you have let the pedlar go, and have bought your lass no toy."

The young prince, who little thought he was talking to the king his father, replied, "Old sir, she prizes not such trifles; the gifts which Perdita expects from me are locked up in my heart." Then turning to Perdita, he said to her, "Oh hear me, Perdita, before this ancient gentleman, who it seems was once himself a lover: he shall hear what I profess." Florizel then called upon the old stranger to be a witness to a solemn promise of marriage which he made to Perdita, saying to Polixenes, "I pray you, mark our contract."

"Mark your divorce, young sir," said the king, discovering himself. Polixenes then reproached his son for daring to contract himself to this low-born maiden, calling Perdita "shepherd's brat, sheephook," and other disrespectful names; and threatening, if ever she suffered his son to see her again, he would put her, and the old shepherd, her father, to a cruel death.

The king then left them in great wrath, and ordered Camillo to follow him with prince Florizel.

When the king had departed, Perdita, whose royal nature was roused by Polixenes' reproaches, said, "Though we are all undone, I was not much afraid; and once or twice I was about to speak, and tell him plainly that the selfsame sun which shines upon his palace, hides not his face from our cottage, but looks upon both alike." Then sorrowfully she said, "But now I am awakened from this dream, I will queen it no farther. Leave me, sir; I will go milk my ewes, and weep."

The kind-hearted Camillo was charmed with the spirit and propriety of Perdita's behaviour; and perceiving that the young prince was too deeply in love to give up his mistress at the command of his royal father, he thought of a way to befriend the lovers, and at the same time to execute a favourable scheme he had in his mind.

Camillo had long known that Leontes, the king of Sicily, was become a true penitent; and though Camillo was now the favoured friend of king Polixenes, he could not help wishing once more

to see his late royal master and his native home. He therefore proposed to Florizel and Perdita, that they should accompany him to the Sicilian court, where he would engage Leontes should protect them, till, through his mediation, they could obtain pardon from Polixenes, and his consent to their marriage.

To this proposal they joyfully agreed ; and Camillo, who conducted everything relative to their flight, allowed the old shepherd to go along with them.

The shepherd took with him the remainder of Perdita's jewels, her baby clothes, and the paper which he had found pinned to her mantle.

After a prosperous voyage, Florizel and Perdita, Camillo and the old shepherd, arrived in safety at the court of Leontes, who still mourned his dead Hermione and his lost child, received Camillo with great kindness, and gave a cordial welcome to prince Florizel. But Perdita, whom Florizel introduced as his princess, seemed to engross all Leontes' attention : perceiving a resemblance between her and his dead queen Hermione, his grief broke out afresh, and he said, such a lovely creature might his own daughter have been, if he had not so cruelly destroyed her. " And then, too," said he to Florizel, " I lost the society and friendship of your brave father, whom I now desire more than my life once again to look upon."

When the old shepherd heard how much notice the king had taken of Perdita, and that he had lost a daughter, who was exposed in infancy, he fell to comparing the time when he found the little Perdita, with the manner of its exposure, the jewels and other tokens of its high birth ; from all which it was impossible for him not to conclude, that Perdita and the king's lost daughter were the same.

Florizel and Perdita, Camillo and the faithful Paulina, were present when the old shepherd related to the king the manner in which he had found the child, and also the circumstance of Antigonus' death, he having seen the bear seize upon him. He showed the rich mantle in which Paulina remembered Hermione had wrapped the child ; and he produced a jewel which she remembered Hermione had tied about Perdita's neck ; and he gave up the paper which Paulina knew to be the writing of her husband ; it could not be doubted that Perdita was Leontes' own

daughter ; but oh, the noble struggles of Paulina, between sorrow for her husband's death and joy that the oracle was fulfilled, in the king's heir, his long-lost daughter, being found ! When Leontes heard that Perdita was his daughter, the great sorrow that he felt that Hermione was not living to behold her child, made him that he could say nothing for a long time, but, "O thy mother, thy mother !"

Paulina interrupted this joyful yet distressful scene, with saying to Leontes, that she had a statue, newly finished by that rare Italian master, Julio Romano, which was such a perfect resemblance of the queen, that would his Majesty be pleased to go to her house and look upon it, he would almost be ready to think it was Hermione herself. Thither then they all went ; the king anxious to see the semblance of his Hermione, and Perdita longing to behold what the mother she never saw did look like.

When Paulina drew back the curtain which concealed this famous statue, so perfectly did it resemble Hermione, that all the king's sorrow was renewed at the sight. for a long time he had no power to speak or move.

"I like your silence, my liege," said Paulina ; "it the more shows your wonder. Is not this statue very like your queen ?"

At length the king said, "O, thus she stood, even with such majesty, when I first wooed her. But yet, Paulina, Hermione was not so aged as this statue looks." Paulina replied, "So much the more the carver's excellence, who has made the statue as Hermione would have looked had she been living now. But let me draw the curtain, sire, lest presently you think it moves."

The king then said, "Do not draw the curtain ! Would I were dead ! See, Camillo, would you not think it breathed ? Her eye seems to have motion in it." "I must draw the curtain, my liege," said Paulina. "You are so transported, you will persuade yourself the statue lives." "O sweet Paulina," said Leontes, "make me think so twenty years together ! Still methinks there is an air comes from her. What fine chisel could ever yet cut breath ? Let no man mock me, for I will kiss her." "Good my lord, forbear !" said Paulina. "The ruddiness upon her lips is wet ; you will stain your own with oily painting. Shall I draw the curtain ?" "No, not these twenty years," said Leontes.

Perdita, who all this time had been kneeling, and beholding in silent admiration the statue of her matchless mother, said now, "And so long could I stay here, looking upon my dear mother."

"Either forbear this transport," said Paulina to Leontes, "and let me draw the curtain; or prepare yourself for more amazement. I can make the statue move indeed; ay, and descend from off the pedestal, and take you by the hand. But then you will think, which I protest I am not, that I am assisted by some wicked powers.

"What you can make her do," said the astonished king, "I am content to look upon. What you can make her speak, I am content to hear; for it is as easy to make her speak as move."

Paulina then ordered some slow and solemn music, which she had prepared for the purpose, to strike up; and to the amazement of all the beholders, the statue came down from off the pedestal, and threw its arms around Leontes' neck. The statue then began to speak, praying for blessings on her husband, and on her child, the newly found Perdita.

No wonder that the statue hung upon Leontes' neck, and blessed her husband and her child. No wonder; for the statue was indeed Hermione herself, the real and living queen.

Paulina had falsely reported to the king the death of Hermione, thinking that the only means to preserve her royal mistress's life; and with the good Paulina, Hermione had lived ever since, never choosing Leontes should know she was living, till she heard Perdita was found; for though she had long forgiven the injuries which Leontes had done to herself, she could not pardon his cruelty to his infant daughter.

His dead queen thus restored to life, his lost daughter found, the long-sorrowing Leontes could scarcely support the excess of his own happiness.

Nothing but congratulations and affectionate speeches were heard on all sides. Now the delighted parents thanked prince Florizel for loving their lowly seeming daughter; and now they blessed the good old shepherd for preserving their child. Greatly did Camillo and Paulina rejoice, that they had lived to see so good an end of all their faithful services.

And as if nothing should be wanting to complete this strange and unlooked for joy, king Polixenes himself now entered the palaco.

When Polixenes first missed his son and Camillo, knowing that Camillo had long wished to return to Sicily, he conjectured he should find the fugitives here ; and, following them with all speed, he happened to arrive just at this, the happiest moment of Leontes' life.

Polixenes took a part in the general joy ; he forgave his friend Leontes the unjust jealousy he had conceived against him, and they once more loved each other with all the warmth of their first boyish friendship. And there was no fear that Polixenes would now oppose his son's marriage with Perdita. She was no "sheephook" now, but the heiress of the crown of Sicily.

Thus have we seen the patient virtues of the long-suffering Hermione rewarded. That excellent lady lived many years with her Leontes and her Perdita, the happiest of mothers and of queens.

ALL'S WELL THAT ENDS WELL.

BERTRAM, count of Rousillon, had newly come to his title and estate by the death of his father. The king of France loved the father of Bertram, and when he heard of his death, he sent for his son to come immediately to his royal court in Paris ; intending for the friendship he bore the late count, to grace young Bertram with his especial favour and protection.

Bertram was living with his mother, the widowed countess, when Lafen, an old lord of the French court, came to conduct Bertram to the king. The king of France was an absolute monarch, and the invitation to court was in the form of a royal mandate, or positive command, which no subject of what high dignity soever, might disobey ; therefore though the countess, in parting with this dear son, seemed a second time to bury her husband, whose loss she had so lately mourned, yet she dared not to keep him a single day, but gave instant orders for his departure. Lafeu, who came to fetch him, tried to comfort the countess for the loss of her late lord, and her son's absence ; and he said, in a courtier's flattering manner, that the king was so kind a prince, she would find in his Majesty a husband, and that he would be a father to her son ;

meaning only that the good king would befriend the fortunes of Bertram. Lafeu told the countess that the king had fallen into a sad malady, which was pronounced by his physicians to be incurable. The lady expressed great sorrow on hearing this account of the king's ill health, and said, she wished the father of Helena (a young gentlewoman who was present in attendance upon her) were living, for that she doubted not he could have cured his Majesty of his disease. And she told Lafeu something of the history of Helena, saying she was the only daughter of the famous physician Gerard de Narbon, and that he had recommended his daughter to her care when he was dying, so that, since his death, she had taken Helena under her protection; then the countess praised the virtuous disposition and excellent qualities of Helena, saying she inherited these virtues from her worthy father. While she was speaking, Helena wept in sad and mournful silence, which made the countess gently reprove her for too much grieving for her father's death.

Bertram now bade his mother farewell. The countess parted with this dear son with tears and many blessings, and commended him to the care of Lafeu saying, "Good, my lord, advise him, for he is an unseasoned courtier."

Bertram's last words were spoken to Helena, but they were words of mere civility, wishing her happiness; and he concluded his short farewell to her with saying, "Be comfortable to my mother, your mistress, and make much of her."

Helena had long loved Bertram, and when she wept in sad and mournful silence, the tears she shed were not for Gerard de Narbon. Helena loved her father, but in the present feeling of a deeper love, the object of which she was about to lose, she had forgotten the very form and features of her dead father, her imagination presenting no image to her mind but Bertram's.

Helena had long loved Bertram, yet she always remembered that he was the count of Rousillon, descended from the most ancient family in Paris. She of humble birth. Her parents of no note at all. His ancestors all noble. And therefore she looked up to the highborn Bertram as to her master and to her dear lord, and dared not form any wish but to live his servant, and so living to die his vassal. So great the distance seemed to her between his height of dignity and her lowly fortunes, that she would say, "It were all one that I should love a bright peculiar star, and think to wed it, Bertram is so far above me."

Bertram's absence filled her eyes with tears, and her heart with sorrow; for though she loved without hope, yet it was a pretty comfort to her to see him every hour, and Helena would sit and look upon his dark eye, his arched brow, and the curls of his fine hair, till she seemed to draw his portrait on the tablet of her heart, that heart too capable of retaining the memory of every line in the features of that loved face.

Gerard de Narbon, when he died, left her no other portion than some prescriptions of rare and well proved virtue, which by deep study and long experience in medicine, he had collected as sovereign and almost infallible remedies. Among the rest, there was one set down as an improved medicine for the disease under which Lafen said the king at that time languished; and when Helena heard of the king's complaint, she who till now had been so humble and so hopeless, formed an ambitious project in her mind to go herself to Paris, and undertake the cure of the king. But though Helena was the possessor of this choice prescription, it was unlikely, as the king as well as his physicians were of opinion that his disease was incurable, that they would give credit to a poor unlearned virgin, if she should offer to perform a cure. The firm hopes that Helena had of succeeding, if she might be permitted to make the trial, seemed more than even her father's skill warranted, though he was the most famous physician of his time; for she felt a strong faith that this good medicine was sanctified by all the luckiest stars in heaven, to be the legacy that should advance her fortune, even to the high dignity of being count Rousillon's wife.

Bertram had not been long gone when the countess was informed by her steward, that he had overheard Helena talking to herself, and that he understood, from some words she uttered, she was in love with Bertram, and had thought of following him to Paris. The countess dismissed the steward with thanks, and desired him to tell Helena she wished to speak with her. What she had just heard of Helena brought the remembrance of days long past into the mind of the countess; those days probably when her love for Bertram's father first began; and she said to herself, "Even so it was with me when I was young. Love is a thorn that belongs to the rose of youth; for in the season of youth, if ever we are nature's children, these faults are ours, though then we think not they are faults." While the countess was thus meditating on the loving errors of her own youth, Helena entered,

and she said to her, "Helena, you know I am a mother to you." Helena replied, "You are my honourable mistress." "You are my daughter," said the countess again: "I say I am your mother. Why do you start and look pale at my words?" With looks of alarm and confused thoughts, fearing the countess suspected her love, Helena still replied, "Pardon me, madam, you are not my mother; the count Rousillon cannot be my brother, nor I your daughter." "Yet, Helena," said the countess, "you might be my daughter-in-law; and I am afraid that is what you mean to be, the words *mother* and *daughter* so disturb you. Helena, do you love my son?" "Good madam, pardon me," said the affrighted Helena. Again the countess repeated her question, "Do you love my son?" "Do not you love him, madam?" said Helena. The countess replied, "Give me not this evasive answer, Helena. Come, come, disclose the state of your affections, for your love has to the full appeared." Helena on her knees now owned her love, and with shame and terror implored the pardon of her noble mistress; and with words expressive of the sense she had of the inequality between their fortunes, she protested Bertram did not know she loved him, comparing her humble un aspiring love to a poor Indian, who adores the sun, that looks upon his worshipper, but knows of him no more. The countess asked Helena if she had not lately an intent to go to Paris? Helena owned the design she had formed in her mind, when she heard Lafen speak of the king's illness. "This was your motive for wishing to go to Paris," said the countess, "was it? Speak truly." Helena honestly answered, "My lord your son made me think of this; else Paris, and the medicine, and the king, had from the conversation of my thoughts been absent then." The countess heard the whole of this confession without saying a word either of approval or of blame, but she strictly questioned Helena as to the probability of the medicine being useful to the king. She found that it was the most prized by Gerard de Norbon of all he possessed, and that he had given it to his daughter on his deathbed; and remembering the solemn promise she had made at that awful hour in regard to this young maid, whose destiny, and the life of the king himself, seemed to depend on the execution of a project (which though conceived by the fond suggestions of a loving maiden's thoughts, the countess knew not but it might be the unseen workings of Providence to bring to pass the recovery of the king, and to lay the foundation of the future fortunes of Gerard de Narbon's daughter), free leave she gave to Helena to pursue her own way, and generously

furnished her with ample means and suitable attendants; and Helena set out for Paris with the blessings of the countess, and her kindest wishes for her success.

Helena arrived at Paris, and by the assistance of her friend, the old lord Lafen, obtained an audience of the king. She had still many difficulties to encounter, for the king was not easily prevailed on to try the medicine offered him by this fair young doctor. But she told him she was Gerard de Narbon's daughter (with whose fame the king was well acquainted) and she offered the precious medicine as the durling treasure which contained the essence of all her father's long experience and skill, and she boldly engaged to forfeit her life, if it failed to restore his Majesty to perfect health in the space of two days. The king at length consented to try it, and in two days' time Helena was to lose her life if the king did not recover; but if she succeeded, he promised to give her the choice of any man throughout all France (the princes only excepted) whom she could like for a husband; the choice of husband being the fee Helena demanded, if she cured the king of his disease.

Helena did not deceive herself in the hope conceived of the efficacy of her father's medicine. Before two days were at an end, the king was restored to perfect health, and he assembled all the young noblemen of his court together, in order to confer the promised reward of a husband on his fair physician; and he desired Helena to look round on this youthful parcel of noble bachelors, and choose her husband. Helena was not slow to make her choice, for among these young lords she saw the count Rousillon, and turning to Bertram, she said, "This is the man. I dare not say, my lord, I take you, but I give me and my service ever whilst I live, into your guiding power." "Why then," said the king, "young Bertram, take her; she is your wife." Bertram did not hesitate to declare his dislike to this present of the king's of the self-offered Helena, who, he said, was a poor physician's daughter, bred at his father's charge, and now living a dependant on his mother's bounty. Helena heard him speak these words of rejection and of scorn, and she said to the king, "That you are well, my lord, I am glad. Let the rest go." But the king would not suffer his royal command to be so slighted; for the power of bestowing their nobles in marriage was one of the many privileges of the kings of France; and that same day Bertram was married to Helena, a forced and uneasy marriage to Bertram, and of no

promising hope to the poor lady, who, though she gained the noble husband she had hazarded her life to obtain, seemed to have won but a splendid blank, her husband's love not being a gift in the power of the king of France to bestow.

Helena was no sooner married, than she was desired by Bertram to apply to the king for him for leave of absence from court; and when she brought him the king's permission for his departure, Bertram told her that as he was not prepared for this sudden marriage, it had much unsettled him, and therefore she must not wonder at the course he should pursue. If Helena wondered not, she grieved when she found it was his intention to leave her. He ordered her to go home to his mother. When Helena heard this unkind command, she replied, "Sir, I say nothing to this, but that I am your most obedient servant, and shall ever with true observance seek to eke out that desert, wherein my homely stars have failed to equal my great fortunes." But this humble speech of Helena's did not at all move the haughty Bertram to pity his gentle wife, and he parted from her without the common civility of a kind farewell.

Back to the countess then Helena returned. She had accomplished the purport of her journey, she had preserved the life of the king, and she had wedded her heart's dear lord, the count Ronsillon: but she returned back a dejected lady to her noble mother-in-law, and as soon as she entered the house, she received a letter from Bertram which almost broke her heart.

The good countess received her with a cordial welcome, as if she had been her son's own choice, and a lady of high degree, and she spoke kind words, to comfort her for the unkind neglect of Bertram in sending his wife home on her bridal day alone. But this gracious reception failed to cheer the sad mind of Helena, and she said, "Madam, my Lord is gone, for ever gone." She then read these words out of Bertram's letter: *When you can get the ring from my finger which never shall come off, then call me husband, but in such a Then I write a Never.* "This is a dreadful sentence," said Helena. The countess begged her to have patience, and said, now Bertram was gone, she should be her child, and that she deserved a lord that twenty such rude boys as Bertram might tend upon, and hourly call her mistress. But in vain by respectful condescension and kind flattery this matchless mother tried to soothe the sorrows of her daughter-in-law. Helena still kept her eyes fixed upon the letter, and cried out in an agony of

grief, *Till I have no wife, I have nothing in France.* The countess asked her if she found those words in the letter? "Yes, madam," was all poor Helena could answer.

The next morning Helena was missing. She left a letter to be delivered to the countess after she was gone, to acquaint her with the reason of her sudden absence: in this letter she informed her, that she was so much grieved at having driven Bertram from his native country and his home that to atone for her offence, she had undertaken a pilgrimage to the shrine of St. Jaques le Grand and concluded with requesting the countess to inform her son, that the wife he so hated had left his house for ever.

Bertram, when he left Paris, went to Florence and there became an officer in the Duke of Florence's army, and after a successful war, in which he distinguished himself by many brave actions, Bertram received letters from his mother, containing the acceptable tidings that Helena would no more disturb him; and he was preparing to return home when Helena herself, clad in her pilgrim's weeds, arrived at the city of Florence.

Florence was a city through which the pilgrims used to pass on their way to St Jaques le Grand; and when Helena arrived at this city, she heard that a hospitable widow dwelt there, who used to receive into her house the female pilgrims that were going to visit the shrine of that saint, giving them lodging and kind entertainment. To this good lady therefore Helena went, and the widow gave her a courteous welcome, and invited her to see whatever was curious in that famous city, and told her that if she would like to see the duke's army, she would take her where she might have a full view of it. "And you will see a countryman of yours," said the widow; "his name is count Rousillon, who has done worthy service in the duke's wars." Helena wanted no second invitation, when she found Bertram was to make a part of the show. She accompanied her hostess; and a sad and mournful pleasure it was to her to look once more upon her dear husband's face. "Is he not a handsome man?" said the widow. "I like him well," replied Helena with great truth. All the way they walked, the talkative widow's discourse was all of Bertram: she told Helena the story of Bertram's marriage, and how he had deserted the poor lady his wife, and entered into the duke's army to avoid living with her. To this account of her own misfortunes Helena patiently listened, and when it was ended, the history of Bertram was not yet done, for then the widow

began another tale, every word of which sunk deep into the mind of Helena for the story she now told was of Bertram's love for her daughter.

Though Bertram did not like the marriage forced on him by the king, it seems he was not insensible to love, for since he had been stationed with the army at Florence, he had fallen in love with Diana, a fair young gentlewoman, the daughter of this widow who was Helena's hostess; and every night with music of all sorts, and songs composed in praise of Diana's beauty, he would come under her window, and solicit her love; and all his suit to her was, that she would permit him to visit her by stealth after the family were retired to rest, but Diana would by no means be persuaded to grant this improper request, nor give any encouragement to his suit, knowing him to be a married man; for Diana had been brought up under the counsels of a prudent mother, who, though she was now in reduced circumstances, was well-born; and descended from the noble family of the Capulets.

All this the good lady related to Helena, highly praising the virtuous principles of her discreet daughter, which she said were entirely owing to the excellent education and good advice she had given her; and she farther said, that Bertram had been particularly importunate with Diana to admit him to the visit he so much desired that night, because he was going to leave Florence early the next morning.

Though it grieved Helena to hear of Bertram's love for the widow's daughter, from the story the ardent mind of Helena conceived a project (nothing discouraged at the ill success of her former one) to recover her truant lord. She disclosed to the widow, that she was Helena, the deserted wife of Bertram, and requested that her kind hostess and her daughter would suffer this visit from Bertram to take place, and allow her to pass herself upon Bertram for Diana; telling them, her chief motive for desiring to have this secret meeting with her husband, was to get a ring from him, which he had said, if ever she was in possession of, he would acknowledge her as his wife.

The widow and her daughter promised to assist her in this affair, partly moved by pity for this unhappy forsaken wife, and partly won over to her interest by the promises of reward which Helena made them, giving them a purse of money in earnest of her future favour. In the course of that day Helena caused information to be sent to Bertram that she was dead; hoping that when

he thought himself free to make a second choice by the news of her death, he would offer marriage to her in her feigned character of Diana. And if she could obtain the ring and this promise too, she doubted not she should make some future good come of it.

In the evening, after it was dark, Bertram was admitted into Diana's chamber, and Helena was there ready to receive him. The flattering compliments and love discourse he addressed to Helena were precious sounds to her, though she knew they were meant for Diana; and Bertram was so well pleased with her, that he made her a solemn promise to be her husband, and to love her for ever; which she hoped would be prophetic of a real affection, when he should know it was his own wife, the despised Helena, whose conversation had so delighted him.

Bertram never knew how sensible a lady Helena was, else perhaps he would not have been so regardless of her; and seeing her every day, he had entirely overlooked her beauty; a face we are accustomed to see constantly, losing the effect which is caused by the first sight either of beauty or of plainness; and of her understanding it was impossible he should judge, because she felt such reverence, mixed with her love for him, that she was always silent in his presence; but now that her future fate, and the happy ending of all her love-projects, seemed to depend on her leaving a favourable impression on the mind of Bertram from this night's interview, she exerted all her wit to please him; and the simple graces of her lively conversation and the endearing sweetness of her manners so charmed Bertram, that he vowed she should be his wife. Helena begged the ring from off his finger as a token of his regard, and he gave it to her; and in return for this ring, which it was of such importance to her to possess, she gave him another ring, which was one the king had made her a present of. Before it was light in the morning, she sent Bertram away; and he immediately set out on his journey towards his mother's house.

Helena prevailed on the widow and Diana to accompany her to Paris, their farther assistance being necessary to the full accomplishment of the plan she had formed. When they arrived there, they found the king was gone upon a visit to the countess of Rousillon, and Helena followed the king with all the speed she could make.

The king was still in perfect health, and his gratitude to her who had been the means of his recovery was so lively in his

mind, that the moment he saw the countess of Rousillon, he began to talk of Helena, calling her a precious jewel that was lost by the folly of her son; but seeing the subject distressed the countess, who sincerely lamented the death of Helena, he said, "My good lady, I have forgiven and forgotten all." But the good-natured old Lafen, who was present, and could not bear that the memory of his favourite Helena should be so lightly passed over, said, "This I must say, the young lord did great offence to his Majesty, his mother, and his lady; but to himself he did the greatest wrong of all for he has lost a wife whose beauty astonished all eyes, whose words took all ears captive, whose deep perfection made all hearts wish to serve her." The king said, "Praising what is lost makes the remembrance dear. Well—call him hither;" meaning Bertram, who now presented himself before the king: and, on his expressing deep sorrow for the injuries he had done to Helena, the king, for his dead father's and his admirable mother's sake, pardoned him and restored him once more to his favour. But the gracious countenance of the king was soon changed towards him, for he perceived that Bertram wore the very ring upon his finger which he had given to Helena; and he well remembered that Helena had called all the saints in heaven to witness she would never part with that ring, unless she sent it to the king himself upon some great disaster befalling her; and Bertram, on the king's questioning him how he came by the ring, told an improbable story of a lady throwing it to him out of a window, and denied ever having seen Helena since the day of their marriage. The king knowing Bertram's dislike to his wife, feared he had destroyed her; and he ordered his guards to seize Bertram, saying, "I am wrapped in dismal thinking, for I fear the life of Helena was foully snatched." At this moment Diana and her mother entered, and presented a petition to the king, wherein they begged his Majesty to exert his royal power to compel Bertram to marry Diana, he having made her a solemn promise of marriage. Bertram, fearing the king's anger, denied he had made any such promise, and then Diana produced the ring (which Helena had put into her hands) to confirm the truth of her words; and she said that she had given Bertram the ring he then wore, in exchange for that, at the time he vowed to marry her. On hearing this, the king ordered the guards to seize her also; and her account of the ring differing from Bertram's, the king's suspicions were confirmed; and he said, if they did not confess how they came by this ring of Helena's they should be both put to

death. Diana requested her mother might be permitted to fetch the jeweller of whom she bought the ring, which being granted, the widow went out, and presently returned leading in Helena herself.

The good countess, who in silent grief had beheld her son's danger, and had even dreaded that the suspicion of his having destroyed his wife might possibly be true, finding her dear Helena, whom she loved with even a maternal affection, was still living, felt a delight she was hardly able to support ; and the king, scarce believing for joy that it was Helena, said, " Is this indeed the wife of Bertram that I see ? " Helena, feeling herself yet an unacknowledged wife, replied, " No, my good lord, it is but the shadow of a wife you see, the name and not the thing." Bertram cried out, " Both, both ! O pardon !" " O my lord," said Helena, " when I personated this fair maid, I found you wondrous kind ; and look, here is your letter ! " reading to him in a joyful tone those words which she had once repeated so sorrowfully, *When from my finger you can get this ring--* " This is done, it was to me you gave the ring. Will you be mine, now you are doubly won ? " Bertram replied, " If you can make it plain that you were the lady I talked with that night, I will love you dearly, ever, ever dearly." This was no difficult task, for the widow and Diana came with Helena purposely to prove this fact ; and the king was so well pleased with Diana, for the friendly assistance she had rendered the dear lady he so truly valued for the service she had done him, that he promised her also a noble husband : Helena's history giving him a hint, that it was a suitable reward for kings to bestow upon fair ladies when they perform notable services.

Thus Helena at last found, that her father's legacy was indeed sanctified by the luckiest stars in heaven ; for she was now the beloved wife of her dear Bertram, the daughter-in-law of her noble mistress, and herself the countess of Rousillon.

THE TWO GENTLEMEN OF VERONA.

THERE lived in the city of Verona two young gentlemen, whose names were Valentine and Protheus, between whom a firm and uninterrupted friendship had long subsisted. They pursued their studies together, and their hours of leisure were always passed in each other's company, except when Protheus visited a lady he was in love with ; and these visits to his mistress, and this passion of

Protheus for the fair Julia, were the only topics on which these two friends disagreed : for Valentine, not being himself a lover, was sometimes a little weary of hearing his friend for ever talking of his Julia, and then he would laugh at Protheus, and in pleasant terms ridicule the passion of love, and declared that no such idle fancies should ever enter his head, greatly preferring (as he said) the free and happy life he led, to the anxious hopes and fears of the lover Protheus.

One morning Valentine came to Protheus to tell him that they must for a time be separated, for that he was going to Milan. Protheus, unwilling to part with his friend, used many arguments to prevail upon Valentine not to leave him ; but Valentine said, " Cease to persuade me, my loving Protheus. I will not, like a ~~sluggard~~, wear out my youth in idleness at home. Home-keeping youths have ever homely wits. If your affection were not chained to the sweet glances of your honoured Julia, I would entreat you to accompany me, to see the wonders of the world abroad ; but since you are a lover, love on still, and may your love be prosperous ! "

They parted with mutual expressions of unalterable friendship. " Sweet Valentine, adieu ! " said Protheus ; " think on me, when you see some rare object worthy of notice in your travels, and wish me partaker of your happiness."

Valentine began his journey that same day towards Milan ; and when his friend had left him, Protheus sat down to write a letter to Julia, which he gave to her maid Lucetta to deliver to her mistress.

Julia loved Protheus as well as he did her, but she was a lady of a noble spirit, and she thought it did not become her maiden dignity so easily to be won ; therefore she affected to be insensible of his passion, and gave him much uneasiness in the prosecution of his suit.

And when Lucetta offered the letter to Julia, she would not receive it, and chid her maid for taking letters from Protheus, and ordered her to leave the room. But she so much wished to see what was written in the letter, that she soon called in her maid again, and when Lucetta returned, she said, " What o'clock is it ? " Lucetta, who knew her mistress more desired to see the letter than to know the time of day, without answering her question, again offered the rejected letter. Julia, angry that her maid

should thus take the liberty of seeming to know what she really wanted, tore the letter in pieces, and threw it on the floor, ordering her maid once more out of the room. As Lucetta was retiring, she stopped to pick up the fragments of the torn letter; but Julia, who meant not so to part with them, said, in pretended anger, "Go, get you gone, and let the papers lie; you would be fingering them to anger me."

Julia then began to piece together as well as she could the torn fragments. She first made out these words, "Love wounded Prothens;" and lamenting over these and such like loving words, which she made out though they were all torn asunder, or, she said, *wounded* (the expression "Love-wounded Prothens," giving her that idea,) she talked to these kind words, telling them she would lodge them in her bosom as in a bed, till their wounds were healed, and that she would kiss each several piece, to make amends.

In this manner she went on talking with a pretty lady-like childishness, till, finding herself unable to make out the whole, and, vexed at her own ingratitude in destroying such sweet and loving words, as she called them, she wrote a much kinder letter to Prothens than she had ever done before.

Prothens was greatly delighted at receiving this favourable answer to his letter; and while he was reading it, he exclaimed, "Sweet love, sweet lines, sweet life!" In the midst of his raptures he was interrupted by his father. "How now!" said the old gentleman: "what letter are you reading there?"

"My lord," replied Prothens, "it is a letter from my friend Valentine, at Milan."

"Lend me the letter," said his father "let me see what news."

"There are no news, my lord," said Prothens, greatly alarmed, "but that he writes how well beloved he is of the duke of Milan, who daily graces him with favours; and how he wishes me with him, the partner of his fortune."

"And how stand you affected to his wish?" asked the father.

"As one relying on your lordship's will, and not depending on his friendly wish," said Prothens.

Now it happened that Prothens' father had just been talking with a friend on this very subject: his friend had said, he wondered his lordship suffered his son to spend his youth at home, while

most men were sending their sons to seek preferment abroad : "some," said he, "to the wars to try thier fortunes there, and some to discover islands far away, and some to study in foreign universities ; and there is his companion Valentine, he is gone to the duke of Milan's court. Your son is fit for any of these things, and it will be a great disadvantage to him in his riper age, not to have travelled in his youth."

Protheus' father thought the advice of his friend was very good, and upon Protheus telling him that Valentine "wished him with him, the partner of his fortune," he at once determined to send his son to Milan ; and without giving Protheus any reason for this sudden resolution, it being the usual habit of this positive old gentleman to command his son, not reason with him, he said, "My will is the same as Valentine's wish : " and seeing his son look astonished, he added, "Look not amazed, that I so suddenly resolve you shall spend some time in the duke of Milan's court ; for what I will I will, and there is an end. To-morrow be in readiness to go. Make no excuses ; for I am peremptory."

Protheus knew it was of no use to make objections to his father, who never suffered him to dispute his will ; and he blamed himself for telling his father an untruth about Julia's letter, which had brought upon him the sad necessity of leaving her.

Now that Julia found she was going to lose Protheus for so long a time, she no longer pretended indifference ; and they bade each other a mournful farewell, with many vows of love and constancy. Protheus and Julia exchanged rings, which they both promised to keep for ever in remembrance of each other ; and thus, taking a sorrowful leave, Protheus set out on his journey to Milan, the abode of his friend Valentine.

Valentine was in reality what Protheus had feigned to his father, in high favour with the duke of Milan ; and another event had happened to him of which Protheus did not even dream, for Valentine had given up the freedom of which he used so much to boast, and was become as passionate a lover as Protheus.

She who had wrought this wondrous change in Valentine was the lady Silvia, daughter of the duke of Milan, and she also loved him ; but they concealed their love from the duke, because although he showed much kindness for Valentine, and invited him every day to his palace, yet he designed to marry his daughter to a young courtier whose name was Thurio. Silvia despised this

Thurio, for he had none of the fine sense and excellent qualities of Valentine.

These two rivals, Thurio and Valentine, were one day on a visit to Silvia, and Valentine was entertaining Silvia with turning everything Thurio said into ridicule, when the duke himself entered the room, and told Valentine the welcome news of his friend Protheus' arrival. Valentine said, "If I had wished a thing, it would have been to have seen him here!" and then he highly praised Protheus to the duke, saying, "My lord, though I have been a truant of my time yet hath my friend made use and fair advantage of his days, and is complete in person and in mind, in all good grace to grace a gentleman."

"Welcome him then according to his worth," said the duke. "Silvia, I speak to you, and you, sir Thurio; for Valentine. I need not bid him do so." They were interrupted by the entrance of Protheus, and Valentine introduced him to Silvia, saying, "Sweet lady, entertain him to be my fellow-servant to your ladyship."

When Valentine and Protheus had ended their visit, and were alone together, Valentine said, "Now tell me how all does from whence you came? How does your lady, and how thrives your love?" Protheus replied, "My tales of love used to weary you. I know you joy not in a love discourse."

"Ay, Protheus," returned Valentine, "but that life is altered now. I have done penance for condemning love. For in revenge of my contempt of Love, Love has chased sleep from my enthralled eyes. O gentle Protheus, Love is a mighty lord, and hath so humbled me, that I confess there is no woe like his correction, nor no such joy on earth as in his service. I now like no discourse except it be of love. Now I can break my fast, dine, sup, and sleep, upon the very name of love."

This acknowledgment of the change which love had made in the disposition of Valentine was a great triumph to his friend Protheus. But "friend" Protheus must be called no longer, for the same all-powerful deity Love, of whom they were speaking, (yea, even while they were talking of the change he had made in Valentine) was working in the heart of Protheus; and he, who had till this time been a pattern of true love and perfect friendship, was, now, in one short interview with Silvia, become a false friend and a faithless lover; for at the first sight of Silvia, all his love for Julia vanished away like a dream, nor did his

long friendship for Valentine deter him from endeavouring to supplant him in her affections ; and although, as it will always be, when people of dispositions naturally good become unjust, he had many scruples before he determined to forsake Julia, and become the rival of Valentine ; yet he at length overcame his sense of duty, and yielded himself up, almost without remorse, to his new unhappy passion.

Valentine imparted to him in confidence the whole history of his love, and how carefully they had concealed it from the duke her father, and told him, that despairing of ever being able to obtain his consent, he had prevailed upon Silvia to leave her father's palace that night, and go with him to Mantua ; then he showed Protheus a ladder of ropes, by help of which he meant to assist Silvia to get out of one of the windows of the palace, after it was dark.

Upon bearing this faithful recital of his friend's dearest secrets, it is hardly possible to be believed, but so it was, that Protheus resolved to go to the duke, and disclose the whole to him.

This false friend began his tale with many artful speeches to the duke ; such as, that by the laws of friendship he ought to conceal what he was going to reveal, but that the gracious favour the duke had shown him, and the duty he owed his Grace, urged him to that, which else no worldly good should draw from him. He then told all he had heard from Valentine, not omitting the ladder of ropes and the manner in which Valentine meant to conceal them under a long cloak.

The duke thought Protheus quite a miracle of integrity, in that he preferred telling his friend's intention rather than he would conceal ; highly commended him, and promised him not to let Valentine know from whom he had learnt this intelligence, but by some artifice to make Valentine betray the secret himself. For this purpose the duke awaited the coming of Valentine in the evening, whom he soon saw hurrying towards the palace, and he perceived something was wrapped within his cloak, which he concluded was the rope-ladder.

The duke upon this stopped him, saying, " Whither away so fast, Valentine ? " " May it please your Grace," said Valentine, " there is a messenger, that stays to bear my letters to my friends.

and I am going to deliver them." Now this falsehood of Valentine's had no better success in the event than the untruth Proteus told his father.

"Be they of much import?" said the duke.

"No more, my lord," said Valentine, "to tell my father I am well and happy at your Grace's court."

"Nay, then," said the duke, "no matter: stay with me awhile. I wish your counsel about some affairs that concern me nearly." He then told Valentine an artful story as a prelude to draw his secret from him, saying, that Valentine knew he wished to match his daughter with Thurio, but that she was stubborn and disobedient to his commands. "neither regarding," said he, "that she is my child, nor fearing me as if I were her father. And I may say to thee, this pride of hers has drawn my love from her. I had thought my age should have been cherished by her childlike duty. I now am resolved to take a wife, and turn her out to whosoever will take her in. Let her beauty be her wedding dower, for me and my possessions she esteems not."

Valentine, wondering where all this would end, made answer, "And what would your Grace have me to do in all this?"

"Why," said the duke, "the lady I would wish to marry is nice and coy, and does not much esteem my aged eloquence. Besides, the fashion of courtship is much changed since I was young: now I would willingly have you to be my tutor to instruct me how I am to woo."

Valentine gave him a general idea of the modes of courtship then practised by young men, when they wished to win a fair lady's love, such as presents, frequent visits, and the like.

The duke replied to this, that the lady did refuse a present which he sent her, and that she was so strictly kept by her father, that no man might have access to her by day.

"Why, then," said Valentine, "you must visit her by night."

"But at night," said the artful duke, who was now coming to the drift of his discourse, "her doors are fast locked."

Valentine then unfortunately proposed, that the duke should get into the lady's chamber at night by means of a ladder of ropes saying, he would procure him one fitting for that purpose; and in conclusion advised him to conceal this ladder of ropes under such a cloak as that which he now wore. "Lend me your cloak,"

said the duke, who had feigned this long story on purpose to have a pretence to get off the cloak : so, upon saying these words, he caught hold of Valentine's cloak, and throwing it back, he discovered not only the ladder of ropes, but also a letter of Silvia's, which he instantly opened and read ; and this letter contained a full account of their intended elopement. The duke, after upbraiding Valentine for his ingratitude in thus returning the favour he had shown him, by endeavouring to steal away his daughter, banished him from the court and city of Milan for ever ; and Valentine was forced to depart that night, without even seeing Silvia

While Protheus at Milan was thus injuring Valentine, Julia at Verona was regretting the absence of Protheus ; and her regard for him at last so far overcame her sense of propriety, that she resolved to leave Verona, and seek her love at Milan ; and to secure herself from danger on the road, she dressed her maid, Lucetta and herself in men's clothes, and they set out in this disguise, and arrived at Milan, soon after Valentine was banished from that city through the treachery of Protheus.

Julia entered Milan about noon, and she took up her abode at an inn ; and her thoughts being all on her dear Protheus, she entered into conversation with the innkeeper, or host, as he was called, thinking by that means to learn some news of Protheus

The host was greatly pleased that this handsome young gentleman (as he took her to be, who, from his appearance, he concluded was of high rank, spoke so familiarly to him ; and being a good-natured man he was sorry to see him look so melancholy ; and to amuse his young guest he offered to take him to hear some fine music, with which, he said, a gentleman that evening was going to serenade his mistress

The reason Julia looked so very melancholy was that she did not well know what Protheus would think of the imprudent step she had taken ; for she knew he had loved her for her noble maiden pride and dignity of character, and she feared she should lower herself in his esteem : and this it was that made her wear a sad and thoughtful countenance

She gladly accepted the offer of the host to go with him, and hear the music ; for she secretly hoped she might meet Protheus by the way.

But when she came to the palace whither the host conducted her, a very different effect was produced to what the kind host

intended ; for there, to her heart's sorrow, she beheld her lover, the inconstant Protheus, serenading the lady Silvia with music, and addressing discourse of love and admiration to her. And Julia overheard Silvia from a window talk with Protheus, and reproach him for forsaking his own true lady, and for his ingratitude to his friend Valentine ; and then Silvia left the window not choosing to listen to his music and his fine speeches ; for she was a faithful lady to her banished Valentine, and abhorred the ungenerous conduct of his false friend Protheus.

Though Julia was in despair at what she had just witnessed, yet did she still love the truant Protheus ; and hearing that he had lately parted with a servant, she contrived with the assistance of her host, the friendly innkeeper, to hire herself to Protheus as a page ; and Protheus knew not she was Julia, and he sent her with letters and presents to her rival Silvia, and he even sent by her the very ring she gave him as a parting gift at Verona.

When she went to that lady with the rings, she was most glad to find that Silvia utterly rejected the suit of Protheus ; and Julia, or the page Sebastian, as she was called, entered into conversation with Silvia about Protheus' first love the forsaken lady Julia. She, putting in (as one may say) a good word for herself, said she knew Julia ; as well she might, being herself the Julia of whom she spoke ; telling how fondly Julia loved her master Protheus, and how his unkind neglect would grieve her : and then she with a pretty equivocation went on : " Julia is about my height and of my complexion, the colour of her eyes and hair the same as mine ; and indeed Julia looked a most beautiful youth in her boy's attire. Silvia was moved to pity this lovely lady, who was so sadly forsaken by the man she loved ; and when Julia offered the ring which Protheus had sent, refused it, saying, " The more shame for him that he sends me that ring ; I will not take it, for I have often heard him say his Julia gave it to him. I love thee, gentle youth, for pitying her, poor lady ! Here is a purse ; I give it you for Julia's sake." These comfortable words coming from her kind rival's tongue cheered the drooping heart of the disguised lady.

But to return to the banished Valentine ; who scarce knew which way to bend his course, being unwilling to return home to his father a disgraced and banished man ; as he was wandering over a lonely forest, not far distant from Milan, where he

had left his heart's dear treasure, the lady Silvia, he was set upon by robbers, who demanded his money,

Valentine told them, that he was a man crossed by adversity, that he was going into banishment, and that he had no money, the clothes he had on being all his riches.

The robbers, hearing that he was a distressed man, and being struck with his noble air and manly behaviour, told him, if he would live with them. and be their chief, or captain, they would put themselves under his command ; but that, if he refused to accept their offer, they would kill him.

Valentine, who cared little what became of himself, said, he would consent to live with them and be their captain, provided they did no outrage on women or poor passengers.

Thus the noble Valentine became, like Robin Hood, of whom we read in ballads, a captain of robbers and outlawed banditti : and in this situation he was found by Silvia, and in this manner it came to pass.

Silvia, to avoid a marriage with Thurio, whom her father insisted upon her no longer refusing, came at last to the resolution of following Valentine to Mantua, at which place she had heard her lover had taken refuge ; but in this account she was misinformed, for he still lived in the forest among the robbers, bearing the name of their captain, but taking no part in their depredations, and using the authority which they had imposed upon him in no other way than to compel them to show compassion to the travellers they robbed.

Silvia contrived to effect her escape from her father's palace in company with a worthy old gentleman, whose name was Eglamour. whom she took along with her for protection on the road. She had to pass through the forest where Valentine and the banditti dwelt : and one of these robbers seized on Silvia, and would also have taken Eglamour, but he escaped.

The robber who had taken Silvia, seeing the terror she was in, bid her not be alarmed, for that he was only going to carry her to a cave where his captain lived, and that she need not be afraid, for their captain had an honourable mind, and always showed humanity to women. Silvia found little comfort in hearing she was going to be carried as a prisoner before the captain of a lawless banditti. "O Valentine," she cried, "this I endure for thee!"

But as the robber was conveying her to the cave of his captain, he was stopped by Protheus, who, still attended by Julia in the disguise of a page, having heard of the flight of Silvia, had traced her steps to this forest. Protheus now rescued her from the hands of the robber; but scarce had she time to thank him for the service he had done her, before he began to distress her afresh with his love-suit: and while he was rudely pressing her to consent to marry him, and his page (the forlorn Julia) was standing beside him in great anxiety of mind, fearing lest the great service which Protheus had just done to Silvia should win her to show him some favour, they were all strangely surprised with the sudden appearance of Valentine, who, having heard his robbers had taken a lady prisoner, came to console and relieve her.

Protheus was courting Silvia, and he was so much ashamed of being caught by his friend, that he was all at once seized with penitence and remorse; and he expressed such a lively sorrow for the injuries he had done to Valentine, that Valentine, whose nature was noble and generous, even to a romantic degree, not only forgave and restored him to his former place in his friendship, but in a sudden flight of heroism he said, "I freely do forgive you: and all the interest I have in Silvia, I give it up to you." Julia, who was standing beside her master as a page, hearing this strange offer, and fearing Protheus would not be able with this new-found virtue to refuse Silvia, fainted, and they were all employed in recovering her: else would Silvia have been offended at being thus made over to Protheus, though she could scarcely think that Valentine would long persevere in this overstrained and too generous act of friendship. When Julia recovered from the fainting fit, she said, "I had forgot, my master ordered me to deliver this ring to Silvia." Protheus, looking upon the ring, saw that it was the one he gave to Julia, in return for that which he received from her, and which he had sent by the supposed page to Silvia. - "How is this?" said he, "this is Julia's ring: how came you by it, boy?" Julia answered, "Julia herself did give it me, and Julia herself hath brought it hither."

Protheus, now looking earnestly upon her, plainly perceived that the page Sebastian was no other than the lady Julia herself: and the proof she had given of her constancy and true love so wrought in him, that his love for her returned into his heart, and he took again his own dear lady, and joyfully resigned all pretensions to the lady Silvia to Valentine, who had so well deserved her.

Protheus and Valentine were expressing their happiness in their reconciliation, and in the love of their faithful ladies, when they were surprised with the sight of the duke of Milan and Thurio, who came there in pursuit of Silvia.

Thurio first approached, and attempted to seize Silvia, saying, "Silvia is mine." Upon this Valentine said to him in a very spirited manner, "Thurio, keep back : if once again you say that Silvia is yours, you shall embrace your death. Here she stands, take but possession of her with a touch ! I dare you but to breathe upon my love." Hearing this threat, Thurio, who was a great coward, drew back, and said he cared not for her, and that none but a fool would fight for a girl who loved him not.

The duke, who was a very brave man himself, said now in great anger, "The more base and degenerate in you to take such means for her as you have done, and leave her on such light conditions." Then turning to Valentine, he said, "I do applaud your spirit, Valentine, and think you worthy of an empress's love. You shall have Silvia, for you have well deserved her." Valentine then with great humility kissed the duke's hand, and accepted the noble present which he had made him of his daughter with becoming thankfulness : taking occasion of this joyful minute to entreat the good-humoured duke to pardon the thieves with whom he had associated in the forest, assuring him, that when reformed and restored to society, there would be found among them many good, and fit for great employment ; for the most of them had been banished, like Valentine, for state offences, rather than for any black crimes they had been guilty of. To this the ready duke consented ; and now nothing remained but that Protheus, the false friend, was ordained, by way of penance for his love-prompted faults, to be present at the recital of the whole story of his loves and falsehoods before the duke ; and the shame of the recital to his awakened conscience was judged sufficient punishment : which being done, the lovers, all four, returned back to Milan, and their nuptials were solemnized in presence of the duke, with high triumphs and feasting.

. CYMBELINE.

DURING the time of Augustus Cæsar, emperor of Rome, there reigned in England (which was then called Britain) a king whose name was Cymbeline.

Cymbeline's first wife died when his three children (two sons and a daughter) were very young. Imogen, eldest of these children, was brought up in her father's court; but by a strange chance the two sons of Cymbeline were stolen out of their nursery, when the eldest was but three years of age, and the youngest quite an infant: and Cymbeline could never discover what was become of them, or by whom they were conveyed away.

Cymbeline was twice married; his second wife was a wicked, plotting woman, and a cruel step-mother to Imogen, Cymbeline's daughter by his first wife.

The queen, though she hated Imogen, yet wished her to marry a son of her own by a former husband (she also having been twice married): for by this means she hoped upon the death of Cymbeline to place the crown of Britain upon the head of her son Cloten; for she knew that if the king's sons were not found, the princess Imogen must be the king's heir. But this design was prevented by Imogen herself, who married without the consent or even knowledge of her father or the queen.

Posthumus (for that was the name of Imogen's husband) was the best scholar and most accomplished gentleman of that age. His father died fighting in the wars for Cymbeline, and soon after his birth his mother died also for grief at the loss of her husband.

Cymbeline, pitying the helplessness of this orphan, took Posthumus (Cymbeline having given him that name, because he was born after his father's death) and educated him in his own court.

Imogen and Posthumus were both taught by the same masters, and were play-fellows from their infancy; they loved each other tenderly when they were children, and their affection continuing to increase with their years, when they grew up they privately married.

The disappointed queen soon learnt this secret, for she kept spies constantly in watch upon the actions of her daughter-in-law, and she immediately told the king of the marriage of Imogen with Posthumus.

Nothing could exceed the wrath of Cymbeline, when he heard that his daughter had been so forgetful of her high dignity as to marry a subject. He commanded Posthumus to leave Britain, and banished him from his native country for ever.

The queen, who pretended to pity Imogen for the grief she suffered at losing her husband, offered to procure them a private meeting before Posthumus set out on his journey to Rome, which place he had chosen for his residence in his banishment: this seeming kindness she showed, the better to succeed in her future designs in regard to her son Cloten; for she meant to persuade Imogen, when her husband was gone, that her marriage was not lawful, being contracted without the consent of the king.

Imogen and Posthumus took a most affectionate leave of each other. Imogen gave her husband a diamond ring which had been her mother's, and Posthumus promised never to part with the ring; and he fastened a bracelet on the arm of his wife, which he begged she would preserve with great care, as a token of his love; they then bid each other farewell, with many vows of everlasting love and fidelity.

Imogen remained a solitary and dejected lady in her father's court, and Posthumus arrived at Rome, the place he had chosen for his banishment.

Posthumus fell into company at Rome with some gay young men of different nations, who were talking freely of ladies; each one praising the ladies of his own country, and his own mistress. Posthumus, who had ever his own dear lady in his mind, affirmed that his wife, the fair Imogen, was the most virtuous, wise, and constant lady in the world.

One of these gentlemen, whose name was Iachimo, being offended that a lady of Britain should be so praised above the Roman ladies, his country-women, provoked Posthumus by seeming to doubt the constancy of his so highly-praised wife: and, at length after much altercation, Posthumus consented to a proposal of Iachimo's, that he (Iachimo) should go to Britain and endeavour to gain the love of the married Imogen. Then they laid a wager, that if Iachimo did not succeed in this wicked design, he was to forfeit a large sum of money; but if he could win Imogen's favour, and prevail upon her to give him the bracelet which Posthumus had so earnestly desired she would keep as a token of his love, then the wager was to terminate with Posthumus giving to Iachimo the ring, which was Imogen's love-present when she parted with her husband. Such firm faith had Posthumus in the fidelity of Imogen, that he thought he ran no hazard in this trial of her honour.

Iachimo, on his arrival in Britain, gained admittance, and a courteous welcome from Imogen, as a friend of her husband ; but when he began to make professions of love to her, she repulsed him with disdain, and he soon found that he could have no hope of succeeding in his dishonourable design.

The desire Iachimo had to win the wager made him now have recourse to a stratagem to impose upon Posthumus, and for this purpose he bribed some of Imogen's attendants, and was by them conveyed into her bedchamber, concealed in a large trunk, where he remained shut up till Imogen had retired to rest, and had fallen to sleep ; and then getting out of the trunk he examined the chamber with great attention, and wrote down everything he saw there, and particularly noticed a mole which he observed upon Imogen's neck, and then softly unloosing the bracelet from her arm, which Posthumus had given to her, he retired into the chest again ; and the next day he set off for Rome with great expedition, and boasted to Posthumus that Imogen had given him the bracelet, and likewise permitted him to pass a night in her chamber : and in this manner Iachimo told his false tale : " Her bed-chamber," said he, " was hung with tapestry of silk and silver, the story was *the proud Cleopatra when she met her Antony*, a piece of work most bravely wrought."

" This is true," said Posthumus ; but this you might have heard spoken of without seeing."

" Then the chimney," said Iachimo, " is south of the chamber, and the chimney-piece is *Diana bathing* ; never saw I figures livelier expressed."

" This is a thing you might have likewise heard," said Posthumus, " for it is much talked of."

Iachimo as accurately described the roof of the chamber, and added, " I had almost forgot her andirons, they were *two winking Cupids* made of silver, each on one foot standing." He then took out the bracelet, and said, " Know you this jewel, sir ? She gave me this. She took it from her arm. I see her yet ; her pretty action did outsell her gift, and yet enriched it too. She gave it me, and said, *she prized it once*." He last of all described the mole he had observed upon her neck.

Posthumus, who had heard the whole of this artful recital in an agony of doubt, now broke out into the most passionate

exclamations against Imogen. He delivered up the diamond ring to Iachimo, which he had agreed to forfeit to him, if he obtained the bracelet from Imogen.

Posthumus then in a jealous rage wrote to Pisanio, a gentleman of Britain, who was one of Imogen's attendants, and had long been a faithful friend to Posthumus; and after telling him what proof he had of his wife's disloyalty, he desired Pisanio would take Imogen to Milford Haven, a seaport of Wales, and there kill her. And at the same time he wrote a deceitful letter to Imogen, desiring her to go with Pisanio, for that, finding he could live no longer without seeing her, though he was forbidden upon pain of death to return to Britain, he would come to Milford Haven, at which place he begged she would meet him. She, good unsuspecting lady, who loved her husband above all things, and desired more than her life to see him, hastened her departure with Pisanio, and the same night she received the letter she set out.

When their journey was nearly at an end, Pisanio, who though faithful to Posthumus, was not faithful to serve him in an evil deed, disclosed to Imogen the cruel order he had received.

Imogen, who, instead of meeting a loving and beloved husband, found herself doomed by that husband to suffer death, was afflicted beyond measure.

Pisanio persuaded her to take comfort, and wait with patient fortitude for the time when Posthumus should see and repent his injustice: in the mean time, as she refused in her distress to return to her father's court, he advised her to dress herself in boy's clothes for more secrecy in travelling; to which advice she agreed, and thought in that disguise she would go over to Rome, and see her husband, whom, though he had used her so barbarously, she could not forget to love.

When Pisanio had provided her with her new apparel, he left her to her uncertain fortune, being obliged to return to court; but before he departed he gave her a phial of cordial, which he said the queen had given him as a sovereign remedy in all disorders.

The queen, who hated Pisanio because he was a friend to Imogen and Posthumus, gave him this phial, which she supposed contained poison, she having ordered her physician to give her

some poison, to try its effects (as she said) upon animals: but the physician knowing her malicious disposition, would not trust her with real poison, but gave her a drug which would do no other mischief than causing a person to sleep with every appearance of death for a few hours. This mixture, which Pisanio thought a choice cordial, he gave to Imogen, desiring her, if she found herself ill upon the road, to take it; and so, with blessings and prayers for her safety and happy deliverance from her undeserved troubles, he left her.

Providence strangely directed Imogen's steps to the dwelling of her two brethers, who had been stolen away in their infancy. Bellarius, who stole them away, was a lord in the court of Cymbeline, and having being falsely accused to the king of treason, and banished from the court, in revenge he stole away the two sons of Cymbeline, and brought them up in a forest, where he lived concealed in a cave. He stole them through revenge, but he soon loved them as tenderly as if they had been his own children, educated them carefully, and they grew up fine youths, their princely spirits leading them to bold and daring actions; and as they subsisted by hunting, they were active and hardy, and were always pressing their supposed father to let them seek their fortune in the wars.

At the cave where these youths dwelt, it was Imogen's fortune to arrive. She had lost her way in a large forest through which her road lay to Milford Haven (from whence she meant to embark for Rome). and being unable to find any place where she could purchase food, she was with weariness and hunger almost dying; for it is not merely putting on a man's apparel that will enable a young lady, tenderly brought up, to bear the fatigue of wandering about lonely forests like a man. Seeing this cave she entered, hoping to find some one within of whom she could procure food. She found the cave empty, but looking about she discovered some fowl meat, and her hunger was so pressing that she could not wait for an invitation, but sat down and began to eat. "Ah!" said she, talking to herself, "I see a man's life is a tedious one; how tired am I! for two nights together I have made the ground my bed: my resolution helps me, or I should be sick. When Pisanio showed me Milford Haven from the mountain-top, how near it seemed!" Then the thoughts of her husband and his cruel mandate came across her, and she said, "My dear Posthumus, thou art a false one."

The two brothers of Imogen, who had been hunting with their reputed father Bellarius, were by this time returned home. Bellarius had given them the names of Polidore and Cadwal, and they knew no better, but supposed that Bellarius was their father ; but the real names of these princes were Guiderius and Arviragus.

Bellarius entered the cave first, and seeing Imogen, stopped them, saying, " Come not in, yet it eats our victuals, or I should think that it was a fairy."

" What is the matter, sir?" said the young men. " By Jupiter," said Bellarius again, " there is an angel in the cave, or if not, an earthly paragon." So beautiful did Imogen look in her boy's apparel.

She, hearing the sound of voices, came forth from the cave, and addressed them in these words : " Good masters, do not harm me ; before I entered your cave, I had thought to have begged or bought what I have eaten. Indeed I have stolen nothing, nor would I, though I had found gold strewed on the floor. Here is money for my meat, which I would have left on the board when I had made my meal, and parted with prayers for the provider." They refused her money with great earnestness. " I see you are angry with me," said the timid Imogen : " but sirs, if you kill me for my fault, know that I should have died if I had not made it."

" Whither are you bound?" asked Bellarius, " and what is your name?"

" Fidele is my name," answered Imogen. " I have a kinsman who is bound for Italy ; he embarked at Milford Haven, to whom being going, almost spent with hunger, I am fallen into this offence."

" Prithee, fair youth," said old Bellarius, " do not think us churls, nor measure our good minds by this rude place we live in. You are well encountered : it is almost night. You shall have better cheer before you depart, and thanks to stay and eat it. Boys, bid him welcome."

The gentle youths, her brothers, then welcomed Imogen to their cave with many kind expressions, saying they would love her (or, as they said, *him*, as a brother ; and they entered the cave, where they having killed venison when they were hunting) Imogen delighted them with her neat housewifery, assisting them

in preparing their supper ; for though it is not the custom now for young women of high birth to understand cookery, it was then, and Imogen excelled in this useful art ; and, as her brothers prettily expressed it, Fidele cut their roots in characters, and sauced their broth, as if Juno had been sick, and Fidele were her dieter. " And then," said Polidore to his brother, " how angel-like he sings !"

They also remarked to each other that though Fidele smiled so sweetly, yet so sad a melancholy did overcloud his lovely face, as if grief and patience had together taken possession of him.

For these her gentle qualities (or perhaps it was their near relationship, though they knew it not) Imogen (or as the boys called her *Fidele*) became the doting-piece of her brothers, and she scarcely less loved them, thinking that but for the memory of her dear Posthumus, she could live and die in the cave with these wild forest youths ; and she gladly consented to stay with them, till she was enough rested from the fatigue of travelling to pursue her way to Milford Haven.

When the venison they had taken was all eaten, and they were going out to hunt for more, Fidele could not accompany them, because she was unwell. Sorrow, no doubt, for her husband's cruel usage, as well as the fatigue of wandering in the forest, was the cause of her illness.

They then bid her farewell, and went to their hunt, praising all the way the noble parts and graceful demeanour of the youth Fidele.

Imogen was no sooner left alone than she recollected the cordial Pisanio had given her, and drank it off, and presently fell into a sound and deadlike sleep.

When Bellarius and her brothers returned from hunting, Polidore went first into the cave, and supposing her asleep, pulled off his heavy shoes, that he might tread softly and not awake her ; so did true gentleness spring up in the minds of these princely foresters : but he soon discovered that she could not be awakened by any noise, and concluded her to be dead, and Polidore lamented over her with dear and brotherly regret, as if they had never from their infancy been parted.

Bellarius also proposed to carry her out into the forest and there celebrate her funeral with songs and solemn dirges, as was then the custom.

Imogen's two brothers then carried her to a shady covert, and there laying her gently on the grass, they sang repose to her departed spirit, and covering her over with leaves and flowers, Polidore said, "While summer lasts and I live, here, Fidele, I will daily strew thy sad grave. The pale primrose, that flower most like thy face; the blue-bell, like thy clear veins; and the leaf of eglantine, which was not sweeter than was thy breath; all these I will strew over thee. Yea, and the furred moss in winter, when there are no flowers to cover thy sweet corse."

When they had finished her funeral obsequies, they departed very sorrowful.

Imogen had not been long left alone, when the effect of the sleepy drug going off, she awakened, and easily shaking off the slight covering of leaves and flowers they had thrown over her, she arose, and imagining she had been dreaming, she said, "I thought I was a cave-keeper, and cook to honest creatures; how came I here, covered with flowers?" Not being able to find her way back to the cave, and seeing nothing of her new companions, she concluded it was certainly all a dream and once more Imogen set out on her weary pilgrimage, hoping at last she should find her way to Milford Haven, and then get a passage in some ship bound for Italy, for all her thoughts were still with her husband Posthumus, whom she intended to seek in the disguise of a page.

But great events were happening at this time, of which Imogen knew nothing; for a war had suddenly broken out between the Roman emperor Augustus Cæsar and Cymbeline the king of Britain; and a Roman army had landed to invade Britain, and was advanced into the very forest over which Imogen was journeying. With this army came Posthumus.

Though Posthumus came over to Britain with the Roman army, he did not mean to fight on their side against his own countrymen, but intended to join the army of Britain, and fight in the cause of his king who had banished him.

He still believed Imogen false to him; yet the death of her he had so fondly loved, and by his own orders too (Pisanio having written him a letter to say he had obeyed his command, and that Imogen was dead), sat heavy on his heart, and therefore he returned to Britain, desiring either to be slain in battle, or to be put to death by Cymbeline for returning home from banishment.

Imogen, before she reached Milford Haven, fell into the hands of the Roman army ; and her presence and deportment recommending her, she was made a page to Lucius, the Roman general.

Cymbeline's army now advanced to meet the enemy, and when they entered this forest, Polidore and Cadwal joined the king's army. The young men were eager to engage in acts of valour, though they little thought they were going to fight for their own royal father ; and old Bellarius went with them to the battle. He had long since repented of the injury he had done to Cymbeline in carrying away his sons ; and having been a warrior in his youth, he gladly joined the army to fight for the king he had so injured.

And now a great battle commenced between the armies, and the Britons would have been defeated, and Cymbeline himself killed, but for the extraordinary valour of Posthumus, and Bellarius and the two sons of Cymbeline. They rescued the king, and saved his life, and so entirely turned the fortune of the day, that the Britons gained the victory.

When the battle was over, Posthumus, who had not found the death he sought for, surrendered himself up to one of the officers of Cymbeline, willing to suffer the death which was to be his punishment if he returned from banishment.

Imogen and the master she served were taken prisoners, and brought before Cymbeline, as was also her old enemy Iachimo, who was an officer in the Roman army ; and when these prisoners were before the king, Posthumus was brought in to receive his sentence of death ; and at this strange juncture of time, Bellarius with Polidore and Cadwal were also brought before Cymbeline, to receive the rewards due to the great services they had by their valour done for the king. Pisanio, being one of the king's attendants, was likewise present.

Therefore there were now standing in the king's presence (but with very different hopes and fears) Posthumus, and Imogen, with her new master the Roman general ; the faithful servant Pisanio, and the false friend Iachimo ; and likewise the two lost sons of Cymbeline, with Bellarius, who had stolen them away.

The Roman general was the first who spoke ; the rest stood silent before the king, though there was many a beating heart among them.

Imogen saw Posthumus and knew him, though he was in the disguise of a peasant ; but he did not know her in her male attire : and she knew Iachimo, and she saw a ring on his finger which she perceived to be her own, but she did not know him as yet to have been the author of all her troubles : and she stood before her own father a prisoner of war.

Pisanio knew Imogen, for it was he who had dressed her in the garb of a boy. " It is my mistress," thought he : " since she is living, let the time run on to good or bad." Bellarius knew her too, and softly said to Cadwal, " Is not this boy revived from death ? " " One sand," replied Cadwal, " does not more resemble another than that sweet rosy lad is like the dead Fidele " " The same dead thing alive," said Polidore. " Peace peace," said Bellarius ; " if it were he, I am sure he would have spoken to us." " But we saw him dead," again whispered Polidore. " Be silent," replied Bellarius

Posthumus waited in silence to hear the welcome sentence of his own death : and he resolved not to disclose to the king that he had saved his life in the battle, lest that should move Cymbeline to pardon him.

Lucius, the Roman general, who had taken Imogen under his protection as his page, was the first (as has been before said) who spoke to the king. He was a man of high courage and noble dignity, and this was his speech to the king :

" I hear you take no ransom for your prisoners, but doom them all to death ; I am a Roman, and with a Roman heart will suffer death. But there is one thing for which I would entreat." Then bringing Imogen before the king, he said, " This boy is a Briton born. Let him be ransomed. He is my page. Never master had a page so kind, so dutiful, so diligent on all occasions, so true, so nurse-like. He hath done no Briton wrong, though he hath served a Roman. Save him, if you spare no one beside."

Cymbeline looked earnestly on his daughter Imogen. He knew her not in that disguise ; but it seemed that all-powerful Nature spake in his heart, for he said, " I have surely seen him, his face appears familiar to me. I know not why or wherefore I say, Live, boy ; but I give your life, and ask of me what boon you will, and I will grant it you. Yea, even though it be the life of the noblest prisoner I have."

"I humbly thank your Highness," said Imogen.

What was then called granting a boon was the same as a promise to give any one thing, whatever it might be, that the person on whom that favour was conferred chose to ask for. They all were attentive to hear what thing the page would ask for; and Lucius her master said to her, "I do not beg my life, good lad, but I know that is what you will ask for." "No no, alas!" said Imogen, "I have other work in hand, good master; your life I cannot ask for."

This seeming want of gratitude in the boy astonished the Roman general.

Imogen then, fixing her eye on Iachimo, demanded no other boon than this, that Iachimo should he made to confess whence he had the ring he wore on his finger.

Cymbeline granted her this boon, and threatened Iachimo with the torture if he did not confess how he came by the diamond ring on his finger.

Iachimo then made a full acknowledgment of all his villainy, telling, as has been before related, the whole story of his wager with Posthumus, and how he had succeeded in imposing upon his credulity,

What Posthumus felt at hearing this proof of the innocence of his lady, cannot be expressed. He instantly came forward, and confessed to Cymbeline the cruel sentence which he had enjoined Pisanio to execute upon the princess; exclaiming wildly, "O Imogen, my queen, my life, my wife! O Imogen, Imogen, Imogen!"

Imogen could not see her beloved husband in this distress without discovering herself, to the unutterable joy of Posthumus, who was thus relieved from a weight of guilt and woe, and restored to the good graces of the dear lady he had so cruelly treated.

Cymbeline, almost as much overwhelmed as he with joy, at finding his lost daughter so strangely recovered, received her to her former place in his fatherly affection, and not only gave her husband Posthumus his life, but consented to acknowledge him for his son-in-law.

Bellarius chose this time of joy and reconciliation to make his confession. He presented Polidore and Cadwal to the king, telling him they were his two lost sons Guiderius, and Arviragus.

Cymbeline forgave old Bellarius; for who could think of punishment at a season of such universal happiness? To find his daughter living, and his lost sons in the persons of his young deliverers, that he had seen so bravely fight in his defence, was unlooked-for joy indeed!

Imogen was now at leisure to perform good services for her late master, the Roman general Lucius, whose life the king her father readily granted at her request; and by the mediation of the same Lucius, a peace was concluded between the Romans and the Britons, which was kept inviolate many years.

How Cymbeline's wicked queen, through despair of bringing her projects to pass, and touched with remorse of conscience, sickened and died, having first lived to see her foolish son Cloten slain in a quarrel which he had provoked, are events too tragical to interrupt this happy conclusion by more than merely touching upon. It is sufficient that all were made happy, who were deserving; and even the treacherous Iachimo, in consideration of his villainy having missed its final aim, was dismissed without punishment.

NOTES

ON

TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE

BY

A PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH



Published:

EDUCATIONAL BOOK DEPOT

1910

A SHORT LIFE OF CHARLES LAMB.

Charles Lamb was born in the year 1775, in London, and was educated at Christ's Hospital. In 1792, he obtained an appointment in the East India Company's Office, and there remained till 1825, when he was allowed to retire on a handsome pension; became his own master, 'and went home,' as he expressed it, 'for ever.' LAMB and his sister MARY had inherited a taint of insanity, and both suffered from it. In 1796, the sister, in a paroxysm of madness, seized a table-knife and stabbed her mother. This sad tragedy coloured the life of both, and called forth a spirit of noble self-denial on LAMB's part. He resolved to remain single and to sacrifice his own feelings in order to provide her a home. She regained her health, and from the age of 22, he devoted his life to her happiness, 'endeared as she was, by her strange calamity and by the constant apprehension of the recurrence of the malady, which had caused it.'

LAMB's earliest literary works were in verse, prompted probably by the productions of his friends COLERIDGE and WORDSWORTH. Twice he essayed the drama, writing *John Woodvil*, a tragedy, and *Mr. H.*, a farce. The *Edinburgh* blasted his hopes of the success of the first, and the public rejected the second. 'He consoled his friends, however, by a century of puns,' and gave himself to other work. After writing a series of tales, founded on Shakespeare's plays, in conjunction with his sister, and publishing *Specimens of English Dramatic Poets who lived about the time of Shakespeare*, he prepared a series of essays, and published them under the title of *Elia*, in the *London Magazine*. 'They are all,' says TALFOURD, 'carefully elaborated; yet never were works written in a higher defiance of the conventional pomp of style. A sly wit, a happy pun, a humorous combination, lets the light into the

intricacies of the subject, and supplies the place of ponderous sentences. Seeking his materials, for the most part from the common paths of life, often in the humblest --he gives an importance to every thing, and sheds a grace over all.' LAMB died in 1835 of erysipelas following a slight fall, and was buried at Edmonton, amid the tears of a circle of warmly attached friends, and his memory was consecrated by a tribute from the muse of Wordsworth !

LAMB's fame, he owes principally to his *Essays* and *Letters*. His favourite authors were the dramatists of Shakespeare's age, JERRAM TAYLOR, SIR THOMAS BROWNE, THOMAS FLETCHER, and MARGARET, Countess of New Castle: and never did the adage *noscitur a sociis* receive a completer fulfilment. His genial humour, his whims, his punning propensities, the quaintness of his fancies, give strong individuality to all he has written, while his critical taste, pure style, and choice expressions, combine to make him a master of the English essay. --*Angus*.

NOTES ON LAMB'S TALES.

ROMEO AND JULIET.

Introduction.—The story, as it appears in Shakespeare, is taken from a poetical version by Arthur Brooke of Boisteau's novel, called *Rhomeo and Julietta*. Boisteau borrowed the main incidents from a story by Luiguida Porto, of Vicenza (1535), entitled *La Giulietta*.

Summary.—Old lord Capulet of Verona invited to a supper many fair ladies and noble guests, to which all comers were welcome, excepting the members of the Montague family, with which his family had a deadly enmity. However, Romeo, son of Lord Montague, was persuaded by his friend Benevolio to come to the feast masked, where he was struck with the exceeding beauty of Juliet, who was no other than the daughter and heiress of Lord Capulet. Tybalt, a nephew of Lord Capulet, discovered who the young man under the cover of a mask was, and, but for the remonstrance of his old uncle, would have struck young Romeo dead. So enchanted was Romeo with the charms of the young girl that at midnight he returned to the house and leaped the wall of an orchard which was at the back of Juliet's room, and there overheard Juliet making passionate declarations of her love for Romeo. When they parted, Romeo had received from her the promise of marrying him in secret the very next day. And the marriage ceremony was actually performed on the morrow by the good Friar Lawrence.

The same day about noon, two friends of Romeo, Benevolio and Mercutio, while walking through the streets of Verona, met the impetuous Tybalt and were provoked by him into a

quarrel. Romeo, who happened at the time to pass by the street, tried to pacify the parties. But Tybalt listened to no reason, and killed Mercutio. Romeo's wrath was then roused, and he avenged his friend by murdering Tybalt. About this time the news of the deadly broil reached the ears of the prince, who hastened to the place and on a careful examination of the facts banished Romeo from Verona.

Romeo had not been gone many days, before the old Lord Capulet, notwithstanding all the remonstrances of Juliet, made up his mind to marry her by the following Thursday to count Paris, a gallant, young, and noble gentleman. In this extremity Juliet applied to Friar Lawrence, who gave her a phial of medicine the effect of which would be that for forty-two hours after drinking it she should appear cold and lifeless.

When young Paris came early in the morning to carry his bride to the altar, he was shocked to find the dreary spectacle of a lifeless corpse. The old lord and lady Capulet were overwhelmed with grief, but there was nothing other than to carry Juliet to the churchyard and bury her.

Ill news travels apace. Thus it was that before the messenger of Friar Lawrence could reach Romeo in his exile apprising him of the mock funerals, he had heard of the dismal story of Juliet's death. Driven to desperation, he provided himself with a deadly poison, set out for Verona, and was in the act of breaking upon the tomb, so that he might see his dear lady for the last time, when he was interrupted by the young count Paris, who had come to strew flowers and weep over the grave. Paris and Romeo then fought, and Paris fell. Romeo then took his last leave of his lady, kissed his lips, and swallowed the poison he had brought from the effects of which he at once died. About this time Juliet awoke out of her trance, guessed that

the operation of poison in his case had been fatal and real, stabbed herself with a dagger she wore, and died by her true Romeo's side.

The friar then described to the old lords, Montague and Capulet all that he knew of the love of Romeo and Juliet and their fatal end: and the two rivals, no longer enemies, agreed to bury their long strife in their children's graves.

Criticism.--Romeo and Juliet is one of Shakespeare's Tragedies. "It is," says Schlegel, "a picture of love.....Two beings (Romeo and Juliet) created for each other, feel mutual love, at the first glance; every consideration disappears before the irresistible impulse to live in one another. Under circumstances hostile in the highest degree to their union, they unite themselves by a secret marriage, relying simply on the protection of an invisible Power. Untoward incidents following in rapid succession, their heroic constancy is, within a few days, put to the test, till forcibly separated from each other, by a voluntary death, they are united in the grave to meet again in another world."

Page 1.

Para. 1. Verona—a town in North Italy, situated on the Adige. Capulets and the Montagues—Proper names take the plural, when members of a family are spoken of, who bear the same name. An old quarrel—a quarrel of long standing. Height—pitch. Was grown to such a height—grew to such a great degree or pitch. On the use of intransitive verbs in the passive voice, Mr. Abbott observes:—"With some intransitive verbs mostly of motion both *be* and *have* are still used: He is gone. He has gone. The *is* expresses the present state, the *has* the activity necessary to cause the present state." Deadly—fierce; very great. The followers and retainers—the attendants and servants. Encounter with—meet with. Fierce words—high words. Brawls—noisy quarrels; affrays. Accidental—happening by chance. Accidental meetings—meetings brought on by chance or accident. Disturbed—broke. From Latin *dis*, asunder, and *turbo*, to agitate. *Perturbation* and *turbid* are from the same root.

Para. 2. Made—give. Admired—regarded with admiration; celebrated. The word comes from Latin *admiror*, to wonder at. All the admired beauties—all the most handsome ladies. Comes—guests. Were made welcome (To make welcome—bid welcome) met with a cordial reception. *Beloved of Rome*. Of—by. To go to this assembly in the disguise of mask—to go masked to this assembly. *Disguise* is false dress by which a person conceals himself. Choice beauties—select beauties. Would make him think his swan a crow—would cause him to think very meanly of the charms of that lady whom he adored as a paragon of beauty; would lead him to think that the lady whom he loved and regarded as a precious beauty was but an ugly woman when compared with them. Cf.:—

"Hyperion to a Satyr."—*Hamlet*.

Small faith in—little confidence in the truth of. A sincere and passionate lover—a true and ardent lover. *Sincere* is from Latin *sine*, without, and *cera*, wax. One that lost his sleep for love—one

who sacrificed his sleep to his love *i. e.*, one whose love expelled all sleep from him. **For**—because, on account of. **Fled society**—avoided the company of men. **Required**—returned. **To cure his friend of his love**—to make his friend forget his love for Rosaline. **Diversity**—variety. **Unplagued**—not tormented or distressed. **Unplagued with corns**—not afflicted with corns. **Corns**—hard knots on the toe or foot. **Light-hearted**—of a cheerful turn of mind. **Whispering tale**—a story told in a low voice. **Fell to**—began. *Dancing* is a verbal noun.

Page 2.

Who seemed to him to teach the torches to burn bright—her radiant beauty appeared to him as if teaching the torches what it was to burn bright. The simple meaning is—Her beauty was more resplendent than the burning torches. **And her beauty.....a black-moor**—and her beauty appeared in the darkness of night like the precious jewel on the dark body of a negro. *Ton* conveys the idea of excess over or defect from a fixed standard; very that of intensity without any such implied reference. *Black-a-moor* is compounded of *black* and *moor*. *A* is a mere connective. So, *jack-a-naps*. **Trooping with crows**—marching in the company of crows. Cf. :—

“Trouping like a colt at the heels of his mother.”

— *Rip Van Winkle*.

Like a snowy...crows—Juliet, in the midst of the other ladies, appeared like a snow-white dove moving in the midst of crows. **Perfections**—accomplishments. **Above the ladies**—above those of the ladies. **To flier**—to mock; to deride. **Solemnities**—festivities. **He stormed**—he got into a violent rage, **He would have struck young Romeo dead**—Parse *dead* as the complement of the transitive verb *would have struck*. **Suffer**—permit. **Borne himself**—behaved. **Tongues**—persons. **Bragged**—spoke highly. **Well-governed youth**—one whose youthful passions were under the control of his reason. **Dearly pay**—suffer severely. **That this vile Montague...this intrusion**—that Romeo for thus coming uninvited should meet with condign punishment on some future occasion.

geard, yard. Where he had left his heart—where his heart fondly lingered. Cf. :—

"Where'er I roam, whatever realms to see
My heart untravell'd fondly turns to thee."

—Goldsmith.

Ruminating—pondering. **To break**—to burst forth. **Wished himself a glove**—wished that he were a glove. **Thinking herself alone**—thinking that she was not noticed by any person. **Fetched—heaved**. **Enraptured**—transported with delight. **Winged messenger from heaven**—an angel coming down to the earth with some message. **Fall back**—bend back because they are dazzled with the sight. **Overheard**—heard by some listener without the knowledge of the speaker. **That night's adventure**—the accidental meeting of Juliet with Romeo. **Full of the new passion**—Juliet's heart being wholly absorbed by her love for Romeo which she recently felt. **Wherefore art thou Romeo?**—Juliet here heartily wishes that her lover had been any other than the Montague that he was. **Deny thy father and refuse thy name**—declare that you do not belong to the family of Montagues and say that you are no Montague. **Be but my sworn love**—but only. **Only pledge thy troth or faith to me**. **Fain**—with pleasure. **Passionate discourse**—speech breathing forth ardent love. **Put away**—part with ; give up. **Hated name**—*Hated* because of the feud which existed between the two families. **For**—in place of. **No part of himself**—something external to himself. **All herself**—herself bodily. **Refrain**—abstain or keep himself from speaking out. **Dialogue**—a conversation between two persons. *All* is an adjective here. **Stumbled upon**—fell or lighted upon by chance. **Love**—lover ; object of love. **Not merely in fancy**—not in his absence. **By favour of**—owing to. **Had stumbled upon the discovery of her secret**—had by chance come to the knowledge of her secret.

Page 4.

Drank a hundred words—(Figure metaphor)—feasted upon &c. ; heard with eager attention only a few words. **Nice**—accurate

or sharp of hearing. **Alack**—an exclamation expressive of sorrow, **Expostulated**—remonstrated. **Being a Montague**—as he was a Montague. **Proof**—capable of resisting. **There is more peril, etc.**—your eyes inflict wounds more dangerous than any that the Capulets might inflict. **I am proof against their enmity**—I am not to be injured by their enmity. **By their hate**—by their enmity. **Pilot**—one whose occupation is to steer ships. **Adventure for**—brave all dangers in quest of. **Adventure for such a merchandise**—risk my life to gain thy love, (which is compared to a valuable article of trade.) **Yet not meaning to make it...discovery**—Juliet had no thought of so soon confessing her love to Romeo. **Stood upon form**—gone through the customary delay and puttings-off before opening her mind to Romeo. Cf. :—

“ Stand upon ceremony.”

Discreet—prudent. As the custom of discreet ladies is—as is the manner of prudent ladies. **Frown**—look angrily (in more outward show.) **Perverse**—(affectedly) cold or sly ; obstinate. **To stand off**—not to give in ; to keep aloof. **Coyness**—reserve. **Affect a coyness or indifference**—assume an outward shyness or coldness. **Won**—gained or brought over. **The difficulty of attainment, etc.**—we value a thing in proportion to the hardships we undergo in gaining it. **Puttings-off**—postponements. **Protractive**—drawing out or lengthening in time. (From Latin *pro* and *traho*, to draw.) **Protractive courtship**—delayed process of love-making. **Frankness**—openness ; ingenuousness. Which the novelty of her situation excused—which pleaded for her as an apology. **Measured by the custom of her sex**—judged by the general usage of ladies during courtship. **Their**—whose. **Artificial cunning**—affected prudence.

Para. 5. **To call the heavens to witness**—to declare in the name of God. **To impute a shadow of dishonour**—to blame in the least degree. *Impute* comes from Latin *in* and *puto*, to reckon. So *repute*, *compute*. **Joyed in**—delighted in.

Page 5.

She had no joy of that night's contract—the avowal of her love which she had made that night did not bring any joy to her mind. Urgent—pressing. To exchange a vow of love with her—to make in return an avowal of her love for Romeo. Retract—withdraw. Bounty—liberality. (From Latin *bonus*, good.) Would lay all her fortunes at his feet—would make him lord of all that she was possessed of. Setting this point—deciding this matter. Jealous—unwilling. Pluck it back—draw it again close to her. Loath to part—unwilling to go away. Mutually—reciprocally.

Para. 6. Breaking—dawning. Too full of—wholly absorbed in. Too full of thoughts, etc.—so entirely absorbed by the contemplation of his beloved as not to permit him to sleep. Already up at his devotions—risen very early and engaged in his morning prayers. Distemper—agitation of mind. Friar—(French *frere*, Latin *frater*, brother.) A member of a certain religious order in the Roman Catholic Church. Imputing—assigning. Wakefulness—want of sleep. He made a wrong guess at the object—he made a mistake in his conjecture as to the real party. To marry them—to get them married according to the rites of the Romish Church. Reveal—disclose. (From Latin *re*, back, and *velo*, to veil.) Affections—love. Privy to—acquainted with; having a secret or private knowledge of. Disdain—aversion. (From Latin *dedignor*,—*de*, privative, and *dignus*, worthy.) From the same root are *dignity* and *condign*. Young men's love lay not truly in their hearts but in their eyes—there is no constancy in the love of young men. It is not deep-seated, it is of a superficial character, and is directed to any object which happens to charm their eyes for the time being.

Page 6.

Doting—loving too fondly or to excess. Assented in some measure in his reasons—admitted, to some extent, the validity of his reasons. Matrimonial alliance—marriage connection. Making up—closing; healing. Breach—enmity; quarrel. Interposed his

mediation to make up the quarrel—employed his good offices in bringing about a reconciliation.

Para. 7. Cell—room or hermitage. Effect—success. Smile upon—to bless. To smile upon that act—to make the union happy. To bury—to cause to forget. In the union—by means of the marriage. Dissensions—quarrels. (Literally) disagreements in opinion. (From Latin *dis*, apart from and *sentio*, to think.)

Para. 8. Tedious—tiresome. From Latin *tædet* (an impersonal verb), it wearies. Finery—showy dress or ornament. Put on—wear.

Para. 9. Impetuous—fiery. Bluntly—outright. Accusation—charge. Sharpness—asperity. To moderate their wrath—to appease their anger. Had never thoroughly entered into the family quarrel—had never taken an active part in the family feud.

Page 7.

A charm to allay resentment—a spell to soothe angry feelings; a sure means of bringing about a reconciliation. A watch-word—a signal agreed upon as the sign of concerted action. Good Capulet—honest Capulet. Good is a term of endearment. Secret pleasure—inward joy. Secret is from Latin *se*, apart, and *cerno*, to separate, to perceive. Would hear no reason—was deaf to all reason. Drew—unsheathed. Forbearance—command of temper. Dishonorable—disgraceful; ignoble. Prosecution—continuance; act of carrying on. Provoked Tybalt to the prosecution of his first quarrel—incensed Tybalt to prosecute or renew his first quarrel. Fell—was mortally wounded. Death's wound—death wound. In such cases the adjective should be used in preference to the genitive. To part—to separate. Kept—controlled. Returned—retorted. This deadly broil falling out—this bloody fight happening or taking place. To put the law in strictest force—rigorously to carry out the provisions of the law. Fray—affray. Keeping as near to the truth as he could, without injury to Romeo—giving out as much of the facts as would not go against Romeo. Softening and excusing the

part which his friend took in it—palliating and justifying his friend's participation in the affray. Keep no bounds in her revenge—observe no moderation in seeking to gratify her revenge. Exhorted—vehemently urged. From Latin *ex*, intensive, and *hortor*, to urge. To do strict justice—to inflict the severest penalty which the law prescribed. Spoke partially—gave a one-sided story of the affray. Forfeited to the law—condemned by the law. Passionate exclamations—vehement exhortations.

Page 8.

Para. 10. Heavy—sad. Heavy news to Juliet—very sad to Juliet was the news of Romeo's banishment. Divorced—separated; disunited. Gave way to her rage—yielded to her anger, A beautiful tyrant, &c.—These are instances of the figure Oxymoron in which an epithet quite of a different signification is added to a word. A beautiful tyrant—a cruel unfeeling man who nevertheless wins the heart by his personal charms. A fiend angelical—a devil in the shape of an angel. A serpent-heart hid with a flowering face—cf. :—

“Look like the innocent flower,

But be the serpent under it.”

—*Macbeth*.

Contradictory—incongruous. Contradictory names—titles or epithets just opposed to each other. Struggles—contests; contortions of extreme agony. Got the mastery—prevailed. Drops of joy—tears expressive of joy. Altogether of—wholly on account of. That word—Romeo's banishment.

Para. 11. Refuge—shelter. From Latin *re* back, and *fugio*, to fly. So, fugitive. Prince's sentence—the sentence of banishment passed on Romeo by the prince. There was no living—that life was unendurable, or insupportable. All beyond—everything without Juliet. Purgatory—a state in which souls are purified after death from venial sins. From Latin *purgus*, pure. The consolation of philosophy...his griefs—the comfort which we receive in our distress by reflecting on the goodness of God and the nature and

destiny of man. Frantic—mad with grief. From Greek *phren*, mind: *Frenzy* (wild excitement) is from the same root. To take the measure of his grave—to see how many feet of earth would serve for his grave. Unseemly—unbecoming. Revived—from Latin *re*, again, and *vivo*, to live. So survive, vivid. Took the advantage—made use of their opportunity. Unmanly weakness—a want of strength of character unbecoming to a man. Who lived but in his life—who had no separate existence of her own. Whose life hung on his life, *i. e.*, who would pine to death with grief for his loss. A shape of wax—a figure of wax. Man, without fortitude to support him in his adversity, is like an image of wax which easily melts for want of consistency. Lenient—merciful. From *lenis* soft. So, *relent*, to soften. Incurred—ran into; became liable or subject to. Latin *curro*, to run. Made them out to be—showed them to be. Put from him—disregarded; passed unheeded. Sullen—peevish. Like a sullen mischievous wench—like an angry and misbehaved young woman, who always pouts her lips and throws away the gifts of her lover. Misbehaved—unmannerly. Such as despaired died miserable—those who despair or abandon all hope meet with a miserable end. *Miserable* is an adjective. Straightways—without loss of time; immediately. Mantua—a town of Italy, famous as the birth-place of Virgil.

Page 9.

Sojourn—put up for a short time. Publish his marriage—openly avow the consummation of his marriage. Cf. “To publish bans of marriage.” Moved—prevailed upon. Convinced—persuaded. Latin *con*, and *vinco*, to conquer. So, *invincible*, *conviction*.

Para. 12. Confession—avowal: declaration. From Latin *con* and *fateor*, to speak. Unmixed—(Latin *un*, not, and *misceo*, to mingle.) Pure, unadulterated. Allayed—repressed; crushed. Parting—separation. Fatal adventures—brawls which ended fatally. Unwelcome day-break—*unwelcome* because it would tear them from each other's arms. Fain—*Ad.* Gladly. Discordant—harsh. From Latin *dis* and *cor*, heart. Persuaded herself—led herself to

believe. Nightingale—[Night-in-gale. *Galun*, to sing.] A bird which sings in the night. It was the nightingale—it was as yet night, and not daybreak. Streaks of day in the east—the rays of the rising sun in the east. Mind misgave him—spirit failed him. Sad foreboding state of mind—a state of mind filled with gloomy anticipations of the future. It was death for him to be found, &c.—he was certainly to be put to death if he was found, &c.

Para. 13. Tragedy—Greek *tragodia* the song of the goat, *tragos*, a he-goat. and *acido*, to sing. Here, mournful end. Star-crossed lovers—lovers whose happiness was blasted (crossed) by the influence of malignant stars. Proposed a match—chose a bridegroom. Gallant—one polite and attentive to ladies.

Para. 14. Was in a sad perplexity—was sorely puzzled. *Perplexity* is from Latin *per*, thoroughly and *plertu*, to plait. At her father's offer—i. e., at the proposal to marry Paris. She pleaded her youth unsuitable to marriage—she put in the excuse that she was not of proper age to marry. Indecorous—unbecoming; contrary to good manners.

Page 10.

Hardly over—scarcely passed over or ended. But the true one—except the right one. Was deaf to all excuses—would not hear any of her pleas. Peremptory—authoritative; precluding debate. Found her—selected for her. He construed her denial—he believed that her unwillingness to marry proceeded only from a reserve which she had assumed for the occasion. She should oppose obstacles to her own good fortune—she should put difficulties in the way of her own advancement. *Oppose* is from Latin *ob* and *pono*, to place.

Para. 15. Extremity—difficulty; exigence; distress. Resolution—determination; strength of mind. To undertake a desperate remedy—to adopt an extreme measure to extricate herself from her difficulty. Husband—case Absolute. Some say that *husband* is *house-land*. It means—keeper of the house. To appearance dead—not really but seemingly dead. Bier—a carriage for bearing the

dead to the grave. From Anglo-Saxon *hoer*, probably connected with *beran*, to carry. Consent to this terrible trial—agree to have recourse to this dreadful expedient. Certain operation sure action. Drift—meaning. (Literally) what one drives at. Drive—drift : so, give—gift. This horrible adventure—the dreadful task of remaining outwardly dead, and being hurried in that state for forty-two hours, by drinking the potion. To observe his direction—to keep to his instructions.

Para. 16. Monastery—a house for monks. From Latin *monastes*, a monk. To put youth into the old man—to infuse youthful liveliness into the old man. Against—in preparation for.

Page 11.

Para. 17. Misgivings—doubts. Avoid—escape. Imputed to him—laid to his charge. Poison—from Latin *potio*, a draught, *poto*, to drink. Potation is from the same root. He was always known for a holy man—~~For—as~~; in the light or character of. Vault—an underground chamber with an arched roof. It comes indirectly from Latin *volvo*, to roll. Festering—rankling; rotting. Shroud—the dress of the dead. (Literally) clothing, from Anglo-Saxon *scrud*, to clothe. Give the meaning of *shrouds*. Distracted—mad. From Latin *dis* and *traho*, to draw. Derive *contraction*, *tract*, *tractable*. Drive her distracted—make her mad. Were bestowed—were placed or deposited. Bestow is from Anglo-Saxon *be* and *stow*, a place. Spirits haunting, etc.—ghosts frequenting burial places. Desperately—in a frantic manner; without any regard to the consequence of her act.

Para. 18. Close—from Latin *corpus*, body. So, *corpse*, *corslet*, *corset*, *corporal*, *corps*. What death to his hopes!—how were his hopes blasted! Beguiled him of—cheated him of. Piteous—sad, mournful. Careful parents—parents full of care for and attention towards their daughter. Advanced—promoted in happiness. Promising—hopeful; full of the hope of happiness in future. By a promising and advantageous marriage—by a marriage which would

conduce to her benefit. **Cheer**—feast. **Properties**—peculiar virtues, qualities or uses. **Office**—work. **Wedding cheer**—entertainment given on the occasion of a wedding. **Dirges**—funeral songs. **Bridal hymn**—hymenean songs. **Sprightly instruments**—*sprightly*=lively, brisk.

Para. 19. **Bad news** which travels faster than good—*Cf.* The proverb “Ill news runs apace.” **Mock funerals**—obsequies of a person supposed to be dead, but not really dead. **The shadow and representation of death**—a faint likeness and image of death. **Juliet sunk in profound stupor** was dead to all appearance. She showed no signs of life, and looked as if she had been really dead. So the poets call *sleep* the image of death. **Release her**—take her out; set her free. **Dreary mansion**—grave. **Unusually**—in an extraordinary or unusual manner. **Light-hearted**—gay; merry.

Page 12.

A strange dream that gave a dead man leave to think—in dreams inconsistent phenomena are made to exist side by side. Thus a man fancies himself to be dead, and yet he retains the power of thinking. **Presaged**—foretold. French *presager*, Latin *pre*, before and *sugio*, to perceive quickly. **Flattering vision**—delightful dream. **Swift to enter**—quick to come into. **Desperate**—to despair. **Called to mind**—recollected. **Famished**—starving. From Latin *fames*, hunger—whence also *famine*. **Disastrous**—Latin *dis*, negative, and *aster*, star. Hence, *ill-starred*. Other words borrowed from astrology, which was once widely believed in, are, *joyial*, *mercurial*, *martial*, *saturanine*, &c. A conclusion so desperate—a death brought about by such a desperate measure as the taking of poison. **Apothecary**—from Greek *apothēke*, a store-house. **Beggarly appearance**—extremely wretched and famished looks. **Pretended scruples**—doubts which he feigned to feel. **Gold which his poverty could not resist**—money which he could not refuse on account of his indigent circumstances. **What case is which?** **Despatch him**—kill him.

Para. 20. Wrenching iron—an instrument used in turning bolts, &c. *Wring* and *wrench* are allied words. Interest—claim. Unseasonable time—unusual time. Explain “in season and out of season :” “seasoned timber.” A sworn foe—an irreconcilable enemy.

Page 13.

Urged—earnestly pressed. Or draw another sin upon his head—or force him to commit another murder. Laid hands on him as a felon—caught hold of him as a felon. *Felon* is connected with *fell*, bad, cruel, or wicked. As one whom misfortune had made a companion—they were companions in misfortunes, as both their lives were crossed by misfortunes. A triumphal grave—a grave where one is especially honoured by being buried. An honourable interment. French, *triumphal*, Latin, *triumphalis*. Matchless—unequaled. Amorous—in love with. As if Death were amorous—as if Death felt the flame of love. Lean abhorred monster—death is usually represented as a skeleton holding a scythe in his hand. Benumbing—stupefying. Benumbing potion—a draught which benumbs or chills the vital powers. Here—*i. e.*, after having taken the poison and kissed the cheeks of Juliet. Shook the burden—cast off the load. Cross stars—malignant stars; misfortunes. Figure metonymy. Shook the burden, etc.—died or committed suicide by taking poison. Operation—effect. Was fatal and real—actually caused death. Dissembling potion—a draught which produces an effect resembling death. Expiring—vanishing. That he had come too soon—that he had come sooner than he should have come. Had he come a little later he would not have made the mistake which ended so fatally.

Para. 21. Detention—the act of being held back from proceeding on a journey. Latin *de*, back and *teneo*, to hold. Derive *retention*, *content*. Unlucky detention—unfortunate delay. Confinement—prison, grave. Breathless—dead.

Para. 22. Entertain a conjecture—form a guess. Fatal accidents—accidents which ended fatally. Trancee—(Latin *trans*, beyond, and *eo*, to go. So, *transit*, *exit*) state of profound stupor. Unnatural sleep—sleep or trance brought on by the effect of the draught which she took. Contradict—oppose (Latin *contra* and *dico*, to say) : to speak against.

Page 14.

For a greater power...Intentions—for a power mightier than what they could resist had crossed their purpose. Cf. "Man proposes but God disposes." Closed—held fast. Unsheathed—drew out from the scabbard.

Para. 23. Watch—watchmen. Page—Greek *paidos*, a boy attending on a person of distinction. Page, a leaf of a book, is a different word and is derived from Latin *pagina*, from root *paugo*, to fasten. Alarm—(Literally) to arms; a cry or notice of danger. French *alarme*—*al*, to, and *armes*, arms. Apprehended—caught. Latin *ad*, and *prehendo*, to lay hold of. In a suspicious manner—in a manner which naturally excites suspicion of guilt. To deliver—to give out; to say.

Para. 24. Faithfully related—correctly and truthfully narrated. Children's fatal love—love of their children which resulted in death. Promoting—furthering; encouraging. Latin *pro*, forward, and *moveo*, to move. Opportunity—Latin *ob*, before, and *portus* harbour. Projected—intended; designed. Latin *pro*, and *jacio*, to throw. To divulge—to break the secret. The Latin *volgus* means—the common people. The sleeping draught—the draught which brings on sleep. Soporific draught. Miscarriage—failure. Follow—continue. *Transactions* is from Latin *trans* and *ago*, to do. In the event of his death—should he happen to die. Made good—corroborated; confirmed the truth of.

Page 15.

Of the poor apothecary—Of—from. Clear—exonerate. Any hand—any share or part. These complicated slaughters—the

violent and tragical deaths of Paris, Romeo, and Juliet, which were brought about and blended together in a confused and intricate manner. **Unintended consequences**—effects which were not intended or thought of. **Well meant**—proceeding from a good motive. **Artificial**—not natural. Latin *ars*, and *facio* to make. **Subtle**—cunningly devised. Latin, *sub*, and *texo*, to weave. **Contrivances**—schemes ; plans. French *contriver*, to find. **Contrivance**—the act of hitting upon. **The unintended...contrivance**—the unthought-of effects of measures dictated by good motives, but very cunningly and artfully devised.

Para. 25. Rebuked—chid ; reproved. *Rebuke* is probably from French *rebucher*, *boucher*, to stop ; *bouche*, Latin *bucca*, cheek. (Literally) to stop the mouth of. **Brutal irrational enmities**—fierce and foolish brawls. **What a scourge heaven had laid upon such offences**—how God punished or struck them down for their wickedness. *Offence* is from Latin *ob*, against, and *ferulo*, to strike. **Unnatural hatred**—A hatred which is repugnant or contrary to all principles of nature. **Explain**—*Preternatural*, *supernatural*. **Rivals**—From Latin *rivus*, a brook. Those who live on opposite sides of a river and contend for the use of it. Hence, men engaged in a strife. **To bury their long strife...graves**—to forget their old quarrel, it being finally extinguished by their coming to see the folly of it so clearly proved by the death of their children. *Children* is a double plural. **Jointure**—dowry. **Raise**—erect. **Statue of pure gold**—Of—made of. **Out-go**—surpass ; excel. **Mutual courtesies**—acts of kindness which they interchanged with each other. **Fearful overthrow**—terrible death. **Poor sacrifices**—innocent victims. *Sacrifices* is from Latin *sacer*, sacred, and *facio*, to do. Hence, offerings or victims on an altar. **Rooted**—firmly fixed ; deep. **Jealousies**—animosity caused by a feeling of rivalry.

KING LEAR.

Summary.—Lear, king of Britain, had three daughters—Goneril, married to the Duke of Albany; Regan, wife of the Duke of Cornwall; and Cordelia, for whose love the king of France and the Duke of Burgundy were joint suitors. The old king, intending to leave the management of the state affairs to his daughters, called them to him to know which loved him best. Goneril says that she loves him more than words can give out, and that he is dearer to her more than the light of her eyes. Lear being pleased bestows a third of the kingdom upon her. Regan says that she loves him more than her elder sister and more than anything in the world; on this, Lear bestows another third upon her. Cordelia, whom Lear calls his joy, being asked, says that she loves him according to her duty, neither more nor less. This enrages the king, and he takes away the third part of his kingdom reserved for her, and gives it away to his other daughters in equal shares. He gives away everything to Goneril and Regan, even the crown, with this reservation that he will stay with a hundred knights for a month with them alternately. None dares to interpose between Lear and his wrath, except the faithful Earl of Kent who pleads persistently for Cordelia. This stirs the king's anger the more, and he orders him on pain of death to leave his kingdom within five days. The Duke of Burgundy, seeing Cordelia without a fortune declines the match; but the king of France takes her by the hand and makes her his queen, who, with weeping eyes, leaves for France. Lear, according to the agreement, stays with one hundred knights with Goneril who, however, begins to disregard and maltreat him. The faithful Earl of Kent, though banished, appears in disguise under the name of Caius before Lear who takes him into his service. Goneril now insists upon her father to reduce the number of his knights, which enrages Lear, and he leaves her, cursing, and goes to Regan, who advises him to go back to her elder sister, dismissing half the number of his knights, and to ask her forgiveness. Lear now feels the ingratitude of these daughters and he weeps. Regan declares that twenty-five knights will be quite sufficient for

him, but Goneril says that there is no need of his having any, her servants being quite sufficient to attend and wait upon him. This pierces the heart of the king, and the ingratitude and ill-usage of the daughters and his own folly in giving away his kingdom turn him mad ; and he goes out attended by Caius choosing rather to face the fury of the storm than stay under the roofs of his ungrateful daughters. Caius, or the Earl of Kent, now brings Lear to his own castle at Dover. He then goes to France to Cordelia and explains to her everything. She sets forth with the permission of her husband, the king of France, with a large army to subdue her wicked sisters and lands at Dover. Lear escapes from the castle of Dover where the good Earl of Kent had kept him under the care of guardians, and he meets Cordelia and asks forgiveness of her. Cordelia is defeated in the battle with the forces of Goneril and Regan and dies in prison. Lear soon follows her. The monsters of ingratitude, Goneril and Regan, so false to their old father, begin to prove faithless to their husbands. Both of them love one Edmund, an illegitimate son of the late Earl of Gloucester. Regan's husband, the Duke of Cornwall, dying, she intends to marry this false Earl of Gloucester. This rouses the jealousy of Goneril, and she poisons Regan ; whereupon she is put into prison by her husband, the Duke of Albany, where she puts an end to her life. Edmund is killed in a battle with his brother Edgar whom he had deposed. After the death of Lear, the Duke of Albany ascends the throne of Britain.

Page 15.

Para. 1. Goneril, Regan, Cordelia—are in apposition to *daughters*. Wife...Albany—wife is in apposition to *Goneril*. Wife... Cornwall—wife is in apposition to Regan. Maid—virgin ; unmarried woman ; it is in apposition to *Cordelia*. Suitors—lovers, wooers ; applicants. For whose, &c.—whose love both the king of France and the Duke of Burgundy sought ; whom they both wished to marry. Making stay—residing ; abiding. For that purpose—for the

purpose of seeking Cordelia's hand and heart. In the court of Lear—i. e., the capital of Britain, where Lear held his court.

Para. 2. Worn out with age—being impaired by years; being very old. Fatigue—weariness. Government—ruling. Forescore—four times twenty or eighty. Determined—resolved. State affairs—affairs relating to the state. To take, &c.—to have no more to do with the administration of the Government; to abdicate the throne.

Page 16.

Younger strengths—strong youths; younger and stronger hands. To leave, &c.—to leave its administration into the hands of younger and stronger persons. To prepare, &c.—to make himself fit for death by withdrawing from the world and directing his mind towards God. At no long period—shortly. Ensur—happen: come off. Intent—intention; desire; object. To know...lips—in order to learn from their own mouths. Which...best—which loved him the most: it is object of 'to know.' Part—divide. In such proportion as—according as. Deserve—merit. That.....deserve—that the share of the kingdom allotted to each might be according to the degree of love she bore to him. Compare Shakespeare's words:—

That we our largest bounty may extend

Where nature doth with merit challenge.

Para. 3. Declared—expressed; said. Give out—express; describe. That she, &c.—words could not express the love she bore to her father. Dearer to her, &c.—dearer than eye-sight. Professing—pretending; false; insincere. Stuff—useless matter. Deal—amount. A deal of, &c.—a number of false and insincere declarations of love. Which—it would be more grammatical if there had been 'as' instead of 'which,' for 'such' is never followed by 'which.' Counterfeit—feign. Which is, &c.—which can be easily counterfeited. Real—sincere; true. Delivered—uttered. Confidence—faith. Wanted—required. Only...case—in the case, where there is no real love, a few fine expressions made with confidence are the only things necessary. Delighted—pleased. This assurance, &c.—this assured expression

—false praise : false expressions of love. Whose hearts...lips—she knew that their feelings were quite different from their declarations ; whose hearts, she knew, did not respond to what they give vent to ; who were as she knew not sincere. Coaxing—flattering. Speeches—expressions. Intended—meant. Wheedle—entice or flatter by soft words. To wheedle, &c.—to deprive the old king (Lear) of his dominions by means of wheedling or flattering and cajoling words ; to take possession of his kingdom by wheedling or flattering him. Made—Its nominative is ‘Cordelia.’ His majesty—the king, Lear. Duty—i. e., of a daughter towards her father. According to her duty—as she ought as a daughter.

Page 17.

Para. 7. Shocked—surprised and disgusted. Appearance of ingratitude—seeming or apparent ungratefulness. Favourite—beloved. Desired—wanted. Consider, &c.—think over what she said ; reflect upon her words. Mend her speech—improve her speech ; use pleasing and more agreeable expressions. Lest—that not. Mar—ruin. Lest it should mar her fortunes—that it might not ruin her prospects.

Compare Shakespeare’s words :—

Lear. How now, Cordelia ! mend your speech a little,
Lest it may mar your fortunes.

Para. 8. Breeding—education and rearing. She returned, &c.—were most becoming on her part. Frame her mouth—make her mouth to use. But that she, &c.—but she could not, like her sisters, make use of such lofty expressions and flattering words. Nothing else—no other thing. But—except. Wed—marry. The lord—i. e., the husband. Gave her hand—married. Want—require ; demand. All—entirely ; wholly ; altogether.

Para. 9. In earnest—earnestly ; really ; truly ; at heart. Extravagantly—greatly ; warmly ; wildly. Pretended—feigned. Plainly—clearly ; openly. Told him so—spoken of her extravagant love. Daughter like—becoming a daughter. Loving—affectionate.

Terms—expressions; words. **In more, &c.**—in more suitable and affectionate words. **Qualifications**—limitations; adaptations. **Which did indeed sound**—which really struck the ear. **A little**—somewhat. **Ungracious**—offensive; displeasing. **Crafty**—cunning. **Crafty, &c.**—false and high sounding words of love expressed out of craftiness. **Draw**—gain; it is in the infinitive mood. **Extravagant reward**—handsome recompense. **Handsome**—best. **But...silent**—but not liking the cunning and cajoling speeches of her sister, which, she had seen, were so amply rewarded, she thought it best not to make a loud demonstration of her love, but to keep it concealed within her breast. **Mercenary**—actuated by the hope of receiving reward; selfish. **Out of suspicion**—far from being suspected. **Ends**—objects; motives. **This.....ends**—such a conduct could not in the least be suspected of being influenced by selfish motives; it showed that her love was free from all motives of gain or selfishness. **For gain**—in the hope of receiving a reward. **Showed**—proved. **Professions**—declarations of love. **Ostentatious**—showy; boastful. **Her professions.....sisters'**—the less showy and more simple her declarations of love are, the more sincere and true they are than those of her sisters.

Para. 10. Plainness—frankness; **Called**—considered. **Enraged**—offended. **Monarch**—king. **In his best of times**—in his best moments; even when he was in the best spirits. **Showed**—gave vent to. **Spleen**—anger; peevishness; ill-humour. **Rashness**—hastiness. **Dotage**—feebleness; imbecility; weakness. **Incident to**—owing to; caused by; natural to. **Clouded over**—overshadowed; obscured. **Discern**—distinguish. **In whom.....flattery**—whose mind was so greatly weakened by old age that he had lost the power of distinguishing sincere and true words from flattery and cajoling expressions; who had lost his reason owing to old age and consequently could not make out true expressions from flattering. **Gay painted**—flattering. **Gay painted speech**—speech full of glowing but insincere expressions; words expressed in high colours without any truth or sincerity;

exaggerated words. Words.....heart—sincere expressions. In a fury of resentment—in a heat of passion; in a violent rage. Retracted—took back; withdrew. Reserved—kept; meant. Gave.....her—took it away from her and gave it to her sisters. Courtiers—officers of the court. Bestowing—giving. Coronet—crown; it is diminutive of 'crown.' Invested them—gave them; put them in possession of. Execution—management; conduct. Execution of Government—performance of the duties of Government; management of Government affairs. Retaining—keeping; holding. Royalty—the office and authorities of the king. Resigned—abdicated; gave up. Reservation—exception; privilege. For his attendants—attending upon him. Was to be maintained—should be maintained; must be provided. By monthly course—every other month, every alternate month; for a month by turns. In turn—in succession.

Page 18.

Para. 11. Little—It has a negative force meaning 'not.' Preposterous—absurd; contrary to reasons; imprudent. Disposal—division; distribution. Guided—dictated; influenced. Passion—anger. So little...passion—dictated more by a fit of anger than by calm and deliberate judgment. Filled with—struck by. Astonishment—amazement. Courage—heart. Interpose—come between; interfere. Incensed—angered; enraged. Wrath—anger. None...wrath—none dared to interfere and speak to the enraged king on this matter. Beginning, &c.—going to plead in behalf of Cordelia. Passionate—enraged. On pain of death—on forfeiture of his life; having threatened to kill him, in case of his disobeying his commands. Commanded—ordered. Desist—forbear; put a stop. Good—noble. So—i. e., by the threat. Repelled—repulsed; driven back. Loyal—faithful. Esteemed—valued; considered. Pawn—pledge. Wage—stake; risk. Safety—well-being. Motive—object. Most—in the highest degree. Principles—fundamental truths; rules. Old principles—old rules, i. e., of being loyal

and faithful to him. Manfully—boldly. Unmannerly—uncivil; discourteous. He had ever.....mad—he had always been faithful to him, and bore towards him a respect which a subject ought to feel for his king, and a love which he had for his father, and he followed him like a servant; he was ready to stake his life in fighting against his enemies, and he was not in the least afraid to lose his life when his object was to gain Lear's safety. Now, therefore, when Lear was acting against his own interests, Kent did not forget his old principles, but boldly objected for the sake of his good, to his adopting that course, and he could not help being discourteous, for Lear was acting like a mad man. Councillor—adviser. Besought—entreated. Weighty—important. Go by—act according to; abide by; he guided by. In his best consideration—after thoroughly considering over the matter; after mature deliberation. Recall—withdraw. Hideous—frightful. Rashness—rash decision. He would answer, &c.--he would stake his life upon the soundness of his judgment; he would hold his life responsible for the correctness of his decision. Nor—and not. Emptyhearted—having no affection. Low—not loud. Low sound—modest declaration of love. Token—sign. Hollowness—emptiness; insincerity. He had.....hollowness—he had most faithfully advised the king in the past, and he now entreated him (the king) to see things with the eyes of Kent, take his counsel as he had done in many other important topics, act according to it, and after a mature deliberation withdraw the frightfully rash decision which he had passed: for he would stake his life upon the soundness of his judgment in pronouncing that Cordelia's love towards him was not the least, and that those persons whose words made no high sound were not, for that reason, to be considered devoid of affection. Power—person holding power. Honour—person of honour. Plainness—plain speaking. When...plainness—when those that are powerful (i. e., the king) allowed themselves to be deceived and misled by flatterers, it was the duty of honourable men to speak out the plain truth. For...service—and as regards Lear's threatening

him, he did not care for it as his life was already devoted to the service of the king. **Hinder**—check ; prevent. **Duty**—persons actuated by a sense of duty. **That.....speaking**—it should not prevent those from speaking whose duty required them to do so.

Para. 12. **Honest**—proceeding from honest motives or intention. **Freedom**—plain speech ; frankness of speech. **Stirred up**—provoked. **The more**—to a greater extent. **Frantic**—mad. **Patient**—sick person. **Mortal**—fatal ; deadly. **Mortal disease**—disease which would cause his death. **Loves, &c.**—does not like to get rid of the fatal disease. **Banished**—exiled. **True**—faithful. **Allotted**—granted ; allowed. **But—only.** **Preparation**—necessary arrangements. **Departure**—leaving his kingdom. **Hated**—despised ; loathsome ; abominable. **Person**—holly. **Realms**—kingdom ; dominion. **Moment**—instant. **That.....death**—he would be immediately put to death. **Farewell**—adieu. **Bade farewell to**—took his leave of. **Chose**—liked. **To show himself**—to act. **Fashion**—way ; manner. **It was, &c.**—to remain with him would be to him a banishment. **Recommended**—commended ; committed. **Protection**—care. **Maid**—virgin ; it is in apposition to ‘Cordelia’. **Rightly**—correctly. **Discreetly**—wisely ; prudently. **Wished**—expected. **Large speeches**—high sounding expressions of love ; lofty professions of love. **Might be answered**—might correspond ; might be confirmed. **Deeds of love**—loving acts. **Shape**—adapt. **Old**—former. **Course**—way of living ; manner of life. **New country**—strange land. **Shape.....country**—(1) to live according to the manners and customs of the new country where he was going ; (2) continue his old course or line of behaviour in the new country he was going to ; although he is going to a new country, his heart will remain as it was, i. e., with the king. **Called in**—summoned. **Determination**—decision ; judgment. **Persist**—continue. **Persist, &c.**—continue wooing. **Was under**—had incurred. **Displeasure**—anger.

Page 19.

Fortune—wealth. **Recommend**—speak for. **Had no.....her**—had no other wealth than her beauty for her recommendations. **Declined, &c.**—refused to marry her ; would not consent to take her to wife. **Take her to wife**—marry her ; accept her hands. **Conditions**—terms. **Understanding**—coming to know. **Nature**—form. **Had lost her**—had deprived her of ; had made her forfeit. **Understanding.....father**—knowing what fault she had committed on account of which she had lost her father's love. **Tardiness**—slowness. **The not being able**—the fact of not being able. **Frame**—shape ; mould. **To frame, &c.**—to flatter ; to use her tongue in speaking flattering words. **Took**—seized. **Virtues**—good qualities. **Dowry**—marriage settlements. **Above**—worth more than ; more precious than. **Bade**—told ; asked. **Farewell**—leave. **Fair**—beautiful. **Fairer**—more prosperous. **Possession**—territories. **Waterish**—unstable like water ; inconsistent ; fickle-minded. Burgundy was the best watered province of France ; so there is a play on the word as used here. **Moment**—instant. **All**—entirely. **Run away**—disappeared ; vanished.

Para. 14. With weeping eyes—i. e., while weeping or sobbing. **Besought**—entreated. **Make good—fulfil.** **Professions**—words. **Make good, &c.**—fulfil what they expressed ; show their words in deeds ; be as good as they professed to be. **Sullenly**—peevishly ; malignantly. **Prescribe**—direct ; dictate. **They, &c.**—they replied in a sulky manner that they did not require her advice for they very well knew what they ought to do. **Strive**—try. **Content**—please. **Tauntingly**—insultingly. **Expressed**—declared. **Alms**—anything received in charity. **Who had taken her as Fortune's alms**—who had received her as given to him by Fortune out of charity. **Heavy**—sorrowful. **Cunning**—deceit ; falsehood. **In better hands**—to be with better persons. **In**—it governs ' which ' understood.

Para. 15. **Devilish**—fiendlike ; extremely wicked. **Disposition**—character. **True colours**—real light. **Show themselves, &c.**—prove

their real character. Expiration—expiry ; end. By agreement—as agreed or settled. Find out—make out. Promises and performances—words and deeds. This wretch—this wicked person, *i. e.*, Goneril. Grudge—grumble at. Remnants—remains. Royalty—kingly power. Reserved—kept. To grudge.....himself—to feel discontented at those few prerogatives and signs of a king which Lear had retained for himself. Fancy—imagination. Bear—endure. Knights—followers ; attendants. Every time—as often as ; whenever. Put on—assumed. Frowning—angry. Countenance—look. Feigned sickness—pretended to be ill. To be rid of—in order to get rid of. She...him—she would pretend to be ill or make some other plea to avoid seeing him. Plain—clear. Esteemed—considered. Useless burden—unnecessary encumbrance ; lumber. She esteemed, &c.—she thought that it was nothing but a mere encumbrance to maintain the old man and his hundred knights. Slackened—relaxed. Slackened, &c.—became careless in showing her duty towards the king. By her example—by her showing the example or way. Not without—with. Private—secret. Instructions—orders. Her very servants—even her servants. Affected—seemed ; pretended. Neglect—carelessness.

Page 20.

Contemptuously—scornfully. Perceive—see. Lear, &c.—Lear could not help perceiving ; Lear could not do otherwise than see. Alteration—change. Behaviour—conduct ; dealings. Shut his eyes against it—took no notice of it. Commonly—generally. Unpleasant—unfavorable. Consequences—results. Obstinacy—stubbornness. Brought upon them—made them suffer.

Para. 16. True—real. Fidelity—faithfulness. Estranged—alienated ; separated. Ill—bad. Hollow-heartedness—empty heartedness ; insincerity. Conciliated—won over. Usage—treatment. True love...usage—whoever loves a person truly and faithfully can never be made to change his disposition by ill-treatment ; likewise, those who are false and treacherous cannot be made to change their

turn of mind by good treatment. Eminently—especially; to a striking degree. Instance—case. Forfeit—liable to be taken. And.....Britain—mid who was to lose his life if he stayed in Britain. Chose—liked. Abide—bear. Abide, &c.—undergo all risks. Chance—opportunity. Useful—of use. Being useful—doing any good. See—mark. Mean—low; base. Shifts—devices; subterfuges. Disguises—false appearances. Poor—worthy of being pitied; worthy of compassion. Loyalty—loyal persons. Forced—compelled; obliged. Submit to—take; adopt. It—loyalty. Counts—considers. So as—provided that. But—only. So as, &c.—if it can only do. Owes—lies under. See.....obligation—it must be marked that a true and faithful person is often obliged to have recourse to meanness and disguise, but he does not consider it mean or beneath his dignity if he can do some good to him to whom he gets himself bound. Serving man—servant. Greatness—dignity. Pomp—grandeur. Laid—pnt. Preferred—offered. Knowing—recognizing. Pleased—delighted; humoured. Plainness—simplicity. Bluntness—roughness. Put on—assumed. Smooth—polished; sweet. Oily—hypocritical; supple. Reason—cause. To be sick of—to be disgusted with. Effect—i. e., results of flattery. Answerable—correspondent. Daughter—i. e., Goneril. In his daughter—in the case of his daughter, Goneril. Having.....daughter—having seen that the acts of his daughter Goneril did not correspond to her sweet oily profession. A bargain.....struck—an agreement was effected. Took, &c.—engaged him. As he, &c.—as it was the name he assumed. Suspecting—doubting. Once great favourite—former object of great love. High—of high or great family. Mighty—powerful. This—just mentioned.

Para. 17. Quickly, &c.—soon found some way by which. Fidelity—faithfulness. Royal master—i. e., Lear. Steward—superintendent of her household. That same day—the very day on which he was engaged. Behaving—treating. Disrespectful—insulting. Saucy—insolent; impudent. Giving...language—showing insolence

by his looks and expressions. Secretly—privately. Encouraged—incited. Enduring—hearing. Open—public. Affront—insult. Put upon—offered to. His Majesty—i. e., Lear. Ado—difficully. Presently—instantly ; immediately. Tripped—caused to fall by striking his feet suddenly from under him. Unmannerly—uncivil. Laid—threw. Slave—wretch. Kennel—gutter ; drain. Attached—fond. Calus.....to him--not being able to hear with patience that Lear should be so openly insulted. Calus without handing any words with the uncivil wretch, threw him headlong into the gutter for which act Lear began to love him more and more.

Para. 18. Nor—and not. Degree—position ; situation ; rank. Insignificant—mean ; low. Personage—person. Jester—juggler ; clown. Had been of his palace—had been an inmate of his palace ; had belonged to his palace. Great personages—men of high position. Called—named. To make them sport—to amuse them. Serious business—grave and dry work. Clung to—held fast ; remained with. Witty—humorous. Sayings--words ; expressions. Keep up—maintain. Good humour—good spirit ; cheerful temper. Would, &c.—used to keep him up in cheerful spirits. Refrain from—abstain from ; help.

Page 21.

Jeering--mocking. Refrain, &c.—sometimes help mocking. Impudence--indiscretion. Unerowning himself—abdicating his throne ; resigning his crown ; giving away his kingdom. Rhymingly—in rhyme or verse. Expressed—said ; described. For—on account of. Bo-peep—a childish game in which one peeps from behind something, and cries 'ho', and suddenly disappears. Go—act like fools. These daughters.....among—these daughters of Lear wept on account of joy, he (the fool) sang songs instead of weeping, and Lear behaved like a child acting like a fool and not like a king.

Para. 19. Wild sayings—queer remarks. Seraps—fragments ; snatches. Pleasant—merry ; amusing. Poured out his heart—

spoke his mind ; gave out what was in his heart. Bitter taunt—sharp reproach. Jest—joke. Cut to the quick—pierced deeply ; greatly wounded ; caused a deep pain. For its pains—in return for its pains ; as a reward for its troubles. Draws—pulls. Ranked—placed. That an ass, &c.—that as an ass can say when the cart pulls the horse, so he the fool can say when Lear is governed by his own daughters. The shadow of Lear—Lear in name only (and not in possession of the dignity and power he held). Free speeches—bold observations. Threatened to be whipped—threatened that he would be whipped.

Para. 20. Coolness—indifference. Falling off—decreasing ; lessening. Perceive—see ; feel. From—at the hands of. Unworthy—ungrateful. Plainly—clearly. Inconvenient—troublesome. Insisted—persisted. Keeping up—maintaining. Establishment—retinue. Expensive—costly. Served—worked ; was. Riot—disorder. Prayed—entreated ; implored. Lessen—decrease ; curtail. Keep about—retain in service. None but—only. Fitting—becoming. Fitting, &c.—suitable to a person of his age.

Para. 21. Could not, &c.—could not trust his senses ; thought that what he was seeing or hearing was not true. Train—retinue ; followers. Could seek, &c.—could desire to reduce the number of his followers. Grudge—murmur. Grudge...age—show his unwillingness to pay him the respect his old age deserved ; not like to show him the respect which he deserved in his old age. Persisting—insisting. Undutiful—unfilial ; not becoming a daughter. Demand—i. e., of reducing his train. Excited—heightened. Detested—hateful. Kite—a bird of prey. Untruth—lie ; falsehood. Indeed—in reality. Did—did speak. Choice—excellent ; rare ; admirable. Behaviour—deportment. Sobriety of manners—sober habits ; decent bearing. Skilled—well-versed. Particulars—details. Given to—addicted to. Rioting—causing riot or disorder. Bid—ordered. To be prepared—to make ready ; to harness. Marble-hearted—hard-hearted ; cruel. Devil—fiend. Hideous—frightful. He spoke

...sea-monster—he described ingratitude as a cruel devil, and said that ingratitude in a child was more horrible to look at than a sea-monster. So as was—in such a manner as was; that it was. Terrible—shocking.

Page 22.

Praying—praying to God. To return, &c.—to return to her the same treatment as she had given her father; to use her with the same contempt and scorn as she used him. Sharper—more keen. Thankless—ungrateful. That she...child—that she might understand that the pain felt by the father at the ingratitude of his child was more poignant than the bite of a serpent. Beginning, &c.—trying to show that he took no part in the unkind treatment. Suppose—think. Unkindness—act of unkindness or ingratitude. Hear him out—hear him to the end; hear all what he had to say. Saddled—harnessed. Set out—started. Followers—knights. To himself—in his mind. If it was a fault—if it might be termed a fault. In comparlson with—as compared to. Was ashamed—felt shame to find. Creature—being. Should...weep—should be able to cause him to shed tears; should so much unman him as to cause him to weep.

Para. 22. Keeping—holding. In great, &c.—in a grand style. Despatched—sent. That she...reception—that she might be ready to receive him; that she might make all necessary arrangements to receive him. Train—retinue. Seems—appears. Was beforehand with—anticipated. That...him—that he had been anticipated by Goneril. Accusing—charging. Waywardness—perverseness; obstinacy. Ill-humours—peevish or bad temper. So great a train—such a large company of knights. Formerly—previously; on a former occasion. Who should, &c.—it happened that it was no other body. Tripped up by the heels—threw head over heels. Saucy—disrespectful; uncivil. Look—appearance; face. Suspecting—conjecturing. Suspecting, &c.—having some suspicion as to the object for which he came; conjecturing the object of his coming. Revile—

reproach ; abuse ; vilify. Challenged—summoned ; called on. Fit—temporary attack. Honest—noble. Passion—anger ; indignation. In a fit of honest passion—under the strong impulse of noble anger. Soundly—greatly ; severely. Beat, &c.—gave him a good drubbing or beating. Mischief-maker—mischievous-creator ; a person who breeds mischief. Carrier of wicked messages—messenger of mischievous designs. Coming to—reaching. Put—placed. Stocks—a machine intended for punishing offenders consisting of two pieces of wood in which their legs are confined. Character—capacity, *i. e.*, as a messenger from the king. Demanded—required ; deserved. Highest respect—utmost regard ; greatest honour. In that, &c.—*i. e.*, in the stocks into which he was placed.

Para. 23. This—*i. e.*, seeing Caius in the stocks. Bad omen—inuspicious sign ; evil presage. Reception—welcome. A worse followed—a sign still more unfavourable was afterwards seen. Upon inquiry for—upon having inquired about ; when asking about. Told—informed. Weary—tired. All—whole. Lastly—in the end. Insisting—persisting ; demanding. Positive—decided ; determined. In.....manner—in a decisively angry tone. Greet—receive. In their company—with them. Hated—despised. Whom, &c.—when to his utter surprise he saw amidst them the despised Goneril.

Page 23.

To tell her own story—to speak to her her own version of the case. Set—instigate ; incite.

Para. 24. Moved—affected. Still more—*i. e.*, still more moved. Old white—venerable. Look upon, &c.—look at him being so venerable in the face. Peaceably—in peace ; without quarrelling. Dismissing—turning out. Ask, &c.—request her to pardon him. Wanted—lacked. Discretion—judgment ; prudence. Ruled—governed. Led—guided. Had, &c.—are more wise. Preposterous—absurd ; presumptuous. Sound—hear ; appear. Go down, &c.—kneel. Beg—ask. Of—from. Raiment—clothing ; dress. Argued—reasoned. Unnatural—contrary to the course of nature. Dependence—

subjection. **Resolution**—determination. He argued...with her—he offered reasons, and showed that as it was contrary to nature, he would not submit to his daughter, and would never, as he was determined, go back to her. **Endowed**—given as a dowry or portion. **Fierce**—cruel ; terrible. **Her eyes, &c.**—she did not bear a cruel aspect. **Mild**—tender. **Cut off**—cuttailed ; reduced. **Rather than return**—instead of returning. **With...off**—having the number of his attendants reduced to one-half. **Wretched**—paltry. **Pension**—allowance. **Portion**—dowry or marriage-portion.

Para. 25. **Was mistaken**—made a mistake. **Expecting**—i. e., expecting to receive. **Of**—from. **Experienced from**—received at the hands of. **Outdo**—excel ; surpass. **Willing to outdo, &c.**—intending to surpass her sister in her want of filial love. **To wait upon**—to attend. **Nigh**—almost ; nearly. **Heart-broken**—disappointed ; grieved ; crushed with grief. **Turned to**—directed himself towards. **Doubled**—was double of. **So**—consequently. **Twice as much as**—double that of. **Excused herself**—made excuses ; apologised for her being unable to comply with his request. **Need**—necessity. **Strove**—tried. **Exceed**—excel ; surpass. **By little and little**—by degrees. **Abated**—lessened ; deprived. **Little, &c.**—which is too little with regard to a person who was once a king. **Show**—appear. **Essential**—absolutely necessary. **Not that, &c.**—it is not to be understood that a large number of followers is absolutely necessary to make a person happy, but that it is a sad change to be reduced from the position of a king to that of a beggar. **Commanding**—ruling ; having under his command. **Attendant**—servant. **Which...heart**—which cut Lear to the quick ; which wounded the poor old king very bitterly ; which bled his heart. **It was.....heart**—Lear's feelings were wounded more severely by the ingratitude of his daughters in denying him his retinue than by the real want or loss of the train itself. **Insomuch**—so much so ; to such an extent. **With**—an account of. **Double**—i. e., of the two daughters. **Ill**—bad. **Usage**—treatment. **This, &c.**—the ungrateful dealings of two daughters, Goneril and Regan. **Vexation**—mortification ; regret.

Page 24.

Wits—intellect. **Unsettled**—disordered ; unhinged ; upset. **His wits...unsettled**—his mind began to grow unsound ; his intellect began to be upset ; he began to turn mad. **Vowed**—took a solemn oath ; swore. **Vowed revenge against**—swore that he would have his revenge on. **Hags**—wicked witches ; she-monsters. **Unnatural hags**—ungrateful monsters. **To make examples of them—to punish them**, so that it might serve as an example to others. **Earth**—people of the earth. **That, etc.**—which every one shall be frightened to see.

Para. 26. **Idly**—useless. **Idly threatening**—holding out vain and useless threats. **Execute**—perform ; do. **Came on**—appeared ; approached. **Loud**—violent. **With**—accompanied with. **Resolution**—determination. **Persisting**—strong in their determination ; firmly determining. **Admit**—allow. **Followers**—attendants ; the hundred knights. **Chose**—preferred. **Encounter**—face. **Utmost fury**—violent raging. **Abroad**—outside. **Stay, etc.**—remain with these ungrateful daughters. **Wilful**—obstinate. **Procure to themselves**—bring upon themselves. **The injuries...punishment**—those who are obstinate and self-willed are justly punished by the miseries they bring upon themselves. **Suffered**—allowed ; let. **In that condition**—in that state of the weather. **Shut.....him**—shut their doors so as not to let him enter their palace.

Para. 27. **Were high**—blew furiously. **Sallied forth**—suddenly rushed out of the house. **Combat with**—fight against ; face ; force his way through. **Elements**—the rain and the storm. **Less sharp than his daughters' unkindness**—appearing less painful to the king than the ingratitude of his daughters. **Scarcce**—scarcely ; hardly. **Heath**—a place overgrown with shrubs. **Exposed to**—laid open to. **Fury**—severity. **Wander out**—roam about. **Defy**—brave ; meet without caring for the consequences. **He bid the winds...man**—Lear feels so keenly the cruel conduct of his daughters that to him every man appears to be ungrateful, and he prays to God to destroy the whole

earth that no sign of such an ungrateful creature as man may continue. Token—sign. Still abided with him—did not yet leave him. Abided—stayed; remained. With—by means of. Merry—pleasant; humorous. Conceits—remarks; ideas. With his merry conceits—by means of his humorous words. Striving—trying. Outjest—deride at; laugh at; drive out by jesting. Striving to outjest misfortune—trying to brave misfortune by making a jest of it; trying to drive away the thoughts of misfortune by his jests. But—only. It is here an adverb. Naughty—wet and stormy. It was but a naughty night to swim in—it was such a wet and stormy night that one found it very hard to walk about. To swim in—to walk about. ‘Swim in’ has been used here probably because the heath was flooded with the heavy fall of rain. Had better go—had it better to go; would it better to go. In—into the house of one of his daughters. Blessing—forgiveness. Tiny—little. Wit—wisdom. A little tiny wit—some common sense. Heigh ho—it is an exclamation of dejection. With heigh ho, the wind and the rain—suffering from dejection and exposed to the wind and the rain. Content—contentment. Fit—agree. Must make content with his fortunes fit—must make contentment agree with his fortune; must remain satisfied with his lot. It raineth—the use of the word it here is superfluous. Though the.....day—though with him it is constantly a rainy day; though he is unable to enjoy sunshine or happiness even for a single day. But he that hasday—but he, who is possessed of some common sense, if he is suffering from misfortune or dejection, should try to remain satisfied with his lot, although he may not be able to enjoy happiness even for a single day. Brave night—an excellent night; a fine night. (It has been used here ironically.) Cool—to break down. To cool a lady’s pride—to break the pride of a lady if she exposed herself on such a night as this. (It simply means that the night was very bad.)

Para. 28. Poorly accompanied—ill-attended; attended only by the fool. Once great monarch—Lear who was at one time a powerful king. Now transformed to—at present disguised as.

Ever followed close at his side—constantly attended him; always went wherever Lear went. Creatures that love night—animals that love to wander about at nights, such as owls and bats. Love not such nights as these—are afraid to come out when it is such a wet and stormy night. Driven the beasts to their hiding places—compelled the beasts to go to their lairs or places of shelter. Cannot endure—is too weak to withstand. Man's nature cannot endure the affliction or the fear—it is beyond the power of man to withstand the severity and the horrors of such a tempestuous night. Rebuked—found fault with the good Earl of Kent. Lesser evils—minor difficulties (as double comparatives and superlatives are improper it ought to be less evils.) Malady—disorder of the mind. Where a greater malady was fixed—when the mind was subject to some greater anguish. These lesser.....fixed—a man did not feel the severity of the weather, when his mind was disturbed by some great anguish of passion. Is at ease—is undisturbed by any tumult of passion. Has leisure to be delicate—the body is susceptible of pain. Did take—paralysed. The tempest in his mind—the disturbed state of his mind. All feeling else—all other feelings. But—except. Beat at his heart—disturbed his mind. The tempest in his mind.....heart—the rage and fury into which he was thrown by the unnatural conduct of his daughters had made him insensible to all feelings except the feelings of that grief which beat like a storm at his cart.

Page 25.

Spoke of—referred to. Filial ingratitude—the unkindness of children to their parents. It was all one—it was just the same case. Tear—destroy; bite. Lifting—giving; raising. It was all one.....it—there was no difference between driving parents out of doors and gnawing the hand which was useful in giving food to the mouth. Were hands and food and everything to the children—supported the children and supplied all their wants.

Para. 29. Still persisting in his entreaties—still continuing to beg that he should go to some place of shelter. At last—after

all. Persuaded—prevailed upon. Hovel—hut; a poor cottage. Stood upon—lay on; was situated on. Terrified—in a frightened state of the mind. Spirit—ghost. Upon examination—on an inquiry being made. Proved to be nothing more than—appeared merely to be. A Bedlam beggar—a beggar fit for a bedlam or a mad house. (*Bedlam* is a corruption of the word *Bethlehem*, which was the name of a religious house in London, converted into a hospital for mad men. It is here used as an adjective, qualifying the noun *beggar*.) Crept into—stealthily walked into. Deserted—lonely; uninhabited. For shelter—to receive protection. Devils—spirits and ghosts. Frighted—terrified. Lunatics—mad men. (This word comes from Latin *Luna* the moon. People at one time supposed that mad men were affected by the moon.) Feign to be so—pretend to be mad. Extort—to receive by compulsion. The better to extort charity—in order to be able to receive alms more successfully. Compassionate people—kind-hearted villagers. Go about the country—go into a village from place to place. Tom—this name is used for an honest dull man. Tom-o-Bedlam—is a beggar who levies charity on the plea of madness. Turlygood—this name is applied to a class of naked beggars, who run up and down Europe. Sticking—fixing; thrusting. Sprigs—twigs. Rosemary—a plant of a fragrant smell and a bitterish taste, used as a token of fidelity. To make them bleed—to cause blood to issue from them. Lunatic curses—imprecations proceeding from mad or seemingly mad men. Move or terrify..... alms—by working on their fear or pity compel ignorant peasants to give them alms. Was such a one—was a man of this class. So wretched a plight—such a miserable condition. Nothing but a blanket—only a blanket. His nakedness—his private parts. Loins—the lower part of the back. Could not be persuaded but that—could not believe anything except. All—all his belongings. Pass—condition; strait; extremity. But the having of unkind daughters—but the having or possession of unkind daughters. Nothing he thought...daughters—according to him a man could be reduced to such a miserable condition as that, only if he had unkind daughters.

Para. 30. Wild speeches—mad or meaningless words. Uttered—gave utterance to; used. Plainly perceived—clearly saw. Perfect mind—sound state of mind; right senses. Ill-usage—cruel conduct; bad treatment. Loyalty—faithfulness. In more essential services—in the performance of more useful services. Person—body; here, the living body. Dover—a town on the east coast of Kent in England and nearest to France. Influence—authority. Lay—existed. Embarking for France—entering a ship to go to France. Hastened—hastily went. Such moving terms—such pathetic or touching words. Represent—describe. Pitiful condition—miserable state. Her royal father—King Lear. Set out—put forth. Lively colours—vivid light. Set out in such lively colours—described in such a glowing language. The inhumanity of her sisters—the cruelty of Goneril and Regan to their father. Loving—affectionate. Besought—entreated. Leave—permission. A sufficient power—a sufficiently large number of soldiers. Subdue—put down.

Page 26.

Which being granted—her prayer being granted; the permission being given to her. Set forth—started. With royal army—a mighty or magnificent army.

Para. 31. By some chance—accidentally. Guardians—men appointed to guard a minor or a mad man. Put over him—appointed. Lunacy—madness. Some of Cordelia's train—some of the attendants of Cordelia. Stark mad—completely mad. By the advice of—agreeably to the direction of. Physicians—medical men. Though earnestly desirous of seeing—though very much eager to see. Put off the meeting—postponed seeing him. Operation—effect. Herbs—plants used as medicine. Restored to greater composure—brought back to a more settled frame of mind. Was soon in a condition to see his daughter—was soon recovered so far as to be able to see Cordelia.

Para. 32. A tender sight—a touching or pathetic scene. The struggles between the joy and the shame of—the joy and the shame which in succession arose in the mind of the poor king. Darling child—favourite daughter. Cast off—discarded ; disinherited. Forso small a fault in his displeasure—for incurring his displeasure by only a trivial offence. These passions—the feelings of joy and shame. Struggling—contending to gain the mastery of his mind. The remains of his malady—the lingering effects of his madness. Half-crazed brain—half disordered mind. He scarce remembered, &c.—he sometimes became forgetful and confused. Standers-by—those that stood near to him. Laugh at—ridicule. Were mistaken in thinking—wrongly thought. Then to see him—here to *see* is an absolute infinitive ; it means that it was a pathetic sight to see him fall, &c. It did not become him to kneel—it was derogatory to his dignity to kneel.—Become—suit. Very child Cordelia—his true child Cordelia whom he loved. To kiss away all her sisters' unkindness—to make him forget her sisters' unkindness by kissing ; to repair by kissing the harm done by her sisters. To turn their old father out into the cold air—to drive their old father from their house on a tempestuous night as that. As she prettily expressed it—as she added to heighten the effect of her statement. With purpose—intentionally. She had no cause, no more than they had—she had no cause to take offence just as her sisters had no cause to take offence. (In modern English we shall say, *any more than they had.*)

Page 27.

Para. 33. At length succeeded—after all were successful. Winding up—putting in a state of motion ; putting in order anew ; setting right. Untuned and jarring senses—the disordered and ill-regulated state of the mind. Shaken—disturbed. At length succeeded...shaken—were after all able to cure Lear of the madness which the undutiful conduct of his two daughters had brought on. Return—to go back to the subject, that was mentioned by us before.

Para. 34. Monsters of ingratitude—unnatural and ungrateful daughters. False—faithless. Tired—sick. Appearance—show. Paying even the appearance of duty and affection—making even a show of a dutiful and affectionate behaviour to their husbands. In an open way—in quite a shameless and unreserved manner. Had fixed their loves upon—had become enamoured of. It happened—it so chanced. The object of their guilty loves—the person whom they thus wickedly loved. Natural son—an illegitimate son. Treacheries—artful practices. Disinheriting—depriving of an inheritance. Wicked practices—artful contrivances. Falling out—happening. Wedding—marrying. Rousing—exciting. At sundry times—on several occasions. Professed love—made declaration of love. Found means to make away with her sister by poison—managed to kill her sister by giving poison to her. Being detected in her practices—being discovered in the act of administering poison. Her guilty passion—the wicked love which she cherished. Fit—a sudden and violent attack of disorder. In a fit of disappointed love and rage—in a terribly agitated state of mind brought on by anger and disappointment for not being able to gratify her love. The justice of heaven—the punishment inflicted by God. Overtook—came upon.

Para. 35. While the eyes of all men were upon this event—while all men were engaged in commenting on this divine justice or retribution. Admiring—wondering at with approbation. Displayed—manifested. Their deserved deaths—the deaths which they richly deserved or merited. Taken off—removed. The mysterious ways of the same power—the ways of God which man cannot understand. A more fortunate conclusion—happier end. It is an awful truth—it is a truth which fills us with fear and reverence. Innocence and piety, &c.—pure-minded and pious persons are not always rewarded on earth for their noble deeds. (This is the moral of the tale.) Any should stand between him and the throne—any person should prevent him from obtaining the throne. Ended her life in prison—was thrown into a prison and then

hanged. While the eyes of all men.....this world—while all men were engrossed in the thought of the divine justice or retribution that had overtaken the two sisters, they were equally surprised at the news of the most tragical death which the good and virtuous Cordelia presently met with. But the ways of God are mysterious, and we generally find that pious and pure-minded persons do not receive their rewards on earth. In her young years—when she was yet of a tender age. After showing her to the world (as) an illustrious example of filial duty—after showing to men what a noble pattern Cordelia was of daughterly devotion. Did not long survive—died soon after the death of.

Para. 36. To this sad period of decay—to the gradual ruin of both his mind and fortune. Under the name of—disguised as. Care-crazed brain—mental power disturbed or deranged by care. Expiring—dying. Between age and grief—partly through his old age and partly through grief. Soon followed him to the grave—died soon after.

Para. 37. How the judgment of heaven, &c. --how the bad Earl of Gloucester was punished by God for his wickedness. Treasons—disloyal acts. Slain—killed. Single combat—duel. Was innocent of—had nothing to do with. Encouraged—aided or supported. Whose adventures alone concern our story—our sole object being to describe the remarkable occurrences in the lives of these four persons.

Criticism—"As in Macbeth, terror reaches its utmost height, in King Lear, the science of compassion is exhausted. The three-fold dignity of a king, an old man and a father, is dishonoured by the cruel ingratitude of his unnatural daughter; the old Lear, who, out of foolish tenderness has given away everything, is driven out to the world a wandering beggar; the childish imbecility to which he was fast advancing changes into insanity, and when he is rescued from the disgraceful destitution to which he was abandoned, it is too

late ; the kind consolations of filial care and attention and of true friendship, are now lost on him."

"Lear is choleric, over-bearing and almost childish from old age when he drives out his youngest daughter because she will not join in the hypocritical exaggerations of her sisters ; but he has a warm and affectionate heart."

Cordelia's beauty of soul was indeed heavenly, and her filial virtues were combined with exquisite tenderness of heart.

O'THELLO.

Introduction.—Shakespeare borrowed this tale from the seventh of Giovanni Giraldi Cinthio's third decade of stories.

Summary.—Othello, a moor, was commander of the Venetian army. Excepting that he was black, he had all the qualities which might endear him to a lady. And thus it was that Desdemona, the fair daughter of Brabantio, a rich senator of Venice, fell in love with him and was persuaded to marry him in secret. Brabantio accused him of necromancy, but Desdemona, being sent for, refuted the charge by explaining that the story of his strange adventures had captivated her heart, and the only witch-craft which he had used was the faculty of telling a soft tale to win a lady's ear. Immediately after this trial the moor was sent by the Duke to drive the Turks from Cyprus, where he won a signal victory.

Now among the lieutenants of Othello there was a young soldier, Michael Cassio, a Florentine. Him the moor had employed to go to Desdemona a-courting for him, and thus he was a great favourite of Othello. Cassio was of late promoted by Othello to a place of trust, and this so offended Iago, an artful soldier, that he made up his mind to rouse the jealousy of Othello and bring about the ruin of both the general and his favourite. With this object Iago made his wife steal a particular handkerchief from Desdemona and dropped it in Cassio's way, so that when he picked it up it gave a handle to Iago's suggestion that it was Desdemona's present.

So successfully, indeed, did Iago play upon Othello's jealousy that he was persuaded that Desdemona intrigued with Cassio. Thereupon he murdered Desdemona, and, when he discovered his mistake, stabbed himself.

Page 28.

Para. 1. Senator—a member of a senate. From Latin *senatus* *senex*, an old man, a senate being a council of elders. **Venice**—a city in the N.-E. of Italy, situated near the northern extremity of the Adriatic. It is built on an island, or rather a collection of small islands, separated from the mainland by shallows. It was founded in 421 A.D., a place of refuge during the invasion of Italy by Attila. It had a democracy, but towards the middle of the 13th century it became a settled aristocracy. **Gentle**—lovely. **Sought to**—courted; wooed. **Divers suitors**—many candidates for her hand. **Both**—"Both is *ba-taw, taw-taw*, or *two-two* i. e., two taken together."—*Adams*. **Rich expectations**—handsome dowry and legacies. **Clime**—country. **Complexion**—colour of the skin. Trace the meaning from the root. See *complicated* in notes on *Romeo*, para. 24. **Her own clime and complexion**—her own country and nationality—**Affect**—love. **Regarded the mind more than the features of men**—valued intellectual graces more than personal beauty; valued (esteemed) mental accomplishments more than personal charms. **A singularity rather to be admired than imitated**—a peculiarity or extraordinary conduct, which was more deserving of admiration than imitation; an eccentricity or whim more deserving of admiration than of imitation. **Moor**—a native of Morocco.

Para. 2. Altogether condemned—wholly blamed. **Unsuitableness**—unfitness. **Bating**—excepting. **Bating that Othello was black**—excepting or leaving out of consideration that Othello had a black complexion. **Conduct**—skill; generalship. **By his conduct in bloody wars against the Turks**—"Selymus the Second formed his design against Cyprus in 1569 and took it in 1571. This was the only attempt the Turks ever made upon that island after it came

into the hands of the Venetians which was in 1473. Mustapha, the general of Selymus, attacked Cyprus in 1570." These are the historical facts on which the allusions in the tale to the wars between the Turks and the Venetians are founded.

Para. 3. He had been a traveller—He had travelled into many countries. *Travel* and *travail* are allied words. *Travail* comes from French *travailler*—*tra*, exceeding, and *vail*, labour. **Manner**—custom ; wont.

Page 29.

Run through—go through ; describe. **Recollection**—(Latin *re*, *col*, *lego*, to gather.) Distinguish between *recollection* and *remembrance*. **Encounters**—combats. **Had passed through**—had gone through ; experienced. **Hair-breadth escapes**—narrow escapes from death ; the occasions on which he narrowly escaped with his life. **Breach** comes from Anglo-Saxon *breran*, to break. Construct sentences illustrating the different meanings of *breach*. **Insolent enemy**—overbearing enemy. **Demeaned**—conducted. **How he demeaned himself in that state**—how he behaved while he was kept as a slave. **State**—condition. **Romantic**—characterized by strangeness or novelty ; wild or wonderful. *Romantic* comes from *Romance*, a wonderful and fictitious tale written in the *Romance* dialect which is a corruption of the Roman or Latin language. **Quarries**—a place where stone is squared or dug up. **Mountains whose heads are in the clouds**—mountains the summits of which rise high into the skies and pierce the very clouds ; cloud-capped mountains. **Cannibals**—those who eat human flesh. The word comes from *Caribbes*, the native name of the West India Islanders who ate human flesh. *Cari* was changed into *canis*, a word expressive of their character. **A race...shoulders**—These extraordinary reports were brought by Sir Walter Raleigh on his return from his celebrated voyage to Guiana in 1595 and were once universally credited. **Enchain**—fix ; engage ; rivet. **Despatch**—get through ; finish. **A greedy ear**—an eager attention. **Pliant**—fit. **Pliant hour**—unguarded

hour or time, during which her mind became subject to soft feelings. Took advantage of a pliant hour—availed of a fit time. At large—in detail. By parts—piecemeal. Beguiled her of many a tear—artfully drew forth tear from her eyes; drew from her many a tear.—Stroke—a hostile blow or a sudden disease or affliction. Distressful stroke—sad calamity. A world of—copious. She gave him for his pains a world of sighs—the recital of his adventures drew from Desdemona many warm expressions of sympathy and grief. A world of sighs—Cf. “A wilderness of monkeys” in *The Merchant of Venice*. Passing—exceedingly.

Compare : How *passing* wonder he who made him such.—*Campbell*.

Passing rich with forty pound a year.

—*Goldsmith*.

Para. 4. Wondrous pitiful—surprisingly adapted to move compassion. Delivered not with more frankness than modesty—given in a manner equally candid and modest; expressed in a manner equally frank and modest. Bewitching prettiness—fascinating loveliness. Openly—freely; plainly. Golden opportunity—favourable moment. Generous—noble-hearted.

Para. 5. Neither Othello's colour nor his fortune were such—“when two or more singular subjects are connected by *neither, nor, either, or*, the verb is singular.”—*Adams*. Hence a construction like the above should be avoided. The following passage is to be found in Johnson's “Vanity of Human Wishes” :—

Nor light nor darkness bring his pain relief,
One shows the plunder, and one hides the thief.

He had left his daughter free—he did not restrict her power of making her own choice. Manner—custom. A husband of Senatorial rank or expectations—a husband having the rank and prospects of a Senator. Her heart was subdued to an implicit devotion to the man—she came to regard him with perfect adoration.

Page 30.

Para. 6. Carried—celebrated. Kept a secret—kept concealed. Came to—reached. Witch-craft, Craft—skill ; knowledge. So, *kingcraft*. Explain—*priestcraft*, *small craft*. *Witch* from Anglo-Saxon *wicca*, Dutch *wicken*, to soothsay. Against the obligations of hospitality—in violation of the duties which he owed to Brabantio for partaking of his hospitality.

Para. 7. Juncture—a critical point of time. Had immediate need—urgently needed. Arrived—from Latin *ad*, and *riens*. Island—Latin *insular* : whence, *insular*. Emergency—exigency. From Latin *e*, out, and *mergo*, to plunge. Candidate—from Latin *candidus*, from *candeo*, to shine. Literally, one clothed in white. At Rome the applicant for any office or honour used to wear a white dress. Were made capital—involved the forfeiture of life ; were punished with death. Capital, from Latin *caput*, the head.

Para. 8. Sanatorial character—rank of senator. Intemperance—vehemence. Likelihood and allegations—probabilities and mere assertions. Artless eloquence—eloquence free from all affectation. Recounting—narrating. The evidence of truth—the mark or the sign of truth ; positive proof of truth. Could not help confessing—had no alternative other than to confess. His daughter—that is, the daughter of the Duke. Conjuratation—enchantments. From Latin *con*, together, and *juro*, to swear. The faculty of telling a soft tale to win a lady's ear—the power of repeating an affecting story in such a manner as to gain the heart of a lady.

Para. 9. Challenged—from French *challenger*, to claim.

Page 31.

Preferring—from Latin *præ*, and *fero*, to bear, to bring. So, *conference*, *reference*. Above—to.

Para. 10. Maintain his plea—support his charge ; vindicate his allegation by substantial proof. An act of necessity—a thing which could not be avoided. Withhold—to restrain ; to keep back.

Explain *with* in *withhold* and *withstand*. Tyrant—from Greek *tyrannos*, a lord or master. Hang clogs on them for their desertion—restrain their freedom of motion on account of their ingratitude or forgetfulness of their duty. Clog is from Anglo-Saxon *clag*, to cover with mud; to obstruct.

Para. 11. Cyprus—An island of Asiatic Turkey, near the coast of Asia Minor in the Mediterranean, so called from Cyprus, one of its early kings. Preferring before—The present usage is *prefer to*. Though with danger—though attended with danger.

Para. 12. Desperate tempest—frightful tempest. Dispersed—scattered. From Latin *dis* and *spargo*, to scatter. Derive *asper-sion*. But the war which Othello was to suffer was now beginning—but the seeds were sowing of that trouble which was to embitter Othello's life. Innocent—blameless. From Latin *in*, not, and *noceo*, to hurt. So, *innocuous*. Explain—He is quite innocent of all knowledge of Euclid.

Para. 13. Pleasing address—affable manners; agreeable manner of speaking. Handsome—good looking. Advanced in years—oldish. Go-between—one who transacts business between parties. A sort of go-between—a kind of broker. Suit—courtship. To go a-courting for him—(A=On).

Page 32.

At far distance—in a far lower degree. Beseems—befits; (literally) is seemly or fit for. Frequented—often went to. From Latin *frequens*, repeated.

Rattling talk—loud, empty talk. Cf. :—

“The rattling talk of sanity and audacious eloquence.”

—*Midsummer Night's Dream*.

Contraries—natures of an opposite or different cast. Oppressive excess—*Oppressive* comes from Latin *ob*, against, and *premo*, to press. *Excess* is from Latin *ex*, out, and *cedo*, to go. As a relief from the oppressive excess of their own—as relieving their mind from the painful subjection of a dominant tendency to seriousness.

Para. 14. Ridicule—laugh at; sneer at. From Latin *rideo*, to laugh. Distinguish between *risible* and *ridiculous*. A fellow fit only for the company of ladies—Cassio, in Iago's opinion, had no accomplishments but those which are prized by ladies; Iago thought that Cassio had no accomplishments other than those esteemed by ladies. **Set**—arrange. **Array**—order. An unjust suspicion—an unfounded jealousy. **Lightly**—without sufficient cause. **Lightly taken up**—entertained without good and sufficient cause. **Too fond**—more fond than was proper. **Imaginary provocations**—injuries which had no existence in reality but only in the brain of Iago. **Involve**—overwhelm. Latin *in*, and *volvo*, to roll. **In one common ruin**—in a wholesale or general destruction.

Para. 15. Artful—cunning; intriguing. **Torment**—exercising pain. From Latin *tormentum*—*torqueo*, to twist. So, *torture*. Far beyond bodily torture—by far worse than any torture applied to the body; bearing no comparison with bodily sufferings. **Had the sorest sting**—was very painful or tormenting; caused the greatest wound. **Exquisite**—excellently contrived. From Latin *ex*, out, and *quaeso*, to seek. *Exquisite* literally means—Sought out with the greatest care. **Explain**—exquisite pain; exquisite taste. **Plot**—*Plot* (an intricate scheme) is a different word from *plot*, a small extent of ground. The former comes from the root of *simple*, the latter is a form of *plat*, a piece of flat ground. **He cared not**—i. e., he cared not (of whom).

Para. 16. Holiday—it originally meant—a holy day. Show how it comes to mean a day of amusement. **Everybody gave themselves up to feasting and making merry**—To making merry—to enjoy (themselves). *Themselves* is a pronoun of multitude. Strictly speaking, it should be *himself*. And cups went round to the health of—and cups of wine were freely circulated and toast were proposed and drunk to the health of the dark Moor and his beautiful wife, the lady Desdemona. The literal meaning of health is *wholeness of body*. It comes from Anglo-Saxon *hoel*, whole. “Among

the earliest instances of the custom of health-drinking may be cited the somewhat familiar one of the health said to have been drunk by Rowena to Vortigern. Rowena came into the room where the king and his guests were sitting, and, making a low obeisance to him, she said : ' Waes hael, hlaforð cyning (Be of health, lord king).' Then having drunk she presented the cup on her knees to the king, who, being told the meaning of what she said together with the custom, took the cup saying, ' Drink hael (Drink health),' and drank also."—*Chamber's Book of Days*.

Para. 17. Direction—superintendence. From Latin *di*, completely, and *rego*, to rule. Derive *correct*, *rector*. **Direction of the guard**—command of the men told off to watch. **Charge**—commission. **To keep**—to restrain. **Disgust them with new-landed forces**—make them take a dislike to the troops which were newly landed. The reference is to the Venetian army that was recently landed. **Deep-laid plans**—cunningly devised schemes; schemes formed artfully or with cunning. **Colour of**—appearance of.

Page 33.

Colour of loyalty—false show of respect. **Enticed**—tempted. **To make rather too free with the bottle**—to drink rather freely, or to such an extent that it might be culpable. **Hold out against**—withstand. **Honest freedom**—frankness proceeding from honesty or uprightness of purpose. **To put on**—to assume. **Plied him**—pressed him; urged him. **Encouraging**—inspiring; cheering. **Ran over**—overflowed. **Toasted**—*To toast*—to drink the health of. According to Wedgewood *toast* comes from *stossan*, knock glasses. **The enemy**—*i. e.*, wine. **Stole away brains**—deprived him of his reason; muddled his head. **Set on**—instigated. **Scuffle**—a confused fight. From Anglo-Saxon *sceofan*, to push. **Set on foot**—set going; put in motion. **Was come to himself**—was sobered down; recovered his senses. **Having a little gone off**—having somewhat subsided. **His own share in it**—the part he had in it. **Was too far gone**—was too much intoxicated or muddled. **Who was a**

strict observer of discipline—who enforced discipline with great strictness.

Para. 18. Undermined—ruined. Thrust him out of—onsted him from. Adventure—mishap.

Para. 19. Sobered—cooled. Seeming—pretended. Undone—ruined. Explain *undo*, in the following :—

To-morrow ere the setting sun,
She'd all undo what she had done.
—Swift.

Drunkard—the affixes *ard*, *art*, *heart* (*hart*) are augmentative : as *drunkard*, *braggart*, *sweetheart*. To make light of it—to attach no importance to it; to think it of little consideration. Upon occasion—at times; occasionally. To make the best of a bad bargain—to try his best to extricate himself from his misfortune; to reduce the evil which he brought upon himself to the least possible degree. The general's wife was now the general—Othello was led in everything by his wife, and Desdemona was now in reality the general. Cf. She that I spake of, our great captain's captain.—*Othello*. He were best—it would be best for him.

Page 34.

Obliging disposition—complaisant manners. Set Cassio right in—restore Cassio to. Set Cassio right again in the general's favour—restore Cassio unto the good graces of Othello. Crack—breach; rupture. This crack in their love, etc.—this temporary separation would eventually serve to unite them in stronger ties of friendship. A good advice—this was a good piece of advice.

Para. 20. Honest suit—application or prayer for anything, fair and proper. Who was easy to be won over in any honest suit—who could easily be persuaded to take up the defence of any honourable cause. Set about in so earnest and so pretty a manner—commenced so vigorously and so coaxingly. Mortally—deeply. Put her off—refuse her. Pleaded delay—urged the necessity of letting

some time pass before anything could be done in the matter. That it was too soon to pardon such an offender—that it would be wrong to pardon such an offender (Cassio) in so short a time. Beat back—repelled. She would not be beat back—she was resolved not to be forced to retire, i. e., she was resolved to withstand all efforts that might be made to induce her to withdraw her request. At farthest—at the latest. Hung back—showed his unwillingness; delayed. Should have so much to do—should have to take so much trouble. I count this...you—I regard it indeed to be a very trifling thing to beg of you. Try your love—put your love to the test. Would leave the time to him—would leave him to decide the fit time.

Para. 21. Intercession—pleading. Imploring her intercession—begging her to intercede for him. Full of art—very cunning. In a low voice—softly. I like not that—I do not like that they may generally live together. As if to himself—as if he was speaking to himself. Put it out of his head—made him forget it. As if for mere satisfaction of his thought—as if to remove some uncertainty or suspense from his mind. Knitted—contracted. Knitted his brows—contracted his face above the brows. Got some fresh light of some terrible matter—obtained some fresh clue for the discovery of some serious matter. Let fall—dropped. Meaning—hidden purpose.

Page 35.

Natural workings—spontaneous effusions. Big with—pregnant; full of. Big with something too great for utterance—filled with the knowledge of something too dangerous to be communicated. Worst thoughts—thoughts about something very wicked. Give his worst thoughts words—express, in words, the worst thoughts that he entertained. Intrude—to enter uncalled or uninvited. Where is the palace into which foul things do not enter—there is no mind so pure, but that wicked thought will sometimes rise in it. What a pity it were. It were—it would be. Trouble—cause

of uneasiness. Imperfect observation—hasty and random observations. That would.....his thoughts—that Othello's peace of mind would be destroyed by knowing what Iago thought of the matter. People's good name—the reputation of men. Taken away for slight suspicions—destroyed on account of vague doubts entertained of their good character. People's good names, etc.—commit the following lines from Shakespeare's *Othello* to memory :—

Good name in man and woman,
Is the immediate jewel of their souls :
Who steals my purse steals trash, 'tis something nothing,
'Twas mine, 'tis his and has been slave to thousands,
But he that filches from me my good name
Robs me of that which not enriches him
And makes me poor indeed.

—*Othello*.

Othello's curiosity.....distraction—Othello's desire to learn the secret was excited to such a degree that it almost resembled madness. Scattered words--random hints. Unguarded—unwary. By the very.....against suspicion—even by the very care which he appeared to take in dissuading Othello from easily giving way to jealousy. Free of speech--voluble, or unreserved in her conversation. But where virtue is—but in one who is virtuous or strict in morals. Where virtue is, these qualities are virtuous—there is nothing to be said against such accomplishments when they are regulated and guided by rectitude of purpose. Observe her behaviour—mark her conduct. Nor too secure neither—secure from Latin *se*, or *sine*, without, and *cura*, care. Confident. “In old English two negatives denied. Johnson remarks that the use of *neither*, after a negative and at the end of a sentence, though not grammatical, renders the expression more emphatic. Analogy, however, is decidedly in favour of the affirmative term (either).”—*Crombie*. Pranks—tricks. Insinuated—Latin, *in*, and *sinus*, bosom. The literal meaning is—thrust into the bosom. Hence, hinted. Carried it so closely—conducted it so secretly. Moved—persuaded. Brought

him—proved satisfactorily or convincingly. Which brought the matter home to him—which made him see the subject in its strongest light, or which brought the subject in a most impressive form to him.

Para. 22. Assuming an indifference—putting on a look which indicated that he did not think much of the matter. Looking perfectly unconcerned. Shaken with inward grief—moved with a grief which preyed upon his heart. To go on—to continue. Apologies—excuses. From Greek *apo*, from, and *lego*, to, speak. Came and strongly to the point—turned directly or pointedly to the subject; pointed out clearly or with great force of reasoning. Many suitable matches of her own clime and complexion—many handsome offers of marriage coming from suitors of her own country and colour. Which shewed unnatural in her—which conduct in one of her rank and position appeared to be against the course of nature. Headstrong—ungovernable. A headstrong will—a will not guided by cool judgment. An ungovernable will. When her better judgment returned—when she recovered her senses; in her cooler moments. Fall upon—set about; take to.

Page 36.

To put off his reconciliation—to postpone his reconciliation or the making up of his difference with Cassio. To note with what earnestness—to observe how zealously. In that—in the earnestness with which she would intercede for Cassio. To turn the gentle qualities of this innocent lady into her destruction—to make use of her own virtues in effecting her ruin by attributing her generous intercession to wrong motives. To entreat her meditation—to pray her to intercede for him.

Para. 23. The conference ended—the conversation came to a close. To account—to hold: to consider. Decisive proof—conclusive evidence. Patient—quiet. But from that.....content of mind—Othello thus imposed on never enjoyed peace of mind from

that time. **Poppy**—a plant from which opium is obtained. **Mandragora**—mandrake; a soporific. **Sleeping potions**—soporific draughts; syrups causing sleep. **Sweet rest**—quiet sleep. His occupation sickened upon him—his usual work grew distasteful to him; the duties he had to perform seemed unpleasant or oppressive to him. **To be roused**—to be filled with animation. **Stir**—he in motion. **Leap**—bound. All that pride and ambition—all that desire of glory and power. His old joys forsook him—he became sick of those things in which he formerly took delight. He has not the.....he knew of it—so long as Desdemona's attachment to Cassio did not come to his knowledge he was not a jot worse off for all that. Cf. :—

Where ignorance is bliss
'Tis folly to be wise.

—*Gray.*

Torn in pieces with these distracting thoughts—racked by these maddening thoughts. Laid hold on Iago's throat—grasped Iago by the throat. Belied her—maligned her; cast false imputations on her character; told lies about her. Feigning indignation—putting on an indignant look. That his honesty should be taken as a vice—that his truthfulness should be considered as a fault. Spotted—marked with a colour different from the ground. First gift—first present. A wide revenge—a sweeping vengeance. Withdraw—retire. Swift means—speedy measures.

Para. 24. Trifles light...writ—unimportant things afford strong confirmation of the suspicions which are entertained in a jealous mind and are believed in us implicitly as if they were gospel truths. Handkerchief—a kerchief for the hand.

Page 37.

Motive enough—sufficient reason. You will understand the meaning clearly if you remember the derivation of *matire*. Deluded—deceived. Came by—got. Constant—faithful. From Latin *con*, intensive, and *sto*, to stand. Wronged—injured. Naughty—wicked.

From Anglo-Saxon *na*, not, and *whit* thing. Derive *aught*. Whose spirits never slept in contrivance—whose mind never slumbered ; i. e., who was continually active in plotting mischief. Made—persuaded ; caused. Pretence—excuse. Work—embroidery. To drop it—to throw it. To give a handle to—to furnish an occasion for. To give a handle to Iago's suggestion—to furnish Iago with an occasion for throwing in an insinuation as to Desdemona's unfaithfulness.

Para. 25. Pretended—feigned. As he might indeed—as he might have indeed. To hold his temples—to bind his temples ; to press it to his temples. Desdemona had it not about her—*About* conveys here the idea of possession. Cf. “ Have you the chain about you. ? ”—*The Comedy of Errors*. Explain *about* in the following passages : “ You have rated me *about* my moneys.” “ He is *about* it.” “ She is *about* your size.” An Egyptian woman—a gypsy, because supposed to have come from Egypt. The gypsies are a wandering race of people found distributed over many countries of Europe and Asia. “ Dabbling in sorcery has always been a profession of the gypsies in all times and countries, and is especially the province of the females.” Read Lord Lytton's “ The Disowned ” for an interesting description of gypsy life. Red people's thoughts. Read—interpret ; dive into. Fancy—love. Turn—change. Heed—care. A darling—a beloved thing. Precious—dear. Frighted—terrified ; dismayed. A magical handkerchief—a handkerchief possessing magical properties. Sibyl—a pagan prophetess. (Literally) she that tells the will of Zeus. From Greek *sibylla*, *dios*, Doric *sios*, and *boule*, counsel. Fit—violent attack ; paroxysm. Prophetic from Greek *pro*, for, and *phemi* to speak. Fury—enthusiasm. In a fit of prophetic fury worked it—worked that handkerchief in a state of paroxysm in which she used to make prophecies. Hallowed—consecrated. Dyed—coloured. Mummy—“ the balsamic liquor running from mummies, formerly celebrated for its anti-epileptic virtues.”—*Singer*. Conserved—preserved. Wondrous virtues—wonderful properties. Was ready to die with fear—was almost dead on account of fear. She feared &c.—she

feared she had lost, &c. Divert her husband from too serious thoughts—withdraw Othello's attention from subjects of a grave and important nature. To put off from her suit—to turn her aside from pressing her application. Went on—continued. Distraction—phrenzy; madness. From Latin *dis*, asunder, and *traho*, to draw. Burst out—rushed out. Unwillingly—against her wish; reluctantly. To suspect her lord was jealous—to fear that Othello was grown jealous.

Page 38.

Para. 26. Ministered—given. The Latin *minister* means a *servant*. What cause she could have ministered—Desdemona did not know how she had offended him. Accused herself for accusing the noble Othello—blamed herself for finding fault with the magnanimous Othello. Untoward—disagreeable. Some state troubles—some dangers which had befallen the Government. And thought to be sure...formerly—Desdemona considered that some unfavourable or some difficulties connected with the Government had certainly soured his temper and made him lose that cheerfulness of disposition which he before possessed. Puddled—clouded. Puddle—a pool of dirty water. Observance—attention. Men are not gods...day—men are not perfect, and it is idle to expect from them after they are married the same love, faithfulness and constancy which they show on the day of their marriage. Beshrewed herself—cursed or reproached herself. She beshrewed.....unkindness—she pitied or blamed herself for judging so harshly of his conduct which, after all, might be unkind only in appearance or from necessity.

Para. 27. Plainly—openly. Whom—parse *whom*. Heavy day—miserable day; unfortunate day. Infidelity—unfaithfulness. From Latin *in*, not and *fides*, faith. Stupefied—lost in; confounded. Weight-like—heavy. Attendant—*i. e.*, Emilia, Iago's wife. Wedding sheets—wedding clothes. Lay her wedding sheets—spread the same bed sheets that were used on the marriage day. Othello

ight have chid her so—it would have been the better course for Othello to have chid her gently. For in good...was chidden—for verily she was tender and simple as a child, and therefore required to be gently dealt with as regards chiding or rebuking. Explain to in “I am a child to chiding.”

Para. 28. Troubled spirits—mental agitation. Black purpose—dark intent; evil project; horrid design. Scar—hurt; disfigure. More white than Alabaster—alabaster is a kind of gypsum. The name is derived from *Alabastron* in Egypt, whence the ancients obtained a supply of the stone. Betray—deceive. Needs—necessarily. Cruel tears—tears not of compassion, but of a cruel and relentless purpose.

Para. 29. Gnaw—bite. He was always fatal—Fatal=deadly. Prepare for death—make (herself) ready to meet death by confessing (her) sins. Kill her soul—send her soul into endless perdition. Cf. :—

Cut off even in the blossoms of my sins,
Unhousel'd, disappointed, unanel'd.

—*Hamlet*.

As she lay at his mercy—whose life was in his hands, *i. e.*, whose life was in his power.

Page 39.

To clear herself—to justify herself; to prove her innocence. Stifled—smothered.

Para. 30. One—*One* is the object of *set on*. Set one of his creatures on—instigated one of his own men. Assassinate—kill. Assassin, a well-known sect in Palestine, who, under the influence of an intoxicating liquor called *haschisch*, a decoction of hemp, stabbed many of the leading crusaders in the 13th century. And being himself killed by Iago to prevent discovery—and being himself killed by Iago in order that his machinations might not be brought to light.

Para. 31. A thunderstroke—a terrible blow. Anguish—agony. Fell upon his sword—threw himself upon his sword. Injured—wronged ; maligned.

Para. 32. By-standers—people standing near at hand. Passion—deep sensation. Wrought upon—persuaded ; worked upon. Which—what is the antecedent of which ? Never gave him leave to suspect—never made it possible for him to cherish suspicion. He had loved not wisely but too well—Othello's love for Desdemona knew no bounds. It was of a very tender and ardent nature. But it was this very intensity of his love that made him an easy prey to jealousy and led him to commit an act of indiscretion which his correct judgment should have guarded him from. Gum Arabic is obtained from the *Acacia Arabica* which grows upon the banks of the Nile and in Arabia. The gum flows spontaneously from the trees. Censure of the law—judicial sentence. But to put.....against Iago—but to condemn Iago to suffer the heaviest punishment which the law could inflict. Censure is used by old writers in the sense of judgment. Here, a sentence of condemnation. Strict—rigorous. From Latin *stringo*, to draw tight.

Criticism—"Othello, the moor, seems noble, frank, confiding, grateful for the love shewn him, and he is all this, and moreover, a hero who spurns at danger, a worthy leader of an army and a faithful servant of the state ; but...passion puts to flight, in one moment, all his acquired and habitual virtues, and gives the upper hand to the savage over the moral man. In his repentance, a genuine tenderness for his murdered wife...bursts forth ; and in the midst of these painful emotions, he assails himself with the rage, wherewith a despot punishes a runaway slave."

Iago is the very type of cunning. "A more artful villain than this Iago was never portrayed. He spreads his net with a skill, which nothing can escape."

"Desdemona is a sacrifice without blemish. She is not, it is true, a high ideal representation of sweetness and enthusiastic

passion like Juliet (in *Romeo and Juliet*). Full of simplicity, softness and humility, and so innocent that she can hardly form to herself an idea of the possibility of infidelity, she seems calculated to make the most yielding and tenderest of wives."

"Cassio is exactly as he ought to be to excite suspicion without actual guilt—amiable but lovely disposed, but easily seduced."—*From Schlegel.*

TIMON OF ATHENS.

Introduction.—To the *Palace of Pleasure*, a valuable collection of tales, which was first published in 1566 by William Paynter Shakespeare owed some hints of the plot which he has developed in this play.

Summary.—Timon, a lord of Athens, was so good-natured and so extravagantly liberal that, though possessed of a princely fortune, it was not long before he found himself reduced to bankruptcy. Consoling himself with the idea that it had not been bestowed to feed his vices, but to cherish his friends, in his need he applied to the same friends for help; but those that had courted him and constantly resorted to him now avoided him in his poverty. This so completely shook his faith in man that Timon of Athens turned a man-hater. He shunned the society of his fellows and betook himself to the woods, where he lived quite naked, praying to God to confound all Athenians, young and old. One day he discovered a mass of treasure and bestowed it upon the captain of a regiment, so that he might lay Athens level with the ground, slay all inhabitants, and himself (the captain) too. So thoroughly did Timon hate Athens, Athenians, and all mankind. When he thus led in the woods a life more brutal than human, a deputation of the senators waited upon him in their emergency. But the only answer that Timon vouchsafed was that if the invader sacked fair Athens, and slew her old men and infants, he would rejoice.

adding that he had in his possession a tree, so that all Athenians might come and hang themselves on it, and escape affliction that way. Thus did Timon live, and when he died he expressed a wish that a plague might come and seize all his survivors.

Note.—Lord Macanlay uses the expression to “out-Timon Timon,” which means, “to be more misanthropical than Timon.”

Page 39.

Para. 1. Athens—the capital city of Greece. Princely—becoming a prince: hence, great, vast. *Fortune* is from *Fortuna*, the goddess who, in ancient mythology, presided over the destinies of mankind. She was represented as blind, having winged feet, and resting on a wheel. Princely fortune—great wealth. Affected—loved; made a great show of. A humour of liberality—a disposition or cast of mind leading to the performance of munificent deeds. Affected a humour of liberality which knew no limits—took a delight in acts of unbounded munificence. Infinite—without limit or bounds. His almost infinite...and degrees of people—he lavished his riches upon all ranks and classes of people faster than it flowed into his coffers; however fast they might be replenished he was so extravagantly liberal that he poured forth his benefactions on all classes of men without distinction, delay or limit. To rank themselves followers—to enroll themselves in the number of his retainers and attendants. Resorted to—frequented.

Page 40.

Luxurious feasters—Epicureans; men who fare sumptuously. Open—free of excess. Combined—(Latin *Combinare*, to join). Combined with—acted along with; co-operated with. Prodigal—Latin *pro*, forth, and *ago*, to drive. *Prodigal* is here used in the sense of *excessively liberal*. The glass-faced flatterer—one who does not show his feelings, but pretends to agree with the person he wishes to please; the flatterer “who shows by reflection the looks of his patron.”—*Singer*. Humour—present disposition or temperament. Cynic—one who disbelieves in and sneers at all human goodness and

sincerity. The rough and unbending cynic—the cynic of coarse and unpolished manners who never bends his knees to others. *Cynic* is from Greek *kyon*, a dog. Read the story of Alexander and Diogenes. The cynic here alluded to was Apemantus. Affecting a contempt of men's persons and an indifference to worldly things—showing a disrespect for the rank and position of men and setting no value on things of this world. Stand out against—resist. Against his nature—contrary to his principles; in spite of. Rich in his own estimation—filled with a high sense of his importance; flattering himself to be no common man.

Para. 2. Wanted a recommendatory introduction to the world—needed a word of recommendation to secure it (the work) a favourable reception by the public. Dedicate—to inscribe to (a patron). From the root *dico*. A present purse—an immediate payment in money. Access—admittance. Latin *ad* and *cedo*, to go. Derive procession, concession. Table—board. To dispose of—to sell. Pretend to consult his taste as to the merits of it—leign to be influenced by no other motive than to hear what Timon thought of its beauties. Stone of price—precious stone. So, a work of labour—a laborious work; a woman of virtue—a virtuous woman. This is called the genitive of quality. Mercer—a merchant in silk and wool cloths. From French *mercier* which is from Latin *merx*, merchandise. Which for their costliness lay upon his hands—which for their high price remained unsold. A ready mart—a market where articles sell rapidly. Explain—“a drug in the market.” Get off—part with; sell; dispose of. Into the bargain—over and above. Letting him.....precious commodities—To have the refusal of any commodity=To have the choice or option of taking or refusing it in preference to others; to have the first offer. Superfluous purchases—goods bought needlessly or without being wanted. Swell uneasy Pomp—increase the possessions of rich and great men whose very grandeur is a source of uneasiness to them. Beset with—surrounded by. Lying poets—poets given to glossing or misrepresenting things for their private

ends. **Sharking**—swindling. **Expectant**—one who eagerly looks for some benefit. **Lobbies**—the literal meaning of *lobby* is a place shaded with leaves from Latin *lobbia*—an arbour; hence, waiting-rooms. **Fulsome**—disgusting; offensive from being overdone. **Raining their fulsome flatteries**—showering their gross adulations. **Adulation**—excessive flattery. From Latin *adulor*, to fawn upon. **As to**—as if to; as they would do to. **Making sacred**—worshipping. **Stirrup**—from Anglo-Saxon *stigan*, to mount, and *rap*, a rope. *Stile* is from the same root. **Drank the free air**—“to drink the air” is a poetic phrase for *to breathe*. **To drink the free air, through another**—“to depend on him for the the privilege of life; not even to breathe freely without his permission.”—*Singer*.

Para. 3. Answering—furnishing the expenses of. **Their means not answering to their extravagance**—they being not so rich as they were prodigal. **Redeemed** liberated; rescued. *Redeem* from Latin *re*, back, and *emo* to buy. **Fastened upon**—stuck to. **Spend-thrifts**—persons who spend the savings of thrift. *Thrift* is from *thrive*. **Loose livers**—fast livers; men whose lives are spent in dissipation.

Page 41.

To follow him in his wealth—to get wealthy like him; to succeed like him in becoming rich. **Copious spending**—lavish expenditure. **Flesh-flies**—*Flesh-fly* is a fly that feeds on flesh and deposits its eggs in it. **Unjustly contracted**—incurred for no absolutely necessary or good cause; incurred for wrong or immoral purposes. **Talent**—the value of the Attic talent was equal to £243, 15s.

Para. 4. Confluence—concourse; gathering. From Latin *con* and *fluo*, to flow. **Took a fancy to**—took a liking for. **Unworthiness of the gift**—small value of the gift and hence its unsuitableness to be regarded as a present. **Outdone in gifts**—surpassed in liberality or in making presents. **Pretended donors**—men who made false presents or presents of small value not from honest motives, but in the hope of drawing down large and more valuable

present (from Timon). At large and speedy interest—*Large* because the return-present was to be higher value : *speedy*, because Timon was quick to make an acknowledgment. Trapped—captured. Brace—What other words do not take the plural inflexion? Make and fleetness—shape and swiftness. False and mercenary donation—a gift given in hopes that it will bring a richer return, that is, a more valuable gift.

Para. 5. Direct way—Not circuitous or crooked way ; in a way the drift of which was evident or manifest. Gross and palpable—coarse and readily perceived. Palpable is from Latin *palpo*, to touch softly.—Credulous—easy of belief ; unsuspecting. From *credo*, to believe. Give the antonym of *credulous*. To draw down—bring down. Yielding—easy. A gift of the thing commended—because the very thing, which was thus praised before Timon, was given as a present to the sycophant. Easy expense—trifling cost. *Expense* is from the root *pendeo*, to weigh. Obvious—palpable. Bay courser—a racer of a reddish colour. Went well—went fast ; trotted or galloped on admirably. Weighed—judged of. Weighed his friend's affection with his own—formed an opinion of the love of his friends by his own love. Dealt kingdoms—distributed kingdoms. Never been weary—tired of his gifts.

Page 42.

Para. 6. Naves and parasites had the command of his fortune—rogues and sycophants could do with his money as they liked. They could squander it at their pleasure. Eating him up—Cf. 'Flesh-flies' given above. Draining—exhausting. Would run over—would overflow.

Para. 7. Outwent the very heart of kindness. Heart—essence. The passage means—he was kind beyond even kindness itself. Divested of hyperbole, it means that Timon's kindness knew no bounds. Plutus—god of riches. The Greeks spoke of him as a fickle deity and represented him as blind, because he distributed riches indiscriminately ; as lame, because he came gradually ; but with wings to intimate that he flew away with more velocity than he

approached mankind. Without care or stop—without being at all anxious for the future or refraining from his lavish expenditure. Senseless—careless. Cease his wild flow of riot—put a stop to his reckless and riotous course of life. Needs—necessarily; of need. It is an adverb formed from the geutive; so, *unawares*. They had an interest in shutting his eyes—it was their interest to keep his eyes shut, *i. e.*, to prevent him from knowing how his affairs stood. Put him off—make excuses for delaying. Turn—divert. Deaf to remonstrance—unwilling to listen to the voice of admonition or reproof. Nothing is so.....turned to poverty—none are so unwilling to be admonished to refrain from their accustomed course of life as rich men (to forego their old habits) when reduced to poverty. (So) hard to give credit to a reverse—so reluctant to believe in the change of their fortune. Choked up—filled up to suffocation. Riotous feeders—wild, noisy eaters and drinkers of wine.

Page 43.

When the floors.....of wine—the floors sprinkled or moistened with wine spilt in drunken revelry are represented as weeping for the ruin that had overtaken Timon. This is an example of *personified metaphor*. By himself—alone. Wasteful—causing waste; ruinous. So in Macbeth “For ruin’s wasteful entrance.” Mad bounty—reckless liberality. How quickly the breath...was made—how soon the voice of flattery would be silent; the very voice which loudly vented forth praise would soon be lost. The breath of which the praise was made—the life of praise, *i. e.*, all motive for adulation. In feasting...in fasting—*In*—by, meaning *agency*. At one cloud—as soon as Timon’s means began to fail; at the first appearance of misfortune.

Para. 8. Forfeited—seized; lost (to satisfy the claims of creditors). From Latin *foras*, out of doors, beyond, and *faccio*—to do. But—only. In a breath—at a word; in a moment. To give it in a breath—in order to be given away or made a present of in a single breath.

Para. 9. Villainous—mischievous ; wicked. Villainous bounty—charity exercised to feed one's vices. To feed—to indulge. It is a gerundial infinitive. Lack—be in want of. Infatuated—foolish. From Latin *in* and *fatuus*, foolish. Extremity—emergency ; necessity ; the time of need. Freely—in a free manner ; without scruple. Lavished—Latin *levo*, to raise, from *levis*, light. Was now come into the possession of—had inherited. Nothing—in no way ; not in the least.

Page 44.

Para. 10. The first applied to—the first person who was applied to. Overnight—(adv.) Yesternight ; last night. Sordid—meanly avaricious. Latin *sordco*, to be dirty. Making out—fulfilment. His faint and watery friendship—his friendship which was of a lukewarm and unstable character. Cf. "Waterish Duke" in Lear. Explain : "Watery eyes." "The month waters." Take no counsel—hear no advice. Explain—He cannot keep his counsel. Attender—one who attends. Suitably followed up—finished or carried through in a manner that was quite in unison with his mean nature.

Para. 11. Enriched almost to bursting—*To* signifies *degree* or *extent*. The sense is—so enriched or filled with Timon's bounties that he could not hold any more, that is, he had appropriated as much of Timon's money as he could. The wind changed—the condition altered ; he was asked to give, not to accept. When he found the wind changed—when he found the summer gone or the times altered. Disfurnished him—deprived himself of means. The more beast he—parse *the*. To pleasure—to afford pleasure, to fulfil the wish.

Para. 12. Who can call.....every flatterer—no man can consider a hanger-on (a trencher-friend, one who dips in the same dish with him) as his friend. Every flatterer is just (exactly) of the cast or mould of a trencher-friend. Had kept up his credit With his purse—had maintained his reputation with his (Timon's)

money. **Sweat**—toiled. Sanskrit *svīd*, to sweat. **Proves**—turns out. In respect of—in proportion to.

Page 45.

Para. 13. Evasive—shuffling. From Latin *e*, out; and *rado*, to go. *Invasion* is from the same root.

Para. 14. Open-handed—generous; munificent. Its antonym is *close-fisted*. Explain *single-handed*, *red-handed*, *double-handed*, and construct sentences where they are appropriately used. **Mansion**—from Latin *maneo*, to remain, French *maison*. **Intolerable**—so vexations as not to be borne. **Extortioners**—from Latin *ex* and *torqueo*, to twist. So, *torture*, *tortuous*. **Pleading**—(participle) putting in as legal plea. **Tell out**—count out. **Drop by drop**—parse the first drop. What is the whole expression equivalent to?

Para. 15. Irremediable state—a state past remedy or cure. **Suddenly surprised at**—struck on a sudden with. **Incredible lustre**—a display of magnificence which took people by surprise and which, therefore, they could hardly believe as possible. **This setting sun**—Timon whose fortune had now taken a downward course. **Pretence**—something feigned. **To make trial of**—to test. **To think**—i. e., more sorry to think. **Should not have seen through the artifice**—should not have detected the trick. **Cheap credit**—reputation to be acquired easily or without any considerable sacrifice. **Dried up**—exhausted. **Fresh and running**—not muddy and stagnant.

Page 46.

Present means—means at one's disposal; means ready at hand. **Trifles**—little things. Distinguish between *trifling* and *trivial*. **At this new blaze of returning prosperity**—at this grand banquet which Timon again prepared for his pretended friends, and which they considered as a sign that his good fortune had returned to him. *Prosperous* is from Latin *pro*, in accordance with, and *spes*, hope. **Such summer-birds are men**—men are like swallows that always appear in summer, i. e., always follow in the wake of prosperity.

Served up—placed on the table for the guests. Far-fetched—brought from distant countries. Epicurean table—table loaded with dainty dishes. *Epicurean*, from *Epicurus*, a philosopher who advocated the “Greatest-happiness-principle,” but whose name has by the excesses of his followers been associated with over-indulgence in sensual pleasures. Lukewarm—hot, but not very hot. Knot-group. Mouth-friends—insincere friends. Cf. Lip-devotion. Slippery—fickle; inconstant. Uncover—remove the covers. Lap-lick up. Anglo-Saxon *lapian*, Sanskrit, *liha*. Recover their surprise—check or control their surprise, i. e., settle in a composed state of mind. Huddling out—hurrying out in a confused manner. A splendid confusion—a magnificent disorder. Affable wolves—very polite, but rapacious in moral character. Figure Oxymoron.

Para. 16. Turning his back—flying from. Fasten upon—visit; inflict.

Page 47.

Confound—destroy. From Latin *con*, together, and *fundere*, to pour. So *infusion*. Stripped—from Anglo-Saxon *strypan*, to pull off. To strip—to take off one's clothes; to deprive of covering. Strip (n) means a division of anything, whence comes its diminutive *stripling*, a youth. Retain no fashion of a man—keep no sign or mark on him by which he could be distinguished as a man. *Fashion* is French *facon*, from Latin *facere*, to make.

Para. 17. Man-hater—misanthrope. Bleak—chilly. Its literal meaning is pale or livid; the Anglo-Saxon *blacc* means pale. *Blench* and *black* are from the same root. Servitor—servant. From Latin *servus*, a slave. Boisterous servitor—loud-voiced or noisy servant. Chamberlain—an officer having the direction of the private chamber of a nobleman or a monarch. To put his shirt warm—to cover him warm with shirt. Stiff—unbending; not given to flattery. Outlived—become older than. Airy pages—brisk attendants. To skip on his errands—to swiftly carry his messages. Surfeit—excess. From French *sur*, over, and *faire* (faire), done.

Para. 18. Struck against—hit against. Explain—to strike in with ; a strike among the harbers. Miser—from Latin miser, wretched or miserable. Privy—possessed of a secret knowledge of. Without making any man privy to the concealment—without imparting to any man the secret of the hidden wealth.

Para. 19. Retained his old mind—continued in his former state of mind, *i. e.*, had not taken an utter aversion to man and everything belonging to or delighting him. Lucre—gain. From Latin *lucrum*.

Page 48.

Headed—commanded. Traitors—from French *traître*, Latin *traditor*, from *trado*, to give up. Give the literal meaning of *tradition*. Steel his eyes and ears—make him shut his eyes and turn a deaf ear to. To steel—to harden ; to make obdurate.

Para. 20. Forlorn—(from Anglo-Saxon *for*, away, and *loren* from *leasan*, to go) deserted ; whence wretched, destitute. Explain "forlorn hope." In an admiring posture—in a posture which showed how his mind was affected with grief and wonder at beholding Timon in this sad and forlorn state. Like his own sad ruins—Ruins in the sense of remains of something destroyed is used in the plural. It comes from Latin *ruina*, from *ruo*, to rush or tumble down. Confounded—lost in wonder ; amazed. Found utterance at last to his words—could at last utter words, *i. e.*, speak. Choked—stifled. Ado—trouble, Anglo-Saxon *a* and *don*, to do. He suspected him for a traitor—for—as being. Detested form and outward feature—his steward Flavius came under his displeasure because he had the outward appearance of a man, though, in being the sole honest human being on the face of the earth, he had nothing in common with man, who, according to Timon, was the incarnation of all baseness.

Page 49.

Para. 21. Visitant—from Latin *visito*, frequentative of *viso*, to go to see. Interrupt the savage quiet—disturb the tranquillity of

the wild, beast-like life which Timon led. *Savage* is from French *sauvage*, from Latin *silva*, wood. *Interrupt* is from Latin *inter*, between, and *rumpo*, to break. *Corruption*, *irruption* are from the same root. *Alcibiades*—(450 to 404 B. C.) was a famous Athenian general and politician. *Approaches*—near advances. *Furious approaches*—violent attacks.

Raging at the walls—violently battering the walls. Hot—furious. To lay in the dust—to level with ground. Expert soldier—skilful warrior. *Soldier* is from Latin *solidus*, a piece of money, the pay of a soldier.

Para. 22. *Emergency*—pressing necessity. From Latin *e*, out, and *mergo*, to plunge. Derive *subversion*, *imersed*. *Extremity*—extreme distress. As if they presumed upon his gratitude—as if they could count upon his being grateful to them. *To presume upon* is to take for granted or assume as true. Derive—Latin *de*, down from, and *rimis*, a river.

Para. 23. *Satisfaction for past injuries*—full amends for their former injustice to him. *At his disposal*—to be disposed of as he liked. *The flower of valour*—the bravest of the brave. *Flower*—the choicest part of anything. *Unruly camp*—turbulent camp. *Reverendest*—*Reverend* is worthy of reverence, as, reverend sire; *reverent* is expressive of reverence or submission, as, reverent words, reverent behaviour.

Para. 24. *Vouchsafed*—condescended. *To vouchsafe*—to warrant safe.

Page 50.

Occasion—need. *To take a taste of his tree*—*of his tree* is partitive genitive. The expression means—to eat of the fruits growing on his tree or, divested of figure, to die by hanging.

Para. 25. *Caitiff*—a mean despicable wretch. *Plague*—from Latin *plaga*, a stroke.

Para. 26. Finished his life by violence—committed suicide. **Distaste of life**—disgust with life. **Conclusion**—end ; death. From the root *claudo*, to shut. Brought Timon to his conclusion—caused Timon's death. **Consistency of his end**—his death was consistent with (or in harmony with) his life. All along he showed the same bitter misanthropy. **Fancied.....burial**—considered that his very choice of the sea-shore for his grave was a singular conception of his mind. **Shallow tears**—Explain the metaphor. **Hypocritical**—(from Greek *hypo*, under, and *krino*, to decide) simulating. Place the right indefinite article before *hypocritical*.

Criticism.—"Timon was a citizen of Athens that lived about the war of Peloponnesus, as appeareth by Plato and Aristophanes' comedies, in which they mocked him calling him a viper and malicious man unto mankind, to shun all other men's companies, but the company of young Alcibiades...It is reported of him also, that Timon on a time got up into the pulpit for orations and silence being made, every man listening to what he would say, at length he began to speak in this manner: 'My lords of Athens, I have a little yard at my house where there groweth a figtree on which many citizens have hanged themselves and because I mean to make some building on the place I thought good to let you all understand it, that before the fig tree be cut down if any of you be desperate, you may there in time go hang yourselves.' He died in the city of Holes and was buried upon the sea-side."—Skent's *Shakespeare's Plutarch*.

Criticism.—"Timon of Athens is rather a satirical piece. It paints the ingratitude of a false world. We see in it, joyous life of Timon, his noble and hospital extravagance, the throng of suitors of every description around him; his embarrassment and the trial, which he is thereby reduced to make, of his supposed friends, who all desert him, in the hour of need, and lastly Timon's flight to the woods, his misanthropical melancholy and his death. Timon was a fool in his generosity, he was a mudman, and he is everywhere wanting in the wisdom, which enables a man, in all things, to observe the due measure."—*Schlegel*.

MACBETH.

Introduction.—The story of the usurpation of Macbeth and the events that followed it Shakespeare found in his favourite chronicler, Holinshed.

Summary.—Macbeth was a thane of Scotland, who was one day told by certain witches that he would succeed Duncan as king. The wife of Macbeth was a wicked woman, whose ambition was her sin and who, to gain the object of her ambition, would hesitate at nothing. The masterful mind of lady Macbeth swayed the weaker Macbeth to the mood of what she liked or loathed. At the instigation of his wife, Macbeth murdered Duncan one night, when, as a mark of royal favor, he came to visit him in his castle, and usurped the throne. For fear that the children of Banquo might succeed him to the throne, his general too was murdered by the orders of Macbeth, and his ghost haunted the guilty usurper. Various wicked acts committed by Macbeth alienated from him the heart of his subjects, and at this time Macduff invaded his kingdom with intent to set Malcolm, the eldest son of the late king upon the throne. The spirits had told Macbeth that he had no cause to fear so long as the wood of Birnam did not come to Dunsinane hill to fight against him, and that none of woman born could harm him. Thus Macbeth was fearless. Malcolm, while passing through the wood of Birnam, had, however instructed his soldiers to hew down every one a bough and bear it before him, so that the true number of his host might not be known. Thus, Macbeth felt, did the wood move against him. And it soon transpired that Macduff was not of woman born, being untimely taken out of the womb of his mother. In his desperation Macbeth fought against Macduff and fell.

Page 50.

Para. 1. Meek—gentle; good. Reigned king—reigned as king. Thane—a title of honour among the Saxons. Thegen—a knight (from thenian to serve). Kinsman—relation. Esteem—regard

(*Latin estons*, I value). **Valour**—bravery. **Conduct** in the war—management of the warfare. **Example of which**—proof of his valour and conduct in the wars. **Lately**—recently. **Rebel**—literally means to fight off or shake off subjection; mutinous. A rebel army—an army which had risen in rebellion against the government. **Troops**—an army. **Terrible**—very great; formidable.

Para. 2. **Victorious**—triumphant. **Their way lay over**—they had to march over. **Blasted**—withered; destroyed. **Heath**—a barren open country; a place overgrown with shrubs. **Stopped**—hindered from proceeding; obstructed. **Strange appearance**—surprising outside. **Withered**—parched by the heat of the sun; shrunk. **Wild attire**—fantastic dress. **Earthly**—earth horn. **Earthly creatures**—beings of the earth.

Page 51.

Addressed—spoke to. **Seemingly**—apparently; in show. **Offended**—insulted. (*Latin of, and feuds*, I strike). **Choppy**—full of clefts or cracks. **Skinny**—consisting only of the skin; withered. **In token of silence**—as a sign to be silent. **Saluted**—addressed with reverence (*Latin Salus*, health). **Glamis**—the same as Cramarty in Scotland. **A little**—somewhat. **Not a little**—very much. **Startled**—surprised; amazed. **Known**—past participle agreeing with *himself*. **Such creatures**—creatures whom he had never seen or come in contact with. **Followed up that salute by giving him the title of thane of Cawdor**—he after being greeted as thane of Glamis, the second witch proceeded to greet him as thane of Cawdor. **Followed up the salute**—saluted him in turn. **By giving him the title**—addressing him as. **Pretensions**—claims; rights. **Cawdor**—Maray in Scotland. **Followed up that salute by giving him the title of thane of Cawdor**—after saluting him as thane of Glamis the witches proceeded to greet him as thane of Cawdor. **Again**—further. **Hail**—may you farewell; be in health. **Prophetic**—foretelling (*Latin pro*, before, and *phemi*, to speak). **Greeting**—salutation. **A prophetic greeting**—an act of greeting a man with the title or honour which

he was destined to attain. **Succeed**—come to hereafter (Latin *sub* and *cedo*, to go). **Pronounced**—announced ; declared (Latin *Pro*, and *mentio*, I make known). **Riddling**—enigmatic ; puzzling. **Riddling terms**—mysterious language. **Happier**—more blessed (because his progeny were to rule as kings of Scotland). **Prophesied**—predicted. **Turned into air**—assumed an airy form, melted into air. **Vanished**—disappeared. (Latin *vanesco*, to pass away.) **Weird sisters**—fates ; destinies. The goddesses supposed to rule over the birth and life of man. They were three in number and are known by the name of Clotho, Lachesis and Atropes. The first spins the thread of life, the second determines the lot of human life, and the third cuts off the thread of life. **Witches**—is the feminine of **Wizards**.

Para. 3. **Pondering**—reflecting. The strangeness of this adventure—the wonderful meeting with the witches. **Empowered**—authorized. **Confer upon**—invest with. **Dignity**—title (Latin *ignis*, worthy.) **Miraculously**—wonderfully (Latin *miror*, *miratus*, to be amazed at). **Corresponding with**—fulfilling ; agreeing. **Prediction**—prophecy. **Astonished**—amazed. **Wrapped in amazement**—bewildered ; absorbed in wonder ; engrossed in thought. **In that point of time**—at that time. **Swelling**—growing ; rising. **Accomplishment**—fulfilment. **In like manner**—as well. **Might have its accomplishment**—might come to pass ; might turn out true.

Para. 4. **Come to pass**—fulfilled ; happened. *Shall* denotes promise ; it must take place as being decreed by fate. **Enkindle**—excite ; inflame. **That hope might enkindle you to aim at the throne**—you might be tempted to aspire to the throne by the words of the witches. **Often times**—frequently. **Ministers of darkness**—devils ; witches ; infernal beings. **Betray**—entrap ; allure us to commit (*Be* and Latin *trevere*, to deliver up). **Betray us into deeds of greatest consequence**—make us commit horrible deeds. **But often times.....consequence**—it often happens that wicked spirits communicate to us some truths of little moment in order

that by winning confidence, they may deceive us into perpetrating very foul deeds, without which we cannot gratify the big hopes they maliciously excite in us.

Para. 5. Suggestions—warnings. **Sunk too deep**—produced too great an effect. **Had sunk...allow**—had produced such strong impressions on the heart of Macbeth as not to allow. **Warnings**—cautions against danger; councils; admonitions. **Bent**—directed. **Bent all his thoughts**—devoted his entire attention. **Compass**—obtain; attain to (Latin *con*, and *passus*, step.) **To compass the throne**—to get possession of the throne.

Para. 6. Communicated—told (Latin *con*, and *munis*, a gift). **Partial accomplishment**—fulfilment of a part of it. **Ambitious**—desirous of power or honour. **So as**—provided that.

Page 52.

Arrive at—reach. **By what means**—whether by fair means or foul. **Spurred on**—urged on; incited. **Spur**—literally means to prick and drive with the spur. **Reluctant**—unwilling. **Reluctant purpose**—an indecisive state of mind arising from the struggle between the desire to do a thing and the sense of its impropriety. **Compunction**—a pricking by the stings of conscience (Latin *Con*, intensive, and *pungo*, prick). **At the thoughts of blood**—at the idea of committing murder. **Cease**—stop; fall back. **Absolutely**—entirely (Latin *ab*, salvo, loosen). **Absolutely necessary**—unavoidable. **Flattering**—cheering..

Para. 7. Royal—kingly. **Condescension**—courtesy; kindness (Latin *con*, *de* and *Scando*, I climb). **Often times**—frequently. **Nobility**—noblemen; abstract is used for concrete. **Upon gracious terms**—from kindly motives; with affability and courtesy; out of kindness. **Came to Macbeth's house**—paid a visit to Macbeth. **Attended by**—accompanied by (Latin *ad*, and *tendo*, to stretch). **Train**—*lit.* something drawn, here king's retinue (Latin *traho*, I draw). **Attendants**—servants. **The more**—*the* used with a comparative is an adverb here.

Triumphal—highly distinguished ; renowned. **Success**—victory. **Castle**—a fortified house or fortress.

Para. 8. **Was pleasantly situated**—was situated or built in a pleasant or beautiful place ; commanded a good view. **Wholesome**—health giving. **Sweet and wholesome**—cool and refreshing. **Martlet**—a bird of the swallow kind. **Putting**—projecting. **Friezes**—parts of the entablature of a column which are between the architrave and cornice, often ornamented. **Buttresses**—projecting supports built on to the outside of a wall. **A place of advantage**—a favourable site ; a convenient place. **Breed**—give birth to young ones. **Haunt**—frequent ; dwell. **Observed**—seen ; marked. **Delicate**—delicious ; pleasing ; soft. **Not less so**—was not less pleased. **Honoured**—respected. **Hostess**—a woman who entertains guests at her house (Latin *hospes*, a guest). **Covering**—hiding. **Treacherous**—perfidious. **The art of covering treacherous purposes with smiles**—the art of putting on a smiling countenance while harbouring murderous design in the heart. **Who had...smiles**—who had honeyed tongue and a heart of gall ; who knew how to appear cheerful with enemies. **Could look like the innocent flower**—with her smiles she looked as charming as the beautiful flower which is free from qualities than can injure. **Innocent**—inoffensive ; harmless ; (Latin *in*, and *nocco*, I hurt). Here the smile of Lady Macbeth is compared to a flower, while she herself is represented as a serpent in it.

Para. 9. **Being tired**—is a passive participle. agreeing with king. **Went early to bed**—went to sleep sooner than usual. **State-room**—a magnificent room in a building. **Grooms**—(A. S. *guma*, a man) servants. **Unusually**—very much ; more than at any other time. **His reception**—the welcome he had received. **Reception**—entertainment (Latin *re*, and *capio*, I take). **The rest**—i. e., the rest of the persons. **Diamond**—corrupted form from Greek, *adamas*, *adamantos*, *adamant*. **Greeting**—saluting ; addressing.

Para. 10. Now was the middle of night—it was the time of twelve o'clock at night. Nature seems dead—everything is as silent as death. When over...dead—when people of half the world are dead asleep; at a time when one-half of the world is in darkness and the other half enjoys the sun. Sleep is here compared to death. Abuse—turn from the proper use; fill with wicked scenes (Latin *ab*, and *utor*, to use). Wicked...asleep—men are troubled by horrible dreams in sleep. Lady Macbeth—ambition is her sin, and to gain the object of her ambition she hesitates at nothing. Her masterful mind sways the weaker Macbeth to “the mood of what she liked or loathed.” She is represented by Shakespeare as Medea, or Catherine de Medice, or Cæsar Borgia in a female form. The real name of Lady Macbeth was Græoch, and instead of being urged to the murder of Duncan through ambition, she was goaded by deadly injuries. She was, in fact, the grand-daughter of Kenneth IV, killed in 1003, fighting against Malcolm II. Waked—got up. Plot—contrive. A deed, &c.—murder. Abhorrent—contrary; repugnant (Latin *ab*, from, and *horreo*, to stand on end). The milk of human kindness—(a metaphor) natural gentleness and tenderness of disposition. That it...murder—that he was so kind-hearted that he would not commit a murder. Too full to do—so full as not to do. Contrived—plotted; previously arranged. Withal (adverb) likewise; at the same time. Scrupulous—hesitating especially to do wrong; cautious; having doubts. The height of crime—the most atrocious crime; murder. Inordinate—unlimited; excessive (Latin *in*, not, and *ordo*, order). Not yet...ambition—Macbeth was not yet grown so hard-hearted and unscrupulous as to be ready to imbrue his hands in blood, as is generally seen to be the case with men of inordinate ambition. Won—succeeded in persuading. She had won him to consent—she had allured him to compliance. Resolution—determination of mind (Latin *Re*, and *solvo*, I loose). She doubted his resolution—she knew him to be inconstant or fickle; she knew he was not resolute. Humane—kind (Latin

Iomeo, a man). **Come between** as an obstacle—interfere. **Defeat** **he purpose**—frustrate the object in view. **Defeat**—frustrate (Latin *de*, and *facere*, to make). **Purpose**—object in view (Latin *Pono*, I put).

Page 53.

With her...dagger—taking a dagger in her own hand. **Approached**—neared; went to (Latin *ad*, and *prope*, near). **Ply with wine**—coax to drink wine. **Intoxicated**—drunk; insensible. **Charge—office**. **Careless of their charge**—unmindful of their office; forgetful of their duty. **In a sound sleep**—dead asleep. **Earnestly**—with fixed attention. **The courage**—the heart. **To proceed**—to go on. **There was...proceed**—the sleeping Duncan, looking like her father, was a sight which awakened gentle feelings in Lady Macbeth, and consequently she could not muster courage to support her in her work of murder.

Para. 11. To confer with—to talk or converse with; to talk seriously with. **Stagger**—waver. His resolution had begun to stagger—he had begun to waver in his determination (to murder Duncan); he had changed his idea of murdering Duncan. **The deed**—the murder. **Strong reasons against the deed**—valid reasons why the deed should not be committed. **In the first place**—first of all. **Kinsman**—relative. **Laws of hospitality**—the ways how the hosts should treat their guests. **To shut...himself**—Macbeth as the host of Duncan was by duty bound to protect him against his murderers. It was, therefore, out of the question that he should himself be the murderer. **Clear of offence**—inoffensive; not oppressive. **How clear of offence to his subjects**—it could not be said of him that he had in any way oppressed his subject. **In particular**—chiefly. **Such kings are the peculiar care of heaven**—God is particularly watchful for the protection of such good kings. **Doubly bound**—under a two-fold obligation; firstly it being their duty as subjects, and secondly because the king loved them and behaved with them justly. **Stood high in the opinions of**—was highly esteemed by. **Sorts**—ranks; classes. **Stained**—blotted.

Reputation—character. **Foul**—base; mean. **Conflicts**—hesitations; struggles.

Para. 12. In this conflict of the mind—in this struggle between the sense of duty and ambition. Inclining to the better part—thinking of no murder; turning in favour of not imbruing his hands in the murder of Duncan. Not easily shaken in her evil purpose—being hardly persuaded to change her determination. Shaken—dissuaded; defeated. Pour in at his ears—persuade him with; breathe into his ears; whisper words and thus persuade. A portion of her own spirit—some degree of her own courage. Infused...mind—made him a little courageous like herself; emboldened him to turn to the evil purpose. Assigning—alleging; giving. Reason upon reason—one reason after another; repeated arguments. Shrink—withdraw; recoil. Would be over—would be accomplished. Nights and days to come—future days. To come—future. Sovereign—supreme. Sway—authority; power. Royalty—the office and dignity of a king. Threw contempt—scorned; treated contemptuously. Change of purpose—inconstancy; irresoluteness. Fickleness—wavering disposition; unsteadiness of purpose. Cowardice—timidity; want of courage. She had given suck—she had suckled or nursed at her breast. Tender—sweet; fond. Milked—suckled. That milked her—that suckled her. Plucked—snatched away. Plucked it from her breast—torn it aside from her breast. Dashed its brains out—put it to a violent death. Practicable—possible; easy to carry out. To lay...upon—to accuse of the guilt; to impute the crime to. Sleepy—sleeping. Valour of her tongue—the force of her speech. Chastised—rebuked; chided severely. Sluggish—slow. Summed up—roused; called; mustered. Summed up courage—took heart. To—adequate to. Bloody—foul; vile. Business—purpose. Dagger—a short sword for stabbing.

Para. 13. Softly—without making noise; quietly. Stole in—went unperceived. Softly stole—went secretly.

Page 54.

Towards him—turned towards him. Blade—the cutting part of the dagger. Mere—only this and nothing more. Phantasm—a fancied vision ; an airy appearance. Proceeding...brain—caused by the excitement and affliction of the mind. Hot and oppressed brain—a fancy feverishly excited. Hot—excited. Oppressed—disturbed. In hand—get through or despatch.

Para. 14. Getting rid of—removing ; laying aside. Dispatched—killed. Bless—may bless. God bless us—may God bless us. Amen—so be it. Addressed—applied ; consigned. Listening to—hearing attentively. He had most need of a blessing—he mostly needed true divine blessing. Stuck—remained fixed. Tried to say—made an attempt to utter. Most—greatest. Blessing—wish for happiness. Though he...pronounce it—Macbeth, after having committed the murder, needed very much the mercy and grace of God. But stung with remorse for his crime he could not repeat the word *Amen* which stuck at his throat. Pronounce—utter forth.

Para. 15. Sleep no more—rest no longer. Macbeth doth murder sleep—Macbeth murders Duncan who is dead asleep. Sleep—slumber ; rest. Nourishes—refreshes ; supports. Glamis, &c.—Macbeth was the thane of Glamis and was lately conferred upon the dignity of the thane of Cawdor, so, Glamis, Cawdor and Macbeth are one and the same person.

Para. 16. Listening—eager to hear. He had failed of his purpose—he had not accomplished his object ; he wavered in his determination and could not therefore accomplish his object. Somehow—for some reason or other. Frustrated—defeated. Distracted a state—he was in such a mental agitation. Wash his hand of the blood—clean his hands spoiled with blood. With purpose—in order to ; for the purpose of. It—i. e., guilt.

Para. 17. Morning came—day dawned. Concealed—kept secret. Morning...murder—in the morning the rumour of the murder spread. Great show of grief—a loud demonstration of grief. Made...grief—

pretended to be very sorry. Show—display; demonstration. Smeared—daubed; stained. Fell upon—lighted upon; settled upon. Entire...Macbeth—Macbeth was suspected by all to be the real murderer. Inducements—motives. Whose inducements...have—were had more reasons to murder the king than grooms; the groom had no object whatsoever while Macbeth had some. Macbeth killed Duncan because Duncan had usurped the throne to which Macbeth had a better claim. Malcolm—eldest son of Duncan, king of Scotland. He was called *Can More* (Great head). He succeeded Macbeth (1056). Sought...court—went to the king of England as a refugee.

Para. 18. Vacated—left vacant; deserted. Prediction—prophecy. Literally accomplished—fulfilled to the very letter.

Page 55.

Para. 19. Though placed so high—though Macbeth and his queen were above all others in the kingdom. Banquo—a Scotch general of royal extraction, who obtained several victories over the Highlanders and Danes in the reign of Donald III. He was murdered by the order of Macbeth, and his ghost haunted the guilty usurper. Defiled—polluted; stained. That they...blood—that they had murdered Duncan. Posterity—descendants. Rankled—stung; inflamed his mind; pestered. To make void—to nullify; to frustrate; to render of no effect. In their own case—as regards themselves. Had been brought to pass—had happened; were fulfilled.

Para. 20. Beset—surrounded; filled. Stabbed—mortally wounded. Scuffle—a confused contest; skirmish. Race—line. Filled—occupied.

Para. 21. Affable—courteous. Affable and royal—kind and dignified. Played the hostess—acted the part of the hostess; discharged the duties of the hostess. Played—acted the part of. Gracefulness—elegance of manner or deportment. Conciliated—won the affection of. Under—beneath. Under his roof—in his

palace. **Fig. Synecdoche.** Should have—be obliged to; be under the necessity of. **Mischance**—bad luck. **He should...mischance**—he said that he would better chide him for his coming than hear that some accident had occurred to him. **Ghost**—soul; spirit appearing after death. **Was about to occupy**—was on the point of sitting on. **Faced**—opposed; manfully breasted. **The devil**—Satan; the chief of the fallen angels. **Unmanned**—deprived of manliness or courage. **Took it for**—mistook it to be. **Took...distraction**—mistook it for a fit of madness. **Distraction**—disorder; madness. **Fancy**—an image or representation formed in the mind; disordered imagination. **Heed**—attention. **Gave no heed to**—did not hear. **Distracted**—disconnected; disjointed. **Significant**—full of meaning. **Disclosed**—revealed. **In great haste**—hastily.

Page 56.

Excusing—making an excuse. **Infirmity**—weakness. **Excusing the infirmity**—apologizing for the weakness (displayed by Macbeth).

Para. 22. **Afflicted**—troubled; grieved. **Terrible**—horrible. **Troubled them**—filled them with anxiety. **Looked upon**—regarded; considered. **Keep out of**—exclude from. **Posterity**—children; progeny. **Miserable thoughts**—thoughts causing unhappiness or misery. **Peace**—rest of mind. **The worst**—the greatest evil that might befall them; the greatest harm that they would suffer.

Para. 23. **Sought**—found. **Heath**—a barren open country. **By foresight**—by the power of prediction. **Dreadful charm**—spells which fill the mind with horror. **Charms**—something thought to possess hidden power or influence; enchantment. **Conjured up**—called by force of their magic; compelled by incantations or charms. **Infernal spirits**—fallen angels; beings inhabiting hell. **Futurity**—future events. **Ingredients**—things which enter into a compound; component parts; material. **Newt**—a small lizard. The *n* is borrowed from the article *an* a (*n*) ewt. **Scale**; shell. **Dragon**—a fabulous winged serpent so named from its terrible eyes. **Maw**—stomach. **Ravenous**—greedy; furiously voracious. **The salt**

sea-shark—the shark that lives in salt water as distinguished from that living in fresh water. **Mummy**—a dead human body embalmed and dried. **Hemlock**—a poisonous plant used in medicine. **To have effect**—to be potent and efficacious. **In the dark**—at night. **Gall—bile**. **Liver**—a gland in the body which secretes the bile. **Slips—twigs**. **The yew tree**—an evergreen tree allied to *pine*. It is planted in churchyards and is therefore emblematic of death. **Set on to boil**—made to boil. **Caldron**—a large kettle. **Baboon**—a large species of monkey. **Sow**—feminine of pig or boar. **Young**—little. **Grease**—animal fat in a soft state. **Gibbet**—gallows. **Bound**—compelled.

Para. 24. **Nothing daunted**—not at all terrified. **Daunted**—intimidated; discouraged. **Ceremonies**—preparations. **Likeness**—figure. **The first...head**—the first spirit appeared as an armed soldier. **Caution**—a warning of danger. **Jealousy**—a painful suspicion of rivalry. **Macduff**—The thane of Fife was a nobleman whose castle of Kennoway was surprised by Macbeth and whose wife and babes were savagely slaughtered. Macduff vowed vengeance, and joined the army of Seward, to dethrone the tyrant, and reaching the royal castle of Dunsinane, they fought, and Macbeth was slain. **Fife**—a county of Scotland.

Para. 25. **Bloody**—besmeared with blood. **A bloody child**—a child smeared with blood. This apparition represents Macduff who was ripped untimely from his mother's womb. **None of woman born**—none delivered by a woman from her womb; none of the human beings. **Laugh to scorn**—to convey the idea of degree or extent and is a preposition here, having for its object *scorn*. **Scorn**—mockery. **Bloody**—murderous; cruel.

Page 57.

Resolute—firm; staunch. **I will make assurance doubly sure**—I will not leave any possibility of danger to disturb with even the shadow of a doubt my certain knowledge of my quiet and happy reign; **I will assure myself once more. Thou shalt not live**—I am determined

that thou shouldst die. **Fear**—is personified here. **Pale-hearted**—cowardly ; timid. **Lies**—tells a lie. **That I...thunder**—that I may be enabled to laugh at my false fear and to enjoy a quiet sleep in the midst of all danger.

Para. 26. **Comforted**—consolated ; encouraged. **Conspiracies**—cunning plots. **Vanquished**—defeated. **Birnam**—is a high hill near Dukeld, 12 miles W.-N.-W. Dunsinane, which is 7 miles N.-E. of Perth. **Sweet**—pleasing ; harmonious. **Bodements**—prophecies ; presages of good or evil. **Unfix**—root out ; uproot. **Earth bound**—fixed fast in the ground. **I see...death**—I see I shall die a natural death and not a violent death. **Throbs**—beats with joy ; palpitates ; is eager. **Art**—magical art. **Issue**—progeny ; children. **Banquo...** last—banquo passed by, last of all. **Bloody**—stained with blood. **Pointed to them**—showed them with his fore-finger. **Them**—the shadows. **A show of duty**—dutiful obeisance. **Bloody**—murderous.

Para. 27. **Got out**—came out. **Displace**—dethrone. **Set**—place. **Stung**—gave acute pain ; excited. **Set upon**—attacked. **Castle of Macduff**—castle of Kennoway. **Extended**—stretched forth ; carried onward. **Slaughter**—persecution. **Who...macduff**—who claimed to be the most distant relations of Macduff.

Para. 28. **Alienated**—estranged ; withdrew. **Could**—had the means. **Such as could**—those who were able. **Raise**—collected. **Wished...arms**—wished that the armies of Malcolm and Macduff might be successful. **They...part**—they dared not join their army and fight in their cause. **Recruits**—enlisting of soldiers. **Tyrant**—a despotic ruler. **Suspected**—mistrusted.

Page 58.

Para. 29. **Treason**—breach of fidelity ; disloyalty. **Its worst**—its greatest mischief. **Domestic**—civil ; home. **Malice**—extreme enmity. **Foreign**—alien ; external. **Levies**—troops collected ; armies.

Momentary—lasting for a very short time. **Repose**—rest of mind ; tranquillity. **Nightly**—every night. **Died by her own hands**

—committed suicide. Remorse of guilt—the cutting or gnawing pain arising from the consciousness of guilt. A soul—a single person. Confide—trust.

Para. 30. Careless—regardless. Ancient—former ; old. With... back—on a battle-field. Armour—the covering worn to protect the body in battle. Hollow—insincere ; false. False confidence—a confidence which was not justified by the actual state of things ; and unwarrantable confidence. Could never be —could never take place. Impregnable—invincible ; invulnerable. Defied—despised ; braved with contempt of opposition. Sullenly—gloomily ; intractably. Averred—declared positively ; affirmed confidently. Famine end thee—thou diest from hunger. By me—towards me. Faint—lose courage. Equivocal—capable of double interpretation ; ambiguous. Speeches—words. Avouches—affirms. Let us arm and out—let us take up arms and rush out. There is no flying hence—escape from this place is impossible. To be weary of the sun—to be tired of my life. Desperate—hopeless ; fearless of danger ; furious. Sallied forth upon the besiegers—rushed out to attack the besiegers. Solved—explained. By the way of concealing—in order to conceal. Host—army.

Page 59.

Hold—power or influence operating on the mind ; support.

Para. 31. Skirmishing—a fighting between small and detached parties. Feebly supported—not strongly backed. Inclined to—bent towards. Extreme—highest degree. Valour—bravery. Who were opposed to him—who came face to face with him. Counsell'd—advised. Above all men—chiefly ; particularly. Opposed—resisted. Turning—the act of declining to fight. Fierce contest—a hot fight. Ensued—followed. Foul—abominable ; shameful. Reproaches—upbraiding ; censures. Whose...blood—who was charged with the murder. Urged him to—provoked him to enter into. Hell hound—a person of hellish or malignant character. Villain—a wicked wretch.

Para. 32—36. Thou...labour—your attempt to wound me will be in vain; your labour is in vain. Impress the air—wound or cut the air. Vulnerable—susceptible of wounds or external injuries. Charmed—defended by charms or supernatural power. A charmed life—a life protected by charms. Despair—do not rely in; give up all hope or expectation which you have in. Despair thy charm—despair of thy charm. Served—followed; worshipped. Untimely—before the natural time. Accursed—devoted to execration; detestable. Give way—yield. Juggling—deceiving; practising tricks or imposture. Literally—word by word. Show—exhibition; spectacle. Painted board—a coloured thin piece of timber. Whose courage was returned with despair—whose courage revived when he became quite hopeless. To this...before—to yield to the power of. Kiss the ground—bow humbly. To be baited—to be provoked and harassed. To be...rabble—to be harassed by the abuses and imprecations of the mob; to be the subject of their mockery and revilings. Rabble—a mob.

Page 60.

Will I try the last—I will not give up till all is over with me; I will resist as long as I have the power of resistance. Frantic—desperate. Threw himself—rushed upon; attacked. Took upon him—assumed. Machinations—artful schemes. Usurper—one who seizes the property of another without right. Acclamations—shouts of applause uttered by a multitude.

THE MERCHANT OF VENICE.

Summary.—Shylock the Jew is a rich money-lender of Venice. He is not on good terms with Antonio, a Christian merchant who lends money gratis. Bassanio, an intimate friend of Antonio, comes one day to him and asks him for money, in order to repair his fortune by marrying a rich lady of Belmont, Portia by name. Antonio has no money, but expects some of his ships to arrive laden with

merchandise. He therefore goes with Bassanio to Shylock and secures from him three thousand ducats by signing against the inclinations of Bassanio a bond that in default of the payment of money by a certain day he will forfeit a pound of flesh. Bassanio goes to Belmont with the money and proving successful in his suit marries Portia. Gratiano, an attendant of Bassanio also marries Nerissa, Portia's waiting-maid. Before the marriage is celebrated, a messenger comes from Venice with the news that Antonio has forfeited his bond to the Jew, his ships being all lost, and he expresses a desire of seeing Bassanio at his death. Bassanio at the request of his wife starts at once with money for Venice. He finds Antonio in prison. A day has been appointed by the Duke of Venice to try the case. Portia, resolving to plead for Antonio, dresses herself as a counsellor and arrives with Nerissa dressed in male attire as her clerk at the Senate House, when the case is just going to be heard. Passing for Doctor Balthasar she, being recommended by the learned counsellor, Bellario, is permitted by the Duke to plead on behalf of Antonio. Portia requests Shylock to show mercy and take the money offered by Bassanio, which he refuses but insists upon having a pound of flesh from Antonio's breast. Thereupon Portia informs him that he can have the pound of flesh, but that he can cut off neither more nor less, and that he cannot be allowed to shed a drop of blood as flesh and not blood is the term used in the bond. Being baffled in his attempt to take revenge, he demands the money, and is going to take it, but Portia stops him. His wealth is forfeited for having conspired against the life of one of the citizens, half of which goes to Antonio and the other half to the State. The Duke pardons him his life and desires to restore him the half of his wealth on his turning a Christian. Antonio gives up the other half on his making a promise to make it over to his daughter after his death. Portia is then invited to dinner by the Duke, which she graciously refuses, as she has to reach Belmont before her husband. Bassanio offers her three thousand ducats in token of gratefulness for her kind services, which she declines to accept. But when hard

pressed by Bassanio to accept a present, she asks him for the ring presented to him by his wife, which, at the request of Antonio, he reluctantly gives her. Gratiano also gives his ring to the clerk Nerissa at her request. Bassanio and Antonio reach Belmont a little after Portia and Nerissa. A quarrel soon ensues, and Portia and Nerissa reproach Bassanio and Gratiano for giving away their rings. Bassanio and Gratiano are very unhappy for having offended their wives; and Antonio is much grieved, saying that he is the cause of all these quarrels. Other rings are given to them on their promise of never again parting with them. They are strangely surprised to find they are the same they gave away. Then Portia tells them how she was the young councillor, with Nerissa as her clerk, who attempted to save the life of Antonio. Their joy is enhanced by the good tidings of the safe arrival of Antonio's ships that were supposed to have been lost.

Page 60.

Para. 1. Venice—a fine large city in Italy. Usurer—a person who lends money on payment of high interest. Amassed—collected. Immense—large. Fortune—wealth. At great interest—at a high rate of interest. Hard-hearted—cruel. Exacted—extorted. Severity—strictness; harshness. Exacted—realised the money due to him with such strictness that every good man hated him. Particularly—specially; chiefly. As much—equally. Distress—want; straitened circumstances. Take—charge. Lent—gave as loan. He used, &c.—he used to lend money gratis to persons in want. Covetous—avaricious; greedy. Generous—liberal. Therefore there, &c.—the avaricious Jew was therefore not on good terms with the liberal merchant Antonio. The Rialto—is the place of exchange in Venice. Exchange—the place where merchants, &c., meet for the purpose of transacting business. Reproach—rebuke; speak in harsh language. With—on account of. Usuries—exorbitant interest. Hard dealings—merciless treatment. Bear—suffer. Seeming—apparent; outward. Patience—endurance; calmness. With seeming patience—with outward endurance; with affected

calmness. **Secretly**—at heart. **Meditated**—contemplated. **While, &c.**—while at heart he was contemplating how to avenge himself.

Para. 2. **Kindest, &c.**—kindest of all men. **Conditioned**—tempered. **Best conditioned**—most generous. **Unwearied**—indefatigable. **Courtesies**—civilities. **Had tho, &c.**—was never tired of obliging others. **Indeed**—in fact. **One**—a person: it is an indefinite demonstrative pronoun. **Ancient Roman honour**—magnanimity and generosity for which the ancient Romans were famous. **Drew breath**—lived. **Appeared**—made its appearance; showed itself. **Indeed, &c.**—no one in Italy possessed the noble qualities for which the Romans of ancient times were honoured more than Antonio. **Beloved**—loved. **Fellow citizens**—inhabitants of the same kingdom. **Who was, &c.**—who was most intimate with him. **Noble**—born of high rank. **Patrimony**—estate inherited from his father. **Exhausted**—spent. **Expensive**—extravagant. **Slender**—scanty; small. **Slender means**—narrow circumstances; small income. **Had nearly, &c.**—had almost spent the wealth he had inherited by living more extravagantly than his narrow circumstances allowed. **High ran**—high position; the nobility. **Are too, &c.**—are mostly inclined to do. **Wanted**—was in need of. **Whenever, &c.**—Antonio gave Bassanio money whenever he required it. **Had one purse, &c.**—each might freely use the money of the other as if it were his own. **It seemed, &c.**—so great was the love between the two that it seemed as if they had one soul and one common purse.

Para. 3. **Day**—is an object of time. **Repair**—mend; restore. **Fortune**—wealth. **Wealthy marriage**—marriage with a rich lady. **Dearly**—greatly. **Lately**—recently; a few days ago. **Sole**—only. **Heiress, &c.**—a person who inherits a big estate. **In her father's lifetime**—when her father lived. **Visit**—see; call. **Observed**—seen.

Page 61.

Speechless messages—messages transmitted by the eye and not by words. **No unwelcome**—welcome. **Suitor**—lover; one who

desires to marry her. **This lady...suitor**—by her encouraging glances at him she had given him to understand that she would accept him as one of her suitors. Shakespeare's words are :—

Sometimes from her eyes,
I did receive fair speechless messages.

Befitting—becoming ; suitable to. **But not having, &c.**—but not having the means so as to make himself outwardly appear to be in a position worthy of a lover. **Besought**—entreated ; implored. **Favours**—kindnesses. **To add, &c.**—to do him another act of kindness in addition to those favours he had already done to him. **Ducat**—or the coin of a duke is a silver coin worth 4s. 6d.

Para. 4. By—with. **Come home**—arrive. 'Home' is an adverbial object of place. **Laden**—loaded ; filled with. **Merchandise**—articles of trade. **Expecting, &c.**—expecting that some ships of his would soon arrive loaded with commodities. **Borrow**—take the loan of. **Credit**—security. **Upon the, etc.**—having the merchandise of the ships as security for the money. **He said...ship**—in Direct Narration :—He said, " I will go to Shylock, the rich money-lender, and borrow the money upon the credit of these ships.

Para. 5. Out of, etc.—from the money obtained by the sale of the merchandise. **Require**—demand ; name ; choose. **Contained, etc.**—which were in his ships in the midst of the sea. **Within himself**—in his mind. **Thought, etc.**—spoke to himself. **Catch, etc.**—(It is a wrestler's phrase meaning taking one at advantage) get him in my power. **Feed fat**—fully satisfy. **Ancient**—of long standing. **Grudge**—ill-will ; enmity. **I will feed, etc.**—I shall have ample satisfaction for the old ill-feeling I have against him. **Gratis**—without charging any interest. **Rails at**—reproaches ; scorns at. **Well-earned bargains**—profits gained in a fair way ; gains acquired by honest means. **Cursed be, etc.**—may the tribe to which I belong be accursed, if I pardon him, i. e., I will never pardon him. **Musing**—meditating. **Impatient**—eager. **Signior**—It is the Italian word for

“ Sir,” “ Mr.” Many a time and often—many a time and oft ; very often. **Usuries**—interests. **Shrug**—shaking of the shoulders. **Borne**—suffered ; endured ; pocketed. **With patient shrug**—with a calm fortitude ; patiently. **Sufferance**—endurance ; forbearance. **Badge**—mark ; emblem ; characteristic. **Unbeliever**—disbeliever ; infidel. **Cut-throat**—murderous. **Cut-throat dog**—murderous wretch ; ruffian. **Jewish garments**—dress peculiar to the Jews. **Spurned**—kicked me. **As if**—as though. **Cur**—degenerate of half-bred dog. **Need**—require. **Fair**—good ; kind. **Bend low**—bend down. **Time**—is an object of time. **For**—in return for. **Courtesies**—acts of courtesy or politeness (here used ironically). **As like**—as likely. **Break**—break my word ; fail. **With better face**—without reluctance ; without feeling shame. **Exact**—extract ; enforce ; press for. **Penalty**—forfeiture. **Storm**—rage ; lose temper. **How, etc.**—in what a passion of rage you are. **Would be friends, etc.**—would like to be on friendly terms with you. **Shames**—insults. **Put upon**—done ; cast upon. **I will supply, etc.**—I will lend you the money you want. **Seemingly**—apparently ; outwardly ; in appearance. **Pretending**—feigning. **To gain, etc.**—to be friends with Antonio.

Page 62.

Lawyer—a person knowing law. **Merry sport**—joke ; fun. **If he did, etc.**—in default of payment of the money on or before a specified day. **Forfeit**—lose right. **Pleased**—liked ; chose. **Then, Shylock...pleased**—in Direct Narration :—Then Shylock still pretending kindness said to Antonio, “ All I do is to gain your love.” He again said, “ I will lend you the 3,000 ducats, and take no interest for the money, only go with me to a lawyer, and there sign in merry sport a bond that if you do not repay the money by a certain day, you will forfeit a pound of flesh to be cut off from any part of your body that I please.” (These words have almost been literally taken from Shakespeare.)

Paras. 6—12. Content—agreed ; satisfied. **Sign to**—put my signature on. **Content...Jew**—in Indirect Narration :—Antonio

said that he was content, and that he would sign to that bond and say that there was much kindness in the Jew. (These are the very words of Shakespeare.) **Insisted**—urged. **For that**—for the reason that; because. **Value**—is in the objective case governed by “of” understood. **Bassanio...money**—in Direct Narration:—Bassanio said to Antonio, “You shall not sign to such a bond for me.” But Antonio said, “I will sign it for before the day of payment comes, my ships will return laden with many times the value of the money.” **Debate**—discussion. **Exclaimed**—ejaculated. **Abraham**—was the first patriarch of the Jews, and that is, why he is often addressed as father Abraham. **Suspicious**—distrustful. **Hard**—harsh. **Suspect**—mistrust. **Tell**—explain. **Break**—fail to pay by the specified time. **Exaction**—extraction; extortion. **Forfeiture**—penalty due; the pound of Antonio’s flesh. **Estimable**—valuable. **Is not, etc.**—a thing neither so much worth thinking about nor of any use. ‘Neither’ is here superfluous; such expressions are very often used by Shakespeare. **Flesh, etc.**—*i. e.*, mutton or beef, the flesh of a sheep or a cow. ‘Flesh’ is redundant, according to modern English. **Favour**—regard. **Extend**—stretch. **To try his, etc.**—in order to win his regard, I show my friendship to this degree, namely, that of lending the money without charging any interest. **It**—friendship. **So**—well and good. **If not, adieu**—if he does not accept it, I bid good-bye to him. **Against**—contrary to. **Against, &c.**—although advised otherwise by. **Notwithstanding**—in spite of. **Of**—about. **Kind intentions**—good inclinations. **Like**—wish. **Hazard**—risk; danger. **Run, &c.**—run the risk; throw himself into danger. **Shocking**—horrible. **Did not, &c.**—did not wish that Antonio should put himself to danger by signing the bond, shocking as it was, for his sake. **Really**—in reality; in fact. **Merely**—simply. **Sport**—joke; jest. **Graces**—elegance. **Graces of, &c.**—beauty and accomplishments. **Nothing**—not at all; in no way. **Inferior to**—lower than. **Portia of whom, &c.**—she was remarkable for her chastity and elegance of mind. She killed herself by

swallowing burning coals when she heard of her husband's death. **Cato**—was a famous Roman patriot. He is said to have committed suicide by stabbing himself. **Brutus**—was one of the dearest friends of Julius Caesar. He was one of the conspirators who murdered him. He killed himself at the battle of Phillipi by running over a drawn sword. **Supplied**—provided; furnished. **Hazard**—risk. **Set out**—started. **Splendid**—pompous. **Train**—retinue; body of followers. **Attended**—accompanied. **Of the name, &c.**—Gratiano by name; called Gratiano. **Proving successful**—succeeding. **Suit**—courtship. **Consented**—gave her consent. **To accept of**—to have. **To accept, &c.**—to marry him; to become his wife.

Para. 13. **Confessed**—admitted; openly declared. **Had no fortune**—had no wealth; was not wealthy. **High birth**—respectable parentage. **Noble ancestry**—noble family. **Could boast**—could be proud of. **Worthy**—noble. **Regard**—care for.

Page 63.

Had riches, &c.—was possessed of wealth too great for her to care whether her husband was rich or not. **Graceful**—elegant; charming. **Modesty**—shyness. **She would, &c.**—she wished to have more beauty and still more riches in order to become a fit wife to him. **Accomplished**—perfect in acquirements. **Dispraised**—underrated; censured. **Unlessened**—untaught. **Unschool**—uneducated. **Unpractised**—inexperienced. **But**—has the force of negation. **But she, &c.**—that she could not learn. **Commit-entrust**. **Commit her, &c.**—make over the charge of herself to him. **Directed**—guided. **Governed**—ruled. **Things**—matters. **Myself**—my person. **What is mine**—whatever belongs to me. **Converted**—changed; turned. **To you, &c.**—has now become yours. **Lady**—mistress; owner. **Fair**—beautiful. **Mansion**—grand building; magnificent house. **Was queen of myself**—mistress of my own wishes, *i. e.* could do whatever I liked. **Presenting**—giving over; handing over. **Bassanio confessed, &c....things**—in Direct Narration:—Bassanio said to Portia, “I have no fortune; my high birth and noble ancestry

ire all that I can boast of." Portia, who loved him for his worthy qualities and had riches enough not to regard wealth in a husband, with graceful modesty answered, "I will wish myself a thousand times more fair, and ten thousand times more rich, to be more worthy of you. I am an unlessoned girl, unschooled, unpractised, and yet not so old, but that I can learn. I shall commit my gentle spirit to be directed and governed by you in all things." She said, &c...ring—she said that herself and what was hers, to him and his was then converted. The previous day she was the lady of that fair mansion, queen of herself and mistress over those servants; and then that house, those servants and herself were his. She then, presenting a ring to Bassanio, said that she gave them with that ring. (These words are exactly those of Shakespeare.)

Paras. 14—17. Overpowered—overwhelmed. Gratitude—gratefulness. Wonder—surprise. Gracious—kind; courteous. Noble—kind; noble-hearted. Accepted of—agreed to marry. Humble fortunes—poor circumstances. A man of, &c.—a man as poor as himself. Express—show. Reverence—respect; regard. Honoured him—did him honour. Broken words—indistinct expressions; faltering words; incoherent speech. Vowed—solemnly promised; made a solemn pledge or promise. Part with—give away. Waiting maid—a female servant who attends a lady. Were in attendance—waited; were present before. Gracefully—kindly. Obedient—dutiful. To become, &c.—to marry. Generous—noble; kind. Desired—requested. Desired, &c.—requested to be permitted to have their marriage ceremony celebrated at the same time with them. With all my heart—most gladly. If you, &c.—if you can secure a lady who will marry you. "With all my heart...wife"—Bassanio said to Gratiano that he (Antonio) gave his permission with all his heart if he (Gratiano) could get a wife. Gentlewoman—lady's maid. Promised—given her consent by promising; pledged her word. Portia asked, &c.—in Direct Narration:—Portia said, "Nerissa, is it true?"

It is so—it is true : such is the case. Approve of—like ; think it to be proper. Portia, &c.—Portia gladly giving her consent to it : 'Portia' is in the nominative absolute. Pleasantly—good humouredly. Wedding feast—feast given at the celebration of marriage. Then our...marriage—the happiness of our marriage feast will be greatly increased by your marriage being celebrated at the same time with ours. Nerissa replied, &c....Gratiano—in Indirect Narration :—Nerissa replied that it was so, if she approved of it. Portia willingly consenting, Bassanio pleasantly said to Gratiano that their wedding feast should be much honoured by his (Gratiano's) marriage.

Para. 18. Sadly—sorrowfully ; miserably. Crossed—cut short ; interrupted ; disturbed. Entrance—appearance ; arrival. Containing—bearing. Fearful—horrible ; causing fear ; sad. Tidings—news. Feared—was afraid. To tell him of—to inform him of ; to acquaint him with the news of. He looked so pale—he turned so pale through grief. Inquiring—asking ; being anxious to know. Distressed—afflicted ; gave pain. Unpleasantest—most disagreeable or offensive. Blotted—were written. Imparted—declared : told of. When I did first, &c.—when I first made you know that I loved you. Freely—frankly ; openly ; without any disguise.

Page 64.

All the wealth, &c.—the only fortune that I had was my high birth. Should have—ought to have. I had, &c.—I was poorer than a pauper. Here related—previously narrated ; mentioned above. Procuring—securing ; obtaining. Engaged—agreed ; made an agreement. By a certain day—on or before a specified date. Sweet—dear. Lost—wrecked ; destroyed. My bond, &c.—I shall have to pay the penalty of the bond ; I have forfeited the bond I signed to the Jew. Paying—satisfying it, *i.e.*, allowing the pound of flesh to be cut off from his body. Impossible, &c.—not possible to live from the effects of the wound. Could wish—would like. To see you, &c.—to see

you before I die ; to see you for the last time. Notwithstanding—nevertheless ; for all that. Pleasure—choice ; will. Use your pleasure—do as you please ; do as is convenient to you. Let not my letter—let not my letter persuade you to come. If your love, &c.—if you cannot come out of your love for me, do not come, for I request you to do so. Dear love—dearest, it is a term of endearment. Despatch—perform with all possible speed ; finish quickly. Be gone—go away. Gold—money. Over—as much. Lose a hair—suffer the slightest injury. My Bassanio—because now he has become hers. Fault—mistake. Dearly bought—bought for a very high price. Dearly love—tenderly love ; greatly love. Set out—started. Legal right—right by law. To her money—to use her money. The instant—moment ; as soon as. In great haste—with all speed.—In prison—imprisoned. He said.....in debt—in Indirect Narration :—He said to Portia that there were a few of the unpleasantest words that had ever blotted paper ; and then addressing her as gentle lady continued that when he had first imparted his love to her, he had freely told her that all the wealth he had ran in his veins, but he should have told her that he had less than nothing, being in debt. O my dear... love you—in Indirect Narration :—Portia asked Bassanio addressing him as his dear love, to despatch all business and to be gone ; and said that he should have gold to pay the money twenty times over before that kind friend should lose a hair by her Bassanio's fault ; and as he was so dearly bought she would dearly love him.

Para. 19. The day of payment—the day for the payments of the money. 'Day' is in the nominative absolute. The day, &c.—the day appointed for the payment of the debt having passed ; the due debt still remaining unpaid on the appointed day. Cruel—hard-hearted. Accept of—take ; accept to take. Offered—was going to pay him. Insisted—persisted. Appointed—fixed. Try—hear. Shocking—horrible, dreadful. Cause—case ; action. Awaited—waited for. Dreadful—painful ; disgusting. Suspense—anxiety. Event—consequence ; result. Trial—case.

Para. 20. Parted with—separated from. Cheeringly—encouragingly. Dear friend—Antonio. Feared—was afraid. It would go hard with—it would cause serious trouble or injury to. Consider within herself—meditate in her mind. Means—plan. Instrumental—serviceable; useful. If she could...life—if she by devising any plan could be able to save the life of Antonio. Honour—respect. Meek—mild. Wife-like—becoming a wife. Submit—yield. Would submit, &c.—would submit herself to be guided by him in all matters as one having superior intellectual powers. Being now, &c.—being now required to act; being now roused to action. Peril—danger. Nothing—in the least. She did, &c.—she was fully confident of her powers. Sole—only. Guidance—direction. True—correct. Perfect—ripe; mature. Judgment—understanding; power of discernment. Resolved—determined; made up her mind. Speak—plead. In Antonio's defence—on behalf of Antonio; in Antonio's favour.

Para. 21. Relation—relative. Councillor in the law—lawyer; advocate. Stating the case—giving a full description of the case. Desired his opinion—asked him as to what he thought of the case. Advice—council; instruction.

Page 65.

Dress worn by a councillor—the councillor's or barrister's gown. Letters of, &c.—letters from Bellario in which he gave her instructions as to how to conduct the defence. Equipment—outfit; proceeding.

Para. 22. Appeal—dress. Portia, &c.—Portia and her maid Nerissa dressed themselves like men. Putting on—wearing. Robes—gown. Clerk—person appointed as writer. Setting out immediately—starting at once. On the very, &c.—the same day in which the trial was to be held. Just going—about. Senators—members of the Senate councillor's. Senate-house—the place where the senators meet; the place where cases are tried. This High Court of Justice

—the Senate-house. Presented—handed. Learned—able. Himself—in person. Plead for—conduct the case on behalf of; defend. Prevented by—could not do on account of. Permitted—allowed. Stead—place. Granted—allowed; permitted. At the youthful, &c.—at seeing the face of the young stranger, *i. e.*, by finding the stranger to be of so tender an age. Prettily—beautifully. Was disguised—assumed false appearance. Robes—dress. Wig—false hair used for the head. Who was, &c.—whose disguise appeared so real that she could not be recognised in her councillor's dress and artificial hair.

Para. 23. Merciless—cruel. Knew—recognised. Disguise—false dress. Beside—by the side of. Agony—extreme pain; anguish. Distress—suffering. Agony, &c.—great uneasiness and fear. For—for the sake of. Importance—significance.

Para. 24. Arduous—difficult. Task—business; duty. Engaged in—undertaken. Tender—delicate. Courage—boldness. Boldly—courageously. Proceeded—went to perform. Undertaken—taken upon herself. Addressed herself—spoke to. Allowing—admitting; conceding. Had a right—could claim. Forfeit—penalty. Expressed—mentioned. Bond—deed of agreement. Spoke of—described. Sweetly—gently. Noble—excellent; good. Mercy—kindness; forgiveness. Softened—melted; moved. But—except. Unfeeling—cruel; merciless. It dropped, &c.—it came from heaven to the earth. Was a, &c.—is productive of happiness in two ways. Blessed—gave happiness. It blessed...received it—it was a source of blessing or happiness to the giver as well as to the receiver. Became—sinited. Attribute—quality. How it became, &c.—how it was better for kings to show mercy than to wear crowns, it being a divine attribute. Tempered—softened. That earthly...justice—the more was justice softened by mercy, the more a king's power resembled that of God; kings appeared like God more or less according as mercy was more or less mixed with justice. That same prayer—the Lord's Prayer. Shakespeare's words are:—

The quality of mercy is not strain'd
 It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven.
 Upon the place beneath : it is twice blest ;
 It blesseth him that gives and him that takes :
 'Tis mightiest in the mightiest : it becomes
 The throned monarch better than his crown :
 His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,
 The attribute to awe and majesty,
 Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings :
 But mercy is above this sceptred sway ;
 It is enthroned in the hearts of kings,
 It is an attribute of God himself ;
 And earthly power doth then show likest God's
 When mercy seasons justice. Therefore, Jew,
 Though justice be thy plea, consider this,
 That in the course of justice, none of us
 Should see salvation : we do pray for mercy ;
 And that same prayer doth teach us all to render
 The deeds of mercy.

Penalty, &c.—i. e., the pound of Antonio's flesh. Over—more.
 He should desire—he could choose. Shylock—is in the nominative
 absolute. Insisting—persisting. Endeavour—try. Wrest—per-
 vert ; to turn from its natural meaning ; to give a forced interpreta-
 tion to.

Page 66.

Gravely—solemnly ; seriously. Established—made ; enforced.
 Pleading—speaking. In his favour—on his behalf. Daniel—was
 the fourth of the Jewish prophets ; he was a very wise man famous
 for strict justice. A Daniel, &c.—a Daniel has come to decide the
 case. How much...looks—you are much more wise than you appear
 to be by your age ; you are very wise, although you look so young.
 Is he not...asked Portia—in Indirect Narration :—Portia asked
 whether he (Antonio) was not able to pay the bond. Bassanio...

altered—in Direct Narration :—Bassanio said to the young counsellor, “ Pray endeavour to wrest the law a little to save Antonio’s life.” Portia gravely answered, “ Laws once established must never be altered.” He said, &c....looks—in Indirect Narration :—He (Shylock) said that a Daniel was come to judgment, and calling Portia a ‘ wise young Judge ’ continued to say how he honoured her and how much older she was than her looks.

Para. 25. By—according to. Lawfully—legally. Claim—demand. Nearest, &c.—from that part of Antonio’s body which is very close to his heart, *i. e.*, from his breast. ‘ Nearest ’ governs ‘ heart.’ Be merciful—show mercy. Fear—is in the infinitive mood, ‘ to ’ being understood after ‘ hid.’ By my soul, &c.—I take an oath by my soul. There is, &c.—no man by his words can make me change my determination. You must prepare, &c.—you must be ready to have the pound of flesh cut off from your bosom. Have you—have you got. Calm—quiet; cool. Resignation—submission. But little—only little; almost nothing. For that—because. He had prepared, &c.—he had made up his mind to meet death; he was prepared for death. Give, &c.—let me shake hands with you. Fare, &c.—may you live a happy life. Grieve not—be not sorry. Misfortune—calamity. For you—on account of yourself; for your sake. I am...for you—I am thrown to this extremity in which I must lose my life for your sake. Commend me—speak favourably of me. Deepest—greatest; keenest. Affliction—sorrow. Who is, &c.—whom I love as dearly as my life. Esteemed—valued. With—by. Above—more than. Life...life—I do not hold anything in the world even my own life and wife more dear than your life. Sacrifice—give away. To this devil here—meaning Shylock whom Bassanio so calls on account of his cruelty. Deliver—save. Antonio replied he...death—In Direct Narration :—Antonio replied, “ I have but little to say, for I have prepared my mind for death.”

Para. 26. Kind-hearted—kind. Offended—displeased. Expressing—declaring. Owed to—bore for; had for. True—intimate;

real. **Strong terms**—strong or high language. **Help**—avoid ; do otherwise than. **Could not, &c.**—could not but answer. **Little thanks**—no thanks. **Your wife, &c.**—your wife would not be pleased to hear. **Make**—is in the infinitive mood. **Offer**—i. e., of her. **Loved**—liked. **Copy**—imitate. **Lord**—master ; i. e., Bassanio. **He must...Bassanio's**—he ought to use an expression containing the same sentiments as those of his master. **In Nerissa's hearing**—in a voice that reached the ears of Nerissa. **Clerk**—writer. **Protest**—declare on oath. **But—only.** **Currish**—malignant ; brutal. **I wish she were in heaven**—I wish she were dead. **I wish...Jew**—I wish she were dead, and might implore some supernatural being in heaven to soften the heart of the cruel Jew. **Behind her back**—in her absence. **Else**—otherwise. **But—only.** **Unquiet—unpeaceful.** **Else, &c.**—otherwise there would have been a real ill-feeling between her (your wife) and you ; otherwise you would have created a great disturbance in your house.

Para. 27. **Cried out**—exclaimed. **Impatiently**—with impatience. **Trifle**—waste. **Pronounce**—deliver ; pass. **Sentence**—judgment. **Awful expectation**—state of terrible suspense. **All was, &c.**—every one in the court was anxiously expecting to hear the sentence against Antonio. **Heart**—person. **Grief**—sorrow. **For**—at the fate of.

Page 67.

Para. 28. **Every, &c.**—every person felt sorrow at the fate of Antonio. **Shylock...sentence**—In Indirect Narration :—Shylock cried out impatiently that they trifled time and he prayed that the sentence might be pronounced. Compare Shakespeare's words :—**We trifle time : I pray thee, pursue sentence.** **Scales**—balance. **Surgeon**—a person who is well experienced in surgery and in performing operations. **By**—near. **Lest, &c.**—that the discharge of blood from the wound be not so great as to cause his death. **You...death**—you ought to have a surgeon present here that he (Antonio) may not die of an excessive flow of blood. **Whole intent**—only intention ; sole object. **Named**—expressed ; specified. **What of the**

—it matters not if it is not specified in the bond. For—out of. Charity—kindness. Did so, &c.—you did keep a doctor in attendance out of mere kindness. I cannot, &c.—I can find no such condition in the bond. Is not—is not mentioned. Thine—thy due. Awards—allows; grants. The law...it—you can have the pound of flesh by law and the court allows it. Breast—bosom. Exclaimed—cried out. Upright—just. Eagerly—anxiously. Looking eagerly—casting eager looks. Repair—be ready; prepare yourself.

Para. 29. Tarry—wait. A little—for a short time; a moment. Else—besides. Drop—jot. This bond, &c.—you cannot by this bond claim a drop of blood. Expressly—clearly; distinctly. Shed—drop. Christian blood—the blood of a Christian. Your lands and goods—all your property. Confiscated—forfeited. Utterly—extremely; altogether. Wise—judicious. This wise discovery—the finding out of this judicious expedient. Named—specified; mentioned. Admiring—praising. Wonderful—extraordinary. Sagacity—wisdom. Happily—fortunately. Thought of—discovered. Expedient—plan. Plaudits—cheers; applause. Resounded—echoed. In the words, &c.—using the words of Shylock. Mark—notice. A Daniel—here a proper noun has been used as common.

Para. 30. Defeated—conquered; become unsuccessful. Intent—design; object. Finding, &c.—seeing that his cruel intentions have not been satisfied. Disappointed—frustrated. Disappointed look—look of disappointment; appearance expressing disappointment. Take—accept. Rejoiced—pleased; delighted. Beyond measure—exceedingly; very greatly. Unexpected—sudden. Deliverance—release. At Antonio's, etc.—at Antonio's being so suddenly delivered from the danger in which his life lay, *i. e.*, at his life being saved. Here—*i. e.*, with me. Softly—not so fast; wait a moment. There is no haste—there is no hurry about it. The Jew...penalty,—the Jew must only get the penalty as demanded by him (*i. e.*, the pound of flesh without a drop of blood) and nothing else. Mind—beware; remember. Nor do not cut—and

do not cut; 'nor,' according to modern English, is redundant; its use is peculiar to Shakespeare. Just—exactly. Poor—small; insignificant. Scruple—a small weight of 20 grains. Nay—not only this, but. If the scale...senate—if the weight of the flesh cut off be more or less than a pound by even such a very small weight as that of a hair, you shall, according to the laws of Venice, be put to death, and all your property confiscated to the State. Let me go—leave me

Paras. 31—36. Hold upon—grasp upon; charge against. Conspired—plotted. For having, &c.—for having made plots to murder; for designing to take the life of. Your...duke—it depends upon the will of the duke to spare your life.—Down—fall down. Down on your knees—kneel down. To pardon you—to forgive you and spare your life. Portia again...you—In Indirect Narration:—Portia stopped the Jew telling him to wait, and said that she had another hold upon him. By the laws of Venice his wealth was forfeited to the State for having conspired against the life of one of its citizens, and his life lay at the mercy of the Duke. She therefore told him to fall down on his knees and to ask him to pardon him (Shylock). That—in order that. Difference—dissimilarity. Difference—i. e., the difference in the nature of the Jews and the Christians, the former being cruel like Shylock, the latter showing mercy even unasked. Christian spirit—nature of the Christians to show mercy. Pardon—forgive; grant. Comes—escheats. State—Government. The duke.....state—In Indirect Narration.—The duke then said to Shylock that he pardoned him his life before he asked it, that he might see the difference of their Christian spirit; and added that half his wealth belonged to Antonio, the other half came to the state. Generous—noble. Give up—give up or abandon the claim of. If—provided. Deed—legal document. Sign a deed—execute a document. Make it over—transfer. Make...death—transfer or give it as a legacy to take effect after his death. Lately—recently. Who,

&c.—who has recently married. Consent—will ; inclination ; desire. Which—i. e., the marriage with Lorenzo, a Christian : its antecedent is *who.....of Antonio's*. Offended—displeased. Disinherited—deprived of an inheritance ; prevented from inheriting. The generous...husband—in Direct Narration :—The generous Antonio then said, " I shall give up my share of Shylock's wealth, if Shylock will sign a deed to make it over at his death to his daughter and her husband." Agreed—consented. Being...revenge—being in this way unsuccessful in avenging himself on Antonio. Despoiled—deprived ; stripped. Riches—wealth. Ill—unwell. Home—is an object of place. After me—after I have gone. Send...me—send the document after I have left the court to my house. Sign over—make over by my signature. Get thee gone—begone ; go away. Repent—be sorry for ; feel penitent. Turn Christian—become a Christian ; be converted to Christianity. The state...riches—we shall remit to you the other half of your property which has been confiscated to the State. Released him—set him free. Dismissed—broke up. Praised—admired ; eulogised. Wisdom—judgment. Ingenuity—skill ; cleverness. Invited...dinner—asked him to dine with him at his place. Meant—intended. To return to Belmont—to reach Belmont. Your grace—dukes are addressed as 'Your grace,' as 'your honour' is used for the Lieutenant-Governor and 'your excellency' for the Governor-General. Away—be off ; go away. Directly—instantly. Leisure—vacant time. He had not, &c.—he had not time. Turning to—addressing ; directing towards. Reward—remunerate. In my mind—in my opinion ; to my thinking. Indebted—obliged. You are, &c.—you are under deep obligations to him. Portia replied...directly—in Indirect Narration :—Portia humbly thanked his grace, and said that she must (be) away directly. The duke...with him—in Direct Narration :—The duke said, " I am sorry you have no time to stay and dine with me." " Turning...to him "—in Indirect Narration :—He then told Antonio to reward that gentleman (young councillor), for, in his (duke's) mind, he (Antonio) was much indebted to him (the gentleman). Senators—councillors. Worthy—deserving.

Acquitted—released. **Grievous**—serious; severe. **Penalties**—punishments. **Acquitted...penalty**—free from a serious charge; escaped a serious charge; escaped a severe punishment. **Accept of**—take. **Due unto**—owed to. **Due unto the Jew**—that were the Jew's by law. **Stand**—remain. **Over and above**—in addition to; besides. **In love and service**—in the matter of love and service. **Evermore**—for ever; always. And we...evermore—Antonio said, “And besides offering you the money we shall ever remain under great obligations to you in the matter of love and service.”

Para. 37. **Prevailed upon**—persuaded; induced. **Pressing**—insisting on; urging. **Wear**—put on. **For your sake**—on your account; as a present from you. **Taking off**—putting off.

Page 69.

Bassanio—(in both the places is in the nominative absolute. **Espied**—saw. **Wily**—cunning. **Wanted**—desired. **To make a merry jest**—to play a pleasant joke. **For your love**—in consequence of the love you bear to me; on account of your love towards me as you showed by making such repeated requests. **Sadly**—sorely; greatly. **Distressed**—afflicted; grieved. **Ask him, &c.**—ask him to give him the only thing he cannot give to any person. **Confusion**—perplexity. **Gift**—present. **Vowed**—solemnly promised. **Most valuable**—of the greatest value; most precious. **Proclamation**—public notice. **Find it, &c.**—ascertain where it can be had by issuing a public notice. **Affected**—insulted. **You teach me...answered**—this is the way how a reply is to be given to a beggar, *i. e.*, how to refuse him.

Para. 38. **Let him, &c.**—give him the ring. **My love**—the love I have for you. **Great service, &c.**—*i. e.*, releasing me from the hands of the cruel Jew. **Against**—as a set off; in opposition to. **Be valued against**—be considered equal to; be set against and outweighed. **Let.....displeasure**—consider my love for you and the good service he has rendered me to be of greater importance than your wife's displeasure. **Ungrateful**—thankless. **Yielded**—gave in. **Nerissa**—It has no verb; but the probable construction is

that its verb is 'begged,' 'she' being in apposition to it. **Choosing**—liking; preferring. **Outdone**—surpassed. **Generosity**—liberality. **Lord**—master. **Laughing**—merriment. **Got**—reached. **Tax**—charge; accuse; reprove. **Giving away**—parting with. **How they, &c.**—is a noun clause object of *think*. **Swear**—declare on oath. **Present**—gift. **Tax.....woman**—charge their husbands with having parted with their rings, and solemnly declare that they must have presented them to some woman. **Dear Bassanio...displeasure**—In Indirect Narration:—Antonio said to his dear Bassanio that he (Bassanio) should let him (the councillor) have the ring, and that his (Antonio's) love and the great service he had rendered to him (Antonio) should be valued against his (Bassanio's) wife's displeasure.

Para. 39. **Temper of mind**—temperament; disposition. **Never fails to attend**—always attends; ever accompanies. **Consciousness**—knowledge. **Was in...action**—was very happy as a person who has done a good act always is. **She, &c.**—herself being in a cheerful mood. **Enjoyed**—found pleasure in; took delight in. **Bright**—brightly; brilliantly. **The moon, &c.**—the shining of the moon never appeared so pleasant to her before. **Hidden**—concealed. **As well**—as equally. **Charmed**—delighted. **Fancy**—imagination. **Beams**—rays. **Naughty**—wicked; sin-worn. **How far...world**—just as a small candle shines over a large area, so a good deed casts an elevating influence over the surrounding world of sin. **From**—proceeding from. **Methinks**—it seems to me. **Sweeter**—more pleasant. **By day**—during the day. **She said to Nerissa...by day**—In Indirect Narration:—She said to Nerissa that that light they saw was burning in her hall. She remarked that that little candle threw its beams very far, and said that a good deed thus shone in a naughty world. She said that she thought that that music sounded sweeter than by day.

Para. 40. **Own**—appropriate. **Dressing, &c.**—putting their own dresses. **Awaited**—waited for; expected. **Presenting**—introducing.

Congratulations—expressions of sympathy on account of good fortune ; good wishes. **Welcomings**—congratulations and wishes of joy on his escape from the hands of the cruel Jew and also on his receiving him at her place. **Were hardly over**—were scarcely finished. **Perceived**—saw. **Already**—so soon ; in so short a time. **A quarrel already**—have you commenced quarrelling so soon.

Page 70.

About—regarding. **Paltry**—trivial ; worthless ; trifling. **With words upon it**—with the motto inscribed upon it. **Cutler**—one who manufactures knives, scissors, razors, &c. **Leave, &c.**—do not part with me.

Para. 41. **Signify**—mean. **What, &c....signify**—I do not care for the price of or the words inscribed on the ring. **When**—at the time when. **Until, &c.**—as long as your life lasts. **You...woman**—is a noun clause object of 'know.' **Scrubbed**—stunted in growth ; dwarfish. **No higher than yourself**—of the same height as yourself. **Wise**—judicious. **Pleading**—speaking on behalf of another ; defending. **Prating**—talkative ; garrulous. **For a fee**—as a remuneration. **For my life**—even if my life were at stake. **Deny**—refuse. **Deny him**—decline his request. **You were to blame**—you were to be blamed ; you were in the wrong ; the fault lay with you. **Sure**—certain. **For all the world**—in return for anything in the world. **In excuse for**—in attenuation of. **And then...ring**—here, 'boy' and 'he' are subjects of 'begged,' as in para. 38.

Paras. 42 and 43. **Seemed**—appeared ; looked apparently. **Reproached**—rebuked. **Nerissa, &c.**—she had learnt from Nerissa what should be guessed. **Had**—got. **Unhappy**—sorry. **Offended**—displeased. **Earnestness**—seriousness. **By my honour**—upon my honour ; having regard to my honour ; staking my honour on it. **Civil doctor**—a doctor in civil law ; it is in the nominative case to the verb 'had' understood. **Who refused, &c.**—who declined to accept the 3,000 ducats which I offered to him. **Denied him**—refused to give him. **Displeased**—angry ; offended. **Sweet**—dear ; lovely.

Beset—filled ; surrounded ; overtaken. Seeming—apparent. My seeming ingratitude—what appeared to be ungratefulness on my part. Forced—obliged. After—in pursuit of, *i. e.*, when he went away. Had, &c.—had you been present there. Of me—from me. To give—to present to. Unhappy—unfortunate. I am, &c.—it is I who have unfortunately been the source of all these disputes.

Para. 44. Bid—asked. Grieve at—be sorry for. Notwithstanding—nevertheless ; in spite of his being the cause of the quarrels. Lend my body—pledge to sacrifice my life. But for him—had it not been for him. But.....dead—my life would not have been saved had not the young councillor, whom Bassanio presented with the ring, so wisely pleaded on my behalf. Dare—venture ; make bold. My soul upon the forfeit—my soul being staked upon the keeping of his word. Break faith—prove false. I dare...you—I make bold to pledge myself once again, declaring that my soul shall be damned if your husband will again prove false to you by giving away your ring. Surety—guarantee ; security. Keep—is in the infinitive mood. Better—with more care ; more carefully. Bid him, &c.—tell him that he should not part with it as he has done with the other.

Page 71.

Para. 45. Strangely surprised—struck with great wonder. How she, &c.—is a noun clause, object of 'told.' Unspeakable—unutterable ; that cannot be described. Found—learnt ; came to know. To his, &c.—which created in his mind unutterable pleasure and surprise. That it, &c.—is a noun clause, object of 'found.' That Antonio's, &c.—is a subordinate noun clause, complement of 'was.' That it...saved—that his wife, Portia, by her noble courage and wisdom, had saved the life of his dear friend Antonio.

Para. 46. Welcomed—cordially received. Letters—epistles. Chance—accident. Had fallen, &c.—came into her possession. Account—description. Supposed—imagined ; considered. Lost—to be lost ; wrecked. Which...harbour—in which it was written

that those ships of Antonio, which were considered to be wrecked, had safely arrived in port. Tragical—sorrowful. Beginnings—earlier portion. This rich merchant—*i. e.*, Antonio, the merchant of Venice. Unexpected—sudden. Ensued—followed. So theseensued—in this way the disasters, which had clouded the early history of this wealthy merchant, were all forgotten in the sudden prosperity that followed them. Leisure—time. Comical—laughable; gay; causing mirth. Adventure—incident; event; story. There was, &c.—they laughed at leisure. At the council, &c.—at the laughable story of the rings, for the parting of which the husbands had fallen into difficulties. Husbands—is in the objective ease governed by ‘at.’ Know—recognise. Merrily—cheerfully. Swearing—solemnly pledging. Rhyming speech—speech put into rhyme or verse. Fear—be anxious. No other thing—nothing else. Sore—sorely; deeply. While he...ring—throughout his life his greatest care would be to keep his Nerissa’s ring safe.

THE COMEDY OF ERRORS.

Introduction.—Shakespeare took the plot of the *Comedy of Errors* from a play of the Latin comic writer. Plautus, called the *Menæchmi*. The plot in the old play turns on the comical mistakes caused by the astonishing likeness between twin brothers. By giving each brother a servant, equally undistinguishable, Shakespeare makes the complications that arise much more perplexing.

Summary.—The wife of Ægeon, a merchant of Syraeuse, gave birth at an inn to two sons at a time, who were so exactly alike the one could not be distinguished from the other. At the same time a poor woman there was also brought to bed of two sons, exactly alike. So the merchant brought the two sons of the poor woman to attend upon his sons. Both the sons of the merchants were named Antipholus, and both the slaves were named Dromio. When the merchant and his family were returning homeward, a dreadful storm arose, and to save the children, Ægeon tied the two boys,

and their slaves to masts. After the ship sank, one of the boys with his slave was picked up by some fishermen, and the old merchant, together with the other boy and his slave, was picked up by some sailors.

The boys were thus separated, and with all his search the old merchant could not find the elder Antipholus. When the younger Antipholus was eighteen years of age, he too left home, with his slave Dromio in search of his brother. And it so happened that on a certain day the younger Antipholus and his slave reached the town of Ephesus, where the elder Antipholus and his son had already been for some years.

The older Antipholus had already been married and his wife was a jealous woman. Coming across the younger Antipholus she took him home, taxed him with inconstancy, and persisted in calling him husband. When he left the house he was met by a goldsmith, who, mistaking him for the elder brother, gave him a gold chain, saying it was made by his own orders. Shortly afterwards when the goldsmith demanded the price of the married Antipholus, he refused to pay, saying that he had not got the chain. Going to his house he was refused admittance, for the younger Antipholus had already been there. The younger Antipholus had given a purse to his slave to keep, and when he demanded it of the wrong Dromio he denied all knowledge of it. The astonishing likeness of the twin brothers and the slaves thus gave rise to a number of comic errors, and it was not till they all met that the mystery was cleared up.

Page 71.

Comedy—comedy comes from Greek *kamodia*, a ludicrous or mirthful spectacle, either from *koinos*, a revel, or *kome*, a village, and *oido*, to sing. *The Comedy of Errors* means the amusing play describing the comical adventures which the chief *dramatis personæ* were led into on account of their being mistaken for one another. From *koinos* comes *Comus*, God of revelry, whom Milton represents as male Circe.

Para. 1. States—governments; dukedoms. Syracuse—a city of Sicily, the birth-place of Archimedes, the philosopher. It was founded by Corinthian colonists between seven and eight hundred years B. C. Destroyed by the Saracens in the ninth century. It is now a place of less than 30,000 inhabitants. Ephesus—a celebrated city of Asia Minor. Its temple dedicated to Diana was considered one of the seven wonders of the world. Eratostratus burnt the temple of Diana on the night that Alexander was born. In the middle ages it sank into insignificance. Variance—dissension. At variance—having quarrelled. Made—passed. Ordaining—(Latin *ordo*) decreeing. Ordain, ordinary, ordinal, ordinance, ordnance are from the same root. Ordinance—(great guns) originally meant any arrangement or equipment. Marks—a mark=13s. 4d. For the ransom—as the price. Ransom comes from the same root as redemption, Latin *re*, back, and *emo*, to buy. The states...his life—the passage should be analysed thus: (1) *A cruel law was made* is the principal sentence. (2) *The state...variance, there at Ephesus* are extensions of the predicate *was made*. (3) *Ordaining that...life* is attributive or adjectival to the subject *law*. (4) *That.....his life* is a noun sentence-object to *ordaining*. This last should be further analysed. *He was to be put to death* is the principal sentence. *That if any... Ephesus; unless he...life* are adverbial sentence. The analysis should be given in a tabular form.

Para. 2. Discovered—found out. Heavy—enormous. *Heavy* (Anglo-Saxon *hefan*, to lift) literally means heaved with difficulty. *Heaven* is that which is heaved or lifted up. Fine—Latin *finis*, an end. The money paid as the final settlement of a suit. Hence, it means pecuniary punishment.

Para. 3. Which was death—which was sure to bring death upon. It stands for “to enter which.” Explain: ‘To have the power of life and death.’ ‘He will be the death of you.’

Para. 4. Sorrow had...life—grief had made his life a burden to him. A heavier task—a more painful work or labour.

Para. 5. Brought up—trained; educated. Epidamnium—the ancient Illyrian town of Epidamnus or Dyrrachium.

Page 72.

Brought to bed—delivered. They were so exactly alike—they were so precisely like each other in appearance. To distinguish—to make out. Twin—Anglo-Saxon *twin*, double, *twi*=two. *Twine* is a cord consisting of two (or more) threads twisted together. Exceeding poor—exceedingly poor. Bought the two boys—Slavery was a regular institution both in Greece and Rome. and parents could sell their children into slavery. To attend—to wait.

Para. 6. Evil—inauspicious. In an evil hour we got on ship-board—in an unlucky hour we embarked on board a vessel. Fury—violence. Latin *furo*, to be angry. In mythology, one of the three goddesses of vengeance.

Para. 7. Complaints—(French *complaintre*, Latin *com* and *plango*, to strike) cries. Piteous complaints—such cries as would excite the pity of even the most hard-hearted wretches. Wept for fashion—cried when they saw their mother weeping, to keep her company. (French *facon*, Latin *facio*, to make). The meaning is,—Cried out of sympathy or from imitation, *i. e.*, they cried not because they were filled with fear, but because they saw both their parents were weeping. Bent—directed; devoted. A spare mast—a mast that is reserved for any emergency. Sea-faring—going to sea. *Faring*, from Anglo-Saxon *faran*, to go. Cf. *Way-farer*. Trace the meanings of *fare* (*n*), (1) the price of passage, (2) food, from its original meaning—a course or passage: *Ferry* is from the same root. Explain “*Ill fares the land to hastening ills a prey.*” Provide against storms—take the precaution to keep ready in case storms should break forth. Separately to these masts—Latin *se* and *paro*, to put. *Preparation* is from the same root. *Separately to these masts* means,—one to each mast. But for this contrivance—had it not been for this shift or plan. Split—was broken by striking against.

Were supported above the water—kept ourselves above the water. Taken up—picked up. A boat of fishermen—a fishing-boat.

Page 73.

Para. 8. My only care—the only object of my anxious concern. Inquisitive—from Latin *quæro*, to ask, to see. So, inquest, inquiry inquisition. “Curious denotes a feeling, inquisitive, a habit. Prying implies inquisitiveness when carried to an extreme, and is more commonly used in a bad sense.” Tidings—news expected. “We may be curious to hear the news: we are always anxious for tidings.” Inquisitive, etc.—anxious to find out what had become of them. Hazarded the loss of him—ran the risk of losing him. Hazard—from French *hasard*, a dice for playing. Since—ago. Coasting—steering or sailing in sight of land. Harbours—shelters. Harbour is literally a lodging for an army. From-Anglo-Saxon, here, an army, and *beorgan*, to protect. Hence, harbinger (forerunner), which literally means,—one who goes before to provide a lodging. Story—history. Happy should I think myself in my death—I should die happily. Assured—made sure that. But this day..... were living—this passage contains two words of foreign origin. Point them out.

Para. 9. Hapless—*Hap*, Welsh *hap*, *have*, luck, fortune; hence, *hapless*=unfortunate. To happen is to come by *hap*; happy is having good *hap*. Perhaps is a hybrid—Why? Dignity—(Latin *dignus*) high office. As the strict letter of the law required—as the law strictly enjoined. The duke said if it were...pardon him—the oath that I have sworn, and my princely rank and position would not permit me to annul the law by which a Syracusan merchant, daring to enter into Ephesus, is doomed to death. The direct form would be—“I say, if it were not against the laws which my oath and dignity do not permit me to alter, I would freely pardon you.”

Para. 10. Grace—mercy; kindness. Helpless—not being helped with any aid, i. e., not receiving any aid. Custody—guard. Jailor—French *grole*, a cage, a prison.

Para. 11. Through the careful search—*Through*=on account of. *Careful search* may mean either a search made with care, or a search full of care and anxiety. Which is the meaning here ?

Para. 12. That very same day that Ægeon did—*Very* conveys the same idea as *same*. *Did*—did arrive. “*Do* is often used in modern English sometimes as an *auxiliary*, sometimes as an *emphatic* form, and sometimes as a *substitute* for some other verb. As an auxiliary, (a) in negative sentences, (b) in questions, (c) in answers with an ellipsis of the principal verb. As a substitute for other forms, as—“And when he falls, as I do (i. e.) as I do fall.”—See ANGUS’S *Handbook of the English Tongue*, page 303.

Page 74.

To pass for—to pretend to be. To be known as ; to be regarded or considered as.

Para. 13. To distinguish him from his brother—(*To distinguish* =To mark, separate) that he may not be confounded with his brother. Was able to have paid the money—The perfect infinitive is used instead of the present infinitive to signify something that was intended but not carried into effect. Antipholus of Ephesus was able to pay the money, but he did not pay it, as he did not know that it was his father who had been ordered to be put to death. To sell them—i. e., to sell them as slaves.

Para. 14. Uncle to—*To*=of. When he went to visit the duke his nephew—Is it an adjectival or adverbial sentence ?

Para. 15. Fancy—liking. Patron—*pater*, father. Patriot is from *patria*, native land.

Para. 16. Some money to carry to the inn—This is the direct object of *give*. *To carry to the inn* is equivalent to an adjective modifying *money*. Cf. *Water to drink*=*Drinking* water. How is the infinitive used in—‘He is slow to forgive?’

Para. 17. Pleasant—merry. Dull and melancholy. *Dull*=dejected; low in spirits. Melancholy=gloomy. Cf. the beautiful song in *Much Ado about Nothing*:—

Sing no more ditties, sing no more,
Of dumps so dull and heavy :
The fraud of man was ever so,
Since summer first was leafy.

* * * *

Divert himself—entertain or amuse himself. Latin *dis*, aside, *verto*, to turn—*To divert* is to turn the mind from serious business: hence, to amuse. So, *pastime*. Odd humours—fantastical mirth. Freedoms—liberty.

Page 75.

Para. 18. Solitary—lonely. From Latin *solus*, alone. Fellow drop—kindred drop. Cf. :—

Mountains interposed
Make enemies of nations who had else
Like kindred drops been mingled into one.
—Cowper.

Useless—fruitless.

Para. 19. Returned for—who has returned or come back. Capon—French *chapon*, Latin *capo*, castrated cock. Falls from the spit—is already overdone and beginning to spoil. Out of season—unseasonable, out of the proper time. In season—in good time. Chat—talk idly. Give the frequentative of *chat*. Free manner—unreservedly. A sportive humour—merry mood. Charge—something entrusted to one's care. From your own custody—out of your own keeping.

Para. 20. A jealous temper—a nature that was always ready to be vexed and worried from fear of others being thought more of than herself. Fret—Anglo-Saxon *fretan*, to gnaw or eat away. Hence

to fret here means—to be peevish, to vex (herself). Explain “fretted vault” in the following passage:—

Nor you ye proud, impute to these faults
If memory o’er their tomb no trophies raise
Where through the long-drawn aisle and fretted vault
The pealing anthem swells the note of praise.

—Gray.

Words of.....her husband=*of*--about. Genitive of object; jealousy and reproach being directed towards her husband. **To persuade her out of her groundless suspicions**--to convince her that her suspicions were without any foundation.

Page 76.

Para. 21. Free jests—jest^s not restrained by any consideration of propriety. **Looking strange upon her**—looking as if he never knew her; appearing by his vacant looks to be, as it were, a stranger to her. Cf. :—

I knew thee well,
But in thy fortunes am unlearn’d and strange.

—Timon.

How comes it—how does it happen? **To get away**—to escape. Explain “to get at,” “to get clear.”

Para. 22. **Mistress**—“the feminine suffix *ess* is not Anglo-Saxon. It represents the Latin *ix*.” **Kitchen**—Anglo-Saxon *cyrene*, French *cuisine*, Latin *coquiner* from *coquor*, to cook. **At hearing—parse hearing.**

Para. 23. **Perplexed**—puzzled. Latin *per*, thoroughly, and *plecto*, to weave. **Pretence**—pretext. **Both master and man**—*man* here means *servant*.

Page 77.

Para. 24. **Goldsmith**—a worker in gold. *Smith* is from Anglo-Saxon *smitan*, to smite. “We understand by a smith a black-smith.

as he who *par excellence* smites on the anvil."—Dean Hoare. By his own orders—*by*—according to. Cf. I will go by direction—Richard III. Strange adventures—remarkable occurrences; striking events. Bewitched—charmed. Cf. Befooled.

Para. 25. Arrested—seized. Latin *ad*, to and *resto*, to stand still. Literally, brought to a stand-still. Asked him to pay—*To pay* is part of the object here. Gold chain—Golden and gold should be appropriately used. The Golden Age, not the Gold age: gold mines, not golden mines. Which is the correct usage, Gold fleece or Golden Fleece? Both thinking—parse both. Distinguish between both and two. Debt—Latin *debeo*, to owe. Made the officer. Made = caused. Conclusion—(Latin *con* and *clando*, to shut) end; termination. So, inclinare, cloister, preclude, recluse.

Para. 26. Strange—unknown; foreign. The ship was ready to sail—object, nonn-sentence. Was in no humour to be jested with—was not in the mood which encouraged Dromio to crack jests with him. Dowsabel—lady-love; sweetheart. It is used here satirically. Dowsabel is the English form of *dulcibella*, 'pretty-sweet,' used perhaps first in some pastoral song.

Page 78.

Para. 27. Kindnesses—kind acts. Taking measure—ascertaining by means of a measure, the quantity of silk that would be required to prepare his clothes.

Para. 28. Sorcerers—enchanters. From French *sorcier*, Latin *sors*, lot; *sovereignty* literally means,—the casting of lots. Relieve his master from his bewildered thoughts—extricate his master from the perplexity and confusion into which his mind was thrown by the strange accidents which befell him. Distracted—out of his senses. Illusions—deceptive appearances. Confused—bewildered. Some blessed power, etc.—may some saint protect us from the evils that this accursed place might bring on.

Para. 29. Came up to—approached. Lady—literally one who serves bread to a family. Anglo-Saxon *hlaf-dign*, *hlaf*—loaf, and

digan, to serve. The lord is the supplier of the bread, from *hlaf* and *ord* origin. Denied he had ever promised her a chain—use a participial phrase instead of *that he had*, &c. Taken for his brother—supposed to be his brother. Taxed—*Tax* is allied to *task*. What a person is taxed with—what a person is tasked for. *Tax*, *task* are from Latin *taxo*, to rate : to value.

Page 79.

Para. 30. Freaks—from Latin *fregare*, to rub. *Freak* literally means *restlessness*. Here, whim, caprice. Explain—Freak of fortune. "Sometimes in freak she will instantly change her habitation."

Para. 31. False accusation—an unfounded charge. Persisting in the same story—continuing to repeat the same tale. *Persist*, *desist*, *insist*, *consist*, *risist*, are from the same root with different prefixes. The Latin *sisto* means to stand.

Para. 32. Broken loose—(*To break loose*—to extricate oneself with effort) escaped from the custody of.

Page 80.

Convent—nunnery. Latin *conventus*. From the same root are *advent* *adventure*. Neighbourhood—Anglo-Saxon *neah*, near, *bur*, bauer, dweller, and *hood*, state or condition. Name some other words which like *neighbourhood* signify both person and place.

Para. 33. Protesting—Latin *pro*, before and *testor*, a witness. Solemnly declaring. Explain Protestant ; to protest a bill.

Para. 34. Lunatic—(Latin *luna*, the moon) affected with lunacy, a kind of madness which was supposed to be effected by the moon. Abbess—a female superior of a convent. Shelter—distinguish between *shelter* and *protect*. Do you say—His thick coat protected or sheltered him from the rain ?

Para. 35. Wise to judge—*To judge* is a gerundial infinitive. Teasing jealousy—an uneasy feeling arising from a suspicion that she did not enjoy the sole love of her husband. *Teasing* is from

Anglo-Saxon *tæsan*, to pluck, to pull. **Temper**—Latin *tempus*, time. **Vehemence**—violence. (From Latin *vehemens*, probable a lengthened form of *re*, negative, and *mens*, mind, unreasonable). **Reprehended**—(Latin *re*, back and *prehendo*, to hold. Literally, to hold back) reproved. **Subject**—Latin *sub*, under and *jacio*, to throw. Literally, what is thrown under (for consideration). From the same root are *deject project, reject*. **For speaking of it**—For=By reason of; because of; on account of. **Frequent hints**—constant allusions made in an indirect manner. *Hint* comes from Danish *ymte*, to hum, to whisper. **Still**—always. **Than me**—i. e., than to love me.

Page 81.

Para. 36. The venomous.....dog's tooth—a mad dog's bite is less fatal to life than are the bitter and malignant reproaches, which a jealous wife keeps incessantly pouring into her husband's ears, destructive of his happiness. Read the story of Rip Van Winkle for a diverting account of the unhappiness of a hen-pecked husband under the discipline of a termagant wife. **His sleep was hindered by your railing**—your curtain lectures did not leave him a moment's leisure to go to sleep. **Light**—deranged; disordered. **Sauced with your upbraidings**—seasoned by your jealous reproofs or chidings. **His meat was sauced with your upbraiding**—he could not take his meals in quiet. His food was, as it were, rendered pungent for him by your bitter scoldings. Compare: "Unquiet meals make ill digestions." **Unquiet meals make ill digestions**—the food which one has to snatch while suffering from the volleys of a jealous wife's tongue is very hard to digest. **Debarred**—barred out; shut out. **Recreation**—(Latin *re*, again, and *creo*, to create) amusement. Cf. *Diversion*; *pastime*. If the student brings home to his mind the meaning of *recreation* he will perceive the necessity of seeking some amusement to rally his powers, both mental and physical, exhausted by hard and constant study. The word *recreation* is a standing illustration of the truth of the saying,—“All work and no play makes Jack 'a dull boy.” **Jealous fits**—fits of jealousy.

Para. 37. Excused her sister—justified the conduct of her sister. She has betrayed me to my reproof—by drawing out from me a confession of the manner in which I used to treat my husband, she has entrapped me into condemning and censuring the course of action I have followed. From the admissions I have been unwarily led to make I cannot but condemn myself for the manner in which I treated my husband. .

Para. 39. This eventful day—an eventful day is a day which is marked out from others by the unusualness of the occurrences which it is full of. Day of grace—the respite of a day which the duke granted to Ægeon out of kindness. Doomed—(Anglo-Saxon *dom*, judgment). Sentenced. . So, *doomsday*. Why is the Doomsday-book so called? *To deem*, to form a *doom* or judgment, is from Anglo-Saxon *deman*.

Para. 41. Melancholy procession—*metaucholy*, because Ægeon was under sentence of death, and he was carried about the city to give him a chance of being rescued from death by anyone volunteering to pay his fine.

Page 82.

Eluded the vigilance of his keepers—effected his escape by cunningly throwing his keepers off their guard.

Para. 42. To acknowledge his father in his misery—to admit that Ægeon was his father now that he was in such a wretched plight.

Para. 43. Riddling errors—puzzling mistakes; mistakes by which men are confounded and puzzled as by riddles. Made out—explained. Conjectured aright—guessed the correct explanation. Seeming mysteries—things which appeared but were not in reality inexplicable.

Para. 45. Nunnery—a house for nuns.

Page 83.

Para. 46. Blessed ending—happy close or conclusion. Pleasantly—merrily. Discourse at leisure—talk over more freely and fully.

Para. 47. Had profited—had benefited ; had received much good. Cherished—harboured or entertained in the mind.

Para. 48. Unravelling—untwisting ; disentaugling ; clearing out. Cf. :—

“The ravell'd sleeve of care.”

—*Macbeth*.

Comical blunders—mistakes which by their oddness serve to raise mirth and laughter ; mistakes that excite laughter as a comedy does. **Diverting**—amusing. *Error*, *mistake* and *blunder* are thus distinguished from one another :—*Error* is always used to designate some action which is *blamed* whether morally or intellectually. An *error* is always a *mistake* ; a *mistake* is not always an *error*. A *mistake* may attach no sort of blame to the person who makes it. A *blunder* implies a *mistake* which is inconsistent with the knowledge the agent possesses. If any one is said to make a *blunder* in spelling or grammar, it implies that he is acquainted with both.”—*WHATELY'S Synonyms*.

You speak of an *error* of judgment, an unfortunate *mistake*, an egregious *blunder*.

HAMLET.

Introduction.—The story of Hamlet is found in the Danish Historian Saxo Grammaticus, who wrote about the end of the twelfth century. In the story, as in Shakespeare, Hamlet's father, Harvendile, is treacherously murdered by his brother, who usurps the throne and marries the widow. But the Hamlet of the story, having escaped the various snares laid for him, kills the usurper and ascends the throne.

Summary.—Hamlet, prince of Denmark, was shocked to find his mother Gertrude marry his uncle immediately after the death of his father. The ghost of his father appeared before him and told him that not only had his uncle seized the throne and married the queen, but he actually murdered him. Hamlet from that day

affected a certain wildness in his manners and sought for an opportunity to avenge his wrongs. One day, when he was lecturing his mother on the impropriety of her behaviour, he found some person concealed behind the hangings, and, considering it was his uncle, he stabbed him. Consider his remorse when he discovered that the victim was old Polonius, father of Ophelia, whom Hamlet dearly loved. The unhappy incident gave the king a pretence for sending Hamlet out of the kingdom. But he soon returned, and at the instigation of the king, Laertes, son of Polonius, challenged him to a trial of skill at fencing. The weapon of Laertes was poisoned, and he gave Hamlet a deadly blow. Hamlet did not know of the treachery, and, being incensed with a thrust of Laertes' own sword, repaid Laertes home. The mother of Hamlet at this time drank by mistake out of a bowl which the king had prepared for Hamlet, and as it contained poison she died. Before Hamlet breathed his last, he turned upon his false uncle and with one stroke of the sword despatched him.

Page 83.

Para. 1. Gertrude—Hamlet's mother. **Widow**—Anglo-Saxon, *wedowe*, Latin, *vidua*, hereof of a husband, Sanskrit *vidhava*. **Sudden death**—a death which took place quite unexpectedly, *i.e.*, without the appearance of any previous disorder or disease. **Sudden**, Anglo-Saxon *sodcu*, French *soudain*, Latin *subitus*, coming stealthily, from *sub*, up, and *eo*, to go. **Which**—*i.e.*, the act of marrying. **Noted**—remarked. Latin *noto*, from *gno*, root of *nosco*, to know. **So**, *denote*, *notice*, *notion*. **For**—as being. **Unfeelingness**—hard-heartedness. **A strange act of indiscretion**—an extremely unwise and unusual thing to do. **Or worse**—or worse than an indiscreet or an unfeeling act. **Contemptible in outward appearance**—very ugly to look at; having a repulsive exterior. **Unworthy in disposition**—worthless in character. **Privately made away with**—secretly killed. **To the exclusion of**—excluding; keeping off. **Buried**—Anglo-Saxon *birgan*, to hide.

Para. 2. Unadvised—injudicious. **Impression**—effect. **Made such impression**—so deeply affected. **Almost to idolatry**—bordering on adoration. **Loved and venerated the memory of his dead father almost to idolatry**—cherished and respected the memory of his deceased father to a degree bordering on adoration. **Hamlet sacredly treasured up in his mind the memory of his dead father.** **Being of a nice sense of honour**—possessed of a mind filled with truly noble and elevated sentiments; scrupulously careful or exact in the performance of all that the most correct and approved conduct required. **A most exquisite practiser of decorum**—an excellent observer of the rules of decency and propriety. **Did sorely.....** **Gertrude**—was deeply affected with grief at this unbecoming course followed by his mother.

Page 84.

Over-clouded—overcast with sorrow. **Good looks**—handsome features or appearance. **His customary pleasure in books forsook him**—he no longer took any delight in his studies as he had been wont to do before. **Proper**—suitable. **Acceptable**—agreeable. **Unweeded garden**—a garden full of rank weeds. **Weed**, Anglo-Saxon *weod*, an herb; Dutch *wieden*, to cleanse. Give the meaning of its homonym in “a widow’s weeds.” **Wholesome**—useful. Its antonym is noxious. See notes on *Macbeth*. **Choked**—killed by being deprived of light and moisture. **Welghed**—pressed: hang. **Welghed so much on his spirits**—depressed him so greatly. **Bitter**—*Bitter* is from *bite*. Anglo-Saxon *biter*, *bitan*, to bite. A thing is said to be *bitter*, when it is *biting* to the taste. A *bit* is a small piece bitten off. Translate into your vernacular:—Give me a bite of your orange. **A sore indignity**—a grievous wrong; an action which hurt him much, as it showed in what poor estimation he was held. **Galled**—pained; annoyed. **Took away**—robbed. **Forgetful to**—oblivious of. **Would hang...to him**—would cling to him as if her love had been fed and nourished by him. **Grow to**—to be united in growth. Cf:—

“For ever may my knee grow to the earth.”

—Richard II.

Unlawful—*i. e.*, incestuous. **Indecent haste**—because sufficient time was not allowed to lapse before the marriage was consummated. **Unkingly character**—a character void of all the attributes which should grace a king. **Dashed the spirits**—made him dejected; made him sad and gloomy. **To dash**—to strike suddenly or violently. Trace this idea in the following,—**To dash off** a review; a bold dash at the enemy. His hopes received a dash. A dashing fellow. **Brought a cloud of the mind**—filled the mind with gloom and melancholy.

Para. 3. A suit of deep black—black or mourning dress. In compliment—out of courtesy. Brought to—induced. To join in—to take a part in. **Disgraceful day**—because of the shameful marriage of his mother with Clandius.

Para. 4. What mostly...death—the want of certain information as to the real cause of his father's death made him very much uneasy. It was given out by Claudius—Claudius spread the report. **Shrewd**—*Shrew* is a brawling, troublesome woman. **Shrewed**—having the nature of a shrew; hence, wicked, destructive, as—“The ant is a shrewd insect for the garden.”—*Bacon*. It then came to mean *cauniny*; showing an acute judgment. **Shrewd suspicions**—surmises or conjectures formed with great sharpness and acuteness of judgment.

Para. 5. How far.....conjecture—*Conjecture*—suspicion; guess. The whole is a *subject non-sentence*. What he.....mother—in what light he should regard (or read) his mother's conduct. Was privy to this murder—knew beforehand that murder was intended.

Page 85.

Without—*Without* (Adv.) means (1) outside, (2) externally. *Without* (prep.) means (1) beyond, (2) except, (3) on the outside of, (4) not with.

Para. 6. Apparition—spectre from the same root as appearance, apparent. Latin *ad*, to, and *pareo*, to come forth. **Suit**—a

number of things used together ; a set. *Suit* comes from French *suiver*, Latin *sequor*, to follow. *Suite*—A train of followers ; a set of rooms. *Suit*—Attendance, as, out of suits with fortune. Mention some words derived from the root *sequor*. *Just*—exactly. *Beard*—Latin *barba*, perhaps from the root of Icelandic *bard*, a lip. *To take by the beard*, to oppose to the face. *Beardless*—young. *Grisly*—somewhat grey. What other meaning has it? *Sable*—black. The colour a *sable silvered*—a black colour tinged with grey. Parse *sable* as a noun here. *Addressed itself*—made itself ready. *Addressed itself to motion*—began to make movements, or rather draw in its breath and assume the posture and appearance of one about to open his lips. *It shrunk in haste away*—it recoiled or fell back in haste.

Para. 7. Which was too consistent and agreeing with itself to disbelieve—there was nothing contradictory and inconsistent in the description given of the ghost's appearance as to make it be disbelieved. On the construction of "to disbelieve" observe that "sometimes a transitive verb has a passive sense, with an active form, as, "The cakes ate sharp and crisp—The cakes were eaten sharp and crisp."—MORRIS'S *Outlines of English Accidence*. Watch—guard. That such an appearance did not come for nothing—that the ghost had some object in making its appearance. To impart—to reveal.

Para. 8. Stand—station. Raw and nipping—chilly and biting. Cf. Nipped in the bud. Fell into some talk—entered into some conversation. Broken off—interrupted ; cut short.

Para. 9. He at first.....peace to his spirit—cf :—

Angels and ministers of grace, defend us !—
 Be thou a spirit of health, or goblin damned,
 Bring with the airs from heaven, or blasts from hell,
 Be thy intents wicked or charitable,
 Thou com'st in such a questionable shape,
 That I will speak to thee. I'll call the Hamlet.

King, father, royal Dane : O ! answer me :
 Let me not burst in ignorance, but tell,
 Why thy canoniz'd bones hearsed in death
 Have burst their cerements ; Why the sepulchre,
 Wherein we saw thee quietly inurn'd
 Hath op'd his ponderous and marble jaws,
 To cast thee up again !

—Hamlet.

Page 86.

Bestowed—safely deposited in the grave. **Beckoned**—(Anglo-Saxon *beacnian*, to point with the finger.) Made a signal with the hand. *Beacon* is from the same root, a beacon fire being a signal fire lighted to give intimation of an approaching danger. **Removed**—retired. Give the derivation. **Cliff**—a *cleft* or *cloven* rocks ; a steep rock. *Cleave* is from Anglo-Saxon *cleafan*, to split or to divide. The homonym *cleave*, to adhere, is from the root *clifan*, to stick ; whence also *clay*, something which sticks. **Might deprive the prince of his reason**—might make the prince mad with fright. **Bursting**—breaking forth.

Para. 10. The spirit broke silence—the ghost began to speak. As Hamlet had already but too much suspected—the meaning here is,—As Hamlet had already very correctly guessed. That his father had been cut off by some foul play was more than a suspicion in Hamlet's mind. It amounted to a belief or conviction. **Henbane**—a plant, highly narcotic and used in medicine as a substitute for opium. **Antipathy**—Greek *anti*, against and *pathos*, feeling. A contrariety in the properties of substances. Hence “ which has such an antipathy ” means,—which is so deadly. Give the antonym of *antipathy*. **Courses**—runs through. Latin *curro*, to run. So, current, courser, courier. **Baking up**—drying up : turning the blood into something like glue or paste. **Cf :—**

“ If melancholy had baked thy blood.

—King John.

Leprosy—Greek *lepros*, scale *lepos*, a scalo; *lepo*, to peel off. **Fall off from**—depart from; go astray. **Wedded love**—a love cemented by holy marriage. **Leave her to Heaven, and to the stings and thorns of conscience**—leave her to be punished by God and to suffer from remorse at her own guilt.

Page 87.

Para. 11. **Took up**—embraced; adopted. **And nothing live in his brain**—and nothing should be harboured in his mind. **Enjoin**—direct. *Enjoin* is to join to, from *cu*, and *jungo*, to join. So *injunction*, *juncture*, *jointure* is to bring into juxtaposition in circumstances which favour a suspicion of compulsion. **Conversation**—talk. Latin *con*, intensive, and *verto*, to turn. Literally, the act of turning round frequently. Mention some other words derived from the root *verto*.

Para. 12. **Unhinged his mind**—drove him mad; threw his mind into a wavering or confused state. Literally, put the mind off its hinges. So “to unhinge opinion” means—to make one wavering in his opinions. **Almost drove him beside his reason**—made him almost mad. **Beside**—aside from; out of. **Explain**—He was beside himself with joy. **Beside the point**. Distinguish between *beside* and *besides*. **Which might subject him to observation**—which might make his conduct be noticed or watched by other. *To subject* literally means—to place under. **Set his uncle upon his guard**—put his uncle on the alert; made his uncle be careful and circumspect. **Covered**—disguised; hidden. **A disguise of pretended lunacy**—a mask of affected insanity.

Para. 13. **Affected**—put on; pretended. **A certain wildness and strangeness in his apparel**—Hamlet, in order to make people believe that he was really deranged in mind, suited his dress to his assumed character. From this time he used to dress himself in a somewhat fantastic and odd fashion. **Counterfeited the madman**—feigned to be mad. **Counterfeited**=Acted, from French *contrefair*. Latin *contrafacio*, to make in opposition (to the real article).

to imitate. Derive *surfeit*, *satisfaction*. **Malady**—illness ; complaint. A lingering or deep-seated disorder is generally called a malady. French, *maladie*. They thought they had found out the object—they believed that they had discovered the lady whom he was deeply in love with.

Para. 14. **Malancholy way**—*Way*=path, course ; here figuratively, tendency. Hence, a melancholy turn of mind. **Tenders**—offers. **Importuned her**—Latin *in*, not, and *portus*, a harbour, a resting-place. Hence, the meaning is,—gave her no rest by incessantly urging his request ; urged or pressed her with solicitations. **In honourable fashion**—in a manner consistent with honour. **Laterly**—of late. **Neglect**—disregard. From Latin *negligo*, *neg*, not, and *lego*, together. So, *collect*. Mind that *elect* is from *eliogo*, *e*, out, and *lego*, to choose. Derive *elegance*, *college*. **Affected**—pretended.

Page 88.

Settled unkindness—a rooted dislike. **Observant**—attentive. **Impaired**—injured. From French *empirer*, *en*, to make, and *pire*, Latin *pejor*, worse. **She compared...sound**—Cf. :—

“ Now see that noble and most sovereign reason
Like sweet bells jangled out of tune and harsh.”

—*Hamlet*.

Jangled—made to sound discordantly.

Para. 15. **Rough business**—a work of a stern and violent character requiring energy and severity. **In hand**—to do. **The playful state of courtship**—because at the time of wooing, the mind is unbent, as it were, from serious occupations. **Admit of the society**—*Admit of*=cannot dwell with. **So idle a passion**—such a silly or foolish passion. **But that, &c.**—*parse but*. **Soft thoughts**—sweet recollections. **Would come between**—would rise at intervals. **Wild starts**—extravagant sallies or outbursts. **Wild starts of passion**—unconnected outbursts of strong feeling. **Extravagant terms**—language full of hyperboles. **Such as agreed with his supposed madness**—such as suited the deranged state of mind

which he was supposed to be in. At the bottom—in the recesses. Extravagant phrases—language in which common sense and propriety were not observed. Wildness—mental derangement. Accustomed way—usual course of life.

Para. 16. Lay deeper—was more deep-seated. Than she supposed—than she supposed *it to lie*. Still haunted his imagination—was always present in his mind. Sacred injunction—an order which he must keep holy. To compass—to effect. A restraint.....break through—a check to the execution of his project which he could not get rid of.

Page 89.

Blunted—deprived the sharpness of. Still blunted the edge of his purpose—took off all energy or vigour of purpose; made him in a manner irresolute. Cf. :—

And love and friendship's finely pointed dart
Fell blunted from each indurated heart.

—*Goldsmith.*

Wavering of purpose—an unsteadiness of purpose. From proceeding to extremities—from having recourse to extreme measures. To take advantage of—to profit by. More certain grounds to go upon—surer reasons for undertaking the work. Delusion—Both *delusion* and *illusion* are from the root *ludo*, to play. "A *delusion* is a false view entertained of something which really exists, but which does not possess the quality or attribute erroneously ascribed to it. An *illusion* is an idea which is presented before our bodily or mental vision and which does not exist in reality."—*WHATELY'S Synonyms*. Hamlet saw an apparition, but his weakness and melancholy might have erroneously invested it with the shape and figure of his dead father.

Para. 17. Irresolute mind—undecided state of mind. Priam—Priam was slain by Neoptolemus, son of Achilles, at the siege of Troy by the Greeks. Setting forth—describing. Mad grief—violent grief resembling madness in its effects. With a poor clout.....him

—Cf. “A clout upon that head where late the diadem stood.”—*Hamlet*. Clout—a simple piece of linen. Where a crown had been—an adjective sentence to head. Lively—vividly. A broken voice—a faltering tone. Real tears—genuine tears, not such as one affects to shed; opposed to *mock tears*. Put Hamlet upon thinking—led Hamlet to think. Fictitious speech—a speech in which he merely pretended to utter certain thoughts. Could work himself up to passion by a mere fictitious speech—could make himself be so affected with grief at the recitation of a speech allotted to him in the play. Cue—catchword. It is a stage term, meaning the words which, spoken by one actor, are the signal for some other actor to enter or make a speech. Cf. “When my cue comes, call me, and I will answer.” Here, hint. A real king—opposed to a fictitious king in play. Muddy forgetfulness—stupid oblivion. That is revenge.....forgetfulness—an instance of personal metaphor. Represented to the life—acted in a manner so true to nature as to leave an impression of reality on the mind.

Page 90. .

He remembered.....committed. Cf.—

Hum, I have heard
That guilty creatures, sitting a play,
Have, by the very cunning of the scene,
Been struck so to the soul that presently
They have proclaimed their malefactions
For murder, though it have no tongue, will speak
With most miraculous organ.

—*Hamlet*.

“Heywood in this ‘Apology for Actors’ gives two examples of murder being discovered in this way, one at Lynn, the other at Amsterdam.”—*Wright*. Narrowly—closely. To gather with more certainty—to know more precisely. Representation—performance.

Para. 18. Vienna—the capital of Austria.

Para. 19. The trap which was laid for him—the snare spread for him. Outlive—survive. Accursed—subjected to a curse. Change

colour at this expression—turn pale at these words. Bad as worm-wood—bitter like worm-wood. To sit out the rest of the play—to stay till the play was over. The usurper, king Claudius, conscience-struck with witnessing that part of the play in which Lucienus pours poison into Gonzaga's ears, and not able to sit for a time long enough to witness the conclusion of the play, called for lights. On a sudden—suddenly. Lights—torches. Illusion—false show. Now that he was certainly informed—*Now that he*—seeing that he. It is an adverbial sentence.

Page 91.

Para. 20. Signify—intimate ; declare. Latin *significo signum*—sign, and *facio*, to make. From *signum* comes *signal*, *sign*. Conference—Latin *con*, together, and *fero*, to bring. Discourse—An appointed meeting for discussion. So, *prefer*, *refer*, *offer*, *proffer*. To confer, literally means,—to bring together for comparison ; hence, to give or bestow ; to talk or consult together. Partial report—one-sided and therefore favourable report. Let slip—omit. Which it might much import the king to know—which it might be of great importance to the king to be acquainted with. To plant himself—to take his station. Hangings—tapestry. Crooked maxims—rules of conduct and methods of government that were not quite straightforward. Grown old in crooked maxims—become habituated to follow the rules of worldly wisdom. Read the advice given by Polonius to his son Leartes.—*Hamlet*, Act I. Sc. iii. Lines 59—80. Get at—come at. In an indirect and crooked way—not by a straightforward but a sinister course.

Para. 21. Roundest—plainest and most unreserved. In the roundest way—in the most unceremonious manner. *Romdest*—most positive, decided, or plain-spoken manner. Explain : A round-about way. To be round with you. In round numbers. "I will a round unvarnished tale deliver." At a round rate. Idle—foolish ; silly. *Wrist*, *writtle*, and *wrest* are allied words. "The wrist," says Dean Hoare, "is that joint by which we wrest or pull off anything."

Officious—interfering. **Officious counsellor**—a meddling minister who is always obtruding his services. *Officious* was formerly used in a good sense meaning—kind ; obliging,

Page 92.

O me!—an exclamation of grief. The expression is elliptical. *Me* is a dative. The full form is,—O, woe is me. **Rash**—(Anglo-Saxon, *hrysan*, to rush) hasty ; sudden ; inconsiderate. *Rash* was formerly used as a verb signifying to snatch or seize. “ *Rashes*, slices of bacon *hastily* fried, probably partakes of this derivation.” **Hamlet had gone too far to leave off here**—it would not have been proper for Hamlet to break off the conference here, having already proceeded to the length of calling his mother the murderess of his father. **Plainly**—openly ; without disguise. **Are to be tenderly treated**—should be dealt with in a gentle and not a harsh manner. **So as that harshness is meant for her good**—provided that the rough language is used with the view of reclaiming her from her evil ways. **Not done**—not employed. **In moving terms**—in affecting language. Explain *moving* in the following passage :—

The moving accident is not my trade ;

To freeze the blood I have no ready art ;

'Tis my delight, alone in summer shade

To pipe a simple song for thinking hearts.

—Wordsworth.

Heinousness—French *haineux*—*haine*, from *hair*, to hate ; wickedness ; atrocity. **Reputed murderer**—a murderer in the opinion and estimation of the public. **Hypocrisy**—(Greek *hypocrisis*, from *hypo*, under, and *kriuo*, to decide) dissimulation ; deceitful appearance. *Crisis*, *critic*, are from the same root. **Wedding contracts**—vows taken at marriage. **Make all wedding contracts to be less than gamesters' oaths**—make marriage vows be held as light as are the oaths made by gamesters, who are notoriously addicted to profane and blasphemous swearing. **And religion to be a mockery and a mere form of words**—and turn religion into an empty show and

a mere parade of unmeaning words. *Religion* is from Latin *re*, back, and *ligo*, to bind. *Ligament*, *ligature* are from the same root. **That the heavens.....of it**—the meaning simply is that she was abhorred both by God and man for her detestable conduct. **Sick of**—to be disgusted with; to feel a loathing or nausea. **Bade her mark the difference**—asked her to observe the disparity or unlikeness. **Grace—beauty. How like a god he looked**—Cf. What a piece of work is a man! how noble in reason! how infinite in faculty! in form and moving how express and admirable! in action how like an angel! in apprehension how like a god! the beauty of the world! the paragon of animals!—*Hamlet*. **Apollo**—one of the greatest gods among the Greeks and Romans. He was the son of Jupiter, and sometimes known as the sun-god. **Jupiter**—the son of Saturn and Ops, the king of heaven, and the chief god of the Romans. **Mars**—the god of war. **Posture**—(in Shakespeare “station”) attitude; the act or mode of standing. **Mercury**—the Roman god of commerce and gain. He became identified with the Greek god. **Hermes**—the swift-footed messenger of the gods. **Alighted**—descended. **Heaven.....kissing—touching the sky. Mildew**—(Literally, flour-dew) a white appearance on the leaves of plants consisting of minute fungi. **Wholesome brother**—a brother who was possessed of sound health. **So turn her eyes inward upon her soul**—make her in this manner reflect upon her conduct, or subject her conduct to a strict self-examination. Metaphysicians call this an act of introspection. **As a thief**—as those used by a thief.

Page 93.

Not to flatter her wicked soul, &c.—*flatter* literally means to make flat by stroking. Hence, to soothe, to blandish. The meaning is,—not to cheer or encourage her guilty mind with the false belief that the ghost was but the phantom of a diseased mind. **Temperately**—gently; not violently. **Company**—(Latin *com*, with, and *panis*, bread) society. *Pantry* is indirectly from the same root.

Para. 22. Was at leisure—had time in his hand. Unfortunate rashness—a rashness which led to the commission of an unfortunate or sad act.

Para. 23. This unfortunate death of Polonius—this death of Polonius which was a misfortune. Fearing him as dangerous—dreading him as a dangerous person. With all her faults—*With*—notwithstanding. Queen is the object of *dreaded*. Called to account—made to answer. A ship bound for—bound literally means—made fast with a band. Here going (as to a place where its voyage will end). What other preposition does *bound* admit after it? There pretended—falsely alleged therein. Secretly got at the letters—surreptitiously got possession of the letters. Erasing—scraping out. Latin *prædo*, *e.* out, and *rasus*, to scrape. Sealing—fastening with a seal. Seal is from *sigillum*, diminutive of *signum*, a mark. Explain—a sealed book; under hand and seal. Boarded—went on board the ship; hence, attacked. Bore away—sailed away. Made the best of their way to England—steered for England in the best possible way they could. To make the best of—to reduce to the least possible inconvenience. Their deserved destruction—a death which they richly merited.

Page 94.

Para. 24. Pirates—Latin *pirata*, sea-robbers. Might do them a good turn—might do them a piece of service. Explain—"I follow him to serve my turn upon him."—*Othello*. "Then it was my turn to fly and now it is thine." Next—in next (Anglo-Saxon *neh-st*) the guttural and the sibilant form *x*—*Adams*. Spectacle—Latin *spectaculum* from *specto*, intensive of *specio*, to look at. A sigh. Expect is from the root *specto*. Derive inspection. Offered—Give its meaning from the derivation. Name some other cognate words.

Para. 25. Funeral—obsequies; burial. Latin *funus*, a funeral procession. Funeral—pertaining to a funeral; hence, dismal, mournful. The wits of this young lady had begun to turn over—

she was losing her reason. Wits—mental powers. Cf. "Bless thy five wits."—*Lear*. To turn—to change, to be overthrown or deranged. A violent death—a death brought on by other than natural course. *Violent*, from Latin *violens*, from the root *vis*, strength, means—acting with force or strength. Affected—acted upon; grieved. Go about—be busy in; set about at. Sometimes such—such=Such songs. As if she...her—as if she had no recollection of past history. Willow—"the willow, especially the weeping willow, is often used as an emblem of sorrow, desolation or desertion." Cf. :—

Know ye the land where the cypress and the willow
Are emblems of deeds that are done in their day.

—Byron.

Slanting—in an inclined manner. Unwatched—not looked after or observed with vigilance. Daisies—*The daisy* is literally the day's eye, a spring flower. "Unaccented syllables are much weaker than accented ones, and we find unaccented syllables dropping off—(a) At the beginning of words (Aphoeresis), as spy=old French *espier*; story=Old French *estoire*, Latin, *historia*; stranger—Old French *extraneus*. (b) At the end of words (Apocope), as name—Old English *nama*; riches—Old English *richesse*. (c) The accent causes two syllables to blend into one (syncope), as, palsy—Greek *paralysis*; sexton—sacristan Head—Old English *heafod*. In compounds the same principle is at work and their origin is obscured :—Elbow—Old English *elu-boga* (arm bending) nostril—Old English *nose-thyrel* (nose-hole). Threshold—Old English *threse-nold* (thresh-wood, i. e. door beaten or trodden by the feet."—MORRIS'S *Outlines of English Accidence*. Clambering—climbing with difficulty. Precipitated—Latin *præ*, before, and *caput*, head. To *precipitate* is to throw head foremost. *Precipice*, a steep descent, literally means—a falling head foremost. To *precipitate*—to rush headlong. Bore her up—supported her up; kept her afloat. Scraps—snatches. Natural—Latin *nascor*, *natus*, being to be born. Born in. A creature nature to that element—a

being whose native home was the water. Pulled her in—drew her down. What all this show imported—what this ceremony meant. To interrupt—to disturb. Latin *inter*, between, and *rumpo*, to break. From the same root are *disruption*, *rupture*, *corruptible*. In maiden burials—in the interment of virgins.

Page 95.

All frantic—parse *all*. Transport—ecstasy. You can also say *transport of joy*. Latin *trans*, across, and *porto*, to carry. Trace the other meanings of *transport* from the root. Grappled him—laid fast hold of him. Excused his.....brave Laertes—apologized for having rashly and inconsiderately jumped into the grave of Ophelia as if from a motive of defying Laertes.

Para. 26. But out of the grief and anger of Laertes the king contrived destruction for Hamlet—Clandius laid a scheme for effecting the murder of Hamlet by working on the mind of Laertes, who already looked upon Hamlet with bitter feelings of enmity for the wrong he had suffered at his hands. Set on—instigated. Cover—mask; disguise. A friendly trial of skill at fencing—a match or contest of proficiency at sword-play carried on between friends. A poisoned weapon—a weapon that was dipped in poison. Great wagers were laid—heavy sums were staked. Foils—blunt swords. Did but play with Hamlet.—*To play*—to sport and not to carry on the contest in serious and earnest mood. Dissembling—(French *dissembler*, Latin *dissimilis*, *dis*, negative, and *similis*, like) putting on an untrue appearance. Extolled—(Latin *ex*, up, and *tollo*; to lift) praised. Issue—end; result. French *issue*, to flow out, from Latin *exire*, to go out. Passes—thrusts. Incensed—Latin *incendo*, *incensus*, to kindle—in, and *caudeo* to grow inflamed with anger. *Incendiary*, and *incandescent* are from the same root. *Inceuse* (*n*), perfume; literally, something set on fire. Hence *censer*, a pan in which incense is burnt. Scuffle—a confused contest or tumultuous struggle for victory. Not knowing the whole of the treachery—being ignorant of the insidious plot in its entirety. *Treachery* from

Provençal *trachor*, to betray, Latin *trado*, to give over. Innocent weapon—a sword which was neither sharp nor poisoned. With a thrust.....home—paid Laertes back by inflicting on him a deep wound with a push of Laertes' own sword. Justly—rightly. Was, caught in his own treachery—fell a victim to his own perfidy. Inadvertently—heedlessly. Latin *in*, not, *ad* to, and *verto*, to turn. *Advertise* is from the same root. Being warm in fencing—being heated by the toils of the play. Call for—ask for.

Page 96.

To make sure of Hamlet—to give him no chance of escaping from the snare prepared for him. While he sought it out—while he began to ascertain its nature and extent. Feeling his life go away with the wound—perceiving that his wound was fatal to him, or that he was bleeding to death. Envenomed point—the point of the sword which was dipped in poison. Turned upon—attacked. This fatal tragedy—the mournful circumstance of Hamlet's death. Had made a motion as if, &c.—for motion in (this sense, Cf. Had lifted up its head and did address itself to motion.—*Hamlet*.) Had addressed himself as if—or, had shewn by the movement of his body that, &c. Cf :—

Never believe it ;
I am more an antique Roman than a Dane,
Here's yet some liquor left.

—*Hamlet*.

Privy to—intimately acquainted with. Cracked—burst; broke. Guardianship—protecting care. Prince-like—Cf. *Daughter-like*, in the *Tempest*. Would have proved a most royal and complete king—would have turned out a most noble and accomplished king.

Criticism.—*Hamlet*, says Schlegel, is singular in its kind...The dread appearance of the ghost, the perpetration of the crime which fills the king with alarm, Hamlet's pretended and Ophelia's real madness, her death and burial, the meeting of Hamlet and Laertes

at her grave, their combat and the great determination are very moving and animating.

"Hamlet is of a highly cultivated mind, a prince of royal manners, endowed with the finest sense of propriety. He has been condemned both for his harshness in repulsing the love of Ophelia and for his insensibility at her death. But he is too much overwhelmed with his own sorrow to have any compassion to spare for others."

Ophelia is a character almost too exquisitely touched to be dwelt upon. Her love, her madness, her death are highly pathetic.

THE TEMPEST.

Summary.—Prospero was Duke of Milan, a large town in Italy. He was deposed by his younger brother Antonio, with the aid of the king of Naples. Antonio had put Prospero and his daughter Miranda, then quite a child, in a boat, and left them to perish. But a certain nobleman of Milan, Gonzalo by name, had privately placed in the boat provisions and some of Prospero's books. They arrived safe at a desert island, where Prospero, by virtue of his magic art, released many good spirits imprisoned by the witch Sycorax. These spirits, therefore, became obedient to Prospero. The chief of them was Ariel. By his orders the spirits one day raised a violent storm, in the midst of which was a fine large ship which contained the king of Naples, his son Ferdinand, Prospero's brother Antonio, and his old friend Gonzalo and many others. Ariel managed the affair so beautifully that not a single life was lost, and every person in the ship thought the others to be drowned. Ferdinand was brought by Ariel into the presence of Miranda. No sooner they saw each other than they fell in love. After putting Ferdinand to certain hardships to test his constancy, Prospero promised to give him his daughter. The dukedom of Milan was then restored to Prospero, and he buried his magic books in the earth. Ariel received his liberty for his services. They soon arrived after a pleasant voyage at Naples under the safe convoy of Ariel.

Page 97.

Para. 1. Certain—particular. In the sea—in the midst of the ocean. The only inhabitants—the only persons inhabiting. A more correct expression would be: ‘the only human inhabitants.’ Whose name was Prospero—Prospero by name; who was called Prospero. Beautiful—handsome; charming. So young—of so small an age; at such an early age. Memory—recollection. Had no memory—did not recollect. Her father’s—her father’s face.

Para. 2. Cell—a hollow place in the earth. Made out—cut out; carved out. Apartments—rooms.

Page 98.

Study—study-room; room set apart for study. **There**—in the study-room. **Chiefly**—particularly. **Treated of magic**—had magic for their subject. **Magic**—the art of using supernatural power for invoking supernatural beings and performing wonderful deeds with their aid; sorcery. **Study**—branch of learning. It is in apposition to *magic*. **Affected**—loved; pursued. **Knowledge of this art**—knowledge of magic. *Knowledge* is in the objective case governed by *found*. **Chance**—fate; fortune. **Thrown**—forced; placed. **Being thrown**—it qualifies *Prospero*. **Strange chance**—singular turn of fortune. **Enchanted**—held under charm; bewitched. **Witch**—sorceress; enchantress. **His arrival**—the arrival of Prospero; his landing on the island. **Virtue**—power. **Art**—magic. **Released**—set free; set at liberty. **Spirits**—demons. **Good spirits**—good-natured fairies. **Bodies**—trunks. **Wicked**—vile; evil. **Execute**—they, perform. **Will**—wish. **These.....Prospero**—these good spirits always carried out the orders of Prospero. **Chief**—most important.

Para. 3. **Lively**—active; sprightly. **Sprite**—it is the short form of *spirit*. In his nature—was not mischievous; did harm to nobody. **Pleasure**—delight. **Took...pleasure**—was somewhat more than usually pleased. **Tormenting**—teasing. **Ugly**—mis-shaped.

Monster—unnatural being. **Grudge**—spite. He owed him a grudge—he bore him a spite; he had reasons for being spiteful towards him. **Old**—former. **Caliban**—objective of *found*. **Woods**—forests. **Strange**—odd. **Mis-shapen**—ngly. A strange, &c.—an odd-looking deformed creature. **For less, &c.**—resembling more an ape or monkey than a man. **Home**—is objective of place. **Nature**—disposition. **Would not learn**—was not inclined to learn. **Employed**—used. **Fetch**—bring. **Laborious**—requiring labour; toilsome; hard. **Offices**—works; duties. **Charge**—duty. And ariel...services—and it was the duty of Ariel to get these works done by him (Caliban).

Para. 4. **Neglected**—omitted to do. **Was invisible**—could not be seen. **Who was...Prospero's**—who could not be seen by any body except Prospero. It is an example of the figure *synecdoche*, *eyes* being used for men. **Slyly**—stealthily; secretly. **Would come slyly**—used to come stealthily. **Pinch**—to squeeze the flesh with fingers to give pain. **Tumble**—throw head over heels. **Mire**—mud. **Tumble him down into the mire**—throw him headlong into the mud. **Likeness**—shape. **In the Likeness**—taking the shape. **Make mouths**—make faces; make grimaces; *munh chirhana*. **Swiftly**—quickly. **Shape**—appearance. **Hedgehog**—a small four-footed animal covered with sharp prickles on its back. **Tumbling**—rolling about. **Feared**—was afraid. **Quills**—prickles. **Prick**—pierce. **Bare**—naked. **Such-like**—similar. **Vexatious**—annoying. **Tricks** artifices; contrivances. **Torment**—tease; annoy. **With a variety of such like vexations**—Shakespeare describes those vexations in the words of Caliban :—

For every trifle they are set upon me.
Sometime like apes that howl and chatter at me
And after bite me, then like hedgehogs which
Lie tumbling in my barefoot way and mount
Their pricks at my football.

Para. 5. **Obedient to his will**—ready to obey all his commands. **Having, &c.**—having these powerful spirits at his service. **By their**

means—with their aid. **Command**—rule. **Command...sea**—keep the winds and the waves of the ocean at his command; make them blow and rise in whatever direction and place he pleased. **Raised**—caused to rise. **Violent**—terrible. **Struggling**—contending. **Wild**—stormy. **Struggling, &c.**—dashing against the stormy waves. **Swallow**—devour. **That every...up**—that at every instant it seemed that it was going to destroy the ship. **Beings like themselves**—human beings. **Which was full...themselves**—is the object of *told*. **Dreadful**—fearful; terrible. **Have pity**—take pity. **Distress**—affliction. **See**—look; it is an interjection. **Dashed to pieces**—broken to pieces. **Poor souls**—wretched beings. **Perish**—die. **They will all perish**—all of them will be destroyed.

Page 98.

I would, &c.—I would make land swallow up the sea leaving no trace of water. **Power**—capacity. **Destroyed**—sunk. **Precious souls**—valuable lives. “*Only dear father,*” &c....Indirect narration:—Miranda said to her father, if by his art he had raised that dreadful storm, he should have pity on their sad distress. She cried that the vessel would be dashed to pieces and the poor souls would all perish. If she had power she would sink the sea beneath the earth, rather than the good ship should be destroyed with all the precious souls within her.

Paras. 6—11. **Amazed**—astonished. **Ordered**—arranged. **No person...hurt**—no injury will be done to any one in the ship. **In care of you**—for your good. **You are ignorant**—you do not know. **You have no...father**—the only knowledge that you have of me is that I am your father. **You cannot**—you cannot remember. **I can**—I can remember. **By what**—what recollections have you of any house or person before you came to this island? **Dream**—vision. **It seems...dream**—my recollections of the past appear to be as undefined as those of a dream. **Attended upon**—served. **Lives**—

remains impressed. This still...mind—that you yet recollect it. Shakespeare's words are :—

But how is it
That this lives in thy mind ?

How came you here—Noun clause, object of remember. Nothing more—no more.

Paras. 12—22. Ago—past. continued—added ; went on saying. My only heir—my only child to inherit me. Trusted—put confidence in ; entrusted. Fond of—loved very much. Retirement—seclusion. Deep—profound ; intense. Deep study—continued study ; intense application to books. Commonly—usually ; generally. State affairs—the government. Management of state affairs—management of my dukedom. False—untrue ; faithless. Proved—showed himself to be. Neglecting—taking no care of ; disregarding. Ends—objects. Worldly ends—earthly concerns. Buried—absorbed. Neglecting all worldly ends, &c.—these words have been taken from Shakespeare which thus stand :

I thus neglecting worldly ends, of all dedicated
To closeness and the bettering of my mind.

Buried in my books—deeply absorbed in my studies. Dedicate—devote. Bettering—improvement. Power—authority. Being thus...power—having in this way usurped my authority. Indeed—in fact. The duke indeed—the actual duke. Opportunity—favourable occasion. Popular—known. Making himself popular among—obtaining the affections of. Awakened—excited. Proud—lofty. Proud ambition—ambitious desire. Deprive...dukedom—take the dukedom away from me. This, i. e., depriving Prospero of his dukedom. Effected—did ; executed. Aid—help ; support. Wherefore—why. Destroy—kill. “ Wherefore, &c....as ”—in Indirect Narration :—Miranda enquired why they (Antonio and others) did not destroy them (Prospero and Miranda). Child—in the vocative case. Durst not—dared not ; had not the courage to do so. So dear...me—so dearly my subjects loved me. Carried—

took. **Ship**—is in the objective case governed by the prepositional phrase, *on board*. **League**—three miles. **At sea**—in the midst of the ocean. **Forced us**—forcibly put us.

Page 99.

Tackle—rigging. **Perish**—die. **One Gonzalo**—a certain person Gonzalo by name. 'One' is here used to denote that his name was not previously mentioned. **Privately**—secretly. **Provision**—food. **Apparel**—dress; clothing. **Prize**—value. **Above**—more than. **Trouble**—source of uneasiness. **Then**—at that time of distress. "My child...dukedom." In Indirect Narration:—Her father answered that they (Antonio and his people) durst not, so dear was the love his (Prospero's) people bore him (Prospero). Antonio carried them (Prospero and Miranda) on board a ship, and when they were some leagues out at sea, he (Antonio) forced them into a small boat without either tackle, sail or mast; there he (Antonio) left them as he (Antonio) thought to perish. But a kind lord of his (Prospero's) court, one Gonzalo, who loved him (Prospero), had privately placed in the boat water, provisions, apparel and some books which he (Prospero) prized above his dukedom. "O my father, &c....then." In Indirect Narration:—Miranda exclaimed what a trouble must she have been to him (her father) then. **My love**—my dearest; my dear child. It is a form of endearment. **Cherub**—angel. **Preserve**—protect. **Innocent**—harmless. **Bear up against**—endure patiently. **Misfortunes**—calamities. **Lasted**—was sufficient. **Desert island**—lonely island. **Since when**—since which time. **Delight**—pleasure. **In teaching you**—in giving you instructions. **Profited**—benefited. **Instructions**—teachings. **Well have...instructions**—you have made a good use of my instructions and have made thereby a great progress. **O my father...preserve me**—these words have almost been literally taken from Shakespeare, which are:—

Mir. Alack., what trouble was I then to you !

Pros. O ! A cherubin

Thou wast that did preserve me.

Heaven thank you—may God recompense you ; may God thank you. Reason—cause. Raising—causing. Storm—violent blowing of wind. Heaven thank...sea-storm—in Indirect Narration :—Miranda invoked the blessing of Heaven on her father and entreated her father to tell her his reason for raising that storm. King and brother are in apposition to enemies. Cast—thrown. Ashore—on the shore. Cast ashore—wrecked. *Know thou...island.* In Indirect Narration :—Her father answered that she should know that by means of that storm, his enemies, the king of Naples and his cruel brother, were cast ashore upon that island. Magic wand—a rod used by magicians. She fell fast asleep—the effect of the magic wand was that its touch caused her to sleep soundly. Presented—showed. Presented himself—made his appearance ; came. His master—Prospero. Account—description. Disposed of—arranged ; placed. How he had disposed of—what he had done with. Ship's company—the men in the ship ; the crew and the passengers of the ship. Invisible—not to be seen. Choose—like ; wish. Converse—discourse. Holding converse—talking with. Seem—appear. Empty—insubstantial ; open. Brave—splendid. Performed—done. Task—work. “Well...task”—In Indirect Narration :—Prospero asked Ariel calling him his brave spirit how he had performed his task. Lively—vivid. Description—account. Storm—tempest. Terrors—fears. Mariners—sailors. How this king's son, &c.—is a noun clause and is in apposition to *description*. Swallowed up—devoured ; overwhelmed. Lost—destroyed ; drowned. Safe—unharmed ; uninjured. Corner—nook. Folded—crossed. With his arms folded—with his arms crossed over his breast. It shows that he is in great sorrow. Sadly—mournfully ; deeply. Lamenting, &c.—sadly mourning the death of his father. Drowned—to be sunk. Whom he, &c.—whom he considers to be sunk. Not a hair...injured—not the slightest injury has been done to any part of his body ; he has received not the least injury. Princely—royal. Garments—dress. Drenched—soaked. Fresher—brighter. It is an adverb in the comparative degree. Than before—than what it was before the tempest. “But

something more to be done yet. **Remind**—bring to your remembrance. **Promised**—made a promise; pledged your word. **You have...liberty**—you have pledged your word to set me free. **I pray**—I beg you; I entreat you. **Worthy**—noble. **Worthy service**—meritorious and good service. **Mistakes**—errors; blunders. **Grudge**—murmur. **Grumbling**—murmuring through discontent. **Without grudge or murmur**—without spite or murmur; without reluctance or murmuring; willing and gladly. **How now**—an interjectional phrase expressing surprise and displeasure. **Recollect**—remember. **Torment**—pain and affliction. It is governed by *from*. **Wicked**—malicious. **Witch**—sorceress. **Envy**—ill-will. **With**—on account of; through. **Age**—old age. **Bent double**—her back bent forward. **Have...double**—Shakespeare's words are :—

Pros.—Hast thou forgot

The foul witch Sycorax who with age and fury
Was grown into a hoop ?

Who with...double—who was nearly bent down in body, her face almost touching her feet, owing to her old age and spiteful nature. **"How now.....tell me"**—in Indirect Narration :—Prospero was offended at this, and he said that he (Ariel) did not recollect what a torment he (Prospero) had freed him (Ariel) from. He then asked Ariel if he had forgot the wicked witch Sycorax, who, with age and envy, had almost been bent double; and then ordered him to say where she was born. **Algiers**—is the capital town of Algeria in Africa in the North of it. **Sir...Ariel**—in Indirect Narration :—Ariel replied that she was born in Algiers. **Recount**—relate. **Which**—its antecedent is the sentence "what you have been." **I find**—I now see. **Bad**—wicked. **Witchcrafts**—sorceries. **Terrible**—shocking; horrible. **To.....hearing**—so shocking as to be quite unworthy of reaching the ears of human beings. **Was banished from**—was condemned to leave; was sent away from. **Delicate**—pure. **Execute**—obey. **To command**—so good that you would not obey her wicked orders. **Shut you up**—

imprisoned you. Howling—crying; wailing. Torment—affliction. It is governed by *from*. This torment I free you from—I set you at liberty from the torment you were suffering on account of the imprisonment. This sentence is object of *remember*. Pardon—forgive me. Ungrateful—unthankful. Ashamed, &c.—ashamed of a course of conduct which would have the appearance of ingratitude. “Pardon me...commands”—in Indirect Narration:—Ariel begged his master to pardon him, and said that he would obey his commands. Free—at liberty. Do so, and I will set you free—if you do so, I shall set you at liberty. Gave orders—gave directions. Further—more. Do—is in the infinitive mood, the sign ‘to’ being understood after *would*. Would have him do—would desire him to do. What further.....do—what other work he wanted him to do. To where—to the place where. Melancholy—depressed; dejected. Posture—attitude. “Do so...free”—in Indirect Narration:—Prospero told him to do so and he would set him free. Move—stir; remove. To have a sight of—to see. Pretty person—elegant form; beautiful figure. “O my...me”—in Indirect Narration:—Ariel, when he saw him addressing the young gentlemen, said that he would soon move him. He thought that he must be brought for the Lady Miranda to have sight of his pretty person. He then asked him to follow him. Fathom—six feet. It is an objective of space. Full fathom five—at a depth of full five fathoms. Lies—is buried under. Coral—a hard substance, usually red, found in the ocean. Made—formed. Full.....lies—thy father has been drowned and has been lying full thirty feet under the surface of the ocean. Of his.....made—his bones have been transformed into corals. Those.....eyes—his eyes have been changed into pearls. Fade—decay. Nothing.....fade—no part of his body has been destroyed. Suffer a sea-change—undergo a change caused by the sea-water. Strange—curious. But...strange—but has undergone a change into something precious and curious brought about by the sea-water. Sea-nymphs—sea-fairies. Hourly—every hour. Knell—the sound of a bell at a funeral; funeral bell. Ring his knell

—toll the bell at his death. Ding-dong-bell—ringing of a bell which sounds ding-dong.

Page 101.

Paras. 32-35. Strange—wonderful. Stupid fit—the fit that had stupefied him ; dull and heavy mood. In amazement—being amazed. Led—conducted. Were sitting—were seated ; had taken their seats. Shade—shelter. Now—is used to introduce a new sentence. Cf. Now Barabbas was a robber. Yonder—that direction. Strange—uncommon. Surely—certainly. Lord—it is an exclamation of surprise. About—on all sides. Believe me, sir—you must concur with me in this respect. Senses—namely those of seeing, hearing, smelling, tasting and feeling. Somewhat—to a slight degree. Altered—changed. Grief—sorrow. Or—else ; otherwise. Handsome , —beautiful. Wandering—roaming.

Para. 36. Grave—serious. Faces—looks. Grey—white. Delighted—pleased. Lovely—beautiful ; charming. Desert—lonely. Enchanted—held by sorcerers. Goddess—a female deity. As such—as goddess. Address—speak to.

Para. 37. Timidly—shyly ; bashfully ; modestly. No is an adjective qualifying *goddess*. Simple—plain. Was going to give—was about to give. Was...herself—was just beginning to inform Ferdinand all about herself. But a simple maid—but only a maiden. Account—description. Interrupted—stopped. Admired—regarded with affection. Plainly—clearly. Perceived—found ; observed. As we say—as the common expression is. Fall in love—begin to love each other. Sight—interviews. At the first sight—the first time they saw each other. Try—to test. Constancy—lasting affection. Resolved—determined. Difficulties—obstacles. To throw difficulties—to put obstacles. Advancing stepping. Stern—harsh. Air—demeanour ; bearing. Spy—a secret emissary sent by his enemy. Her.....spy is a noun clause, object of *telling*. From him—out of his possession. To take,

there are many men as superior in beauty to this man as he is superior to Caliban. **Prove—test.** My affection.....humble—I am satisfied and content with this object of my love which you say is mean and humble. **Wish—desire ; aspirations.** **Goodlier—more handsome.** **Come on—follow me.** **Power—strength.** **Have, &c.** are incapable of disobeying my orders. **You have, &c.**—you cannot disobey me. **“Come on...me”**—in Indirect Narration.—Prospero told the prince to go on ; Ferdinand had no power to disobey him (Prospero). **I have not indeed—I now find that I have no power to disobey you.** **Not knowing—having no knowledge.** **Deprived of—devoid of.** **Resistance—disobedience.** **Astonished,—surprised ; struck with wonder.** **Compelled—obliged.** **He was, &c.....Prospero—he was awfully amazed at finding himself so strangely weak that he could not but follow Prospero.** **Looking back—glancing behind.** **Went after—followed.** **Spirits—vital powers.** **Bound—tethered.** **My spirits...up—my powers of action are tied up, as if I had no power to control my own action.** **Dream—a vision.** **Threats—menaces, i. e., to punish me.** **Light—of small consequence or consideration.** **Would seem light to me—would not be cured by me ; I would not care.** **Fair maid—beautiful lady.** **But this...mind—I shall consider any hardship which I may have to undergo and my present feeling of weakness but a small price for the pleasure which I shall enjoy by seeing this fair lady, if I am allowed to enjoy that happiness once a day.** **“I have not..... mine”**—in Indirect Narration :—Ferdinand answered that he had not indeed the power (to disobey him). He then said that his spirits were all bound up, as if he were all bound up, as if he were in a dream but that man's threats and the weakness which he felt, would seem light to him if from his prison he might once a day behold that fair maid. **Long—for a long time.** **Confined—imprisoned.** **Cell—cave.** **Brought out—released.** **Set him—assigned to him.** **Severe—hard.** **To perform—to do ; to execute.** **Set.....to perform—he imposed a very hard work upon Ferdinand.** **Taking care—making it a special point.** **Hard labour—heavy task.** **Imposed upon—laid upon ; set**

upon; assigned to. Pretending—feigning. Secretly—without being observed by them. Watched—observed. Commanded—ordered. Pile up—gather; amass. Logs, &c.—pieces of wood. Son—is in the nominative absolute coming before the participle *being used*. Used—accustomed. Laborious—requiring labour, hence hard. Fatigue—weariness. Dying with fatigue—quite tired; so tired that he became quite breathless. At—busy in; engaged in. He is...hours—he is not going to interfere with us for the next three hours. Pray—beg. It is the short form of ‘I pray you.’ Rest yourself—take your rest. I dare not—I have not so much courage. The while—during that time. It is object of time. This—it refers to the preceding sentence, *i. e.*, Ferdinand’s taking rest and Miranda’s carrying logs for him. Agree—accede; consent. Hinderance—obstacle. Went on—proceeded. Slowly—with slow progress. “Alas!...the while”—in Indirect Narration:—She sorrowfully asked him not to work so hard, and said that her father was at his studies; he was safe for those three hours and requested him to rest himself. Ferdinand, addressing Miranda as his dear lady, said that he dared not. He must finish his work before he took his rest. Miranda said that if he would sit down, she would carry his logs the while. Enjoined—appointed. Merely—simply. Merely as a trial—simply to try. By them—near them. Invisible—without being seen by them. Overhear—listen secretly; hear privately.

Page 103.

Paras. 47—53. Inquired—asked. Express—direct. Against, &c.—in contravention of her father’s direct orders. Only smiled—was only amused. Angry—offended; displeased. Instance—occurrence. Professed—declared. Above—more than. In answer to—in response to. Praises of her beauty—admiration of her beauty. Exceeded—surpassed. Which, &c.—which surpassed that (beauty) of all other women. I do not, &c.—I do not recollect having seen any woman. Friend—in the vocative case. Nor—and not. Abroad—outside world. How features, &c.—Shakespeare’s words are: “How

features are abroad I am skillless of." How...abroad—what sort of faces persons have in other parts of the world. But—preposition. I would...you—I would like to have only you as my companion. Nor form—I cannot imagine or conceive. Nor can, &c....like—and I cannot form in my mind any idea of the face of any other person than yourself which would please me. Too freely—more freely than I ought. Precepts—instructions ; orders. Nodded—shook. 'Nodding' is usually used as an expression of approval. As much to say—as if he meant to say. Exactly as—just what. At this, &c.... Naples—in Indirect Narration :—At this Prospero smiled and nodded his head, as much as to say that he went on exactly as he could wish, and that his girl would be Queen of Naples. Fine—nice. Long—lengthy. Courtly phrases—elegant expressions. Innocent—sinless ; untainted. Heir to the crown of Naples—heir to the king of Naples. She should be queen—he would make her his queen. I am...glad of—it is foolish in me to weep over that which really fills me with joy. Holy—free from all sin. Innocence—purity of heart. In plain, &c.—with frank and pure simplicity. I am your wife—I am ready to become your wife. Prevented—stopped. Prevented Ferdinand's thanks—did not allow Ferdinand to thank Miranda.

Para. 54. Fear nothing—do not be afraid of anything. Approve of—like. Too severely—with unjustifiable harshness. Used—treated ; behaved towards. Amends—compensation. Rich amends—ample compensation. Vexations—troubles. But my trials—merely my tests. All...love—the troubles that I put you to were merely to test your love. Nobly stood the test—bravely endured the trial ; gone through the trial creditably ; borne the trial magnanimously. Worthily purchased—obtained as a deserving reward for your virtues. Do not smile—do not consider me partial. Boast—am proud. Above all praise—beyond all praise. She is...praise—no praise can properly describe her. Presence—attendance. Had &c....presence—had some business to attend to. Till he returned—till his return. Disposed—inclined.

Para. 55. Left—parted with. Relate—describe. Eager to relate—quite ready to say. Done—dealt. Out of their senses—stupefied. With—through. Strange—uncommon. Ariel said.....away—In Direct Narration:—Ariel said “I left them almost out of their senses with fear at the strange things I caused them to see and hear. When fatigued with wandering about, and famished for want of food, I suddenly set before them a delicious banquet, and now just as they were going to eat, I appeared visible before them in the shape of a harpy, a voracious monster with wings, and the feast vanished away.” When fatigued—when they were worn out with fatigue. With wandering about—caused by roaming about. Famished—starved. For want of food—having no food. Set—placed. Delicious banquet—feast. Going to eat—about to eat. Harpy—a monster having the head and face of a woman and the body and wings of a vulture. Voracious—devouring; ravenous. Vanished away—disappeared. Utter amazement—extreme surprise. Seeming harpy—the creature outwardly looking like a harpy. Reminding them, &c.—calling to their mind how cruel they were. Driving—turning out. Infant—daughter; very young daughter. Terrors—frightful sufferings. Were suffered—were allowed. Afflict—torment.

Paras. 56—57. False—untrue; treacherous. Repented—felt sorry for. Injustice they had done to Prospero—i.e., depriving Prospero of his dukedom and sending him away. Certain—sure; convinced. Penitence—repentance. Sincere—real; true. Though a spirit—although he was a spirit and not possessed of human feelings and hence not susceptible of pleasure and pain caused by happiness and sorrow. Could not but pity them—could not help pitying them. Hither—here. But—only; it is an adverb. Feel for—are affected by. Feel...distress—feel sorry at their affliction.

Paras. 58—60. Returned—come back. Train—retinue. In their train—each coming close after the other. Him—Ariel. Wondering

—struck with amazement; filled with astonishment. Wild—disorderly. Air—atmosphere. Wondering at the wild music, &c.... air—being struck with amazement at the strange music that was being sounded by Ariel in the air over their head. Draw them on—attract them; allure them. This Gonzalo—Gonzalo just mentioned above. Was the same—was the same man; was the very man. Provided—supplied. Formerly—previously, on a former occasion. Provisions—food. Wicked—malicious. As he thought—as he conjectured; as he believed. Left them to perish—abandoned them to death. Open boat—boat without any covering or roof. Grief—sorrow. Terror—fear. Senses—wits. Stupefied their senses—put them out of their senses. Know—recognise. Discovered—revealed; disclosed. Discovered himself—disclosed himself; made himself known. Preserver—saviour. The—it has the force of ‘the same,’ ‘the very.’ Injured—wronged. Injured Prospero—Prospero whom they had injured; Prospero whom they had so unkindly and unjustly treated. With tears—weeping. True—sincere. Repentance—remorse, And sad, &c.—and expressing grief and sincerely repenting for his past dealings with Prospero. Implored, &c.—entreated. Forgiveness—pardon. Implored, &c.—besought Prospero to pardon him. Sincere—genuine. Expressed—showed. Remorse—extreme sorrow. Assisted—helped; given his assistance or aid. Depose—dethrone; remove from his dukedom. Engaging—promising. Upon their engaging—upon their pledging their word; after they had promised. Restore—give back; return. In store—in reserve. I have.....too—I have also a gift for your acceptance in return. Chess—a game played on board; *shatranj*.

Page. 105.

Paras. 61—62. Exceed—surpass; excel. Nothing.....son—the joys of the father and the son (the king of Naples and prince Ferdinand) knew no bounds. Unexpected—sudden. Drowned—lost. Storm—tempest. O wonder—what a wonderful sight. Surely—certainly. Brave—splendid; magnificent. O wonder.....in it

—In Indirect Narration :—Miranda expresses her surprise at those noble creatures when she saw the king and others, and said that it must be a brave world that had such people in it. These words have been almost taken literally from Shakespeare :

O wonder !

How man's goodly creatures are there here !

How beauteous mankind is ! O brave new world

That has such people in it.

Para. 63. Astonished—surprised ; struck with wonder. Excellent—remarkable. Graces—agreeable and good manners. Excellent graces—charming manners. Beauty and excellent graces—charms of body and mind. Parted—separated. Brought, &c.—thus reunited us. She seems.....together—she appears to be the goddess of this island who had caused our separation and then caused our union. Had fallen, &c.—had made the same mistake, namely that of considering Miranda a goddess. A mortal—a human being. Immortal—imperishable. By immortal providence—by the gift of God. She is mine—she has become mine ; I hold her as mine, *i. e.*, as my wife. Chose her—selected her to be my wife. I could not, &c.—I could not obtain your consent or permission. Famous—renowned. Renown—fame. Till now—till the present time. Of him—from him ; at his hands. Of him.....life—he has brought me back to life. He has, &c.—he has become my second father (*i. e.*, father-in-law) by giving this dear lady, his daughter, to me in marriage ; he has made me his son-in-law. Giving—giving in marriage.

Para. 64. Then—in that case. Father—father-in-law. Oddly—strange. Sound—appears. Forgiveness—pardon. Ask, &c.—ask my child to pardon me.

Paras. 65--67. No more of that—no more talk about that ; there should be no further talk about forgiveness. Troubles past—troubles that are past. Let us...past—we should forget our past troubles. Since ..ended—since they have come to such a happy end. Embraced

—hugged; took him to his bosom; *bagalgir hua*. Again...assured, &c.—reassured him that he had forgiven him. Overruling—i. e., counteracting the effects of the overruled person by bringing about quite a different result. Providence—God. Permitted—destined. Inherit—succeed to. Desert—lonely; uninhabited. Happened—come to pass; chanced. And said...Miranda—In Direct Narration:—And said, “A wise overruling Providence has permitted that I should be driven from my poor dukedom of Milan, my daughter may inherit the crown of Naples, for that, by their meeting in this desert island, it has happened that the king’s son has loved Miranda.” Spoke—uttered. These kind, &c.—these kind words of Prospero. Meaning—intending. Comfort—consoler. Remorse—grief; repentance. Joyful—happy. Reconciliation—reconciliation; restoration of friendship. Couple—man and wife; here it means Ferdinand and Miranda. Prayed...couples—prayed to God to bless the bridegroom and bride and confer on them joy and happiness. Safe—uninjured. On board her—on board the ship. The ship is generally used in the feminine gender. Accompany them—go with them. Home—to Naples; it is an object of place. The next morning—the coming morning. *Morning* is an object of time. In the meantime—meanwhile. Partake of—share with; eat. Refreshments—food and drink. As—it is a relative pronoun in the objective case governed by ‘affords.’ Poor—humble; mean. Cave affords—the cave can provide. Entertainment—amusement; diversion. For your evening entertainment—in order to entertain you in the evening. Relate—describe. From my, &c.—from the time when I first arrived in this lonely island. Prepare—in order to prepare. Set—put. Set the cave in order—make the cave neat and clean.

Page 106.

The company—all the persons present there. Were astonished—were amazed; felt surprised. Uncouth—odd; strange. Ugly—deformed. Attendant—servant. To wait upon him—to serve him; to perform his menial services. In the meantime...island—Indirect

Narration :—He asked them in the meantime to partake of such refreshments as his poor cave afforded, and for their evening entertainment he would relate the history of his life from his first landing in that desert island.

Para. 68. Dismissed—released. His dismissed...service—gave Ariel his liberty ; set Ariel free. Great—extreme. To the great joy of—which gave great joy to. Lively—gay. Sprite—spirit. Longing—earnestly desiring ; eagerly wishing. Free—unconstrained. Liberty—freedom. To enjoy his free liberty—to become quite free and independent. Wander--roam. Uncontrolled—without being controlled by any one ; unopposed. Sweet-smelling flowers—sweet-scented flowers ; flowers giving a sweet odour. Quaint—neat ; elegant. I shall miss you—I shall feel your absence. Made him free—set him at liberty. Yet—notwithstanding. You shall, &c.—you shall be free. Thank you—I thank you. Leave—permission. Give me leave—permit me. Home—destination ; it is an object of place. Prosperous—favourable. Gales—winds. Farewell—good-bye ; adieu. Bid farewell—dispense with. Faithful—true ; honest. Merrily—happily. My quaint Ariel.....live—

In Indirect Narration :—Prospero addressing Ariel as his quaint Ariel, said that he should miss him, yet he (Ariel) should have his freedom. Ariel thanked his dear master, but asked him to give him leave to attend his (Prospero's) ship home with prosperous gales, before he (Prospero) bade farewell to the assistance of his faithful spirit, and then when he was free, how merrily he should live. Here—hereupon. Pretty—nice. Cowslip bell—the bell-shaped flower of the cowslip. Couch—hide. When owls do cry—i.e., at night. Do fly after—follow. Where the bee.....bough—I suck sweets from the very flowers from which the bee gathers its honey. I lie in the bell-shaped flower of the cowslip. I hide myself there at night when the owls begin to hoot. I follow summer merrily on the back of a bat (when winter comes). I shall now very happily live beneath the blossom hanging on the bough of a tree.

Para. 69. Deep in the earth—at a great depth in the earth ; deep under the ground. **Magical books**—books treating of sorcery. **Wand**—magic rod or staff. **Resolved**—determined ; made up his mind. **Magic art**—sorcery. **Prospero then buried deep, &c.**—Shakespeare's words are :

Pro.—I'll break my staff, .

Bury it certain fathoms in the earth,
And deeper than did ever plummet sound
I'll drown my book.

Overcome—defeated. **Reconciled**—restored to friendship. **Revisit**—visit again. **Native land**—mother-country ; birth-place. **Witness**—see. **Nuptials**—nuptial ceremony ; marriage ceremony. **And having...** **Ferdinand**—and having in this way got the better hand of his enemies, and made friends with his brother, the only things to make his happiness complete were to see once again his birth-place, to take possession of his dukedom and to see the performance of the marriage of his daughter Miranda with Prince Ferdinand. **Instantly on their return**—just on their return. **Celebrated**—performed. **Splendour**—pomp. **At which place**—i. e., at Naples. **Convoy**—protection ; escort. **Under the safe convoy of**—safely conducted by. **Pleasant**—happy. **Voyage**—sea-journey. **Arrived**—reached.

AS YOU LIKE IT.

Summary.—Frederick usurps the dukedom of one of his provinces of France by deposing his elder brother, who, with a few faithful followers, retires to the forest of Arden. The banished duke has a daughter named Rosalind, who is a constant companion of Celia, daughter of Frederick. Rosalind and Celia are one day invited to witness a wrestling match between a young man named Orlando and a very strong and powerful wrestler, in which Orlando completely conquers his antagonist. The duke is much pleased, but when he

comes to know that Orlando is a son of Sir Rowland de Boys, a dear friend of his banished brother, all his liking is changed into displeasure. But Rosalind, who has fallen in love with Orlando, is greatly delighted, speaks kind words to him, and presents him with a chain which she takes off her neck. Frederick, being enraged with Rosalind because people love her for her father's sake as well as for her virtues, and his anger being increased by the sight of Orlando, orders her to leave the palace instantly. Celia pleads for her cousin, but in vain; she also therefore accompanies her. They leave the palace the same night, Rosalind wearing the dress of a young countryman, and Celia that of a country girl, and assuming the names of Ganymede and Aliena. They arrive at the forest of Arden, where they buy the house and sheep of a shepherd. Orlando was left by the father in charge of his eldest brother, Oliver. He proves an unworthy brother, envies him and tries to destroy him; and it was he who, in order to get rid of Orlando, had arranged the wrestling match in which Orlando came out successful. Orlando and his servant, after much wandering about, come to the forest of Arden, where they become companions of the duke. Orlando has fallen in love with Rosalind; he has therefore carved the name of Rosalind on the trees and fastened love-sonnets to them. Here he meets Ganymede and Aliena. He comes to their cottage every day and plays at feigned courtship with Ganymede. He is recognised by them, but he is not able to recognise either of them. In the meantime Ganymede sees the duke. Oliver too comes to the forest with the desire of killing his brother. He is rescued from the attacks of a snake and a lioness by Orlando, though severely wounded by the latter. On this, Oliver's mind is changed: he repents and embraces his brother. Oliver goes to Ganymede and Aliena and tells them everything about himself. Oliver and Aliena fall in love with each other. Oliver talks of his love with Aliena to Orlando who approves of the match, and desires the marriage to be performed the next day. Orlando expresses his desire to marry Rosalind the same day to Ganymede, who approves of it, and says that he will bring it about by magic. The next morning

the duke and all of them are assembled to celebrate the double marriage. The duke expresses his consent to his daughter's marriage with Orlando. Both Ganymede and Aliena then throw off their disguise, and appear as Rosalind and Celia without the power of magic. They are then married, Orlando to Rosalind and Oliver to Celia. Frederick, being much enraged at the flight of Celia, comes to the forest with a large army to put his brother and his followers to death. But by a kind act of Providence he is converted from his evil intention. He then repents and sends a messenger to his brother, offering to restore to him his dukedom. The duke, when restored to power, amply rewards those true followers who stayed with him in his banishment.

Page 106.

Para. 1. Dukedom—the territories of a duke ; territories held by a duke. **Called**—termed. **Usurper**—one who seizes the property of another without right ; one who has seized the dukedom lawfully belonging to another. **Deposed**—dethroned ; deprived him of his dukedom. **Banished**—exiled. **Lawful**—rightful. **Duke**—a lord holding sway over a part of the country.

Para. 2. Driven—expelled. **Dominions**—territories. **Retired**—departed. **Faithful**—true. **Followers**—courtiers ; servants. **Forest**—jungle ; wood. **Arden**—it lies in the north-east of France.

Page 107.

The good duke—i. e., the banished duke. **Loving**—dear. **Voluntary exile**—banishment of their own free will ; banishment of their own accord. **Who had put, &c.**—who had of their own accord banished themselves with him out of attachment for him. **Revenues**—income. **Enriched**—made rich ; filled the purse of. **False**—untrue ; treacherous. **False usurper**—i. e., the usurping brother. **Life of careless ease**—life free from care and anxiety. **Led**—lived. **Sweet**—pleasant. **Uneasy**—painful. **Pomp and splendour**—show and grandeur. **Courtier**—a person living in court. **Custom soon, &c.**—being soon accustomed to their present state, their life became more pleasant

to them. **Robin Hood**—was the captain of a band of outlaws in the reign of Richard I, who haunted the forests of Nottinghamshire. He was very much loved by the common people. **Noble youths**—young sons of noblemen. **Daily**—every day. **Resorted**—frequented; went. **Fleet**—pass. **Carelessly**—without care or anxiety. **The golden age**—the good old times when every one was happy. **In summer**—during summer or hot season. **Lay along**—slept. **Marking**—noticing; watching. **Sports**—tricks. **So fond, &c.**—they so greatly loved. **Dappled**—spotted. **Dappled fools**—spotted deer; wild deer. *Fool* is used in the sense of affection and pity or love. **Native**—original. **Grieved**—pained; gave pain. **Forced**—obliged. **Supply**—provide. **Venison**—flesh of the deer. **Adverse**—opposite; contrary. **Adverse fortune**—opposite condition; contrary state; adversity. **Endure**—bear. **Patiently**—calmly. **Chilling**—very cold; causing to shiver. **True**—faithful. **Councillors**—advisers. **Flatter**—cajole; praise falsely. **Represent**—show. **Truly**—exactly. **Condition**—state. **Bite**—pinch. **Sharply**—keenly. **Keen**—sharp. **Ingratitude**—ungratefulness. **These chilling.....ingratitude**—those cold winds that make my body shiver are my faithful advisers, because they do not cajole, but show to me in what state I really am, and although they are piercingly cold and pinch severely and give great pain, yet their pinching and the pain given by them is not more severe than that received from ungrateful men. **Howsoever**—in whatsoever manner. **Adversity**—misfortune; poverty. **Sweet use**—advantages; profitable lessons. **Extracted**—drawn. **Some sweet, &c.**—some advantage can be derived from it; some lessons can be learnt from it. **Precious for medicine**—valuable antidote for poison. **Venomous**—poisonous. **Despised**—hated. **Toad**—large frog. **Like jewel, &c.**—it was formerly believed that the toad had a jewel of great medicinal powers in its head. **Patient**—calmly bearing his misfortunes. **Draw**—extract. **Moral**—lesson. **Help**—aid. **Moralising turn**—a disposition or turn of mind to draw morals from everything he sees. **Remote**—far. **Public haunts**—places much frequented by the public; places of public

resort. Find tongues in trees—find the trees talk to him as if to give him a lesson. Sermons—religious instructions. He could..... everything—he could gather good morals and instructions from the trees, from the running brooks, from the stones and from everything. These chilling...toad—In Indirect Narration :—The duke would say that, those chilling winds which blew upon his body were true counsellors; they did not flatter, but represented truly to him his condition, and though they bit sharply, their tooth was not so keen as that of unkindness and ingratitude. He found that, however men spoke against adversity, yet some sweet uses were to be extracted from it; like the jewel, precious for medicine, which was taken from the head of the venomous and despised toad.

Para. 3. Banished—exiled. An only—only one : ‘only’ is an adjective. Named—called by name. Retained—kept. Strict—close; intimate. Subsisted—existed. Disagreement—enmity. In the least—to the slightest degree. Interrupt—break; come between. Striving—trying. Striving &c.—doing her best. Amends—compensation. Make amends—recompense. Deposing—dethroning. Dependence—subjection. ~~False—treacherous.~~ Melancholy—sad. Whole—entire. Care—attention. Comfort—please. Console—cheer. Console her—cheer her distressed mind.

Para. 4. Was talking, &c.—was speaking kindly as usual. Pray—beg; entreat. Sweet—lovely; fair. Merry—cheerful. “I pray...merry”—In Indirect Narration :—Celia begged her sweet cousin Rosalind to be merry. Messenger—a person bringing some news; the bearer of some news. Entered—came. A messenger...duke—a person came with news from the duke. To tell—to inform.

Page 108.

Wished—desired. Wrestling match—contest about wrestling. Which was just going to begin—which was about to commence. Instantly—immediately. Thinking—considering; thinking in her mind. Amuse—please. A messenger.....place—In direct Narration :—A messenger entered from the duke and said to them, “If

you wish to see a wrestling match which is just going to begin, you must come instantly to the court before the palace."

Para. 5. In those times—during those days. Country clowns—country fellows. Favourite sport—sport which was greatly liked. Before—in the presence of. Princesses—daughters of kings. Likely—probably. Prove—end in. Tragical—mournful. Long—for a long time. Who had been, &c.—who was a well-practised wrestler. Slain—killed. In contests of this kind—in wrestling matches. Was just going—was about to. From—on account of. Who from &c.—wrestling. Beholders—spectators. Certainly—surely.

Para. 6. Are you crept hither—have you come here. Little delight—no pleasure. Odds—inequality. There is...men...the two men are so unequally matched. In pity to this young man—as I pity this young man. Persuade—dissuade. Move him—dissuade him. He said. "How now.....move him"—In Indirect Narration:—The duke asked his daughter Celia and his niece Rosalind if they had crept thither to see the wrestling; and he said that they would have little delight in it, for there was such odds in the men. In pity to that young man he wished to persuade him from wrestling. He then desired them to speak to him and move him if they could.

Para. 7. Perform—do; execute. Humane—kind. Office—duty. Entreated—requested. Desist—withdraw; forbear. Attempt—i. e., wrestling. Feeling—touching; heartfelt. Consideration—concern; regard. He was about to undergo—he was on the point of suffering; he was going to suffer. Instead of—in place of. Forego—give up; abandon. Purpose—object; desire. Bent—directed. Distinguished himself—made himself famous. Refused—declined. In such, etc.—civilly and modestly. Concern—interest. Concluded—ended. Refusal—denial. Excellent—good, kind. Go with—follow; accompany. Trial—attempt. Let your, &c.—vanquished. Shamed—disgraced. Go with me to my trial—wish me success in this match. Conquered—vanquished. Shamed—disgraced. That was, &c.—who

was never graced by the favour of any one ; who never found favour with anybody. Wrong—injury. Lament me—mourn for me. The world no injury—*i. e.* I shall do the world no injury. Have—possess. I only fill up—I do but fill up. Better supplied—supplied by better men. Empty—*i. e.*, empty by my death. When I have made it empty—when I have left it ; when I am dead.

Paras. 8—12. Most—most keenly ; chiefly. The friendless, &c.—having no friends as he said. Wished—was willing. Unfortunate—in bad fortune ; in misfortune. Deep—great. Interest—concern.

Page 109.

While—during the time. Moment—instant. Shown this unknown youth—shown to this young stranger. Noble—generous. Ladies, *i. e.*—Rosalind and Celia. Performed—did. Wonders—surprising feats. In the end—at last. Completely—totally. Conquered—overcome. Antagonist—adversary, opponent. For a while—for a short time ; it is an adverbial phrase. He was unable, etc.—*i. e.*, he became senseless. Desired—wanted. Parentage—name of his parent or father. Desired to know, &c.—wanted to know what his name was and whose son he was. Meaning—intending. To take, &c.—to employ him. The stranger said, &c.—In Direct Narration:—The stranger said, " My name is Orlando, and I am the youngest son of Sir Rowland de Boys." Some years—some years ago. ' Years ' is an object of time. Living—alive. True—faithful. Was changed—was turned. Liking—fondness. Displeasure—hatred. All his liking, etc.—he began to hate him as he had liked him. Ill humour—anger. Admiring—praising. Valour—courage and strength. He wished—it was his wish. Delighted—pleased. Her new favourite—the man whom she newly loved. Ventured—risked. I would have, &c.—I would have shed tears and entreated him before he took upon himself the risk of wrestling. She said to Celia, &c.—In Indirect Narration:—She said to Celia that her (Rosalind's) father loved Sir Rowland de Boys, and if she (Rosalind) had known that that young man was his son, she would have added tears to her entreaties before he should have ventured, etc.

Para. 13. Went up to—approached. Abashed—confounded; confused with shame. Displeasure—anger. Encouraging—cheering. Turned back—returned; come back. Civil things—gentle and encouraging words. Taking a chain, &c.—taking a chain which she was wearing. I am out of suits with fortune—fortune does not favour me; I am not in the good graces of fortune; I am discarded by fortune. Or—else; otherwise. Valuable—precious. Present—gift. Taking a chain, &c....present—In Indirect Narration :—Taking a chain from off her neck, she asked the gentleman (Orlando) to wear that for her. She was out of suits with fortune, or she would give him a more valuable present.

Para. 14. Perceive—find; know. Handsome—fair; beautiful. Suddenly—all of a sudden; quickly. Dearly—greatly. Follow—show.

Page 110.

For them, &c.—because in that case I should hate him. Yet—for all that. She said to Rosalind, &c....Orlando—In Indirect Narration :—She (Celia) asked Rosalind whether it was possible (that) she should fall in love so suddenly. Rosalind replied that the duke, her (Rosalind's) father, loved his father dearly. Celia then asked her whether it, therefore, followed that she (Rosalind) should love his son dearly, for then she (Celia) ought to hate, for her (Celia's) father hated his father, yet she (Celia) did not hate him.

Para. 15. Enraged—in rage or anger; offended. Reminded him—brought to his memory. The nobility—the nobles; the noble men. Displeased—angry. Virtues—good qualities. Pitied—felt compassion. For her good father's sake—on account of her good father. Malice—spite; ill-will. Broke out—burst. Talking of—speaking about. Looks full of anger—angry looks. Instantly—immediately. Banishment—exile. In vain—to no effect; fruitlessly. Pleaded—earnestly supplicated. Suffered—allowed. Upon her account—for her sake. Entreat—request; beseech. For I was, &c.—because I was then so young that I could not accurately make

out her worth. Worth—value. Instant—time. Out of—apart from ; without. Out of her company—separate from her. Subtle—cunning. She is too subtle for you—she is too cunning for you ; she is so cunning that you can easily be deceived by her. Smoothness—gentleness of speech. Patience—endurance. Speak to the people—attract the hearts of the people. To plead for her—to speak on behalf of her. Seem—appear. Bright—shining ; fair. Virtuous—good ; noble. Open not your lips—speak not ; do not speak ; do not utter a word. In her favour—for her ; on her behalf. Open...favour—do not plead for her. Doom—sentence ; punishment. Passed—pronounced. Irrevocable—not to be revoked ; not to be withdrawn or reversed.

Para. 16. Prevail upon—persuade ; induce. Generously—nobly ; out of generosity. Resolved—made up her mind. Accompany her—go with her. Along with—in company of.

Para. 17. Set out—started ; left. Considered—thought. It would, etc.—it would not be safe. Proposed—suggested. Disguise—conceal ; hide. Rank—noble birth ; high birth. Maids—girls. By dressing, &c.—by putting on the dresses of country girls. Protection—safety. It would be still greater protection—it will be much more safe. Was to be, &c.—put on the dress of a man. Quickly—soon. It was quickly, &c.—they soon came to a conclusion. Wear—put on. Habited—dressed. Lass—girl. Chose—selected.

Para. 18. Disguise—false appearance. Defray—meet ; pay for. Set out—started. Long travel—journey over a long distance.

Page 111.

Long way off—at a great distance. Beyond—outside. Boundaries—limit. Dominions—territories.

Para. 19. Garb—dress ; attire. Manly garb—male attire ; the dress of a man. Put on—assumed. Manly—worthy of a man. Weary—tiresome. Miles—an object of space. In recompense—in

return. Exert—put forth. Exert a cheerful spirit—assume a degree of cheerfulness. Indeed—in fact. Rustic—it is an adjective from country. Stout-hearted—strong-hearted. The rustic and stout-hearted brother—the bold country brother.

Para. 20. Came to—reached. Convenient—comfortable. Inns—resting places. Good accommodation—comfortable places to stay; convenient places. Merrily cheered—greatly pleased. Happy—merry; witty. Remarks—observations. All the way—all along; 'way' is an object of space. Owned—confessed. Weary—tired. Apparel—dress. He was so, &c.—he was so worn with fatigue that he was going to show signs of weakness which was unworthy of one in the dress of a man. Declared—said; expressed. Recollect—remember. Comfort—cheer; encourage. Console—give consolation to; cheer the mind of. Weaker vessel—as belonging to the weaker sex; woman. Have a good heart—take courage; be cheerful. We are, etc.—we have arrived at our destination. Feigned—pretended; assumed. Manliness—courage. Forced—affected; unnatural. No longer—no more. Support them—keep them up; sustain them. Where to find the duke—the place where the duke lives; it is a noun clause, object of 'know.' Conclusion—end. Might have, &c.—would have ended sadly. Perished for, &c.—died of hunger. Providentially—by grace of God. Fatigue—weariness. Hopeless—despondent. Hopeless of, &c.—hopeless to obtain any food for help. Chanced—happened. To pass that way—to go by that way; 'way' is object of space. Once more—once again. Manly boldness—courage of a man. Love—affection; pity. Gold—money. Desert—lonely; uninhabited. Procure us—provide us with; give us. Entertainment—food and shelter. Bring—load; conduct; carry; take. Where we, &c.—where we may take rest. Fatigued—tired. For want of food—on account of hunger. "Come have ...Arden." In Indirect Narration :—He asked his sister Aliena to have a good heart, and said that they were at the end of their travel in the forest of Arden.

Para. 21. Only—merely. Was just going—was about. Would go with him—would accompany him. Would be welcome to—would gladly partake of; would be gladly invited to take. Prospect—expectation. Near prospect—almost sure hope. Relief—food. Fresh—new. Took—engaged. Conducted—led; brought. To wait upon—to serve. By this means—in this way. Fortunately—luckily. Provided—supplied. Neat—nice.

Page 112.

Supplied—provided. Provisions—food. Well supplied, &c.—having a good supply of food. Learn—know. Dwelt—lived.

Para. 22. Were rested—were refreshed; had taken rest. Way—made. Fancied—considered. Feigned—pretended to be what they were not really. Dearly—greatly. Distant—away; off. Weary—tiring. Appeared—came to light; shewed. In this manner—in the following manner. Strange—surprising. Event—occurrence. Came to pass—happened; occurred.

Para. 23. Charging—ordered. On his blessing—that he might have his blessings. Provide for him—supply with clothes, food, &c. Dignity—rank. As became, &c.—that was suitable to the good name of their ancient family. Proved—showed himself to be. Unworthy—undutiful; not worthy. Disregarding—neglecting; disobeying. Commands, &c.—orders given to him by his father at his death. Put—sent. Untaught—ignorant; uneducated. Entirely—totally. Neglected—taken no care of. In his nature—in his natural turn of mind; in his natural temperament. Noble—good. So much resembled—was so much like. Excellent—good; noble. Advantages—benefits. Education—learning. Bred—brought up. Utmost—greatest; it is the superlative of 'out.' That without any, &c.—that although he was not educated, yet he appeared as if he was brought up with the greatest care. Fine—beautiful; handsome. Envied—was envious of; bore malice on account of. Person—body; personal appearance. Dignified—noble; high. Untutored—uneducated. At last—after all. Wished—desired. Destroy—kill.

Effect—do ; carry out. Set on—instigated. Persuade—induce. Famous—noted. Before—previously. Related—told ; said. Cruel—unkind. Neglect—*i. e.*, in taking care of him. Wished—intended. Being so friendless—being so left without a friend ; having no friends.

Para. 24. Contrary to—opposed ; against. Wicked—evil. Formed—cherished. The wicked hopes—*i. e.*, that Orlando might be killed by the famous wrestler. His brother—Orlando. Proved victorious—obtained victory ; conquered his opponent ; threw down the wrestler. Malice—ill-will. Knew no bounds—were boundless ; were excessive. He swore, &c.—he made up his mind to burn the sleeping room of Orlando when he was asleep. Overheard—secretly heard without being known to the speaker. Vow—declaration on oath ; affirmation ; determination. Faithful—true ; honest. Resembled Sir Rowland—was much like Sir Rowland. Went out—proceeded. Returned—come back. Peril—danger. Break out—give way to ; give vent to ; burst forth. Passionate—fond. Exclamations—declarations ; expressions. Gentle—noble. Sweet—loving. Memory—that which brings to the memory ; exact image. You memory, &c.—you, on seeing whom one is reminded of Sir Rowland ; you, on whose appearance the remembrance of Sir Rowland comes to the mind of every one ; you who, by your looks and ways, bring your father back to the mind of everybody. Virtuous—noble ; good. Valiant—courageous. Fond—unwise ; foolish. Overcome—defeat ; throw down.

Page 113.

Your praise, &c.—the fame which you have won in overcoming the wrestler, and which reached the ears of your brother before you came, has set him still more against you. “O my gentle master, &c., before you.” In Indirect Narration :—The old man, calling Orlando his sweet and gentle master, exclaimed why he was virtuous, why he was gentle, strong and valiant, why he had been so fond to overcome the famous wrestler. His praise came too swiftly home

before him. (These words have been taken word for word from Shakespeare). **Wondering**—being surprised. **What all this meant**—what the meaning of all this was. **Bore him**—had for him. **The fame, &c.**—the credit he had obtained by defeating the wrestler. **Intended**—desired. **In conclusion**—last of all. **Escape**—avoid. **Advised him, &c.**—asked him to avoid danger. **In**—governs 'which' understood. **Instant**—immediate. **By instant flight**—by immediately fleeing from the place. **For that was, &c.**—as he was called by that name. **Brought out**—taken out. **Hoard**—savings. **Thrifty hire**—wages saved by frugality. **Saved**—collected after undergoing the necessary expenses. **Laid by**—stored. **To be, &c.**—to provide for me when I shall no longer be able to serve. **Ravens**—crows; it is the object of *feed*. **He that, &c.**—may God (who gives food to the ravens) give me comfort in my old age. **Gold**—money. **I will do the service of**—I will serve like. **Younger man**—a man younger in age than myself. **In all, etc.**—whenever and wherever you require. **The constant, &c.**—the faithful and devoted service rendered to the masters by their servants in ancient times. **Fashion**—style. **You are not, &c.**—you are not fit for the style of the present time. **Youthful wages**—wages saved in youth. **Light upon**—find out. **Maintenance**—livelihood. **For both of, &c.**—for the support of both of us. **Orlando... instant flight**—In Direct Narration;—Orlando struck with wonder said: "What does all this mean? What is the matter?" The old man said, "Your wicked brother, envying the love all the people bear you, and, now hearing the fame you have gained by your victory in the duke's palace, intends to destroy you by setting fire to your chamber this night. Flee instantly from this place."

Para. 25. Loved—dear. **Set out**—started. **Uncertain**—undecided. **Pursue**—adopt; follow. **Uncertain, &c.**—not knowing which road to take. **Distress**—distressfully. **Wandered on**—walked about; roamed about. **Human habitation**—the abode or dwelling-place of some human being. **Spent**—exhausted. **With**—on account of; owing to. **Idie, &c.**—I am dying of hunger. **I can go, &c.**—I cannot

advance any further. Laid himself down—lay on the ground.—Thinking, &c.—considering that he would die there. Farewell—adieu; it is an expression of parting. Took his old servant up—held his old servant. Shelter—shade. Cheerly—bravely. Rest, &c.—take rest for a short time. “O my dear master.....father”—Indirect Narration :—Adam at last said to his dear master that he was dying for want of food, and that he could go no farther. He said to him, “Cheerly...dying”—In Indirect Narration :—He told him cheerly to rest his weary limbs there a while and not to talk of dying.

Para. 26. Searched—sought; looked. Searched—about, &c.—went about this place and that to get some food. Happened to arrive—chanced to arrive; by chance arrived. Was—was living. Were just going, &c.—were about to take their food. Being seated—having taken his seat. Canopy—covering or roof over the head. Covert—covering. Under no other, &c.—had no other canopy than that of the shady boughs of some large trees.

Para. 27. Desperate—reckless. Whom, &c.—who had become desperate on account of hunger. Force—violence. By force—forcibly. Forbear—relinquish; leave. Forbear...food”—In Indirect Narration :—He told them (the duke and his companions) to forbear and to eat no more, and that he must have their food.

Page 114.

Bold—desperate. Rude despiser, &c.—naturally ill-mannered. Dying with—dying of; dying on account of. Was welcome—was invited; was greeted. He was welcome, etc.—he could gladly take his seat and dine with them; he, the duke, was glad to invite him to take his seat and partake of the dinner. The duke, &c....with them—In Direct Narration :—The duke said, “Has distress made you so bold, or are you a rude despiser of good manners?” On this Orlando said, “I am dying with hunger.” Then the duke told him, “You are welcome. sit down and eat with us.” (These words are taken almost literally from Shakespeare). Gentle—mild. Put up—sheathed. Blushed with shame—filled with shame; was ashamed.

Rude—ungentlemanly ; harsh. Demanded—made a demand ; asked. Demanded their food—asked them to give up their food to him. Had been—were certain to be. Savage—rude ; barbarous. Put on—assumed. Countenance—appearance. Put on the countenance—assumed the looks. Of stern command—holding the severe aspect of authority. Whatever men—men of whatever rank or class. Melancholy—gloomy. Lose and neglect—pass idly ; spend in idleness ; waste. Creeping—passing by slowly and unobserved. Looked on—seen. Better days—prosperous times. If ever..... church—if you have ever attended a church. If you have ever sat...feast—if you have ever partaken of a feast given by a good man. Wiped a tear—washed a tear by rubbing. Pity—sympathise ; feel compassion. Gentle—mild ; entreating. Speeches—words. Move—have an effect.—Move you—soften your heart. Human courtesy—gracious favour worthy of a man. Habitation—dwelling. Knolled to church—summoned to church by its ringing. Engendered—produced. Take—partake. Refreshment—food and drink. Minister—serve. As will, &c.—as will serve your purpose ; as you require. Limped—walked lamely. In—out of. Pure—true ; sincere. Who has limped, &c,—who has really loved me and has followed me limpingly, through fatigue, to a great distance. Oppressed—troubled. At once—at the same time. Sad—painful. Infirmities—causes of weakness. Till he...bit—I will not take a morsel until he had his fill. Forbear—stop. Forbear to eat—keep from eating. Doe—female deer. Like a doe—as swift as a doe. Fawn—young one of a deer. Presently—immediately. Set—put. Venerable—worthy of respect. Venerable burthen—i. e., the old man, Adam, whom Orlando has carried. Cheered his heart—made him merry. Revived—recovered. Recovered—got back ; was restored to.

Paras. 28—30. Inquired—asked. Found—came to know. Protection—care. He took him, &c.—he engaged him. Not many days after—not long after. ‘Days’ is an object of time. Before related—previously described ; mentioned above. Bought—pur-

chased. **Strangely**—in a strange manner. **Surprised**—struck with wonder; filled with surprise. **Strangely surprised**—greatly surprised. **Carved**—cut out. **Love sonnets**—odes of love. **Sonnets** are short lyrical poems containing fourteen lines. **Fastened**—attached.

Page 115.

Addressed to—written to. **Were wondering**—being filled with surprise, were thinking. **Could be**—could happen. **Perceived**—saw.

Para. 31. **Little thought**—had no idea. **Condescension**—kindness: courtesy. **Favour**—kindness. **Had so, &c.**—had so captivated his heart with love for her. **Passed**—spent. **Much pleased with**—greatly delighted at. **Graceful**—pleasing. **Air**—appearance. **Entered into**—began to hold. **Entered into, &c.**—began to talk with him. **Likeness**—resemblance. **Beloved**—greatly loved. **His beloved Rosalind**—whom he dearly loved. **Dignified**—noble; high. **Deportment**—demeanour. **Assumed**—adopted. **Forward**—hasty. **Forward manner**—rashness. **They are, &c.**—they are passing from boyhood to manhood when they are just entering manhood. **Archness**—shrewdness. **Humour**—joke. **With much, &c.**—very cunningly and jocosely. **Talked**—spoke. **Haunts**—frequents; generally comes to. **Odes**—short poems. **Hawthorns**—thorny bushes used for hedges. **Elegies**—mournful songs. **Brambles**—a kind of thorny bush. **All praising**—all in praise of. **This same**—the above mentioned. **Counsel**—advice. **Cure**—rid.

Para. 32. **Confessed**—admitted. **Fond**—doting; great; tender; **Of**—governs 'which' understood. **Remedy**—medicine; antidote; that which would cure him of his love, as if it were a malady. **Proposed**—suggested. **Every day**—daily. **Feign**—assume; pretend. **To court**—to make love. **Imitate**—copy. **Fantastical**—whimsical; odd. **Fantastic ways**—fanciful manners. **Make you, &c.**—cause you to feel shame for your love. **Faith**—belief. **Had no, &c.**—did not much believe. **Remedy**—efficacy. **Agreed**—consented; acceded.

Feign a playful courtship—make mock courtship ; pretend to court Ganymede in sport. **Visited**—met. **Fine words**—choice expressions. **Flattering compliments**—words of praise that flatter to please the person to whom they are used ; hence, pleasing words in praise of lovers. **Delight, &c.**—find pleasure in using. **Mistress**—beloved. **However**—nevertheless. **Progress**—improvement. **That Ganymede, &c.**—that Ganymede at all succeeded in effecting the cure of Orlando.

Para. 33. But—only. **Sportive play**—act in jest ; play in sport. **Not dreaming**—not having the *ideae venin* a dream ; not having the least idea. **Very**—same. **Opportunity**—favourable occasion. **Saying**—expressing. **All the, &c.**—all the nice expressions of his love which he had garnered up in his heart. **Fancy**—imagination.

Page 116.

Enjoyed. &c.—had the enjoyment of the jest that was played upon Orlando without his having any knowledge of it ; had played the jest upon Orlando without his knowing of it ; and found a great pleasure or enjoyment in it. **Love speeches**—words spoken in token of love. **Addressed**—spoken. **Right person**—the person for whom they were meant, *i. e.*, Rosalind, Ganymede, being Rosalind in disguise.

Para. 34. Manner—way. **Pleasantly**—happily ; merrily. **Good-natured**—noble-hearted. **Seeing**—finding. **Made, &c.**—pleased Ganymede. **Let him &c.**—let him do as he liked best. **Diverted**—pleased. **Mock**—false ; assumed. **Mock courtship**—courtship made in jest and not in earnest. **Resort**—meeting. **Place of resort**—resting place. **Learnt**—came to know. **Met**—saw. **Day**—is object of time. **Talk**—conversation. **Parentages**—family ; birth. **Came of**—descended from. **Did not suspect**—had no suspicion ; did not doubt. **Pretty**—handsome. **Royal**—it is an adjective from *king*. **Lineage**—family. **Content**—satisfied. **Put off**—postponed. **All further, &c.**—any more explanation regarding himself. **For few days longer**—for a few days more.

Page 117.

Brotherly affection—brother's love. **Bent on, &c.**—with the evident intention of killing him; with the stern determination of taking his life.

Para. 37. Very much—profusely; in great quantity. **The wound, &c.**—a great quantity of blood having flowed from the wound in Orlando's arm. **Desired**—wished. **In sport**—in jest. **Accident**—occurrence. **Befallen him**—happened to him. **The accident, &c.**—i. e., the wound he had received.

Para. 38. The story, &c.—the story regarding the brave deed of Orlando. **Providential**—effected by God. **Providential escape**—the saving of his life by the providence of God. **Owned**—confessed. **Reconciliation**—restoration to friendship. **Their reconciliation**—their being reconciled to each other; their having become friends. **He owned, &c....reconciliation**—In Direct Narration:—He (Oliver) said to them, "I am Orlando's brother, who so cruelly used him. We have now been reconciled to each other."

Para. 39. Sincere—real. **Sorrow**—repentance. **Offences**—faults; wrongs. **Lively**—strong. **Impressions**—effects. **Instantly**—at once. **Fell in, &c.**—began to love him. **Observing**—seeing. **Distress**—uneasiness; affliction; pain. **She pitied, &c.**—she felt pity for the distress. **As suddenly**—as instantly; at the same time. **Stealing**—creeping; coming stealthily; rising imperceptibly. **No less busy**—also busy, i. e., producing an influence in the mind of. **Fainted**—became senseless. **Recovered**—regained his senses. **Counterfeited**—pretended; imitated; made a false show of. **Swoon**—faintness. **Imaginary**—assumed. **He had, &c.**—he had imitated faintness for assuming the character of Rosalind as she would have fainted on hearing such news. **How well, &c.**—how well I have done my part in making a false show of having fainted. **Ganymede said to Oliver, &c.**—In Indirect Narration:—Ganymede asked Oliver to tell his brother Orlando how well she had counterfeited a swoon. **Complexion**—appearance. **Really**—in fact; as opposed to counterfeit.

Much wondering—being greatly surprised. Take, &c.—take courage; cheer up. Counterfeit to be a man—show yourself to be a man; make the appearance of possessing manliness. So I do—so I do counterfeit to be a man. By right—by nature; naturally; properly. Should, &c.—ought to have been a woman and not a man.

Para. 40. A very long one—one lasting for a very long time. Returned—came. Much news—great matter. Beside—in addition to. Suit—courtship. Sent, &c.—listened with great favour; heard with great satisfaction. Interview—meeting. Thing—matter. Settled—fixed. Settle upon—give by a legal document.

Para. 41. You have, &c.—I entirely agree to the proposal; I give my consent to the match. Wedding—marriage. Be—take place.

Page 118.

Persuade—induce. Approaching—coming near. Enquire after—make enquires about; know about. “ You have my...brother—in Indirect Narration : —Orlando said that he (Oliver) had his consent. He then gave his permission to hold his wedding the next day, and he would invite the duke and his friends. He then asked him to go and persuade his shepherdess to agree to that as she was then alone, and her brother was coming to them.

Paras. 42—50. Sudden—unexpected. Advised—asked. On the morrow—to-morrow; the next day. Added—continued; further said. Wish—desire. Well approved—greatly liked. This arrangement—i. e., of his marriage with his Rosalind. Really—truly. Avowed—declared. He should, &c.—his desire will be fulfilled. Engage—undertake; bind himself. In her own person—in her own guise; personally. Should be willing—should consent. This seeming, etc.—this occurrence which appeared to be wonderful. So easily perform—do with such easiness. Bring to pass—cause to happen; effect. By the aid of magic—by means of magic. Learnt of—learnt from; taught by. Magician—one well versed in magic. The

fond, etc.—Orlando who loved Rosalind so greatly. Doubting—not believing. Half believing, etc.—believing and yet not believing; having a belief mixed with doubt. In sober meaning—in earnest; earnestly. By my life I do—upon my life I am in earnest; I swear by my life that I am not in jest. Clothes—dress. Bid, etc.—ask the duke and your friends to be present at your marriage. She shall be here—she is sure to be here. “By my life I do..... here”—In Indirect Narration :—Ganymede swore by his life that he spoke in sober meaning. and told him to put on his best clothes and bid the duke and his friends to their wedding. He added that if he (Orlando) desired to be married the next day to Rosalind, she should be there. Morning—is an object of time. Oliver—is in the nominative absolute. Oliver having, etc.—Aliena having given her consent to Oliver’s proposal. Into the presence—before. Being assembled—having come together; having gathered together. Celebrate—perform. The double marriage—the marriage of Oliver with Celia and that of Orlando with Rosalind. Shakespeare has fourfold marriage instead of twofold, the other characters have not been introduced by Lamb in this tale. As yet—up to the present moment; up to that time. Appearing—coming; being present. There was, etc.—they were all amazed and were making false conjectures. Mostly—greatly. Making, etc.—playing a fun upon; making a fun of. In this strange way—in this wonderful manner; by magic. Really—in reality. He knew, etc.—he was at a nonplus. Would—would consent. The duke asked Orlando.....with Orlando—In Indirect Narration :—The duke said, “Orlando, do you believe the shepherd boy can really do what he has promised?” And while Orlando was answering, “I know not what to think,” Ganymede entered and said to the duke, “If I bring your daughter, will you consent to her marriage with Orlando?”

Page 119.

Out—outside. Throwing off—casting off; removing. Attire—dress. Apparel—dress. Being once, etc.—having once again

put on the dress of a woman. Became—was transformed into. Power—aid. Garb—dress. Clothes—dress. With little trouble—with no difficulty. Transformed—changed. Looked, etc.—resembled much. Were gone—went out. Very like—much similar to. Observed—marked. Resemblance—similarly. The duke, etc.....resemblance—in Direct Narration:—The duke said to Orlando, "I think the shepherd Ganymede looked very like my daughter Rosalind." And Orlando said, "I have also observed the resemblance."

Para. 51. Would end--would come to a conclusion. No longer, etc.—no more feigning. That it was, etc.—that magic brought her there. Threw herself, etc.—*i. e.*, as in supplication. Begged—implored. Blessing—benediction. It seemed, etc.—every one was struck with wonder at her sudden appearance. That it might, etc.—that it might have appeared as performed by magic. Trifle—joke. Banishment—*i. e.*, the sentence which was passed by her uncle. Dwelling—living; staying. Passing—appearing; representing.

Para. 52. Ratified—confirmed. Wedding—marriage ceremony. Celebrated—performed. Parade—pomp; show. Splendour—grandeur. Usual—usual with persons of such high rank; as done by them on such occasions. Venison—flesh of deer. Wanting—missing. Felicity—happiness; joy. Unexpected—sudden; whom nobody expected. Tell—inform. Joyful—happy. News—tidings. Restored—given back.

Para. 53. The usurper—Frederick who had usurped the dukedom from his elder brother by deposing him. Enraged—offended. At the, etc.—at his daughter's going away from the place. Every day—daily. 'Day' is an object of time. Worth—consequence. Men of great worth—men of rank; noblemen. Resorted—went; betook themselves. Lawful—rightful. Envying—bearing envy or malice: it qualifies 'usurper.' Highly—greatly. Respected—honoured. Adversity—adverse fortune; poverty. Put himself, etc.—headed. Force—army. Advanced—stopped; went, Intending—with the

intention of ; desiring. **Seize**—take hold of. **Put him, etc.**—kill him and all his courtiers that are with him. **Interposition**—interference. **Wonderful, etc.**—strange interference of God. **Converted**—changed ; turned away from. **Evil intention**—wicked desire, that is, of killing him and his followers. **Just as**—soon as. **Skirts**—borders. **Religious man**—a pious man ; one who has devoted his life to religion. **Hermit**—a religious man living apart from the world. **Much talk**—conversation for a long time. **In the end**—eventually. **Turned**—changed.

Page 120.

Wicked design—evil intention. **Thenceforward**—thereafter. **Became, &c.**—sincerely repented. **Resolved**—determined ; made up his mind. **Relinquishing**—leaving ; giving up. **Unjust dominion**—the dukedom which he had unjustly usurped. **Remainder, &c.**—his remaining life. **Religious house**—monastery. **Newly, etc.**—lately formed repentance ; repentance which came to his mind only very lately. **To offer**—to undertake.

Para. 54. **Joyful**—happy. **Welcome**—cordially received. **Opportunely**—in time ; timely. **Heighten**—increase. **Festivity**—rites ; ceremony. **Rejoicings**—delights ; joy making. **Complimented**—congratulated. **The good fortune, etc.**—i. e., the restoration of his dukedom. **Wished joy**—wished joy to her ; prayed for her happiness. **Very sincerely**—with all her heart. **Unmixed**—untainted. **So completely, etc.**—Rosalind and Celia loved each other so dearly, that they were never jealous or envious of each other. **Had now**—had now got.

Para. 55. **Opportunity**—time. **Rewarding**—giving rewards to. **True**—faithful. **Stayed**—stopped ; lived. **Banishment**—exile. **Worthy followers**—true courtiers. **Patiently**—calmly. **Spared, etc.**—shared with him all the troubles and distress during his exile. **Very well pleased**—exceedingly delighted. **Peace**—peace of mind ; happiness. **Return, etc.**—go back in happy and prosperous condition ; return happy and prosperous. **Lawful**—rightful.

MUCH ADO ABOUT NOTHING.

Summary :—Beatrice and Hero, daughter and niece of Leonato, governor of Messina, were two ladies of different dispositions, Beatrice being witty and Hero serious. Once upon a time Don Pedro, Prince of Arragon, his friend, Claudio, and Benedick, a wild and witty lord of Padua, came to visit Leonato. Claudio was struck with the beauty and accomplishments of Hero, and, on making an offer of marriage, was accepted by her. Himself a wit, the cutting remarks of Beatrice ent Benedick to the quick, particularly when she said that he was the "prince's jester." The lively discourse between Beatrice and Benedick, however, delighted the prince greatly, and though they seemed to make a discordant pair, he cherished the idea of matching them together; and with this object he so contrived that both Benedick and Beatrice were persuaded to believe that the one loved the other, and thus they actually came to love each other.

Now prince Pedro had a brother, who took much delight in perpetrating villainies. He induced a certain woman, named Margaret, to personate the lady Hero and to talk from her chamber window with a gallant at midnight. This so much poisoned the heart of Claudio that the next day, when they were all met to celebrate the marriage, he did not scruple to proclaim the guilt of the blameless Hero. Leonato, when he learnt from Hero how innocent she was, challenged Claudio to a duel, and, persuaded by Beatrice, Benedick also lent him his support. Claudio had had no alternative other than to fight, but at this juncture a full confession was made by one Borachio of the plot formed against Hero, and her innocence was established.

The sorrow of Claudio at the wrong done by him to Hero may be imagined, particularly because Leonato had given out that Hero had, because of the false accusation, died of a broken heart. As an atonement, Leonato promised to marry the cousin of Hero, a lady he had not even seen. His surprise and his delight may be conceived when, at the time of marriage, the unknown lady proved to be no other than

Hero herself. After Claudio and Hero were married, the marriage of the mad wits also took place.

Page 120.

Para. 1. Much.....nothing—a great deal of bustle and trouble about something which in the end turned out to be nothing. *Ado* (Anglo-Saxon *a, don, to do*), a troublesome business. Cf. 'Let us follow to see the end of this 'ado.'—*The Taming of the Shrew*. Messina—a town in Sicily.

Para. 2. Lively—sprightly. Lively temper—vivacious and cheerful disposition. Divert—amuse; entertain. Serious—grave. Serious disposition—a grave turn of mind. Sprightly sallies—merry flashes of wit; lively outbursts of wit and fancy. Whatever was going forward—anything that was said or done; anything that happened. To make matter of mirth—to furnish a subject for merriment. Light-hearted—of a playful or sportive turn of mind.

Para. 3. On their return—when they were returning. Arragon—a province of Spain. Florence—a town in Italy, celebrated as the birth-place of Dante. Wild and witty—frolicsome and full of pleasant conceit. Padua—a town in Italy.

Page 121.

Para. 4. Niece—*Niece* is Norman French from the Latin *neptis*, but it is somewhat doubtful whether *nephew* is from *nepos* (Anglo-Saxon *genefa*, Semi-Saxon *neva*).—*Adams*. Acquaintance—acquaintance in the plural form has displaced acquaintances.—*Crombie*.

Para. 5. To be.....discourse—to have no part in any conversation; to be prevented from joining in any conversation. Still—always. Marks—pays attention to; heeds. Nobody marks you—no one takes any notice of you. Rattle-brain—noisy and wild fellow. Was just such another rattle-brain—was exactly of the same type of a giddy, thoughtless and clamorous sort of person. Free salutation—too familiar greeting. Flippant with her tongue—pert; of smooth and rapid speech. He thought it...tongue—he

considered that it was not meet and proper that a lady, well-educated and accomplished, should use her tongue so boldly and put no restraint on it. To select him to make her merry jests upon—to pick him out as the butt. To be made a jest—to be made game of. To take the same liberty—to indulge in the same merry vein. A Perfect war of raillery—a regular passage-at-arms consisting in an interchange of repartees. Kept up—maintained. Disdain—Benedick by calling Beatrice “my lady Disdain” forcibly hits off her overbearing pride. Jangling—wrangling. Approved—proved; justified. She would eat all he had killed there—by this raillery Beatrice makes a severe reflection upon Benedick’s personal bravery. Benedick had not fleshed his sword upon the body of a single enemy. Such was his courage. And as nobody was killed by him, Beatrice could very easily offer “to eat all he had killed in the war.” Jester—fool. Sarcasm—(Greek *sarkasmos*, *sarcos*, flesh.) Literally, a tearing of the flesh; a bitter sneer. Sunk.....Benedick—pained him more, cut him more to the quick. Coward—(French *conard*, Latin *cauda*, a tail) one who turns tail; a man without courage. Regard—mind. Imputation—charge. Buffoonery—the practices of a buffoon. Buffoon (from French *bouffon*, Italian *buffare*, to puff, storm) literally is one who amuses by puffing out his cheeks and making grimaces. The charge.....truth—because the accusation, instead of being an unmeaning one, bears sometimes on its face strong marks of probability.

Para. 6. Improvement—addition; increase. Admirable—worthy of admiration. Humorous dialogue—a conversation full of merry conceits.

Page 122.

She were—she would be. Suggestion—hint. Talk themselves mad—make themselves mad by talking. A discordant pair—an unsuitable couple. Make a discordant pair—would prove a very quarrelsome husband and wife. Matching—joining by means of marriage. Matching these two, etc.—bringing about a marriage between them.

Para. 7. Keen—sharp. Guess at—infer. Passing—going on. Affect—love. A soldier's eye—*soldier*. Old English *soldier*, French *soldat*, Latin *solidus*, a piece of money, the pay of a *soldier*. Eye—view, opinion. A *soldier's eye* means, therefore, the passing view or opinion which a soldier, whose whole mind is bent on the acquisition of military glory, is apt to take of things of secondary consideration. In this happy time of peace—This weak piping time of peace.—*Richard III.* —Come thronging...thoughts—gentle and tender thoughts, *i. e.*, love-thoughts, rise in quick succession in the mind. "Persons planted so thick as to elbow one another for a cord; persons planted so thickly as to press each other (Anglo Saxon *thringan*, to press) form a throng. A crowded table. A throng of carriages."—TAYLOR'S *Synonyms*. Wrought upon—moved; exercised influence or produced an impression. Rare—(Latin *rare*, thin) of a loose texture; hence, extraordinary. Accomplished—Latin *ad* and *compleo*, to fill. Of great acquirements. Prevailed upon—persuaded.

Para. 8. Have set—fixed. Set their hearts upon—intently desirous. To make the time seem short—to cause the interval (before the consummation of the marriage) to pass away quickly. As indeed...upon—Cf. The lover would be glad to strike out of his existence all the moments that are to pass away before the happy meeting.—*Addison*. Pastime—amusements which "serve to pass away the time to prevent it from hanging as an intolerable burden on men's hands."—*Trench*. Artful scheme—some plan requiring ingenuity. Entered with.....prince—heartily undertook to assist in gratifying this fancy of the prince. Whim—a sudden turn of the mind. Any modest office—any proper or decent piece of service.

Page 123.

Para. 10. Operations—(Latin *opus*, work, *opera*, to work) method of working. Here, works; stratagems. Took their station—posted themselves. Could not choose but hear—had no option. Arbour—(Old English, *herbed*, Latin *arbor*, a tree) a hower. Careless

talk—random or purposeless talk. Dote on—Dutch *doten*, to be silly, Scotch *doilet*, stupid) love to excess. In all outward behaviour—as far as (her) outward bearing was concerned. So—so much. Which—Benedick's loving Beatrice. Railer—(French *raler*, to have a noise in the throat) one given to good-humoured irony.

Para. 11. Make sport of—mock; deride. To what end—what would be the result or consequence. It were a good deed to hang him—Benedick's conduct would be so reprehensible that it would be an act of virtue to bring him to the gallows. Wise in everything, etc.—Beatrice shows great wisdom and judgment in everything she does, but she has not acted with her usual prudence in loving Benedick. But in loving Benedick—because her love was sure not to be requited.

Para. 12. Sits the wind in that corner—does the wind blow from that quarter. Corner—direction. The meaning is—Is the case thus with Beatrice? Has she really fallen in love with me? Trick—(Old French *tricher*, to cheat) a contrivance; a stratagem to deceive. The different meanings of *trick* are (1) a sleight of hand, as, “do you put tricks upon us with savages and men of Ind.”—*The Tempest*. (2) A peculiarity, as, “he hath a trick of Cordelia's face.” (3) A trait of character, as, “a man that had this trick of melancholy sold a goodly manor for a song.”—*All's Well That Ends Well*. But when I.....married—Benedick is seeking arguments to justify his falling in love. True, he had no thought of marrying; but then, he did not expect to live to that age when he should marry. Bachelor—French *bachelier*, a young man. That is no...folly—that does not prove much her folly. Benedick is over head and ears in love with Beatrice. By this day—from this day forth. Spy some marks of love—observe certain signs in her which indicate that she has fallen in love. Tartness—(Anglo-Saxon *teart*—*tearau*, to tear) sourness; asperity. Usual tartness—the sharpness which was usual to her. Against my will I am sent, &c.—I would have preferred not to come on this message. Beatrice does not conceal the ill will she bore to Benedick.

Page 124.

Rude speeches—uncivil words. Benedick thought.....she uttered—Benedick was far gone in love. Though Beatrice used very uncivil language, yet Benedick was so much prepossessed in her favour that he thought he had detected some tenderness or affection lurking in her rude and harsh words. *I am a Jew*—A *Jew* was an opprobrious epithet. *To Jew* is used colloquially for *to cheat*. Cf. 'I am a Jew if I serve the Jew any longer.'—*The Merchant of Venice*. The expression "Dog of a Jew" occurs in Scott's *Ivanhoe*. *I will go get her picture*—for the suppression of *to* the sign of the infinitive, Cf. *I will go seek the king*.—*Hamlet*. "We still retain a dislike to use the formal *to* after "go" and "come," which may almost be called auxiliaries, and we therefore say—I will come *and* see you.—Abbott's *Shakespearian Grammar*, p. 249.

Para. 13. The gentleman.....him—the trick played against Benedick having succeeded (or been successful.) Turn—a part which a person has to play in succession to another player. Parlour—(French *parler*, to speak) an ordinary sitting-room. Parley, parole are from the same root. *Is all of her*—*parse all*. Discourse is *all of her*—conversation relates to her only. Steal—secretly come or approach with stealthy steps. Ungrateful minions—(*Mignon* from French *mignon*, a darling) favourites who prove unthankful to their benefactors. Here, the honey-suckles; because they owe their luxuriance to the sun whom however (*i. e.*, whose light) they exclude or shut out from the honour. I warrant—I assure you. Presently—soon.

Para. 14. Alley—French *aller*, to go. A walk in a garden. Our talk...Benedick—our conversation will be confined to Benedick; we shall talk about Benedick alone, and of no other subject. Your part—your business. Let it be your part, &c.—your business will be to admire him to such an extent that no man was ever so admired. Lapwing—the peewit which is an inhabitant of heaths, commons, and the marshy ground near lakes and rivers. Runs close by the

ground—comes swiftly and stealthily. Entirely—heartily or with one's whole heart. Rarely featured—of an uncommonly handsome appearance. Dispraise—undervalue ; censure. Carping—catching at small faults. Latin *carpo*, to pluck. Such carping...commendable—this habit of fault-finding cannot at all be admired. Mock me into air—turn me into air by mocking. So bitterly will she mock at me that I shall be reduced, as it were, into nothing. Explain—Mock the good housewife Fortune from her wheel—*As You Like It*. What does *mock* mean in—'Mock the time with fairest show'?—*Macbeth*. Wrong—do injustice to.

Page 125.

Refuse so rare a gentleman--decline the love of a man of such uncommon parts. He is the first man in Italy—Who was called the first gentleman in Europe? To change the discourse—to turn the subject of conversation into something else. Go in with—accompany. Breathless eagerness—an ardent desire which suspended, as it were, all breath. What fire is in my ears? what burning words have been poured into my ears? Beatrice means to say that her heart has been on a sudden smitten with love by what she has overheard of the conversation that passed between Hero and Ursula. Maiden pride—the pride of remaining a virgin.

Para. 15. Cheated into a mutual...prince—entrapped into cherishing a love for each other by means of the pleasant trick devised by the good-natured prince. The morrow...Leonato—the succeeding day, which was to witness the celebration of the marriage of Hero with Claudio, threw Hero and her virtuous and amiable father into deep sorrow.

Para. 16. A half brother—a step-brother. Whose spirits..... villainies—whose mind appeared to be busy in contriving wicked plots. Only for—for no other consideration than only for the sake of. The malicious pleasure—the pleasure arising from the gratification of one's ill-will or spite. Set his heart upon—earnestly wished for. Paid court—made offers of love. Prevailed upon—

persuaded. Offer—promise. Attendant—waiting-maid. The better to deceive—that he may be more successful in deceiving. For that was.....plot—Don Juan wished to effect this object, viz., to make Claudio believe that Hero was unfaithful to him.

Para. 17. Imprudent—inconsiderate, wanting discretion.

Page 126.

Offered—undertook. Congregation—Latin *con*, together and *gregis*, a flock, assembly. Shame—disgrace.

Para. 19. Innocent—as she was in reality, not however to the mind of Claudio who was fully convinced of her guilt. Expose—put to shame. Distinguish between *exposure* and *exposition*. Naughty—wicked.

Para. 20. Ceremony—a sacred rite. Perhaps from *cure* (old from *curo*) to care. Passionate—angry.

Para. 21. Wide—adverb. Far from the mark. Cf. "Pyrrhus at Priam drives, in rage strikes wide."—*Troilus and Cressida*. Is my lord...wide—is my lord all right that he is speaking so boldly, vehemently and incoherently.

Para. 22. To link—to untie. From German *lenken*, to bend; a link meaning something bent so as to form a joint.

Para. 23. This looks not like a nuptial—the strange proceedings made the simple Benedick exclaim: "We came here to witness a marriage, but we find here a dispute."

Page 127.

Para. 24. Heart-struck—struck in the heart; heart-broken. A fainting fit—a swoon. To all appearance dead—apparently lifeless.

Para. 25. Ancient (friar)—old. Cf. The Lay of the Ancient Mariner. Full of observation on human nature—well-read in human nature; having a deep knowledge of human nature. Countenance—(French *contenance*, Latin *continere*, to contain) the features as containing, i. e., expressing the feelings. A thousand blushing shames to start into her face—a deep red to suffuse her cheeks.

brought on by her feelings of shame at being accused of unfaithfulness. **An angel-like whiteness**—a paleness that testified to her angelic and pure nature, *i. e.*, to her innocence. **Bear away**—carry off ; displace. **Fire**—lustre ; brightness. **Explain** :—To run through fire and water ; fire and brimstone ; to set on fire ; to take fire. **Belie the error**—Belie=give the lie to ; prove the falseness of. **Error**—transgression. **Did speak against her maiden truth**—brought impeachment of her virgin purity. **Reading**—the wisdom gathered from the study of books. **Calling**—profession. **Biting error**—mistake of a biting or mortifying nature. Cf. A biting pain : a biting jest.

Para. 26. What man is he you are accused of—who is the man with whom, it is alleged, you have carried on a conversation. **Un-meet**—improper. **Meet**—proper. *Meet* comes from Anglo Saxon *gemet*, fit, Latin *metior*, to measure.

Changed words—conversed. **Refuse me**—deny me ; disown me. **Torture me**—kill me with tortures.

Para. 27. **Death-like swoon**—a swoon having all the appearance of death. **Make this easy of belief**—cause it to be easily believed. **Should put on mourning**—should wear a mourning suit. **Rites that appertain to a burial**—funeral rites. **What good will this?**—of what good will it be ? **Change slander into pity**—convert calumny into a subject or ground of compassion ; *i. e.*, cause men to forget her slander and to take compassion on her.

Page 128.

The idea.....imagination—the image of her life, *i. e.*, the thought of her course and manner of loving shall delightfully steal into his heart, *i. e.*, Claudio's mind shall delight in cherishing sweet recollection of Hero. **Interest**—any share, *i. e.*, if Claudio had ever shared or felt any love for Hero. **Though he.....truer**—though Claudio believed that the charge brought against Hero had a greater foundation in truth than was actually the case.

Para. 29. I am so grieved.....me--my heart has been so much subdued by grief that I have lost all power of resistance, and I can be guided by the slenderest cord; I am quite overpowered and unnerved, and am totally unfit to think for myself. Cf :—

Being that I flow in grief,
'The smallest twine may lead me.

—*Much Ado About Nothing.*

The merry plot—the pleasing or entertaining trick used to make Beatrice and Benedick fall in love with each other. To make merry—to enjoy oneself.

Para. 30. Yea—yes. It is a particle of affirmation. Your fair cousin is wronged— injustice has been done to your fair cousin. Would right her—would vindicate her; would redress the wrong that had been done to her; would remove the stigma under which she had been unjustly placed. It were as...deny nothing—Beatrice says everything without making a direct avowal of her love. Her coyness, though much removed, has not yet wholly left her. Imposed upon—deceived. Explain imposition in :—(1) The people complained loudly of the imposition of a heavy window-tax. (2) I can see through the imposition that has been played upon you. Slandered—Slander is literally scandal, which comes from French *escandale*, Latin *scandulum*. Scorned—*Scorn*, from Scottish *shairin*, ordure, literally means the treatment of one as if one were dirt. Scorned=treated with or held in extreme contempt. Urge—Latin *urgeo*, to drive, to press earnestly. A proper saying !—a becoming honest remark ! Sake—(Anglo-Saxon *sacan*, to accuse). Literally, dispute : hence, purpose, end, account. Who would be a man—who would act like a man ! who would take upon him to avenge my cousin ! But valour...compliments—*Melt*=vanished ; faded. Cf. “What seemed corporal melted as breath into the wind.”—*Macbeth*. The expression means,—Courage is not to be found at present ; instead of it we find only idle courtesies and compliments. With wishing, with grieving—with conveys the idea of an external agency by which an effect is produced ; in modern English, this idea is usually expressed by the preposition *by*. I cannot be a

man with wishing means,—A wish cannot transform me into a man. I will die a woman with grieving means,—As I cannot be a man I must continue to be a woman, and in this state I must pine to death for grief at my inability to avenge my cousin Hero. Cf. "A better death than die with mocks, which is as bad as die with tickling."—*Much Ado About Nothing*.

Page 129.

By this hand I love you—I swear by this hand that I love you. Use it for...by it—for the sake of my love employ your hand in fighting for my slandered cousin instead of (idly) swearing by it. On your soul—On or upon is used in taking an oath, or in making an asseveration. Cf. On my honour; upon my word; on his blessing; on thine allegiance. Shall render me a dear account—shall give me a heavy reckoning, i. e., shall dearly answer for his conduct.

Para. 31. Working his gallant temper—*Working* = operating upon, i. e., rousing, exciting. The spirit of her angry words—fire or mettle infused by her angry words. To answer with their swords the injury—to render account for the injury they had committed by fighting in justification of their conduct. Had died for grief—*For* = on account of. Had died of grief. Respected—regarded with respect or reverence. Challenge—a summons to single combat. Brought to pass—showed; presented. Literally, caused to happen. The uncertain fortune of a duel—the doubtful issue or result of a duel, where the victory may declare in favor of the wrong-doer.

Para. 33. And no doubt.....of Hero—*Continued* from Latin *continuo*—con, together, and *teneo*, to hold. Doubt (is nominative to *continued*) = Mistrust.

Para. 34. Rare semblance—exquisite picture or image.

Page 130.

Run like iron through his soul—cut his soul like a sword.

Para. 35. Accusation—charge. Accuse is to bring a cause (or charge) against a person. Betrothed—affianced.

Para. 36. Ethiop—an inhabitant of Ethiopia in Africa. An Ethiop has swarthy and irregular features. **Remorseful grief**—grief caused by remorse for suspecting Hera of unfaithfulness. **Tomb**—(French *tombe*, Greek *timbos*, to consume in smoke). Literally, the place where a dead body is burnt.

Para. 37. Church—Anglo-Saxon *circe*. Greek *kyriake*, the Lord. Literally, the Lord's house. **An agreeable surprise**—an unexpected event that is calculated to please. **A most agreeable surprise**—a most happy and unexpected meeting. **Surprise**—(From French *sur*, upon, and *prendre*, to take) the act of taking unawares. **He could scarcely for joy believe his eyes**—the reappearance of Hera after her supposed death filled Claudio with such over-powering joy that he was almost led to distrust his eyes, *i. e.*, to doubt whether it was actually Hera who was standing before him. **She died but while her slander lived**—she was dead only while (as long as) her calumny was believed in. Now that it has been refuted, she has been restored to life. **Seeming miracle**—a thing which to all appearance was very wonderful. **Demur**—(French *demeurer*, Latin *de*, intensive, and *moror*, to delay) hesitation. **Challenging her with her love to him**—asking her to deny, if she could, the truth of what he said about her being in love with him. **Had become lovers in truth by the power of a false jest**—tricked into a belief that they loved each other, *i. e.*, led to believe that they loved each other by the artifice employed by the prince. **A merry invention**—a pleasant trick. **To be shaken by a serious explanation**—to be broken or destroyed by an explanation given in seriousness of the manner in which they were both “tricked into a belief of love.”

Page 131.

To think nothing to the purpose—to consider everything irrelevant or beside the point. **Kept up the jest**—followed up or continued the jest. **He took her but for pity**—he married her out of compassion for her condition. **Upon great persuasion**—on being

very much pressed. **Consumption**—(Latin *con*, signifying completeness and *sumo*, to take. The act of wasting away). A gradual decay of the body. A *pun* is intended here, meaning that Benedick was being *consumed* by his love. He was in a **consumption**—he was wasting away with love. Made a match of it—were joined in marriage after this exchange of “sprightly sallies.” Taken in—caught; apprehended. A brave punishment—*Brave*=fine. **Punishment**—is in the same case with *it*. Disappointment of his plots--the failure or unsuccessful issue of the wicked scheme he had formed.

A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM.

Hermia, a daughter of Egeus, having, against the wishes of her father, refused to marry Demetrius, was, according to the laws of Athens, to be put to death, if she at the end of four days still refused to marry him. Lysander loved Hermia, and he proposed that they should run away to a place beyond the boundaries of Athens and there be married in defiance of the cruel law. At night they left Athens, but they were pursued by Demetrius, and he by Helena, who loved him.

The wood through which they passed was haunted by fairies. On that particular night Oberon, the fairy king, wanted to have from his queen a little changeling boy, and, to punish her for her refusal, directed his privy councillor named Puck to pour into the eyes of Titania the juice of a certain little flower, so that on awaking she might dote on the first thing that she saw. Puck did so: the first thing the fairy queen saw was a clown with an ass's head clapped on his own, and at once fell in love with him.

Not only did Puck infuse into the eyes of Titania the juice of the flower, but he also poured it into those of Lysander, and as Helena was the first object that Lysander beheld on opening his eyes, he fell in love with her. Helena ran away from him, and was the first object seen by Demetrius, into whose eyes too the love-juice was

poured. So greatly were Lysander and Demetrius now under the influence of the same potent charm, that they made up their minds to flight together for the love of Helena. To undo the mistake committed by Puck, Oberon caused a thick fog to darken the wood, so that the rivals could not see each other, and when worn out they fell asleep, the juice of another flower was dropped into the eyes of Lysander, the effect of which was that he forgot his new love for Helena and returned to his old passion for Hermia.

When Titania was discovered by Oberon making love to an ass, she was so much ashamed that she yielded to her lord and delivered him the page in question.

Each of the two ladies, Hermia and Helena, became happy, through the good offices of Oberon, with the man that she loved.

Page 131.

Para. 1. There was a law—"Solon's laws gave a father the power of life and death over his child."—*Wright*. Athens—a town of Greece, the chief city of Attica. To marry whomsoever they pleased—to marry those whom they (the citizens) liked that their daughters should marry. Empowered—the verb is derived from the noun by adding to it the prefixing *em*. So, *embroid*, *emboldy*. Mention other examples. To prove a little refractory—to become somewhat unruly. Refractory—unmanageable or obstinate. *Refractory* is from Latin *re*, back and *frango*, to break. Put in execution—enforced. Threatened with the terrors of it—menaced with the danger of being dealt with as the law prescribed, or according to the law. Though perhaps.....of it—an adverbial sentence modifying the predicate 'was put in execution.'

Para. 2. Theseus—one of the most celebrated heroes of antiquity, son of Ægeus by Æthra. Many remarkable adventures are told of him, for which see Kingsley's *Heroes*. He led an expedition against the Amazons (a race of female warriors.) As the reward of his valour, he obtained the hand of the vanquished queen Hippolyta, or, as others say, Antiope. Duke—French *duc*, Latin *dux*.

a leader. Here, sovereign, king. Demanded justice of Theseus—asked Theseus to administer justice and inflict the punishment which the law sanctioned: sought from Theseus reparation of the wrong he had suffered by the undutiful conduct of his daughter. Cruel law—(French *cruel*, Latin *crudelis*, bloody) law which required the shedding of blood. Hence the other meanings of *cruel*, savage, merciless. Put in force—enforced or brought into operation.

Para. 3. Pleaded...disobedience—urged in justification of her refusing to obey her father's commands. Professed—avowed or confessed. Professed love—had openly avowed or declared that he (Demetrius) loved Helena. To distraction—to madness. To denotes degree or extent. Honourable reason—a reason deserving of respect, because proceeding from noble sentiments. Moved not the stern Ægeus—did not make any impression on, i. e., did not soften the harsh and unrelenting Ægeus; did not raise any compassion in the breast of the unrelenting Ægeus. Explain moved in "I have moved my lord on his behalf."—*Othello*.

Para. 4. To alter the laws of his country—An adjectival phrase qualifying power.

Page 132.

Four days to consider of it—the direct object of the compound verb *could give*. To consider of it—i. e., to make up her mind whether she should obey her father, or by disobeying him suffer the penalty of the law.

Para. 5. When Hermia...four days—"When Hermia..... duke." This is an adverbial sentence. The rest of the passage is a contracted compound sentence.

Para. 6. Evil—Anglo-Saxon *yfel*, bad. Ill is a contraction of evil. I will meet.....May—The indirect form would be,—Lysander said that he would meet her.....where they had so often.....May. May—the month sacred to Maia, the mother of Mercury. Probably the word comes from root *mag*, Sanskrit *mah*, to grow. May=The month of growth.

Para. 7. Her intended flight—the escape or secret departure from her house which she meditated. Explain *flights* in—"flights of angels sing thee to thy rest."—*Hamlet*. *For*=ant of. **Ungenerously**—in an unkind or illiberal manner. **From betraying her friend's secret**—from divulging the secret of her friend's intended flight and thereby violating the confidence which was placed in her. **Poor pleasure**—*Poor*=trifling; insignificant.

Para. 8. Favourite haunt—a place of resort which one is very much fond of. **Fairies**,—fairies or elves are supernatural beings of human shape of both sexes. The name *fairy* is derived from the Latin *fatum*, fate. The fairies were generally believed to be remarkably small in stature, with fair complexion, and generally clothed in green. Their haunts were groves and verdant meadows, and their great diversion dancing hand-in-hand in a circle. They were said to be fond of human children, and were in the habit of carrying away such as they could lay hold of, leaving vixens of their own, in their room. They were believed to be almost transparent in body and very delicate in form.

Para. 9. Tiny—very small in stature, probably a diminutive of *thin*. **Revels**—merry-makings; festivities.

Para. 10. A sad disagreement—a serious quarrel. **Shady walks**—paths covered or shaded by trees. **Fairy elves**—train of tiny followers (in para. 9). The epithet *fairy* is merely ornamental and does not express any additional attribute. **They never met, etc.**—whenever they came to meet each other in the light of the moon, in the paths within the wood overhung with trees, they quarrelled with each other. **Creep into**—steal into. **For fear**—with fear.

Para. 11. A little changeling boy—see notes in para. 8. *Changeling*=child taken by the fairies in place of another.

Page 133.

Para. 12. Maids of honour.—maids whose duty it is to attend the queen when she appears in public.

Para. 13. *Ill met*—*Ill* is an adverb. *Ill met*—met in an evil hour. *Skip*—(Icelandic *skopa*, to run) move quickly. *Forsworn*—abjured. I have forsworn his company—I have taken an oath not to live in his company. *Am not I thy lord*—am I not thy husband. *Tarry*—stay behind. From Latin *tardus*, slow. *Rash*—inconsiderate; over-hasty. *Cross*—thwart.

Para. 14. *Set your heart at rest*—know it for certain, and, therefore, compose your mind by giving up all impracticable wishes. *Go your way*—go. Cf. *Come your way*—come. *Explain*—to hold one's way; to keep one's way; to waylay.

Para. 15. *Privy councillor*—here a chief officer of state.

Para. 16. *shrewd*—mischievous. *Knaveish*—roguish. *Comical pranks*—merry tricks. *Dairies*—places where butter and cheese are made. *Skimming the milk*—taking the cream from off the milk. *Plunging.....form*—immersing his thin gossamer-like figure. *Butter-churn*—a vessel in which cream is churned. *To churn* is to turn or shake violently as cream when making butter. *While he.....shape*—while he was putting his form into all kinds of odd and queer posture. *Cream*—Literally, *froth*. The oily part of the milk. *Freaks*—(Italian *fregare*, to rub. Restlessness) sports. *Play his freaks*—play his capricious pranks and sports. *Brewing copper*—a copper in which beer is brewed. *Spoiled*—damaged. *Comfortable ale*—cheering ale. *A roasted crab*—a roasted wild apple. *Goody*—This word is probably a contraction of good-wife, which is an appellation applied to women as *good man* is applied to men. *Goody*—gossip. *Bob*—move in a jerking manner. *Withered chin*—skinny chin. *Slip*—cause to slide. *Toppled*—fell or tumbled down. *Gossips*—*Gossip* is a contraction of *god-sib*, signifying the spiritual relationship held to exist between the sponsors of the same child. As the gossips, especially the two grand-mothers of a girl were accustomed to meet at the house of their godchild and have a little chat together, all trivial talking came

to be called *gossiping*.—*Deau Hoare*. **Gossips**—tattling women. *Would hold their sides and laugh at her*. Cf. :—

Sport that wrinkled care derides
And Laughter holding both his sides.

Le Allegro.

Wasted—spent. **Never wasted a merrier hour**—never had the fortune to pass an hour more merrily. **Robin Goodfellow**—a drudging fiend and merry domestic fairy famous for mischievous pranks and practical jokes. The Scotch call this domestic spirit *a broonie*. Puck, the jester of the Fairy Court, is the same. Cf.—

When house or hearth doth sluttish lie,
I pinch the maids both black and blue.
And from the bed the bed-cloths I
Pull off, and lay them nak'd to view.

The Ballad of Robin Good-fellow.

Para. 17. A merry wanderer of the night—a spirit who merrily spends the night in quest of “mischievous pranks and practical jokes.” **Love in Idleness**—the flower *Viola Tricolor* ordinarily called the pansy or heart’s ease. **Laid on**—applied to. **Explain**—To lay on blows. **Dote on**—love to an extreme degree. **Dote on the first thing they see**—make them love to distraction the first object they might see on awaking from their sleep.

Page 134.

Meddling—intruding on the concerns of others. **Busy**—prying ; officious. **Take this charm from off her sight**—undo the effect of the spell on their eyes.

Para. 18. **Loved mischief to his heart**—was very fond of playing tricks ; was exceedingly fond of doing mischief. *Mischief*, from Old French *mischef*, *mis*, ill, and *chef*, the head, literally means that which comes to a head or ends ill. **Intended frolic**—the sport thought of or contemplated. **Intended frolic of his master**—a prank which Oberon settled or arranged in his mind to put into execution.

Intended does not mean here simply *contemplated* or *designed*. **Expostulations.** Latin *ex*, intensive, and *postulo*, to demand, *Gentle expostulations*=mild remonstrances.

Para. 19. Was almost friendly to—befriended ; was kindly disposed to. A disdainful youth—a youth who requited another's love for him with contempt. The correlative of *disdainful* is *despised*. *Despised* comes from Latin *de*, down, and *specio*, to look. The Athenian garments—clothes which are (usually) worn by an Athenian. **Dexterously**—adroitly ; cleverly. From *dexter*, the right-hand side. **Sinister** is the antonym of *dexter*. **Bank**—cuptalian *banco*, a bench on which the Venetian money-changers displayed their money ; Anglo-Saxon *baenc*. Here a mound or elevated ground. Trace the meaning of mountebank. **Eglantine**—the sweet briar. **Coverlet**—the cover of a bed. From French *couvre-lit*, *lit* Latin *lectum*, a bed. **Enamelled**—glossy. (Latin *en*, in, and Old English *amel*.)

Para. 20. Cankers—worms that prey upon blossoms. *Canker* is the same as *cancer*. **Elves**—dative. To make my small elves coats—just to prepare coats for my little spirits.

Page 135.

Nightly—An adverb. What is *nocturnal* ? That nightly hoots—that makes a screeching noise at night. **Sing me to sleep**—help me in falling into sleep by singing a song. *To* signifies *effect*. **Sleep**, object of *to*. **Double tongue**—forked tongue. **Thorny**—full of thorns or spines. **Be not seen**—may you not be seen ; do not put in your appearance. **Newts**—small lizards. **Do no wrong**—commit no mischief. **Blind-worms**—slow-worms. *Blind* comes from Anglo-Saxon *blinnan*, to stop ; *blind*, that which is stopped up. **Explain**,—**Blind windows** ; **blind lane**. Supply the appropriate preposition in : He is blind—one eye. **Philomel**—the nightingale. *Philomela* was the daughter of Pandion, ravished by Terens who cut off her tongue to conceal his crime. **Philomel found** means to acquaint her sister Procne of the cruel deed which had been perpetrated. It is said that all the three were changed into birds. *Procne*

became a swallow, Philomela, a nightingale, and Terens, an hoopoe. **Melody**—(Greek *melodia*, *melos*, a part, and *ode*, a lay) a lay consisting of a symmetrical succession of parts; music. **Come our lovely lady nigh**—come near our amiable queen. **Lullaby**—a song to lull children to sleep. **Lull** (vb.) to sing *la, la*, to quiet. **Nor spell, nor charm**—‘Words of occult power are *spells*; rhythmical words of occult power are *charms*. In *charm* (*cormeu*) the idea of musical arrangement is implied.’—*Taylor*.

Para. 21. Softly drew near—gently approached. **Love-juice**—a juice producing love. **Do it for thy true-love sake**—In Shakespeare the word used is *take* and not *sake*. The construction of the line will be then,—Do take it for thy true-love. *True* love—a person truly beloved. *Take* it—consider it. If *sake* he retained the meaning would be—Act as thou wouldst act for the sake of thy true-love, i. e., fall in love with the first thing you might happen to see.

Para. 22. Careful—full of regard and attention. **Proved**—shown. **In the Athenian fashion**—after the fashion or make in use amongst the Athenians. **Without more ado**—without troubling himself any further. **Fell out**—happened. **Love-charm**—Cf. Love-juice in the preceding para.

Page 136.

Para. 23. Had he first seen Hermia—an adverbial sentence, extension of the Principal Sentence—The blunder would...consequence. **When he awoke** is an adverbial sentence, extension of *had seen*. **Puck committed for which Puck committed**—adjectival to *blunder*. **Of no consequence**—immaterial. **For he.....too well**—for Hermia deserved to be loved by him beyond all measure; for Lysander had already very great love for Hermia, and he could not love her more. **To be forced.....Hermia**—to be constrained by virtue of the love-juice squeezed on his eye-lids by Puck to give up his love for Hermia, who was so devotedly attached to him. **To run after**—to follow, to seek. **A sad chance**—an unfortunate occurrence. **Was**—the nominative of *was* is “for poor Lysander to be...

.....at midnight." For Lysander=Lysander's. *To be forced*=being forced.

Para. 24. Misfortune—evil accident. To keep pace with—to keep up with; to go as fast as. Rudely—brutally. Unequal race—a race where the parties are not equally matched. To work—to take effect. Extravagant—(Latin *extra*, beyond, and *vagor*, *vagans*, to wander) immoderate; going beyond proper bounds. *Vagabond*, *vagary* are from the same root. Would run through fire—would brave all danger; was prepared to do anything. The expression "run through fire" originated from "ordeal by fires," which was performed by walking bare-foot and blind-folded over nine red-hot ploughshares laid lengthwise at unequal distances. Was solemnly engaged—had pledged himself on oath. As well she might—she had good reasons for thinking. Love-like speeches—professions befitting one who is in love. You were a lord of—you were a man possessed of.

Para. 25. In sad fright—in a woeful state of terror. Fruitless—unsuccessful.

Page 137.

Potent—(Latin *potens*, being able. *Potentate* is from the same root) powerful.

Para. 27. To Hermia...no jest—it did not appear to Hermia in the light of a joke.

Para. 28. Fell to high words—began to quarrel bitterly or fiercely.

Para. 29. Unkind friend—"to join with...friend," is an adverbial expression modifying *unkind*. Unkind, because she joined, &c. Set Lysander on—instigated or incited Lysander. School-day friendship—friendship contracted when they were both at school. Working the same flower—*i. e.*, on the carpet, working one and the same flower with the needle. Sampler—a piece of ornamental needle-work. *Sample*, a specimen, is from *ensample* which is an old

form of example. In fashion of—like. Growing up.....parted—Hermia means to say that they two grew together not having two distinct and separate existences, but having their lives intimately blended into one, so that they were like to a double cherry which notwithstanding its apparent division, is by its very connection formed into one object. Maidenly—becoming a maid. *Have you forgot.....seeming parted.* Cf :—

O, is all forgot ?

All school-day's friendship, childhood, innocence ?

We, Hermia, like two artificial gods,

Have with our needles created both one flower,

Both on one sampler, sitting on one cushion

Both warbling of one song, both in one key,

As if our hands, our sides, voices and minds,

Had been incorporate. So we grew together,

Like to a double cherry, seeming parted,

But yet an union in partition.

A Mid-summer Night's Dream.

Para. 30. Passionate words—angry words. Persevere—persist in your course. Counterfeit serious looks—pretend to look serious. Make mouths at me—"make faces at me in scorn." Wink at each other—look significantly at each other. *Wink at* also means,—to connive at ; as, to wink at a fault. Hold the sweet jest up—keep up the fine jest, i. e., do not allow it to flag. Grace—virtue.

Page 138.

Para. 33. This is your.....wilfully—this is owing to your carelessness, or you must have done this on purpose. King of shadows—king of fairies. See notes on para. 8. I am not sorry this has happened—I am not sorry that this has happened. Jangling makes best sport—their quarrel in words affords us best amusement. For I think...sport—I am mightily diverted by their quarrels. Convenient—fit. Overhang—envelop. To overhang the night with thick fog—to make the night very dark by raising

a thick mist. *Astray*—out of the path. *Astray* is literally *on the stray*. *Taunts*—(French *tancer*, to scold) reproaches. *Return to his old passion*—revert to the love that he formerly bore. *And return*...*Hermia*—and his former love for *Hermia* will revive in his breast. *Vexatious*—troublesome; annoying. *About this quickly*—do this work without any delay.

Para. 34. Who had lost his way in the wood—who was bewildered in the wood. *Clapping*—putting on hastily. It seemedown shoulders—the ass's head appeared to fit the clown so well that it did not look like something adventitious, but seemed as if it were a natural growth.

Para. 35. Are you as wise as beautiful?—*Titania* puts this question in order to draw her lover into some conversation which she made no doubt would be full of wisdom. She wanted to charm her ears with his wise words as she was already feasting her eyes on his beautiful person.

Para. 36. If I have.....my turn—it my wisdom helps me to get out of this wood, my purpose will be sufficiently served, i. e., I shall have what I desire.

Para. 37. *Common rate*—common rank. *Titania* was the queen of the fairies. Go with me—live with me. Cf:—

And I will purge thy mortal grossness so
That thou shalt like an airy spirit go.

A Mid-summer Night's Dream.

Go implies the idea of departure, *come* that of approach. Where the idea of decay or deterioration is implied, *go* should be used, but *come* would be the appropriate word where the idea of growth or increase, or a similar meaning is implied. You say:—Plants go to seed; but they come into flower. But this rule will not always help you—for you must say:—he will come to the gallows. Distinguish between:—‘Are you going to school?’ and ‘Are you coming to school?’

Page 139.

Para. 38. Hop—jump. Gambol—(French *gambillor*, to leap, Italian *gamba*, the leg) frisk, dance. *Game*, *gamble* are from the same root. **Apricots**—"This word," says Mr. Wright, "has a curious history. In Latin the fruit was called *præcorin* from being early ripe. In Arabic it became *burquq*, and with the article *al-burquq*. Italian *albricocco*, French *abricot*, and English *apricot*."

Para. 39. The ass-headed clown—the clown (actually) decorated with the head of an ass. **Regarding.....courtship**—attending to the professions of love made by Titania.

Para. 43. Do not.....action—do not put yourself to great anxiety or agitation in procuring for me the honey bag. **Break not**—burst not. **Take care the honey bag break not**—be careful not to break the bag of honey. **Overflown**—deluged; washed away. **With**—by (the breaking of the honey-bag.)

Para. 45. Marvellous hairy about the face—hair has grown on my face to an extraordinary degree. **I am.....fare**.—*Marrellous* = marvellously. The clown wishes to have a shaving and mistakes the hairiness of the ass's head which was put on his shoulders, to be owing to his not having been at the barber's for some time.

Para. 46. Venturous—daring. **Shall seek**—Who shall seek. **Hoard**—treasure. From Anglo-Saxon *heordan*, to store. **Nut**—Literally, a little ball. Anglo-Saxon, *hnut*, Latin *nav*; *nutshell*, the shell in which the kernel of a nut is enclosed, hence proverbially a thing of little compass. **To lie in a nutshell**—to admit of very simple determination. **Explain**—The Iliad in a nutshell. The remedy lay in a nutshell.

Para. 47. Appetite—hunger. (From Latin *ad*, to and *peto*, to seek). A seeking after; hence, a desire for food or drink. *Compte*, repeat are from the same root.

Para. 48. Wind—infold. The word is derived from the Anglo-Saxon, *windan*, to turn; *wind*, that which blows, is from the Gothic

man, to breathe. Explain:—To wind up one's affairs; to wind into one's favour; a wind-fall. Wind you in my arms—embrace you.

Page 140.

Para. 51. Did not dare to refuse him—in early English the present infinitive was represented by *en*, so that *to speak* was *spoken*. The *en* in time became *e*, and the *e* in time became mute, thus reducing “singen” to “sing.”—*Abbot*. In early English there is much inconsistency in the use or omission of *to*. In modern English *to* is not inserted before the infinitive after the auxiliary verbs and the verbs dare, let, bid, make, see, hear, feel, do, need, have, durst. —*Adams*.

Para. 52. Dotage—excessive fondness. What other meaning has dotage? *Dot* comes from Dutch *dolen*, to be silly. Strange—uncouth.

Para. 53. To finish his nap—to take his short sleep, for it was near day-break; nap literally means a nod. With his own fool's head upon his shoulders—the ass's head which was clapped on his shoulders having been taken off, he had now only his own head on his shoulders, but it was a head which was destitute of all intelligence.

Para. 55. To make amends for his former mistake—to repair the mischief by his first mistake. Antidote—(Greek *antidotus*, anti, against and *didomi*, to give) that which is given against as a remedy; a preventive.

Para. 56. Lost Lysander—Lysander whose love was estranged from her by the effect of the fairy love-charm. Strange inconstancy—fickleness which could not be accounted for. Recovered..... love for Hermia—under the influence of the love-juice Lysander lost both his reason and his love. When the charm was removed he was restored to his normal state, *i. e.*, he recovered his reason and with his reason his love.

Para. 58. Night-wandering ladies—who wandered about in the wood by night.

Page 141.

It was soon.....passed against her—It is here substitutive or, what Mr. Abbott calls, *preparatory* it. It stands for the subject complex sentence—that he (Demetrius) should.....passed upon her. "As Demetrius had.....Hermia"—an adverbial sentence to "was agreed." Pretensions—claims. To revoke—to get revoked or repealed. Runaway—fugitive. Cf. Castaway, stowaway.

Para. 59. and now faithful Demetrius—why now faithful?

Para. 60. Brought.....Oberon--elected by the kind interposition of Oberon.

Para. 61. Visions—dreams. Vision is usually taken in the sense of a walking dream. Unreasonable—foolish. A pretty.....dream—Pretty and harmless are adjectives qualifying dream.

— — — — —

MEASURE FOR MEASURE.

Summary :—In Vienna there was a law that any man living with a woman that was not his wife would be put to death. The Duke of Vienna was of such a mild and gentle temper that he never enforced this law, with the result that the holy institution of marriage was neglected and much immorality prevailed. To remedy the evil, the good Duke absented himself for a while from his dukedom, and appointed Angelo, a man who bore the reputation of a saint, to act as his regent. A gentleman, named Claudio, had about this time persuaded a lady to leave her friends, and Angelo did not fail to pronounce on him the sentence of death. The sister of Claudio went to Angelo to plead the cause of her brother, when Angelo was so struck with her beauty and gracefulness that he promised to pardon Claudio if she surrendered herself to him. The good Duke had not altogether left Vienna, but he continued to live there in the disguise of a priest, watching the movements of his regent. When he learnt from Isabella what Angelo had proposed to her, he persuaded her to seemingly consent to go to Angelo at midnight as

desired, and to pass for herself Mariana, the wife of Angelo, whom he had deserted. Isabella thought that by this device she would preserve both her brother's life and her honor. But Angelo, after he received his wife whom he took for Isabella, sent word to the prison that Claudio should be beheaded. The Duke at once cancelled this order and hastened to make his presence in Vienna known. When Isabella complained to the Duke against Angelo, he pretended to disbelieve her story and asked Angelo to try her case. Angelo was about to dismiss the suit, when the good Duke himself offered evidence and covered Angelo with shame and confusion. He, however, pardoned Angelo on his promise to take back Mariana; and Isabella was married to the Duke himself.

Page 141.

Para. 1. Vienna—the capital of Austria. A duke of..... **impunity**—a duke who was so good-natured that his subjects were allowed to violate the laws without being punished for it. **Impunity**—(From Latin *in*, not and *pœna*, punishment)=exemption from punishment. **The existence...forgotten**—the law having never been enforced, men came almost to forget that it formed a part of the established code. **Dooming**—sentencing. **Lenity**—gentleness or mildness. **Institution**—law; established usage. **The holy... neglected**—the observance of the sacred rites of marriage fell into disuse. **Seduced from their protection**—enticed away from their care and guardianship, *i. e.* made to fly from their homes. **Companions**—mistresses. **Single**—unmarried.

Page 142.

Para. 2. This growing evil—the growth of this evil. Cf.:—
“Their growing virtues, but their crimes continued.”

—Gray.

This abuse—this corruption; the seduction of young girls. **A sudden change...this abuse**—his proceeding all on a sudden to rigorously execute the law, throwing off his accustomed lenity. **Awhile**—for a short time. **Depute another power**—appoint a deputy

invested with his full power of carrying the laws into execution. Dishonourable lovers—lovers who have entered into a shameful connection. Without giving.....person—without himself incurring the odium of being regarded as a tyrant.

Para. 3. Who bore the reputation of a saint—whose character was known to be as pure as that of a saint. *Saint* comes from Latin *sanctus*, holy. For his strict and rigid life—for living in exact and rigorous conformity to the rules of morality. This important change—this weighty business. If any man...honour—if any one has the merit and the qualification to be the subject of such especial favour and to be invested with such high honour. But the duke's...one—but the duke did not really leave the city. He only pretended to do so, since he remained in Venice in the disguise of a friar. Habited like a friar—dressed as a monk. With the intent.....Angelo—with the object of noting unobserved how Angelo, who to all outward appearance, was holy as a saint, exercised the great power with which he was invested.

Para. 4. Taken up—apprehended; arrested. By virtue of—on the strength of; in conformity to. Great interest.....Claudio—many influential persons were moved to intercede for the pardon of Claudio. Would save—wished to save. Honourable—noble. Transgression—fault, literally a going beyond what is proper. We must.....their terror—*Scarecrow* is a figure set up to frighten the birds from the field. Here, a vain terror. *Perch*—a roost, a resting-place. The meaning is—We must put the law into rigorous execution, otherwise it will be a vain terror to evil-doers, who, finding it to be never enforced, and, therefore, harmless, will be emboldened to violate it in a public and open manner.

Para. 5. Saint Clare—a virgin and abbess born in 1253. The danger of my state—the dangerous condition of my affairs, Claudio being under sentence of death. Make friends with—gain the friendship of. Can discourse with prosperous arts—possesses the skill or the power of speaking in a successful or winning manner.

Page 143.

There is.....men—*Speechless*=silent, dumb. *Dialect*—expression, language. The meaning is—The very sight of a young person in sorrow affects men, there being, as it were, a dumb language in which it appeals to the hearts of the beholders.

Para. 6. Noviciate—Latin *novitius*, *novus*, new. The condition of the inmate of a convent who has not yet taken the vow. Probation as a novice—noviciate. Probation—trial. To take the veil—to become a nun. Prioress—a female superior of a convent of nuns next in dignity to an abbess. No farther privileges—*Farther*=Further (additional.) “*Farther* from far is applied to the more distant of two objects. The sun is *farther* from the earth than the moon. *Further* is applied to movement in advance: the ship moves *further* on.”—*Adams*. Wish a sisterhood—as being desirous of imposing further checks upon the nuns who have taken vows to Saint Clare. Roses—florid complexion. Your brother.....me—your brother sends you his affectionate greeting through me. *By* denotes the instrumentality of person. You have the grace by your fair prayer. *Grace*—good fortune. Fair prayer—kind entreaty. Cf. “Fair speechless messages.”—*The Merchant of Venice*.

Page 144.

Our doubts.....attempt it—we are betrayed (deceived) by our want of confidence in our own powers (by our distrust in our own ability), for it deters us from attempting to undertake any work, and, therefore, often deprives us of the good which we might otherwise secure by our promptness and energy. When maidens.....like gods—men became generous like the gods, i.e., they do not at all stint in their liberality at the sight of maidens supplicating to them on bended knees and with tears in their eyes. Commend—remember. Word—news; intimation.

Para. 7. A woful suitor—a petitioner distressed with grief; a miserable applicant. O just, but severe law—Isabel admits the justice of the sentence passed upon her brother, while complaining

of its excessive severity. I had a brother then—to Isabel, whose mind was distracted with grief at hearing from the month of Angelo that there was no remedy, her brother seemed as if already executed. She, therefore, very feelingly says—"I had a brother then." This is an example of *Prolepsis* or *Anticipation*—a figure by which future events are spoken of as if they had already happened. Cf. :—

So the two brothers with their murdered man
Rode past fair Florence.—*Keats*.

Moving terms—persuasive language. Give not over so—do not thus renounce your suit; continue to press it on till you have gained it. Have upon—hold fast. Cold—wanting zeal. Tame tongue—(tame=spiritless) words not breathing any fire or energy. Believe this.....as mercy does—Nothing is so graceful either to a king, a viceroy, a general, or a judge in the discharge of the respective high functions of each, as mercy. Cf. :—

Well, believe this,
No ceremony that to great ones 'longs,
Not the king's crown, nor the deputed sword,
The marshal's truncheon, nor the judge's robe.
Become them with one half so good a grace,
As mercy does.

Measure for Measure.

This extract should be compared with a similar one given in *The Merchant of Venice*, and the student should try to realise in his mind the different situations of the speakers and the persons addressed. The deputed sword—the sword of the king's deputy which represents the dignity of the king. Ceremony—the outward forms of state. Cf. "For, though I speak it to you, I think the king is but a man, as I am *** All his senses have but human conditions: his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man.—*Henry 7*. The marshal's truncheon—*Marshal*, originally

an officer who had the care of horses; from Old French *mareschal*, German *marshall*—*mahre*, a horse, *schalk*, a servant). The chief officer who regulates combats in the lists and establishes order at royal feasts and processions. *Truncheon*. (Literally, a piece of wood cut off, from French *troncon*—*trouc*, Latin *truncus*, the stem). A baton or staff of authority. *Slipped*—transgressed; committed an offence. It should be thus with him—he should be dealt with in the same manner. He is not prepared for death—he is not in a fit state to go to his long account. We kill the fowl in season—Season=fit time. *In season*=when duly fattened; after being properly fed for a length of time. Minister to our gross selves—Gross=base. The meaning is,—Seek the gratification of our sensual appetites.

Page 145.

Go to your own bosom—search your own heart. Is like—has a resemblance to. A natural guiltiness—a consciousness of guilt which we are led to commit by the working of natural laws, i.e., by the cravings of our desires and passions. Sound a thought—pronounce a judgment. Turn away—to move his face to another direction. Gentle my lord=my gentle lord. Cf:—

My lady sweet, arise.

—*Cymbeline*.

Bribe—(Literally a piece of bread, from French *bribe*, a piece of bread, Welsh *brwio*, to break; something given to unduly influence the judgment). To influence by a bribe. Here, win. With such gifts ...you—Isabel says that she will bribe Angelo to pardon his brother, not, however, with earthly treasures, but with prayers which are treasures that God Himself will accept in common with him. Preserved souls—sanctified souls which are not doomed to die like those of sinners. Are dedicated to nothing temporal—are not set upon (given to) worldly things. The antonym of temporal is spiritual. Respite—Old French *respit*, from Latin *respicio*, *re*, back and *specio*, to look. The temporary suspension of the execution of a criminal; reprieve

or delay in the execution of the sentence of death. **Dream on**—dream of. **The cunning enemy of mankind**—Satan. **To catch a saint**—to entrap or seduce the heart of a holy man. **The cunning**.....**the hook**—the devil entices a saint to the path of vice by slyly converting his admiration for saints into some impure or unholy desire. The repulsive features of vice put a saint on his guard against temptation, but he is thrown off his guard and becomes a prey to the devil when he allows himself to be entrapped into love by his admiration of virtue. **Stir my tempter**—inflame my heart. **Fond**—carried away or moved by love.

Para. 8. In this guilty conflict in his mind—in the struggle that was going on in his mind between his love for Isabel and his sense of the wickedness of such a passion. **The way to heaven**—how to secure everlasting happiness. **The words of penitence and peace**—the words which produce repentance in the mind and fill it with a quiet calm before the hour of death. **The pangs of irresolute guilt**—the agonies of a mind wavering in its final determination to gratify a guilty desire. **Intentional**—existing as an idea or intention in the mind, but not followed out into action. **Had so lately started at the offer of a bribe**—had only a short time ago been horrified at receiving an offer of illegal gratification.

Page 146.

With so high.....**brother's life**—Angelo, who, a little while ago, recoiled with horror at the offer of a bribe, was now so smitten with wicked love for Isabel, that he scrupled not to attempt corrupting her virtue by offering to pardon Claudio, should she yield to his wishes. This was an offer (a bribe) which he thought it would be impossible for her to withstand.

Para. 9. **Transgress**—to sin. **That he should...fault**—an adverbial sentence modifying—in amazement. **For which...brother**—an adjectival sentence to *fault*. **Were I under...as rubies**—“A sentence containing a condition is called a hypothetical sentence. The

principal clause containing the conclusion is called the *apodosis* (consequent). The subordinate clause containing the condition is called the *protasis* (antecedent.)"—Dalglish. Here *I would wear the impression of keen whips* is the principal clause. *As rubies* in contraction of *as I would wear rubies*. *Rubies* should be parsed as being in the objective case in apposition to *impression*, *as* is a conjunction. **Impression**—mark, cut. Explain—'His book went through two impressions in a single year.' **Rubies**—precious stones of a red colour. French *rubis*, Latin *ruber*, red. *Rubicund*, *rubric* are from the same root. As to a bedfor—as I would go to a bed that I longing had been sick for. *That* never takes the preposition (here, *for*) before it. *Longing* (a verbal noun, contracted from *a-lounging* or in *longing*) is a participle. To try her virtue—to put her virtue to the test, to see whether she was above temptation or not; to know whether she was a chaste woman or not. Little honor to be much believed—if you are belived to be serious (and therefore much believed) it will be considered very shameful that you have made this proposal. **Pernicious**, (Latin *pernicious*, *per*, completely, and *neco*, to kill) wicked. *Internecine*, mutually destructive, is from the same root. **Proclaim** thee—make known to the public what a villain you are under the garb of a saint. **Unsoiled**—untarnished, unstained. **Name**—reputation. **Vouched**—(French *voucher*, to call to defend, Latin *voco*, to call) attested. Say what you can—an adverbial sentence modifying *will overweigh*. My false will..... story—**Overweigh**—exceed in weight or importance. The meaning is,—my untrue version of the case will meet with more credence than your true statement.

Para. 10. **Solicitations**—Latin *solicitatio*, from *solicito*, from *sollus*, all, and *cico, citum*, to call on. So, *citation*), earnest request.

Page 147.

Para. 11. **Provost**—(Italian *prevosto*, Latin *prepositus*, *præ*, over, and *pouo*, to place) the keeper of a prison.

Para. 12. What is the comfort—what consolation do you bring? **Naked**—destitute of all honour. “A metaphor, from stripping trees of their bark.”—Singer. Explain:—the naked truth; the naked reason. **Point**—the precise subject for consideration. **The sense of death.....dies**—death of itself is not very painful. It appears terrible to us only because we are afraid to die. The beetle cannot think of death and therefore has no apprehension or fear of death. As far as mere bodily suffering is concerned, “the giant when he dies feels no greater pain than the beetle.” Cf. “Certainly the Stoics bestowed too much cost upon death and by their great preparations made it appear more fearful.”—*Bacon*. Think you... **...tenderness**—do you think that I need the exhortations of a sweet and tender creature like you to muster the courage to meet death? **Hug**—to embrace closely and fondly. I will encounter darkness as a bride—I will cheerfully and boldly meet death in the face, as a merry bridegroom faces his bride. There spoke my brother—these sentiments are worthy of my father’s son. My father’s grave did utter forth a voice—you speak as honorably as my father would, if he were living. And shamed life a hateful—and shamed life is a hateful thing. *Shamed life*—life made shameful by the commission of some wicked act. **Constancy**—fortitude. **Assailing**—French *assailier*, Latin *assilio*—*ad*, to, and *salio*, to leap) attacking; coming upon. **The sin...becomes a virtue**—*Dispenses with*—pardons. Cf.:—

“His sin was dispensed with gold.”

The meaning is,—Natural affections (a sister’s love) will excuse your committing a sin to save your brother’s life, so much so, that the sin will be regarded as, or converted into, a virtue. **To render up**—to sacrifice; to give up. **Stoop**—submit. Explain.—‘She stoops to conquer.’

Page 148.

I am.....rid of it—my life has become so loathsome to me that I will seek (pray) to be delivered from it.

Para. 13. The hard.....good—God has not only made you beautiful but virtuous. Deceived in—mistaken in. Deceived in Angelo—wrong in forming an estimate of Angelo's character. Discover his government—expose the wickedness of his government. As the matter now stands—with regard to the present hearing of the case; as far as the case has gone at present. Advisings—advice. A merited benefit—a piece of good service which she deserves at your hands. The angry law—the offended law, or (divested of figure)—the punishment awarded for breaking the law. Do no stain to your most gracious person—keep your virtue unsullied. Virtue is bold, and never fearful—courage always accompanies virtue, and is always insensible to fear. Good words went with her name—her name was never repeated but with praise; report spoke honorably of her. Mark how heavily.....gentlewoman—consider what a great misfortune it proved to Mariana. Natural—affectionate. Left her.....comfort—abandoned her in her distress and never administered any consolation to her. Angelo cut off all intercourse with Mariana when he found her marriage dowry was not forthcoming. Quenched—extinguished. Has like an impediment in the current made it more unruly—as a stream when obstructed in its course flows with great impetuosity, so Mariana's love burned more fiercely, now that Angelo had cooled towards her. With the full of continuance of her first affection—without any abatement of her first love. The full of continuance—the full continuance. *Full* is now used as a noun in such expressions as the following: The full of the moon—the time of the full moon. To the full—fully. Continuance—permanence.

Page 149.

Pass herself upon Angelo—be taken by Angelo for Isabel. (Mariana should) pass herself upon.....Isabel—(Mariana should) in the darkness of the night present herself before Angelo, as if she were Isabel, and deceive him into thinking her to be Isabel.

Para. 14. His word.....brother's life—his promise assuring me that my brother's life would be spared. I have.....place—I have

accurately and carefully marked the place. With whispering—while speaking to me in whispers. Guilty diligence—assiduity shown or exercised for a criminal purpose. With guilty diligence—with an alacrity caused by the prospect of gratifying a guilty desire. My time can be but short—I could stay with him but for a short time. Soft and low—an adverbial expression for *in a soft and low voice*.

Page 150.

Para. 15. Suspected not—thought not. Written with the duke's hand—written in the duke's hand.

Para. 16. There to deliver up his authority—to make over to the duke, at the entrance of the city, the insignia of the power with which he was deputed. Redress for injustice—reparation of wrong suffered. *Redress* is from French *re* and *dresser*, to make straight, which comes from Latin *dirigo*, to direct. Exhibit—Latin *ex*, out and *habeo*, to have. To present formally. *Prohibit* is from the same root.

Para. 17. His head is off—his head has been cut off. If the cause...a while—if it should appear at first that she was going to lose her suit. Instructed—Latin *instruo*, *in*, and *struo* to pile up. *Structure* is from the same root). Informed. "Matters of fact, made known to one who could not have known them before, are called information : instruction elicits new truths out of subject-matter already existing in the mind."—*WHATELY'S Synonyms*.

Page 151.

Para. 18. The vile conclusion—the disgraceful end. My sisterly remorse—*remorse* is used here in the sense of *pity*. The pity or tenderness which I felt as a sister. Forfeiting—violating. A warrant for my poor brother's head—an order for the execution of my unhappy brother. As there comes.....in virtue—as surely as the sun gives light, as surely as we utter words by our breath, as surely I am the wife of Angelo. Shakespeare has *word* instead of

truth. *Truth comes from breath* has no meaning; or, at any rate, is not universally true. If *truth*, however, be retained, then the meaning of *as truth comes from breath* would be:—As surely as we are instinctively and naturally led to speak the truth. In safety rise, &c.—rise unhurt; if I do not speak the truth let me be turned into stone. The look of offended innocence—the appearance of an innocent man offended at a false imputation. Let me have way to find this practice out—grant me the power to bring to light this insidious plot. To the height of your pleasure—to your utmost pleasure, *i. e.*, to your heart's content. Abuse—false censure. Lend him your pains to discover this abuse—assist him by working together to bring this crime to light. Do with your.....any chastisement—award any punishment you think proper for the wrong done to you. But stir not till you...slander—but do not move till you have come to a decision about this scandal, *i. e.*, brought it home to the guilty party. Umpire—arbitrator. Indirectly from Latin *non*, not, and *par*, equal; Old English, *nompeir*. Absent only while, &c.—absent only during the time he took &c.

Page 152.

Set on—instigate. Slander—vilify. He replied “where is... speak.”—the Indirect form would be—He asked where the duke was, and said that it was he who should hear him speak. “Where is.....speak”—these two sentences are the object of *replied*. The duke is in us—we have been delegated with his authority; we represent the Duke. Utter confusion—complete shame. Explain *confusion* in :

Ruin seize thee, ruthless king!
 Confusion on thy banners wait,
 Tho' fauned by conquest's crimson wing,
 They mock the air with idle state.—(Gray.

Para. 19. Vassal—(Latin *vassallus*, a servant) a subject; a dependant. Your unknown sovereignty—in disguise. For not

having prevented the death of her brother—for having suffered or permitted her brother to be executed. Dread—most venerable. I should be guiltier.....be undiscernible—this is a hypothetical sentence. The abridged or condensed antecedent is—to think (were I to think) I can be undiscernible. The consequent or principal sentence is—I should.....guiltiness. The meaning is—I should add to my guilt which is already very great by believing in the possibility of my action being unknown or a secret to you. When—seeing that; since. Looked upon—watched. Let me trial.....confession—let the avowal which I am making of my guilt do away with the necessity of investigating into my offence; I plead guilty. Immediategrace I beg—‘I beg,’ or ‘which I beg,’ is the adjectival sentence to *grace*. The only mercy or favour I ask is that the sentence of death may be immediately pronounced upon me, and that I may be led away to immediate execution. Manifest—Latin *manifestus*, *manus* the hand, and *festus* (from *fendo*, to dash against). Literally, touched or grasped by the hand; clear, apparent. Instate—invest. Widow—to endow with the rights of a widow. You—dative. Withal—here is a preposition—*With*, having for its object *them* or *possessions*. Lend me your knees—sue on my behalf; beg for me. Against all sense—an adverbial expression modifying Importune—Means—*foolishly*; absurdly.

Page 153.

Would break.....horror—*Paved* is from French *parer*, Latin *pavio*, to beat. The meaning is,—The ghost of Claudio would be so much offended at Isabella's interceding for the life of her brother's murderer, that it would break open the grave wherein it lies entombed, and, filled with horror at her unnatural conduct, carry her from this place. In horror—a prepositional phrase, attributive to *ghost*. To take—to spirit away. Best men are moulded out of faults—it is after the commission of offences that men grow repentant and turn virtuous. They say.....a little had—it is a current

observation that men most distinguished for virtue and piety are those who had at first led wild and reckless lives, and that some initiation in the course of vice makes them much better men than they otherwise would have been. Read the life of Augustine, the celebrated bishop of Hippo. I partly think.....on me—I am somewhat inclined to believe that his actions proceeded from a becoming honesty of purpose till his heart was inflamed with a wicked love at seeing me. Had but justice—was treated in no other than a just manner. True justice was meted out to him.

Para. 20. There he lay doubtful of his destiny—Clandio remained in his prison in a doubtful or uncertain state of mind, not knowing how he would be dealt with or what his fate would be. **To brighten up a little**—Cl. “Methinks I see a quickening in his eye.” The meaning is—To look somewhat cheerfully, for Angelo looked hopeful when he saw Clandio alive. **Confessed her**—acted as her confessor, i. e., heard from her the secret history of her life. **Angelo remembered.....is mercy**—(a) *Principal sentence* : Angelo remembered. (b) *Adverbial sentence* (to, had been 'heard) - ‘When (he was dressed) in.....authority.’ (c) *Object noun-sentence* : ‘How his heart had been hard.’ (d) *Co-ordinate sentence* to (a) : ‘And (he) felt.’ (e) *Object noun-sentence* : ‘How mercy is sweet.’ *Little* is opposed to *great* or *vast* ; *brief* to *long-continued* or *lasting*. **Dressed with**—invested with.

Para. 21. The excellent example of the virtuous Isabel—the exemplary conduct of the virtuous Isabel in the very trying situation in which she was placed by the deputy. **Offered himself to the acceptance of Isabel**—expressed his willingness to marry Isabel and made a proposal to her. **The mercy-loving duke**—the duke who took a pleasure in the exercise of mercy. Similar compound words formed of nouns and present active participles are *pleasure-seeking*, *fault-finding*. Explain clearly the meaning of these words.

THE TAMING OF THE SHREW.

Summary.—Katherine was the daughter of Baptista, a rich gentleman of Padua. She was very beautiful, but, being of an ungovernable temper and fiery spirit, had won the title of “shrew.” None were willing to marry her, although her father offered to give twenty thousand crowns as her dowry. Petruchio of Verona married her, and so subdued her imperious temper by his indomitable will, that she became the model of a submissive wife, and gave Bianca, her sister, most excellent advice respecting the wife’s duty of submission to her husband.

Page 154.

Para. 1. Shrew—a scold; a brawling woman. See notes on *The Comedy of Errors*. **Padua**—a town in the north of Italy, famous for its university. **An ungovernable spirit**—a disposition which brooked no control or check. **Fiery temper**—a nature apt to be inflamed on slight provocation: an irascible temper. **A loud-tongued scold**—a shrew who gives vent to her anger in loud clamour; a rude and violently clamorous woman. **Loud-tongued**—noisy, clamorous. **Deferring**—putting off to another time; delaying. **For deferring.....Bianca**—for delaying to give consent to many good offers of marriage made to her sister, Bianca, who was of a gentle nature. As Katherine was not likely to have any offer of marriage, it was wrong on the part of the father to put off the marriage of Bianca. **Putting off.....excuse, &c.**—sending away or dismissing those who paid their courtship to Bianca on the plea, &c. **Was fairly off his hands**—was disposed of in marriage; was no longer a subject of uneasiness to him by her not finding any snitor. *Fairly*=completely. **To address**—to woo; to court.

Para. 2. Purposely to look out for a wife—with the purpose or special object of finding out a wife. **Nothing discouraged**—in no way disheartened. **These reports of Katherine’s temper**—the fame of Katherine as a shrew. **Termagant**—(a supposed Mahometan deity represented in the old plays as of a most violent

character.) A boisterous brawling woman. Taming her.....wife—changing her into a gentle and quiet wife by crushing or subduing her “ungovernable spirit.” To set about this Herculean labour—to undertake this arduous task. *Herculean* comes from *Hercules*, as *bacchanalian* from *Bacchus*. Derive *panic*. *Hercules* was a Grecian hero, whose twelve labours were the twelve difficult enterprises which he had to perform in obedience to the injunction of his cousin *Furystheus*.

Whose spirit was as high—who was as high-spirited as Katherine. Happy tempered—having an even temper. Humorist—a person having a peculiarity of character which he indulges in odd and whimsical ways. A witty and most happy-tempered humourist—a man of an agreeable temper possessed of a playful and facetious turn of mind. Distinguish between *wit* and *humour*. Withal—at the same time. A true judgment—an accurate discernment. To feign a passionate and furious deportment—to counterfeit the bearing of a man in a very angry and excited mood. That himself—that he himself. At his own angry feigning—at the show or appearance which he counterfeited of being in an angry mood. His natural temper was careless and easy—he was naturally a merry and quiet sort of man. The boisterous airs—the demeanour of a wild and noisy fellow. *Boisterous* from Danish *bister*, wild. Or affected by.....furious Katherine—or the boisterous airs were put on, because he truly judged that by this means alone he could successfully cure Katherine of her shrewish disposition.

Para. 2. Gentle daughter—irony. Archly—(Anglo-Saxon *arg*, bad, crafty). Slyly. Would ill answer this character—would very badly correspond to the character given of her. To confess Katherine...&c.—to confess that Katherine, &c. That Katherine would ...character—is the object sentence to *to confess*. Baptista says that her character would not correspond to the flattering description given of her. For presuming.....performance—for his (the music-master's) venturing to criticise her work. A brave wench—a merry

woman. *Wench* is now used in a bad sense. *Chat*—light, familiar talk. *Chatter* is the frequentative of *chat*. *Hurrying*—urging; importuning.

Page 155.

My business is in haste—I must despatch my business quickly. I have no time to lose. Explain—The more haste the less speed. This odd match—this odd or strange way of settling a marriage. Explain *match* in the following passages :—

“There I have another bad match.”

The Merchant of Venice.

“I dare you to this match.”—*Cymbeline.*

Addresses—courtship.

Para. 4. Was settling with himself—was deciding in his mind. Stately—dignified; haughty. Plain salutation—plain=simple; not couched in polite and courteous words. They who—those who. Bonny—(French *bou*, *bonne*—Latin *bonus*, good). Cheerful, blithe. Boon (*adj.*) meaning *kind*, *gay*, comes from the same root. Boon (*n.*) meaning a gift or favour comes from Anglo-Saxon *ben*—a prayer. Christendom—(Anglo-Saxon *Crīsten*, a Christian, and *dom*, rule or sway). So, *heathen-dom*.

Para. 5. A strange courtship they made of it—their courtship was conducted in a strange fashion. What is it put for? To make as quick a wooing as possible—to finish his courtship as he could. Set this idle chat aside—leave off prating in this manner. Whether you will or no—“phrases like ‘whether or no’ are appropriate only when there is a suppressed noun: ‘Whether or not’ is the proper phrase, if it is a verb that is suppressed.”—*Angus.*

Para. 6. Mad-cap ruffian—a rude boisterous fellow of wild and eccentric manners. The Anglo-Saxon “*capp*” meant the top of anything; hence, perhaps, a cap as covering the top of the head (*caput*).” *Ruffian*. French *ruffien*, from the root of *ruffier* (a bully). Regard—mind.

Page 156.

Against—(Anglo-Saxon *ougen*, opposite). In provision for the time when. Cf :—

‘I’ll charm his eyes against she do appear.’

A Midsummer Night's Dream.

Against the wedding day—for the purpose of being worn on the day of marriage.

Para. 7. Wept for vexation—shed tears out of a troubled or uneasy state of mind. Katherine wept.....of her—*subject*—Katherine. *Predicate*—wept. *Indirect object or extension*—for vexation. *Extension of the predicate*—to think that.....her. *Bridal finery*—fine apparel and ornaments worn on a wedding. *Bridal*, from Anglo-Saxon *bryd-eal*, literally means,—a bride’s ale. The serious business—the marriage. Serious=solemn. In mean and fantastic fashion habited—dressed in a shabby and odd manner.

Para. 8. And not to his clothes—not to something that was external to him. Mad way—the manner of one who was insane. Mad-brained—insane. What is *harc-brained*? Cuff (Swedish *Kuffa*, to knock) a stroke with the open hand. Again—also; moreover. Drank a loud health—in the act of drinking he repeated very boisterously and noisily the words wherein he wished health to the company. Sop—any thing steeped and softened in liquor and intended to be eaten. Sexton (a corruption of *sacristan*) an officer who has charge of a church. Thin and hungerly—lean and starved. *Hungerly* is an adjective. The sexton’s beard not being thick and bushy is jocosely represented as starving or wanting food. Did puton—did only assume this madness.

Para. 9. Sumptuous—“that which causes expense is *sumptuous*; that which relates to expense is *sumptuary*; a *sumptuous* feast. *sumptuary* laws.”—Taylor. Remonstrance—(Latin *re*, again, and *mouster*, to point out) expostulation. So, *demonstrate*.

Page 157.

Para. 10. A miserable horse lean and lank. miserable horse—a jade, a worthless nag. Lean—wanting flesh, probably from the same root as *line*, and means *slender*, *thread-like*. Lank—(Anglo Saxon *lhanc* slender, connected with lag and lack) weak. Stumbled—tripped in walking. The word is akin to vulgar English *stump*, to walk with heavy steps.

Para. 11. Journey—(French *journee*—*jour*, a day). Literally, a day's travel. What is the literal meaning of *journeal*? Ill-making—the making or preparing in an ill or slovenly manner.

Para. 12. Unknown to their master—without the knowledge of their master. *Unknown* is here used adverbially. Giddy—dizzy. What is the metaphorical meaning of *giddy*? With oath.....fed — kept waking with oaths and fed with brawls, &c. Katherine's fiery temper was being tamed down by physical weakness brought on by deprivation of food and sleep. She was not suffered to go to sleep by loud oaths and imprecations which Petruchio kept constantly dinning into her ears, nor was she allowed to appease her hunger, for on some pretext or other the dishes were removed from her before she had time to eat of them. Under the name of perfect love—pretending to be influenced in his actions by the purest and most unqualified love for Katherine. It were present death to me—it would be immediate death to me—it would immediately kill me. Soliloquy—Latin *solus*, alone, and *loqui*, to speak. A talking to oneself. Derive *colloquy*, *elocution*. The corresponding word derived from Greek is *monology*.

Page 158.

Dressed—cooked. I am sure this kindness deserves thanks—certainly, for this attention I am entitled to your thanks. The indirect form: He said that he was sure that that kindness deserved thanks. All the pains...no purpose. Is to no purpose—is useless. "Pains is generally plural, but is often found in the singular.

Crombie observes that we can say *much pains*, though *much* cannot be used with a plural noun."—*Arnold*. Though angered to the heart—though mightily offended or enraged. The poorest service is repaid with thanks—thanks are given even for the smallest good offices that are done to us. Brought out a reluctant, "I thank you, Sir."—Produced (*i. e.*, uttered) much against her will an acknowledgment of the service done to her. *Slender meal* is opposed to *full meal*. Eat *apace*—*apace*—quickly. Explain,—“ Ill weeds grow apace.” My honey love—*honey*—sweet. Revel it as bravely as the best—make ourselves merry in as fine and splendid a fashion as the best men do. Ruffs—plaited linen for the neck. Scarfs—light pieces of dress worn loosely in the shoulders. Double change—two additional snits of raiment. Haberdasher—a pedlar; a seller of small wares. From Icelandic *hapartask*, things of little value. Observe the repetition of the article before *tailor* and *haberdasher*, as two different persons are meant. Bespoke—engaged beforehand. The cap was much moulded into a porringer—a *porringer*—a small dish for porridge or seasoned broth. The meaning is, the cap was so made as to look much like a porringer. Cockle—a shell fish. When you are gentle—A pun on the words *gentleman* and *gentle*. Katherine said “all gentlewomen wear such caps as these, I will have this.” Petruchio answers—“ Not till you become (*a*) gentle (woman).” The meat.....spirit—when her hunger was appeased she again grew a little shrewish. *Fallen spirits*—violent and fiery temper subdued by want of food and sleep. *Katherine had eaten* is an adjective sentence to *meat*. Speak I will—*I will speak* expresses a determination, but *speak I will*, a determination which is not to be thwarted by any amount of opposition. Your betters—men who are superior to you in rank, wealth, or position. Cf. *Inferiors*, *Superiors*. Your betters.....my mind—Subject—*Your betters*. Predicate—*have endured*. Object—to hear...mind—the object can be further analysed. Say my mind—(to) speak what I think. Stop your ears—shut your ears; do not hear at all. Keeping up a jangling

argument—carrying on a wrangling discussion. A demi-cannon—a kind of ordnance. Carved like—made in the fashion of.

Page 159.

Tart—A small pie. It was but seven o'clock—this was purposely said to see whether Katherine had spirit left to contradict what was glaringly untrue. Lord of the sun—master of the sun—one whose bidding the sun dared not violate. Day and night are determined by the rise and setting of the sun. It should be.....to have it—a noun sentence object of said (he said). The meaning is—whatever be the actual hour of the day, if it pleases me to call it some other time you must call it to be that time too. *Before he set forward*, an adverbial sentence modifying should be. Crossing—(here) contradicting. To practise her newly found obedience—to habituate herself to the exercise of this submissive spirit which she had just learnt under Petruchio. She dared not.....contradiction—all spirit of resistance was quelled in her. She was so much cowed down that she even trembled to think that there was such a word as *contradiction* in the vocabulary of her language. List—like; desire. From Anglo-Saxon *lystan*, to desire. List, to hear, used by the poets, is a contraction of *listen*. Katherine said, "Let us go forward, &c." The indirect form would be—Katherine prayed that they should go forward, now that they had come so far, and it should be the sun, or moon, or what he pleased, and if he pleased to call it a rush-candle thenceforth, she vowed it should be so far her. Rush-candle is a candle made of a rush dipped in tallow.

Page 160.

Yielding humour—submissive spirit; a disposition to yield or submit to the opinions of others. The red and white—the crimson and lily lincs. Embrace her for her beauty's sake—clasp her in your arms out of a regard for her beauty. Vanquished—tamed; subdued. To conquer is less individual and more general in its meaning than to vanquish. We vanquish an enemy who attacks us;

we conquer a country. Vanquish is always used for a combat generally with some personal enemy; conquer for a series of combats."—*WHATCLY'S Synonyms*. Supply the appropriate verbs in the following: Achilles——Hector before Troy. Napoleon, in his campaigns,——great part of Europe. Budding virgin—a virgin whose beauty is in the act of blooming or shooting forth. Whither are you going and where is your dwelling?—The indirect form would be: (She asked) whither she was going and where her dwelling was. In an indirect question the verb should never precede its subject as it must always do in a direct question. Your strange encounter—your odd manner of addressing me. Knew the old gentleman to be, &c.—recognized the old gentleman as, &c. The gentleman to be, &c.—is the enlarged object of know. A young gentleman.....daughter—this is an enlargement of *Luceutio* or attributive to *Luceutio*.

Para. 14. Could not forbear sly jests--could not refrain from making jests in an artful or cunning manner. Fond bridegrooms—*Fond* here means foolish, because they (the bridegrooms) had formed their opinion of their wives' submissive character without sufficient reflection.

Page 161.

For his less fortunate choice—for his bad selection (of a wife). Less fortunate—not equally successful or happy. Joined in the laugh against him—took a part in making himself merry at his expense. In good sadness. Sadness=seriousness. In good sadness, therefore, means, seriously speaking. Good simply strengthens the meaning of sadness. Veriest—adjective from Old English *verai*, old French *verai*, Latin *verax*, true, *veracity*, *verity*, comes from the same root. Who is most obedient to come at first—*To come at first* is adverbial to *obedient*. Obedient in what respect? Obedient in the act of coming at first. Wager—(Old French *unquiere*, *gaziere*.) Something staked, waged, or pledged on the issue of any thing. Headstrong—self-willed; obstinate. Literally, having strength of

head so as to resist the hridle, as a horse. *Entreated*—prevailed on by solicitation. *Entreat* is from *en* and *treat*. *Treat*, from Anglo-Saxon *treahligeau*, Latin *tractare*, to handle, from *traho*, to draw. *Treat* (an entertainment.) *Treatise*, *treaty*, *retreat*, *retire* are from the same root. *Civil*—Polite; courteous. *Blank*—(French *blance* German *blinken*, to shine). White; hence, pale (or white in the face) from fear: hence confused. Trace the different meanings of *blank* (u) from the above. Explain: Let me still remain the true blank of thine eye. A point-blank assertion. You have some goodly jest in hand—you have devised a fine jest which you are going to play off at her. *Hallidom*—(Anglo Saxon *haligdom*, sacrament from *halig* holy, and the termination *dom*) sanctity. It is an expression used in swearing.

Page 162.

Marry—indeed; a term of asseveration derived from the practice of swearing by the Virgin Mary. *Right supremacy*—just authority. The authority which a husband should exercise over his wife. *Reformation*. (Latin *re*, again and, *formo*, to shape) amendment. *Fair befall thee*—happiness (or prosperity) betide thee. *Fair* is an adjective here used as a noun. Cf. :—

—————, and through a cloud
 Drawn round about thee like a radiant shrine,
 Dark with excessive bright thy skirts appear.
Milton's Paradise Lost, Bk. III.

New-built virtue—virtue newly (recently) built, formed *i. e.*, learned). *Forward*—refractory. Its antonym is *toward*. As prisoners to her womanly persuasion—an adjectival phrase, enlargement of *wives*. *To* implies relation here, that of subjection. *Womanly persuasion* is the influence exercised by the arguments coming from a woman. *Womanly i. e.*, Katherine's persuasions as opposed to those of their husband which proved ineffectual. *Lord!* interjection. *May I.....pass*—Hortensio's wife was filled with a high

opinion of the becomingness of her conduct as a wife, though really she was a shrew. She was very much disgusted with Katherine's tame and submissive spirit as she thought it to be. In her displeasure at her conduct she said she wished that no harm would come to her until she had the misfortune of acting foolishly like Katherine. **A silly pass**—a foolish embarrassing situation. Give the other meanings of *pass*. See notes on *Hamlet*. **The wisdom of your duty**—This is said in irony. The meaning is,—Your nice and accurate judgment of what you consider to be your duty. **The more fool... duty**—*the* is here an article or limiting adjective and not an adverb. **For laying on my duty**—for laying a wager on the subject of my complying with my duty (of course *duty* in the husband's estimation not in that of Bianca). **Implicitly**—Latin *implicatus*, in an implicit manner, *i. e.* entirely trusting or relying on another; without entertaining the least doubt.

TWELFTH NIGHT OR WHAT YOU WILL.

Summary.—The scene of the play is laid in a city in Illyria, which is the residence of Duke Orsino, who has been, for some time past, deeply in love with countess Olivia. His suit is rejected, and Olivia declares, in answer to the duke's solicitations, that for seven years she will mourn her brother who has died of late and allow no suitor to approach her. Viola, the twin sister of Sebastian, a gentleman of Messaline, while on a sea voyage, is safely brought on shore on the coast of Illyria after a storm at sea. Being utterly unprotected, she forms the idea of serving the Duke as a page, and putting on the male attire exactly after the fashion of her brother, who, she supposes, is drowned, she presents herself before the Duke, Orsino, and becomes his favourite page, named Cesario. The Duke, taking a great fancy to her, confides to her all about his love for Olivia, and engages her for persuading the lady to yield. The result of the first interview between Cesario and Olivia is that, instead of returning the Duke's love, the latter falls in love with the former whom she

takes for a young man, and asks to visit her again. The second day when Cesario visits her Olivia makes an open confession of her love, and bitterly complains of her coldness. Cesario does not reveal her identity, but vows never again to plead her master's cause with her. A little after this Sebastian, who is in appearance exactly like Viola (present Cesario), meets Olivia. Mistaking him for Cesario, Olivia takes him into her house, and sets about again (as she thinks) to persuade him to marry her, till Sebastian consents, and they are married by Olivia's private chaplain. Later on the Duke, learning that Olivia has been married with the page, threatens to wreak vengeance on Cesario. The mystery is, however, cleared up at the sudden appearance of Sebastian, Viola's brother, who immediately recognises his sister, even though she is disguised. The play concludes with the marriage of the Duke with Viola.

The play has a double title—*Twelfth Night, or, what you will*: The former arose from the fact that the play was first performed on Twelfth Night, i. e., the night of the twelfth day after Christmas. *What you will* is also the title of one of Marston's comedies, published in 1607, wherein occurs the following dialogue:—"Atticus. What's the play's name? Philomuse. *What you will*. Doricns. Is't comedy, tragedy, pastoral, moral, nocturnal, or history? Philomuse—faith, perfectly neither, but even *what you will*,—a slight toy, lightly composed, too swiftly finished, ill-plotted, worse written, I fear me worse acted, and indeed *what you will*." Wright holds, and perhaps rightly, that the title *what you will* "may possibly have been Shakespeare's expression of indifference, when asked what the play should be called."

Page 162.

Para. 1. Messaline—no place of this name is known in Geography; it is perhaps an invention of Shakespeare. Twins—two children born at a birth. Which was accounted a great wonder—a fact which was extraordinarily miraculous. The antecedent of which is '(that) from their birth...apart. Accounted—considered. From

their birth—from the day they were born. But for the difference—if it had not been for the difference. (*But* is here equal to *except*). Known apart—distinguished or recognised when not standing side by side. In one hour—together; at the same time. Perishing—dying. Shipwreck—thrown into distress by their ship being destroyed. Illyria—the country lying along the Adriatic, now called Dalmatia. It is the country wherein the scene of the Twelfth Night is mostly laid. Sea voyage—journey by water.

Page 163.

Split—dashed and broke. (*Pret. split; Pf. split*) Ships' company—those who were on board the ship. Escaped with their lives—were saved. Got to land—reached the shore. Safe—it is an adjective here. Rejoicing—being glad. Deliverance—rescue. Lament—mourn for; bewail. Comforted her with the assurance—consoled her by the certain statement. Fasten—fix; seize and hold on. As long...distance—so long as the distance at which he was floating permitted the captain to catch a sight of Sebastian. Borne up—upheld. Account—statement. How she was...herself—in what way she should conduct herself. Strange—foreign; not known. Ay—yes. Not three hours' travel—not at a distance of three hours' walk from this place. (*Travel* is in the objective case of measure.) A duke.....Dignity—a duke who was at once of a high personal character and of an illustrious descent. Dignity—rank (notice the two distinct meanings of *noble*). Very lately—a short time ago. General talk—the subject of conversation among men in general. (*General*—common talk). Prattle of—talk much and idly about. What great.....of—the vulgar, or the common people, take a pleasure in having a chat about the actions of their betters. Sought the love of—wanted to marry. Virtuous—religious. Leaving...brother—leaving a son as her guardian. Abjured...men—renounced upon oath the sight of, as well as any intercourse with, men. She allowed no man, besides her relatives and dependants, to have access to her. A sad affliction—a very distressing state

of mind, Tenderly—affectionately. Introduce—make known; present. Accomplish—effect; execute fully. Would admit... house—would never allow anybody to enter her house. Not even the duke—even is an adverb apparently modifying *the duke*, but a phrase such as *so great a man as* is understood before *the duke*. Formed.....mind—contrived another way. Habit—dress. Page—young attendant. A strange fancy—an odd whim. To put on a male attire—to dress oneself like a man. Pass for—be considered as. Forlorn—helpless. Who was...beauty—who was an extraordinarily beautiful maid. Must plead her excuse—must justify her putting on a male attire

Para. 2. A fair behaviour—gentle and winning manners. He showed.....welfare—he took as much interest in her well-being as is felt by a friend. Entrusted him with her design—communicated to him her plan in confidence. Readily engaged—at once promised.

Page 164.

Directed him—gave him orders. Furnish—provide. Suitable apparel—proper dress. In the same fashion—of the same cut or style. Manly garb—male dress. Errors—mistakes. Saved—rescued. By means of their being mistaken for each other—because one of them was taken for the other.

Para. 3. Transformed—changed; disguised. Interest—influence. Having some interest at court—being an intimate friend of a courtier. Got her presented to Orsino—was able to introduce Viola to the duke. Feigned—assumed. Address—manner of speaking. Graceful—charming; elegant. Deportment—behaviour; manners. Pages—boy-servants attending on a person of distinction. That—a pageship. It is here a demonstrative pronoun. Office—service. So well fulfilled the duties of her new station—so well discharged the duties of her present position. A ready observance—an immediate and careful attention. His most favoured attendant—the page whom he loved the most; his great favourite

page. **Confided**—communicated. The whole history of his love—a detailed account of his falling in love with Olivia. **Suit**—solicitation to a woman for marriage. **Unsuccessful suit**—a courtship which was not received favourably. **Rejecting his long service**—declining to reward the homage which he had long paid to the lady. **Despising his person**—disliking him as her lover. **Refused to admit him to her presence**—did not choose to see him. **Forsaking**—abandoning; giving up. **The sports of the field**—hunting and the chase. **All manly exercises**—all sport worthy of a man. **To delight**—to find pleasure. **Ignoble**—base; mean. **Ignoble sloth**—a base and shameful idleness producing a dislike for all activity. **Listening to**—attentively hearing. **Effeminate**—womanly; soft; weak. **Effeminate sounds of soft music**—gentle and soft music which tends to weaken the mind. **Gentle airs**—songs of love or tenderness. **Passionate love songs**—songs which depict love in a glowing language. **Associate**—live. **Unmeet companion**—improper associate. *Companion* is in the nominative case to the verb *was*. **Once noble master**—the master who, before he was unmanned by love, was full of high and noble sentiments.

Para. 4. **A dangerous matter**—a serious thing. The danger is that the young maidens may fall in love with the handsome dukes. **Confidants**—persons to whom secrets are communicated; confidential friends. **Which**—the antecedent of this relative pronoun is the preceding clause. **It is a dangerous...dukes.** **Which Viola too soon found to her sorrow**—Viola who was very sorry to make this discovery soon found. **To her sorrow**—here to denote effect. **Presently perceived**—soon found. **Much it moved her...wonder**—she was greatly surprised to find. **So regardless of**—so much indifferent to. **Her peerless lord and master**—the duke incomparable in point of beauty and manliness. **No one could behold without the deepest admiration**—every woman was bound to love. **Ventured gently to hint**—was bold enough to give a slight hint.

It was pity—it was a pity; it was a sad thing. Affect—love. Blind to his worthy qualities—insensible to his worth: unable to appreciate his value. If you could not love her in return—if you could not requite her love.

Page 165.

Would not admit of this reasoning—did not wish to accept the truth of this argument; had no mind to believe this argument as true. Big enough—sufficiently large. Fold—contain. Unfair—unjust; improper. Deference—respect. Had the utmost deference for the duke's opinions—took all that the duke said for gospel truth. Could not help thinking—could not but think: necessarily thought. Her heart had full, &c.—She loved the duke just as much as he loved Olivia. Too well I know—to my sorrow I know full well. What love women may owe to men—how much women love men. Are as true of heart as we are—love as sincerely as we men do. Had a daughter loved a man—supply the word *who* after the word *daughter*. What is her history—what became of her. A blank—a page on which nothing is written: a life about which nothing is written; a life about which nothing is to be said; as to her history there is none. Never told her love—never told any one that she loved. Feed on—waste the beauty of. Let concealment, &c.—she concealed her love, and as a worm concealed within a bud causes it to fade, so the love concealed caused her rosy cheeks to grow pale. Damask—red; of the colour of the damask rose. Pined in thought—wasted away by continually thinking of love; thought too much of love and suffered in health. With a green and yellow melancholy—being subject to grief which causes one to grow green and pale. Patience—the statue of patience placed on a grave. She sat like patience on a monument smiling at grief—while she was smiling at grief, her resignation made her look like a statue over a grave representing patience. Evasive—shuffling. Returned an evasive answer—gave an answer which was not to the point. Feigned—invented. Expressive—indicative. Silent grief—sorrow at heart.

Para. 5. So please you—if it so please you; if you please. Might not be admitted to the lady—could not get admission to the lady. Handmaid—maid servant. Hence—from now. The element itself—the very air. The element itself. &c.—she would never leave her chamber. Cloistress—nun. Veiled—with a mask on the face. Watering her chamber, &c.—shedding tears on the floor of her chamber. For the sad remembrance—out of grief for the cherished memory. Fine frame—delicate structure. To pay this debt of love—to show so much love. The rich golden shaft—the golden arrow of Cupid, the god of love. O she that has...heart—a woman having such tender sensibilities and showing so much affection for her dead brother will certainly be a most affectionate wife when she is married. Be not denied access—insist on getting admission; take no refusal, but do get admission. Audience—interview. There your fixed...audience—there you will remain standing until she grants you an interview. Unfold—lay open; reveal. The passion of my love—the intensity with which I love her. Make a long discourse—describe in a lengthened form; make a long speech. My dear faith—my loving fidelity; the fondness and sincerity with which I love her. Become—suit. To act my woes—to play the part of a lover and describe my sufferings to her. It will...woes—you are the proper person to assume my part and show my sufferings. Attend more to you—hear your words with greater attention and readiness. Aspect—appearance. One of graver aspect—a man having a more serious appearance; a man older than you in appearance.

Para. 6. Not willingly—reluctantly. Not willingly...courtship—she undertook the task of wooing the lady with reluctance. Woo—court; solicit for marriage.

Page 166.

Having undertaken the affair—having promised to do the thing. Fidelity—faithfulness. Insisted upon—persisted in making a request

for. **Foreknowledge**—knowledge of a thing before it happens. **Fortified**—armed. Seems fortified against all denial—meets all pleas for refusing admittance to him with arguments of his own with which he appears to be armed: is determined not to receive any refusal. **Whether you will or no**—whether you like it or do not like it. **Curious**—anxious; eager. **Peremptory**—having his own will; resolute. **Peremptory messenger**—a messenger who was resolved not to have any denial. **Messenger**—a person entrusted with a message. **Throwing her veil over her face**—covering her face with the veil or mask. **Embassy**—messenger. **Not doubting but that**—quite sure that. **By his importunity**—on account of his pressing solicitations; on account of the peremptory manner in which he spoke. **Put on**—assumed. **Manly air**—the manners of a man; masculine manners. **Put on.....assume**—assumed the appearance of a man as much as she could. **Affecting**—adopting; imitating. **Courtier**—courtly; elegant; refined. **Affecting the...pages**—imitating the fine courtly language used by the pages of great men. **The veiled lady**—the lady who had thrown her veil over the face. **Radiant**—bright; shining. **Exquisite**—highly accomplished. **Matchless**—peerless; unrivalled. **Matchless beauty**—most beautiful lady. (*Beauty* here is an example of an abstract noun being used for a concrete). **The lady of the house**—the mistress of the house, the lady Olivia. **To cast away my speech upon another**—to waste time by addressing some wrong person. **Besides that**—in addition to the fact that. It is **excellently well penned**—my message has been written with great care. **Penned**—written; composed. **Penned, pains**—there appears to be a play on these two words. **Little more than I have studied**—no more than I have been taught to answer. **That question is out of my part**—to answer that question does not belong to the part of the character I am required to play: the answer to this question is not included in the message I am entrusted with. **Comedian**—an actor or player in a comedy. **Yet I am not that which I play**—but still I am playing a part which does not

Page 167.

, Indifferent—fairly; tolerably. And so forth—et cetera. Too proud—excessively proud. Could but be recompensed—could only be requited: would not be more than compensated. Though you were crowned the queen of beauty—even if you had been declared by general consent the most beautiful lady on earth. Loves you with adoration and tears—loves you with the greatest ardour and sincerity. Thunder—loudly proclaim. Sighs of fire—sighs of passion. I doubt not he is virtuous—I am sure that he is a good man. Of high estate—of an elevated rank. Of fresh and spotless youth—a man in the vigour of his youth and free from all vices. All voices proclaim him learned—all men are of opinion that he is learned. Courteous—polite. Valiant—brave. He might have taken his answer long ago—he might have concluded long before this that I was not going to marry him. A willow cabin—a hut of willow branches. (The willow is a sign of unhappy love.) I would make me... gates—I would fix myself at the gates of your house till you accepted my love. Complaining sonnets—love poems about your cruelty. In the dead of the night—at midnight. Echo—it is here personified. Babbling=talking confusedly. Gossip—an idle talker. The babbling gossip of the air—the woman who prattles in the air in a confused manner. Your name should sound, etc.—neither the air nor the earth will give you rest until your heart melts towards me and you lend a favourable ear to my suit. You should not rest, etc.—your life will be devoid of ease and quiet. You might do much—you might do much towards winning my love. What is your parentage—what family do you belong to. Above my fortunes—I belong to a family which is nobler than what would appear from my position as a page. Yet my state is well—but I have nothing to complain of in my present position. Reluctantly—with unwillingness. Dismissed—sent away. Perchance—possibly. How he takes it—how he accepts the rejection of my suit. Fair cruelty—fair but cruel lady. I will be sworn

—I am prepared to make this declaration on oath. He is—he is a gentleman. Action—the manner of the speaker. Spirit—the brave disposition of the speaker. The fast hold he had taken on her affection—the deep impression he had made on her heart. Blamed herself—found fault with herself. For her sudden love—for falling in love with Cesario at first sight. The gentle blame... faults—the fault which people find with their own conduct. Has no deep root—does not proceed from the bottom of the heart. The gentle blame, &c.—people, if they notice their defects at all, are very lenient to them. Presently—in a short time. Between her... page—between her own position and that of Cesario, who, to all appearance, was a page. The maidenly reserve—the modesty which is worthy of a woman. Ornament—jewel. Resolved—made up her mind. Court the love of—try to win the heart of. Pretence—excuse. Intimation—hint. Some intimation of her design—a slight hint that she loved him. And truly...suspect—and indeed Viola began to suspect that Olivia had fallen in love with her. Recollect—remember. Were expressive of admiration—showed that she admired her beauty. Presently guessed—soon found out. Her master's mistress—the lady whom the duke, her master, loved.

Page 168.

Love a dream—love something which has no reality or existence. Disguise I see is wicked—I find that it is very wrong to personate a character; I find that to put on a disguise is productive of mischief. To breathe, etc.—to love me fruitlessly as I love the duke.

Para. 8. Related—described. Ill-success—failure. Trouble her no more—send no more messengers to her. In time—in course of time; in a few days. Persuade her to show some pity—prevail upon her to relent. In the meantime—in the interval. To pass away the tedious interval—to while away the intervening time which would otherwise appear very wearisome. Methought—it appeared to me. (It is an impersonal verb.) Relieve my passion—

alleviate my suffering. Mark it—notice this fact. It is old and plain—it contains nothing original and is perfectly simple. **Spinsters**—unmarried women. **Knitters**—women that knit or weave. In the sun—in the open air. **Bone**—a reel or bobbin on which the thread is wound round. It is silly—it is a foolish song. Tells of the innocence of love—describes how lovers possess purity of heart and love. **Come away**—come away with me : come away to me. **Cypress**—a kind of evergreen tree, the branches of which are carried at funerals. (It is a symbol of death). In sad cypress let me be laid—let me be laid in a coffin of cypress wood. **Fly away...breath**—let me die. **Breath**—life. I am slain by a fair cruel maid—a beautiful and cruel lady has disappointed me in love ; I am dying, for a beautiful cruel lady has not returned my love. **Shroud**—the dress of the dead ; the sheet in which a dead body is wrapped. **Struck all with**—completely set with ; fully adorned with. **Yew**—a kind of evergreen shrub. (Sprays of yew were used at funerals in England). **My shroud, etc.**—let my shroud be prepared and decked all over with sprays of yew. **My part of death no one so true did share it**—of all those actors who have played the part of death (i. e., who have died) no one has been so true to his love as I. **Strewn**—thrown ; scattered. **Greet my poor corpse—visit my grave. Where my bones shall be thrown—at my grave. A thousand...save**—so that much sorrow may be spared. **Sad true...lover, &c.**—no true lover may find my grave and shed tears over it.

Para. 9. Did not fail to mark—thoroughly understood ; very attentively listened to. In such true simplicity—so truly and simply. **Pangs**—sufferings. The pangs of unrequited love—sufferings caused by disappointed love. **Bore**—carried. **Testimony**—evidence. She bore testimony, &c.—her face showed that she felt deeply what the song described. Her sea...**Orsino**—the duke observed her grief. **My life upon it—I will stake my life on the truth of the statement. Your eye has looked. &c.**—you have seen

some one whom you love ; you love some one. With your leave—by your permission. (It is only an expression of courtesy). Of your age and of your complexion—of the same age and of the same colour as yours. (Viola indirectly means to say that she is in love with the duke himself.)

Page 169.

Para. 10. Found no...her—was at once admitted. Soon discover—have no difficulty in finding out. Ladies—mistresses. The instant—as soon as. Shown into—conducted. To plead in her lord's behalf—to urge her to yield to the wishes of her master ; to court her for the sake of her master. If you would undertake another suit—if you would court me for some other person (that is, on your own behalf). Music from the spheres—Here is an allusion to the doctrine of the Greek philosopher, Pythagorus, that the planets as they revolved gave forth a musical sound. I had rather hear you solicit than music from the spheres—I should be more delighted to hear your words of love than the notes of harmony proceeding from the planets. This was pretty plain speaking—Olivia spoke her mind almost quite freely. Still more plainly—yet more freely. Openly confessed her love—made an open declaration of her love. Displeasure with perplexity—anger mixed with confusion. O what a deal...lip—although his contemptuous angry lips express disdain, he looks very beautiful in my eyes. By—I swear in the name of. In spite of your pride—although you receive my declaration of love with anger and disdain. I have passion—I am not wise or sensible enough to hide my love. In vain the lady moved—the lady tried in vain to win the love of Cesario. Hastened from her presence—hastily went away from her. Threatening—menacing. To plead Orsino's love—to plead on behalf of Orsino. Fond solicitation—earnest pleading. A declaration of a resolution—an expression of her determination.

Para. 11. A claim was made upon her valour—she was required to show that she possessed a courageous heart. A rejected suitor

of Olivia—a man who had made the proposal of marriage to Olivia but had been refused. Had favoured the duke's messenger—had looked kindly or propitiously upon the page. Challenged—called on him. Duel—a single combat. Though she carried a manlike outside—though she had put on a man's dress. Had a true woman's heart—had only the courage of a woman.

Para. 12. Formidable—dreadful. Rival—one pursuing the same object as another; one trying to obtain the hand of Olivia in marriage. Relieved—freed. The shame of such a discovery—the humiliation of making the confession that she was a woman. Passing by—passing by that way. Made up—came. Opponent—enemy; antagonist. Will take the fault on me—will answer for any wrong he may have done to you. Offend him—do any injury to him. For his sake—on his behalf. Defy—challenge you to fight me. For his protection—for coming to her rescue. Interference—taking up the cause of Cesario. Was of no use to him—afforded him no protection. Officers of justice—constables; policemen. Coming up—reaching that place. In that instant—at that time. Apprehended—arrested. Answer—give explanation. This comes with seeking you—I have been arrested because I came here in search of you. Purse—a small bag containing money. My necessity...purse—the circumstances to which I have been reduced compel me to ask you to return my purse.

Page 170.

It grieves...myself—I am much more sorry that I cannot help you than that I am arrested. What befalls myself—what happens to me. You stand amazed—it seems that you are surprised at what you see and hear. Be of comfort—do not allow yourself to be depressed: cheer up. His words...Viola—Viola was actually surprised to hear the words of the stranger. Protested—solemnly declared. Spoke severe things—used harsh words. Charging her with—accusing her of. Charging her unkindness—saying that he was ungrateful and hard-hearted. I snatched from the jaws

of death—I saved from imminent danger of death. Cared little for hearking to—did not care to hear. Complaints—accusations. Hurried him off—hastily carried him away. What is that to us—this is no business of ours : we do not care to hear your words. The supposed Sebastain—Viola whom he mistook for Sebastian. Disowning—not acknowledging ; declining to recognise. As long as he was within hearing—so long as his words could be heard. Too hastily for her to ask an explanation—so hurriedly that she had no time to ask the reason. Conjectured—inferred. Seeming mystery—a thing which appeared to be beyond the power of understanding. This seeming mystery...brother—the cause of his addressing her as Sebastian, which was so difficult to explain, was probably due to the fact that she had been mistaken for her brother. To cherish—to entertain. So indeed it was—such was really the case. Exhausted with fatigue—overcome with weariness. Conceived such a friendship for—loved so dearly. Resolved to accompany him—determined to go with him. Whithersoever—to any and every place. Expressed a curiosity—expressed a desire. Rather than part from him—instead of being separated from him. If his person should be known there—if he were recognised there.

Para. 13. But a few hours—only a few hours. To use it freely—to expend as much money as he required. Ventured out to look for him—made hold to go in search of him. No wonder—it was no wonder.

Page 171.

Para. 14. Invitation—challenge. Slunk—fled away secretly. Fast—rapidly. Adversary—enemy. There's for you—there is a blow for you : take this blow. With interest—with greater severity than he had received.

Para. 15. Met with—received. Courtesy—politeness. His unknown foe—the enemy whom he did not know. As she thought him—as she took him to be. Become more sensible of her attentions—receive her overtures with delight. At all—in the least degree.

Para. 16. Object to—take exception to. Fondness—affection; love. Lavished—bestowed with profusion. Sebastian on him—Sebastian did not in the least find fault with the attentions of Olivia. To take it in good part—to receive it favourably (not in displeasure). So in *ill part* means unfavourably. How it had come to pass—how it had happened; how he came to be regarded with such special interest by Olivia. Inclined—disposed. Was not in her right senses—had lost her reasoning power. Perceiving—seeing. Mistress—possessor. Ordered her affairs—conducted her domestic duties. Discreetly—prudently. In all but, &c.—*but* is here a preposition meaning *except*. In all but...reason—in matters other than her suddenly falling in love with him, she was perfectly rational. Approved of the courtship—liked the idea of her wooing him. In this good humour—so favourably disposed. Changed his mind—altered his wish. Assented—agreed. Was over—was concluded. Met with—acquired. Officers of justice—the constables who preserve order in a place and arrest the criminals. Rescued—delivered from danger. Perils—dangers. Relating—narrating. Ended—finished; concluded. With saying—by the statement.

Page 172.

Heaven walks on earth—Olivia is so beautiful that she seems to be a heavenly being in the eyes of Orsino, such was his ardent love for her. But for thee fellow—but as regards thyself, fellow. Thy words are madness—thou speakest like a mad man. To be taken aside—to be dismissed (for the time being.) Heavenly—beautiful; angelic. Cause to accuse—reason for charging. For all the words, etc.—since Cesario had won Olivia's love and was much favoured by her, as could be gathered from her kind words to Cesario. This high place—such an exalted position. Had obtained, etc.—had been so greatly favoured by Olivia. He threatened revenge—he gave out that he would severely punish him. Going to depart—about to go away. My thought.....mischief—I have made up my mind to punish you (for deceiving me). Jealous rage—

anger arising from jealousy. Doom—condemn. Her love..... coward—she was emboldened by the love she secretly cherished for the duke, and she put on a bold appearance before him. She would.....ease—she would not hesitate in braving death, provided that her death could make him happy. (By this she gave a broad hint how much she adored him.) Ease—rest; peace of mind. So lose—he thus deprived of. Prevented their departure—caused them to stay. Proclaiming—declaring. Protested—held. Had robbed.....his life—had married Olivia whom he valued more than his life. It was past recall—it was irrevocable; it could not be undone. Bidding farewell to—taking leave of. Faithless—treacherous. Dissembler—hypocrite. A miracle appeared—a wonderful sight presented itself to their eyes. Ceased—abated. Habit—dress. To question each other—to put questions to each other (as if they were strangers.) Account for—explain. He supposed drowned—it is an adjective expression to sister. Presently—immediately. Disguise—false appearance.

Para. 17. Cleared up—explained and therefore removed. Extreme—perfect. Likeness—resemblance. Occasioned—caused; brought about. Pleasant mistake—a mistake giving rise to much diversion. Exchange—the thing received in lieu of another; meaning Viola's brother.

Page 173.

Para. 18. At an end—blasted. Fruitless—vain. And his thoughts...lady—he was taken up with the thought that his favourite page might possibly at last turn out to be a fair lady. Viewed—observed. Handsome—beautiful. She would.....attire—she would appear highly beautiful, were she to put on the dress of a female. Which at the time seemed only—which were formerly construed as. Dutiful expressions—words dictated by duty. Something more was meant—her words had a deeper signification. Pretty sayings—wise remarks. Riddles—puzzling questions. Came now into his mind—were now remembered by him. Like to me—(an

adverb) in the same way as you love me. So much.....breeding—so much unbecoming the gentle and tender manner in which you were brought up. Master's Mistress—Cf. similar expressions in Othello :—The captain's captain ; the general's general. Mistress—a married lady having a great influence over her husband. True duchess—the queen of his heart, whom he will truly love and adore.

Para. 19. Making over that heart—transferring that love. Ungraciously rejected—cruelly declined. The same ceremony—the marriage rites. Wedded—married. Bringing to pass—accomplishing ; effecting. High and mighty fortunes—rare good luck.

PERICLES, PRINCE OF TYRE.

Summary.—To avoid the wrath of Antiochus, the wicked emperor of Greece, Pericles, prince of Tyre, left his kingdom, repaired to the royal court of Symonides, king of Pentopolis, and, by the deeds of valour he performed at a tournament, won the love of his daughter, Thaisa. Pericles had not been many months married to Thaisa when he received news of the death of Antiochus. While voyaging homeward, a little babe was born to Pericles, but his wife died as soon as it was born, and placed in a chest was thrown into the sea. Cerimon, a skilful physician of Ephesus, discovered the chest cast on the shore by the waves, felt that Thaisa was not altogether dead, and by recourse to proper remedies restored her to life. He then placed her in the temple of Diana, where she became a priestess. Pericles carried his daughter, Marina, to Tharsus, where the Governor Cleon and his wife, Dionysia, who were indebted to him for favors received, promised to take charge of her : and then he arrived in safety at Tyre.

Marina, as she grew up, became a beautiful and accomplished lady, and as she excited the jealousy of Dionysia she deputed a wicked man to put her to death. As she was about to be killed, certain pirates reached the spot, carried her away and sold her for

a slave at Metaline, in which humble station she, by her beauty and virtues, captivated the heart of the Governor Lysimachus. When Pericles returned to Tharsus, he was told that his daughter was dead, and this news shocked him so much that the poor prince lost his senses. Sailing from Tharsus to Tyre, his ship passed by Metaline, where, when he was introduced to Marina and heard her story, he recognised her as his daughter. They next proceeded to Ephesus and were united to Thasia.

Page 173.

Para. 1. Tyre—a city in Phœnicia celebrated in ancient times for its commerce. Exile —(Latin *ex*, out of and *solum*, soil). *Exile* has two different meanings, one abstract ; and the other, concrete. So, *justice, beauty, &c.* Voluntary exile—one who quits his native soil of his own accord. To pry into—to look narrowly or closely into. The word is often employed with an implied reproach, as, a prying curiosity. The hidden crimes of great ones—crimes or wicked deeds done by great men in secret. Opinion is divided as to the root of *eye*. Some say it is the same as the numeral adjective *one* ; others, that it is derived from the French *on* Latin *homo*, a man.

Page 174.

Para. 2. Tharsus—A city of Asia Minor, on the river Cydnus, said to have been founded by Sardanapalus. Suffering under a severe famine—Cf.—‘Suffering under great privations.’ The idea expressed by *under* is a relation of subjection. Store—abundance. Store of provisions—stock of food. Reduced—brought down. Utmost is outmost, greatest. A messenger from heaven—a beneficent spirit. Unhoped for succour—unexpected relief. How is *unhoped-for* formed ? Name some other compound words similarly formed. Boundless thanks—(thanks, nuptials, embers, aborigines are only used in the plural. *Morris*). Gratitude which knows no bounds. Secret emissaries—spies ; private agents. *Emissary* is from Latin *e*, out, and *mitto*, to send. Think out the meaning of

missionary which comes from the same root. **Receipt**—"It is sometimes difficult to decide in such words as 'receive,' 'believe,' &c., whether *e* or *i* should come first; but the difficulty will vanish if it is borne in mind that (except after *c*) *i* comes first." **Put out to sea**—*o setsail*. *Put to sea* is the expression now generally used.

Para. 3. **On board**—in the ship. **Cast**—thrown. *To cast*=to throw. Remember that *caste*, a class of society, is from Portuguese *casta*, breed or race. *Shore* (coast) is from Anglo-Saxon *seiran*, to divide. Can you mention any other word derived from the same root? (*That*) *the name of their country was Pentapolis* is the direct object of *told*. *Pentapolis* (Greek *pente*, five and *polis* city). A name applied to *Doris* in Asia Minor after the exclusion of *Haliearassus* from the Doric confederacy for the insolence of *Agasicles*. **Good Symonides**—Symonides, surnamed the good. **Peaceable reign**—tranquil or quiet reign. Do you say "My neighbour is of a peaceful or a peaceable disposition?" **Tournament**—(French *tournoyer*, to turn) a mock fight in which knights fought on horseback to show their skill in arms, so called from the rapid turning of their horses. **To try their skill in arms**—to exert their dexterity in the use of arms with rivals. **From making, &c.**—from joining these, &c., or from being one of their party. **Suit**—set. **Very**—same (an adjective). **Crosses**—misfortune. *Somewhat* is a noun here. **To repair myself**—to set me up again. **Taken out**—drawn out. **Whithersoever** (adv.) to whatever place. **Rough**—boisterous. What is "to rough it?" **Bequeathed**—Anglo-Saxon *be* and *cwæthan*, to say; hence, bequest. *Quoth* is from the same root. **Shipwreck**—ship and wreck. **Wreck**—(From Dutch *wreck* connected with the Latin root *frango*, to break) breaking. Dean Hoare says—"The noun *wretch* now applied in a bad sense originally meant one who was wrecked."

Page 175.

Para. 4. **Wonders**—feats of arms. If one proved sole victor over all the rest—if any knight happened to overcome all the other combatants. **Deeds of valour**—chivalrous feats. **To bestow**

all her respect—to take especial notice of. Did not depart from this custom—acted as was the custom. Wreath of victory—a garland presented to the victor in a joust. King of that day's happiness—the supremely happy or lucky man of that day. *Beauteous*—*Ous* is a Latin suffix.

Para. 5. Accomplished gentleman—one learned in all the excellent arts. The valiant unknown—the brave Pericles so called because he had concealed his real birth.

Para. 6. Impatient of—grown uneasy or restless on account of. Vacant throne—vacant by his flight. What is the meaning, of *vacant* when applied metaphorically? Obscure knight—unknown knight. *Knight* is from Anglo-Saxon *cnith*, a strong youth. To trust to the perils of the sea—to expose to the dangers of a sea-voyage. With child—pregnant; in the family way. Confinement—restraint from going abroad caused by child-birth. Brought to bed—delivered of the child.

Page 176.

Para. 7. No friendly element—an element not disposed to be friendly *i. e.*, an element where he (Pericles) was exposed to great danger. Was no friendly element—proved very boisterous. Taken ill—fell ill. Too young for such a voyage—too tender to be able to bear the privations incident to a sea-voyage. Goodly gifts—goodly=fair; comely. *Gift* is from *give*, as *drift* is from *drive*. Cf. 'a goodly person.'

"Adam, the goodliest of men since born his sons."

—Milton.

Of our dead queen—what does *of* signify here? Be more manly—behave in a manner more becoming to a man. Cf. "Unmanly tears." Patience for have patience—Latin *patior*, to suffer: so, *passion*. Precious charge—dear object of one's care. *Charge* from Italian *caricare*, to load, whence also *caricature*. New-born—newly born. Blustering birth—a birth amidst the noise and fury of the elements. *Bluster*, an augmentative of *blast*. Rudest welcome—a most rough

reception. **Chiding** a nativity—same as *blustering* birth before. *Nativity* is from Latin *nascor*, to be born, supine *natus*. Cf. “Chiding flood;”—*Milton's Hymn on the nativity*. **To herald**—to proclaim as by a herald. *Herald*, from German *herold*, from *haran*, to shout. **At the first**—at the beginning. **Even at the first your loss is..... recompense—even at the first** is an adverbial phrase. *Your loss is more than (what) all the.....recompense* is the principal sentence; *which you...earth* is an adjectival sentence to *joys*; *to which...visitor* is an adjectival sentence to *earth*.

Para. 8. *Superstition* is from Latin *super*, above, and *sto*, to stand. It literally means,—Standing still over something amazing. Here, a false belief; a false religious notion. **Overboard**—(Adv.) out of the ship. Cf. *Aboard*. **What courage?** Cf. “What cheer?”—*The Tempest*. The meaning is—How is it with you at this trying time which puts one's courage to the test? **Done to me its worst**—by causing the death of my most beloved wife. **This fresh new seafarer**—the new born babe who was born at sea. **Must overboard** = must (be thrown) overboard. **Works high**—rages furiously. **How unfounded the superstition was**—how false was this belief that while a dead body remained in the ship, the storm would never cease. **Meet**—proper.

Page 177.

Hollowed—(from the root of *holy*) with holy rites. **Scarcely coffined**—scantly enclosed in a coffin. *Coffin* is from French *Coffre* a chest, whence also the English *coffer*. **For**—instead of. **The humming waters.....thy corpse**—“the mass of waters shall roll with low heavy murmur over thy head.”—*Shakespeare*. **Lying with simple shells**—with nothing but shells lying around the corpse. **Satin coffin**—a silk dress used for a shroud. **Go about this suddenly**—proceed to your work without delaying (immediately). **Priestly farewell**—the services read by a clergyman over a dead body before it is lowered into the grave.

Para. 9. Body=corpse. Make for—to steer for. Hold out—the idea conveyed by “hold out” is that of stretching or continuing; hence, *hold out* here means—To remain alive. *At*=under.

Para. 10. As east—put for—as that which east. Casket—(French *casque*) *cask* and *casquet* are from the same root. *Jewels*, French *jewel*, which comes from Latin *gaudeo*, to rejoice. **Strangely entomb-ed**—buried in an unusual fashion; coffined in an uncommon manner. **As dead**=as if (it were) dead. **Admiring at**—wondering at. **Cracks with woe**—breaks with grief. **Unlike**—*Like, unlike, near, worth* and some other adjectives take the objective case after them.

Page 178.

Amazed spirits—mind lost in a maze; hence, bewildered mind. Give her air—let her have free air to breathe. **Entranced**—thrown into a trance. To blow into life again—to revive. To make us weep to her fate—to cause us to shed tears out of sympathy with her unhappy fate. **Deep**—profound; complete. **Swoon**—a fainting fit; a trance. To conclude her to be dead is the second object of made. What are factitive verbs? Parse *laugh in*—‘It made her laugh.’ Revived to light and life—What is the idea conveyed by *to here*? Is it the same as that in ‘your order was observed to a tittle? Enough—sufficiently. Parse *enough in*—“Enough is as good as a feast.” Explain this proverb in your own language. **Diana**—“the Latin name of the goddess known to the Greeks by the name of Artemis. She was the sister of Apollo and the virgin goddess of the chase. The sudden deaths of women were attributed to her darts as those of men were to the arrows of Apollo. She was generally represented as a healthy active maiden in a huntress’s dress. A catalogue of the various places, where temples were erected in her honour, comprises every city of note in the ancient world. There you may abide as a vestal—*Vestal* comes from *vesta*, a Roman goddess identical with the Grecian Hestia, the goddess of the domestic and public hearth. The virgin priestesses, who had

charge of the temple of the goddess Vesta at Rome and the superintendence of the sacred fire which blazed perpetually on her altar, were called *vestal virgins*. They were condemned to be buried alive if they violated their vows of chastity. *Abide* as a *vestal* is to put on a *vestal* livery; here, to live a pure and chaste life without thinking of a second marriage. Her husband's supposed loss—the supposed death of her husband. In the devout exercises of these times—in the discharge of those pious duties which a priestess of Diana had to perform in those days.

Para. 11. *For*—in consideration of. *Heaven*. What case? Yet the end must be as it is—nevertheless what is decreed by fate must come to pass. *As it is far as it is fated to be*. I must charge your charity with her—I must task your kindness to have her under your care. It would be an act of kindness on your part to receive her under your protection. The infant of your care—the infant brought up under your care or watchful attention. *Princeely training*—an education befitting a princess. *Training* is from French *trainer*, to lead on, to draw.

Page 179.

Blessed in your care—happy in the care which you will take. *Respect*—attention. In their prayers they daily remember you—they never forget to pray for your happiness as they make their daily prayers. Must in your child be thought on—must be considered in the nursing and training of your child, i. e., the training will be one which you may expect from our deep gratitude. *Force*—compel. *Force me to my duty*—compel me to do what I am bound to do. If to that I need a spur—what does *that* stand for? *Need a spur*—want any incitement. To the end of generation—to the remotest posterity. *Look to*—take care of. *Grace*—good will; favour.

Para. 12. The learning of these times—the sciences or liberal arts cultivated in that age. One immortal—a goddess or an angel. *Goddess...like*—a compound adjective. *Cf.* It was done hero-like or like a hero. To compose nature's own shape—to weave or work out

forms exactly true to nature. Natural roses—roses growing on trees as opposed to *silken* flowers or flowers of silk. Cf. Silken cord. What is *silken sloth*? Almost the same idea is expressed by the following line:—

‘The canvas glowed beyond even nature warm.’

—Goldsmith.

The general wonder—an object of wonder to everybody. Mortal—deadly. This sense of *mortal* has gone out of use, it is retained only in “mortal wound” and one or two similar expressions. Slowness of mind—mental dullness or want of parts. To attain to that perception...excelled—to be as highly accomplished as Marina was. In comparison disregarded—comparatively disregarded. Untoward is *in-to-ward*; *in-to*=from; hence *untoward*=forward (*from*, and *ward*): here, *dull*. Well-timed her wicked designs—executed her wicked designs at the fittest time.

Page 180.

So—in such a manner. The fitter then the gods should have her—Cf. The Greek proverb: ‘Whom the gods love, die young.’ Marigold—(equivalent to *Mary's gold*.) A kind of bright yellow flower. Did last—should last. Unhappy mind—Marina. Lasting—ever-during. Matchless—peerless; having no equal. Doomed to an untimely death—destined to die prematurely, i. e., at a time when her excellences were budding forth. This world...storm—my life is always a mark for misfortune. Hurrying—driving. Do you weep alone?—is there nobody else in the world who weeps? You have a nurse in me—I will be as a nurse to you. Unprofitable woe—bootless grief. Sea-air—air blowing from the sea. Will spoil them—will rob them of their beauty. Enliven you—put life into you. Deprive—(Latin *de*, from, and *privus*, one's own) to take away from one his own. *Private*, *privation* are from the same root. Come, come—no more of that; cease your objection. I love the prince.....you—the indirect form would be—She said that she loved the prince, her father, and she loved her. Every day—daily.

Paragon—(from Spanish compound *paragon*, in comparison with) a model with which comparisons are made. Hence, something supremely excellent. **We reported you**—which we reported you to be. **Careful**—provident. **Stole**—gained. **I have no desire to it**. **To**=towards. My desire does not go that way, i. e., I feel no inclination to take a walk by the sea-side. She said to Leoline, “Remember what I have said.” The indirect form would be—‘She said to Leoline that he should remember what she had said.’ *Words* is in apposition with *Remember*.....said. *To kill Marina* is the object of remember.

Para. 13. Is the wind westerly that blows—is the wind that blows westerly? **Come full into her mind**—revived completely in her mind. *Full* is an adverb. **Father's sorrows**=sorrows felt by her father.

Page 181.

Courage—an interjection, meaning *be of courage*. **Good seamen**—brave seamen. **Galling**=hurting the skin by rubbing. **Princely hands**—the hands of a king. **Split the deck**—caused the deck to break in pieces. **The boatswain's whistle**—It is used to call the attention of the sailors to their duty. Explain the proverb: It is a poor dog that is not worth the whistling. **Trebled the confusion of the ship**—very much increased the disorder and tumult that then prevailed on board the ship. *Prayer* is from Latin *precor*, to pray. Give the meanings of *precarious*, *deprecate*. **A little space**—a short time. **Tedious**=prolix. **Quick**=sharp. Similar constructions are *slow of tongue*, *clary of money*, *false of heart*. Explain *light of ear*. **The gods are quick of ear**—it does not require a long prayer to make ourselves be heard by the gods. **I am sworn to do my work in haste**—I have taken an oath to despatch my work quickly. **Have me killed**—Have=wish or get. Why would she have me killed? —The indirect question would be: I ask why she would have me killed. **Ill turn**—wrong action for which one may be blamed. **Not to reason the deed**—not to support or justify the deed by arguments.

Bore her off=carried her off. *Prize*, same case with *her*. How have I offended?—Turn this into an indirect question. Turn the following into a compound sentence : ‘But here Leontes.....prayers.’

Para. 14. *Metaline*—“the capital city of the Island of Lesbos, distinguished for the luxury and refinement of its inhabitants.” The usual spelling is *Myteline*. Sold her for a slave—*Plato* was sold for a slave by the elder *Dionysius*, the tyrant of Sicily. For—as. Go by—earned by. Beyond measure—exceedingly.

Page 182.

A miracle for sense—for means in respect of. Such was her intelligence that she was regarded as the wonder of the age.

Para. 15. Gave out—caused it to be reported. What is to give in? Pretended funeral—a mock funeral, as if *Marina* was really dead, and her funeral rites were being observed. Stately monument—a grand architectural work over the grave in commemoration of the deceased. On purpose—with the intention of. Buried—dead. Last hope—*Marina*, because *Thaisa* died leaving her as her only child. Memory—memorial; that which calls to remembrance. So, in *As You Like It*—“Oh you memory of old Sir Roland.” Memory of his dear *Thaisa*—i. e., *Marina*, her daughter. A dull and heavy melancholy—a melancholy causing a man to be inert and spiritless; a sorrow rendering a man insensible to everything around him.

Para. 16. Barge—a state boat. But just to prolong his grief—the expression is elliptical. The meaning is:—He used to take just as much food as was sufficient to keep body and soul together, and thereby keeping off death served merely to prolong his grief. Whole ground—all the causes. But the main springs—but is here a preposition. *Main* is from Anglo-Saxon *magan*, to be strong; hence, chief. Him—a reflexive pronoun for himself.

Haply—probably. With her tongue—by means of her persuasion. Silent prince—the prince who had given up speaking. Gallant—from Italian *galante*, *gala*-finery. A gala-day is a day on which

men put on their best dress. A *gallant lady* is a fine beautiful lady. *Rarely*—in a rare or uncommon manner ; supremely. *Lowly seeming*—to all appearance of an obscure birth. In his recovery—in effecting his recovery. *Provided*—the condition being. But I—but me ; excepting myself.

Para. 17. Concealed her birth—kept her birth a secret. Ancestry—parentage. Wayward—having regard to one's own way ; self-willed ; capricious. *Herself for she herself*. To match—matching ; equalling. Drooping—sinking. Fixed—directed steadily to one point.

Perfect image of her mother. Cf. :—

“ Sleep, image of thy father, sleep, my boy.”

— Campbell.

Her stature to an inch—my late queen's exact natural height of body. Square brows—high forehead. Square—having a shape broad for the height, with angular rather than curved outlines. As—equally. Silver-voiced—(figure metaphor). Having a soft and clear voice. Report—describe. You have been...injury—Wrong is here misfortune, harm ; it is opposed to *injury* which means *injustice*. The idea of *tossed* will be made clear by the following beautiful lines from Byron's *Childe Harold* :—“ Man, thou pendulum betwixt a smile and a tear.” Opened—divulged. Warrant me as likely—assure me as probable. Parse me. Endurance—sufferings. Wand-like straight—as erect and tall as my late queen.

Page 184.

Smiling extremity out of act—“ disarming calamity by meek and smiling gentleness. *Extremity* is here personified, but it is used to express the extreme of calamitous infliction or suffering.” Yet you look like Patience, etc.—though you have suffered so much, yet you appear by your outward looks, to be the very personification of patience, looking with wonder on the graves of kings (in allusion to himself), looking with contempt on the highest forms of misfortune, and neutralising its evil effects. Usual—common ; ordinary. I am

mocked—I am deceived with false hopes or tautalized. **Do**—emphatic. *Weeping* with tears. A participle agreeing with Lychorida. **Impostor**—Name some other words which do not take the inflexion of gender. Both *author* and *authoress* can be applied to a female writer. **Sea of joys**—Cf. *World of sorrows*. **Overbear...mortality**—*Overbear*=drown; overwhelm. **Shores.....mortality**=life. The meaning is,—Lest I die with sudden joy. In *The Revolt of the Tartars*, p. 169, you will find that the mother of Weseloff, a Russian gentleman, died out of sudden joy at her son's unexpected presence before her after his escape from the hands of Tartars. "He (Weseloff) rushed precipitately into her presence; and she who had stood the shocks of sorrow was found unequal to the shock of joy too sudden and too acute. She died upon the spot."—*De Quincey*. *Down for fell down*. **She is not dead.....Dionysia**—the first *dead* signifies a state, the second *dead* understood after *been* is employed in an active sense, and means *killed*. This latter usage is become obsolete and should not be imitated. When *by* signifies the instrumentality of time, the usage is retained, as, she will be dead or die by *four o'clock*; but you cannot say,—She will be dead by him. Or *by his own delighted fancy deceived*—or deceived by his fancy which was now so delighted that he thought he actually heard the soft music. "**Music of the spheres**"—Pythagorus was the first who suggested the notion so beautifully expressed by Shakespeare:—

"There's not the small'st orb which thou behold'st,
But in his motion like an angel sings,
Still quiring to the young-eyed cherubins."

—*Merchant of Venice*.—V. I.

Plato says that a syren sits on each planet, who carols a most sweet song, agreeing to the motion of her own particular planet, but harmonising with the other seven. Hence Milton speaks of the "celestial syrens' harmony, that sit upon the nine enfolded spheres."—*Arcades*. Maximus Tyrius says that the mere proper motion of the planets must create sounds, as the planets move at regular intervals, the sounds must harmonise.—*Brewer*. **Unsettled**

the prince's understanding—rendered Pericles mad. **Cross**—oppose, undeceive. **Have his way**—think or believe as he is disposed to do. **Coming over**—stealing over. **Overpowered with excess of joy**—filled with a transport of joy. *Overpowered* literally means—afflicted with a power that could not be borne.

Para. 18. Dreamed a dream—*Dream*, a cognate accusative. **Silver bow**. So, Homer calls Apollo the god of the silver bow. **Miraculously refreshed**—revived by supernatural power, i. e., by the grace of the goddess Diana.

Para. 19. Which courteous.....two—the construction is: Pericles accepting which courteous offer agreed to...two. Which is an adjective. **Obscure fortunes**—her condition as a slave. **Frown upon**—look with displeasure. **Prosperous wind**—favourable breezes.

Page 186.

Altar—from Latin *altus*, high. **Altered**—from Latin *alter*, another. **Maid child**—female child. **Nursed with**—nursed under the care of. **Thought**—planned. **Told Diana's altar true**—spoken the truth before the altar of Diana. *True* is used here substantively. Cf.—“My false o'erweighs your true.”—*Measure for Measure*. **Passion of devout astonishment**—ecstasy of holy wonder. **Your present.....miserles sport**—*miserles* and *sport* are the two objects of the factitive verb *make*. *Sport* is in apposition with *miserles*. **Sport**—amusement; diversion. **Buried**—(Metaphorically) folded in. **Leaps**—exults with inexpressible joy. **My heart leaps to be gone into my mother's bosom**—This is an hyperbole, and means, —I earnestly long that my mother should clasp me to her bosom. **Flesh of thy flesh**—thy own daughter. **Burthen**—that which is borne. **Yielded**—given; born.

Page 187.

Oblations—offering from Latin *oblation*—from the root *fero*, to bring. **Affiance**—to betroth. From French *fiance*, the person to whom one is betrothed. **Virtue assailed by calamity**—virtue put

to *test* by being subjected to calamity. *Sufferance*—permission. *Sufferance* is negative consent by not hindering or forbidding. *Triumphing over chance and change*—rising victorious over all the calamities brought on by adverse fate. *Faith* is fidelity, a strict adherence to duty and fulfilment of promises. *Loyalty* is faithfulness or allegiance to the sovereign. *By another's wrong*—(Objective genitive.) By doing wrong to another man. *Approaches to the nature of the gods*—looks like something divine. *Approaches to*—resembles. *An end proportionable to her deserts*—the death which she richly deserved for her wickedness. *Intentional*—conceived in the mind, but never carried into action. Human laws cannot punish a man, however wicked, if his evil thoughts are not carried into action, but God judges us by the heart. *Enormity*—wickedness. Latin *e*, out, and *norma*, rule.

THE WINTER'S TALE.

Summary.—Leontes, king of Sicily, who lived in harmony with his wife Hermione, considered his happiness complete the day his old school-friend, Polixenes king of Bohemia, came to visit him. The happiness was, however, soon changed into misery, for Polixenes on being pressed by Leontes to prolong his stay would not stay, while he was persuaded by his queen to do so. Maddened with jealousy, he ordered Polixenes to be poisoned, cast Hermione into prison, and sent away his new-born baby, a daughter, to a desert shore to perish there. With the aid of Camillo, a courtier of Leontes, Polixenes managed to escape to his own kingdom. This so enraged Leontes that he ordered Hermione to be tried by some judges for infidelity. When the trial was about to commence, news reached Leontes that his son, Mamillius, struck with grief and shame, had suddenly died. This caused Leontes to relent, but he soon heard that Hermione was dead. Paulina, daughter of Leontes, who had been sent away by him to perish, was picked up by a shepherd, and grew up a lovely maiden. Florizel, son of Polixenes, while hunting near the shepherd's dwelling, saw Paulina, and, not

knowing who she was, fell in love with her. When Polixenes discovered the secret attachment his son had made with a shepherd's daughter, he was in great wrath. But Camilla, who about this time came to know that Leontes had become a true penitent, persuaded Florizel and Perdita to go with him to Sicily. There Leontes was struck to see the resemblance that Perdita bore to Hermione, and her jewels and other tokens of high birth soon told him that she was no other than her banished child. Leontes was next invited by a lady to see a statue of his late queen. The statue was so life-like that Leontes was moved to kiss it. When, however, the statue walked about, Leontes to his joy discovered that Hermione was still living. His unlooked-for joy was completed when Polixenes entered the palace and a full reconciliation was effected.

Page 187.

Para. 1. Once lived—*Once*, because Leontes afterwards persecuted Hermione from an unfounded feeling of jealousy. **He had no wish ungratified**—he had no longing of mind or desire unfulfilled; his happiness was full, because he had nothing left to wish for. **His old companion**—the friend of his younger days. **Bohemia**—a kingdom of Europe forming part of the Austrian dominions and comprised in the Germanic confederation. **Called**—chosen. **Interchanged**—exchanged. **Loving embassies**—friendly message.

Para. 3. To the queen's particular attention—to the especial notice or care of the queen.

Page 188.

His felicity quite completed—his cup of happiness filled to the brim: his happiness made full and complete. **Talked over old times**—conversed on what had happened in times gone by. **Remembered**—called to mind. **Recounted**—narrated or described. **Pranks**—mischievous tricks. **Took a cheerful part**—joined cheerfully or gladly. **Explain**—For my part. 'It hath cowed my better part of man.' **Preparing** is an active participle. Here a part of the stating verb was *preparing*, being in the Incomplete Past tense.

Para. 4. Joined her.....visit—added her entreaties or earnest prayers to those of her husband (she also begged Polixenes to postpone his departure.

Para. 5. And now.....sorrow—the troubles of the virtuous queen commenced from this time. Won over—persuaded. Persuasive words—words having power to influence the mind; words by which the hearer is prevailed on to act according to the wishes of the speaker. Integrity—(Latin *in*, not, and *tag*, root of *taugo*, to touch) uprightness. Give the meanings of *integer* and *integral*. An ungovernable jealousy—a jealousy so violent that it cannot be checked or restrained. A savage and inhuman monster—Leontes was so maddened by his jealousy that he was led to treat his queen in the most cruel and barbarous manner.

Para. 6. With the king his master's orders—King is in apposition with *master's*.

Para. 7. *He went*.....*prison*—principal sentence. *He went*.....*apartment*—adjectival sentence (to *apartment*.) *Where the good*.....*Mamillus*—adjectival sentence (to *Mamillus*). *Who was*.....*mother*—adverbial sentence (to *was beginning*.) *When the king entered*—Coordinate sentence to the Principal sentence—*And taking the*.....*prison*.

Para. 8. He took it deeply to heart—he was very much grieved by it. Drooped—(*droop* is literally to hang the head) grew weak and faint; declined.

Page 189.

Para. 9. Delphos—Delphi, the capital of Phocis, was built on the southern declivity of Mount Parnassus. It was the seat of the most celebrated oracle of antiquity. The responses were delivered by a priestess called Pythia. The temple of Delphi was sacred to Apollo. Oracle (Latin *oraculum* from *oro*, to speak, from *os*, the mouth) the answer or response given by the presiding god to a question. Apollo—the son of Jupiter and Latona. He was the god of archery, prophecy, music and all the fine arts, and, at

a later period, of the sun. He is usually represented in the prime of youth and manly beauty, with long hair and having his brows bound with the sacred laurel.

Para. 10. Brought to bed—delivered. Had been unfaithful to him—had loved his friend.

Para. 11. How he may soften at the sight of his innocent child—how his heart may relent at seeing his guiltless babe. Gave up—delivered.

Para. 12. Forcing herself into the king's presence—presenting herself before the king in spite of all opposition. Notwithstanding—although. Spirited remonstrances—bold expostulations. Aggravated (Latin *ad*, to and *gavis*, heavy) increased ; added to.

Para. 13. Its helpless innocence—its state of being helpless as well as innocent.

Para. 14. Leave—the object of *leave* is not simply it, but it to perish. Desert shore—uninhabited sea-coast. Give the meanings of desert.

Page 190.

Para. 15. Too well—quite implicitly. Lying-in—being in child-birth. He had.....trial—he caused her to be publicly tried. Sealed-up—fastened or closed with a seal. Leontes a jealous tyrant—Leontes is called a jealous tyrant, not because he opposed his subjects, but because he ill-treated his wife from (an unfounded) suspicion of her faithlessness. If that...not found—if Perdita be not recovered. Invented—concocted ; devised. To proceed in the trial of the queen—to go on with their investigation of the charge brought against the queen.

Para. 18. Remorse—compunction or hitting of conscience for some wrong done. Repentant grief—sorrow caused by self-reproach.

Page 191.

Para. 19. The coast of Bohemia—"Shakespeare's unfortunate slip in representing in his Winter's Tale, a ship-wrecked party landing in Bohemia, has been palliated by the discovery which some one

has made, that Bohemia in the thirteenth century had dependencies which extended to the sea-coast. But the only real palliation of which the case is susceptible lies in the history of the origin of the play. Shakespeare took his story from a novel named *Pandosto*. He transposed the respective circumstances said to have taken place in Sicily and Bohemia, and through inadvertence failed to observe what was suitable for an island like Sicily was unsuitable for an inland country like Bohemia.

Para. 20. Tore him to pieces—pulled him in pieces. The wicked order—the iniquitous command of leaving Perdita to perish upon some desert shore.

Para. 21. Perdita—From Latin *perditio*—*perdo*—*perditum*—*per*, entirely, and *do*, to put. One utterly lost. Obscurely intimating—darkly hinting. Untoward fate—a fate not suitable to its high birth, i. e., adverse fate.

Para. 23. Maiden—virgin. Natural grace—innate excellence of character and disposition. Inherited—derived by birth. Untutored mind—mind not shaped or moulded by education. Behaviour—(Anglo-Saxon *be habban*, to have.) The manner of *behaving* or bearing oneself; demeanour.

Para. 24. Supposed daughter—Perdita who was believed to be the daughter of the shepherd. What is a *suppositious* child? Queen-like—like (or similar to) that of a Queen...Department—behaviour. In the disguise of.....house. Cf.:—

“ Oh, that he

Were once more that landscape-painter

Which did win my heart from me.”

—Lord Burleigh.

Page 192.

Para. 25. Setting people.....son—appointing or placing men to keep an eye on the movements of his son.

Para. 27. The feast of sheep-shearing—a feast made on the occasion of shearing sheep; the joyful solemnities observed on the

occasion of shearing or shaving the sheep. Guest—case absolute. Join in the general festivity—take a part in the merry-making that was being carried on by the shepherds. *Festivity* comes from Latin *festivus*, from *festum*, holiday, *festus*, solemn, *festal*.

Para. 28. Tables were spread—tables were set and furnished with provisions. Explain:—The laws of the Twelve Tables. He set the table on a roar. Were making—were being made, or, were a-making. Rustic feast—the banquet prepared on the festival of sheep-shearing for the country-folk. The green—the ground covered with green grass. Pedlar—one who travels about on foot with small commodities for sale. *Pedlar* comes from Provincial English *peddèr*, from *ped*, a basket.

Para. 29. This busy scene was going forward—they were thus busily employed, the lads and lasses in dancing and the young men in making purchases. In a retired corner—at some lonely or secluded spot. *Corner* comes from French *corniere*, Latin *cornu*, a horn. *Corner* literally means,—A horn-like projection. Silly amusements—the pastimes in which the country-folks took delight appeared contemptible or silly in the eyes of the lovers, because they belonged to a far higher sphere in life.

Para. 30. Nothing she does.....than herself—for the construction see notes on *the Merchant of Venice*. The meaning is—From one of such low birth as *Perdita* is, the gentility that marks both her doings and speech is something unexpected. Too noble for this place—too high for her sphere of life.

Para. 31. She is.....cream—(Dryden has the expression, “Cuds and cream, the flower of country fare.”) The finest, the prettiest, and the most beautiful of milk-women. The meaning is—*Perdita* is the flower of country lasses. She is, as it were, the goddess of the dairy.

Para. 32. Swain—(Anglo-Saxon *swan*, young man, servant.) Mr. Hales says, “Swain was the poet’s word for peasant in the last century.” Here it means a country-lover. There is not a kiss...

best—to tell the truth, they love each other so fondly that the one has no occasion to propose or even ask a kiss, which the other does not feel much pleased to give ; their love towards each other is so nicely and equally balanced that it is impossible to say which of them loves the other most ; their hearts are in perfect unison. The corresponding passage in Shakespeare is : “ I think, there is not half a kiss to choose who loves another best.” That he little dreams of—*That* here is—What, or that which. Little dreams of—never thinks of or imagines. Marriage portion—the fortune given to a lady on the occasion of her marriage.

Page 193.

Para. 33. That takes off your mind from feasting—that makes you averse to joining in the general merriment.

Para. 34. Trifles—things of little value. The gifts whichheart—Perdita dislikes the toys and gewgaws which you speak of. She wants to be requited with my love, and that love for her is treasured up in my heart. Before—in the presence of. Ancient—old. Profess—avow. Contract—betrothment.

Para. 35. Mark—observe. Divorce—separation. (From the root of *divert*. Mark our contract—became a witness to the contract of marriage. Discovering himself—putting away his disguise and showing his individuality. Brat—(Anglo-Saxon *bratt*, a rag.) A contemptuous term for a child. Sheep-hook is a hook fastened to a pole used by shepherds. Perdita is so called in contempt on account of her being supposed to be a shepherd's daughter.

Para. 37. Undone—brought to shame. That the selfsame..... alike—though he exercises regal power, yet as nature's children we are all equal, the same sun shining over our cottage as well as his palace. Cf :—

You sun,

Lights it the great alone ? You silver beams,

Sleep they less sweetly on the cottage thatch

Than in the dome of kings ?

—Shelley.

I am awakened from this dream—I am restored to my senses : I shall no longer indulge in castle-building. I will queen it no farther—I shall no longer think of becoming a queen, as I should have been, if I were married to the prince. Queen—to play the queen. Farther—further. It—the part of a queen, and may therefore be parsed as an objective of cognate signification to the intransitive verb *queen*. For similar constructions, Cf.—In their pride they lorded it over the island.

Come and trip it as you go
On the light fantastic toe.

—Milton.

It would not be wrong to take *it* to be in the objective case used indefinitely after the intransitive trip, &c.

Para. 38. Spirit—boldness. Propriety—suitableness. To give up his mistress—to forego his love. His royal father—i. e., the king, his father. A favourable scheme—a plan which he had long cherished or harboured in his mind. Here *favourable* is used in the sense of *favourite*.

Para. 39. A true penitent—one given to sincere repentance for his past misconduct.

Page 194.

Pinned to her mantle—stitched with a pin to her mantle. He would engage Leontes should protect—he would pledge that Leontes, &c.

Para. 40. Who conducted.....flight—who settled all the plans in connection with their flight.

Para. 41. The remainder—the jewels, &c., that remained after what he (the shepherd) had appropriated to his own use. Baby clothes—swathing clothes. Pinned—fastened with a pin. Mantle—cloak.

Para. 42. Engrossed—(French *gros*, Low Latin *grossus*, Latin *crassus*, fat) wholly occupied. Give the different meanings of *gross* (adjective) and *gross* (noun). Broke out afresh—burst forth

anew. His grief broke out afresh—he was again overpowered with grief, which burst out anew. And then to.....upon—the indirect form would be,—He said to Florizel that, then too, he had lost.....of his brave father, whom he then desired more than his life.....upon.

Para. 43. Exposed—abandoned and left to perish. **Fell to**—began. **Comparing**—making a comparison of. **He fell to comparing the time**—he began to see by calculation if the dates of Leontes' abandoning his child and his finding Perdita in the woods coincided. **Distinguish between** : *Compare to* and *compare with*. *Compare* comes from Latin *com*, together, and *paro*, to put. **With the manner**—with means as well as, also.

. **Para. 44. The circumstance of Antigonus' death**—the manner in which Antigonus died. **Seize upon**—fall on ; attack.

Page 195.

The noble struggles—the heroic efforts (made by Paulina to suppress her grief at the news of her husband's death while giving way to joy at the fulfilment of the oracle). **Made him that**—made him such that. **The great sorrow.....mother**—the grief that Leontes felt, as he thought that Hermione, his queen, was not alive to look at her daughter, overpowered him so much that he could for a long time utter nothing except the words, "thy mother," "thy mother."

Para. 45. Joyful yet distressful scene—*Joyful* because Perdita was recovered. *Distressful* because Hermione was supposed to be dead. **Julio Romano**—a celebrated Italian painter and statuary. He was the disciple of Raphael who made him his heir. Born at Rome, 1492 ; died in 1546. **A perfect resemblance**—a faithful image or portrait. **Semblance**—likeness.

Para. 47. Liege—lord paramount ; one having lieges. *Liege* comes from French *lie*, low Latin *ledus*, a man between a freeman and a serf bound to the soil and owing certain services to his lord. The correlative word of liege (sovereign) is *liegeman*. **It the more**

shows your wonder—your silence shows the amazement you have been seized with in a greater degree than your speech would.

Para. 48. Majesty—dignity. From French *majesti*, Latin *majestas*, *majus*, *maignus*, great. Carver's excellence—the skill of the statuary.

Para. 49. Would I were dead—I wish I were dead. There is an air comes from her—she breathes. The unminative of *comes* is which understood. What fine.....breath—was there ever such a skilful sculptor as might with his chisel give breath or impart the power of breathing to the statue; can there be a chisel so smoothly sharp as to shape or mould a breathing statue. Ruddiness—red colour. Stain—discolour. You will stain your own with oily painting—your own lips will be stained with the oily substance with which the statue has been painted.

Page 196.

Para. 50. Matchless—of incomparable beauty. Looking upon my dear mother—*Looking* is to be parsed as a participle having the force of an adjective, as it describes a state of the subject.

Para. 51. Pedestal—(Latin *pes*, *pedis*, foot and Italian *stallo*, a place) the base of a statue. Some wicked powers—some evil spirits, i. e., by means of magic.

Paras. 53—61. Slow and solemn music—music of a slow and grave character befitting the solemnity of the occasion, viz., Hermione's coming back to life. To strike up—to commence to play: to begin to sound. Hung up—clung to. The long-sorrow..... happiness—Leontes, who spent many years in grieving for his dead wife and his lost daughter, was almost on the point of being killed with excess of joy when they were restored to his arms. So good an end—such a happy conclusion.

Page 197.

Unlooked for joy—a joy that was never expected or thought of. Missed his son—found his son escaped or gone away. Fugitives—(Latin *fugro*, to fly) persons who have fled from their country:

runaways. Took a part—joined. Warmth—fervour. Boyish friendship—friendship contracted in boyhood. Patient virtues—virtues exercised in suffering patiently and without murmuring, i. e., the virtues of endurance and fortitude. Years—the accusative of *time* after the intransitive verb *lived*.

ALL'S WELL THAT ENDS WELL.

Summary.—Helena, daughter of the famous physician Gerard de Narhon, who, since the death of her father, had been under the protection of a countess, aspired to the high dignity of being her son's wife. The king of France having fallen sick and sent for Bertram, the young count, Helena followed him to the court, in the hope that by the use of a medicine which her father had left her she might cure the king of his disease and obtain from him the husband she liked. Before two days were over, Helena, indeed, cured the king and, as the promised reward, had Bertram for her husband. Bertram, however, did not love Helena, and told her that if only she would get possession of a certain ring that was on his finger she might hope to be united to him. So saying, he left his home and went to Florence where he fell in love with a certain lady. That lady did not return his love, but, coming to know the story of Helena one night, invited Bertram to her room, when Helena passed herself for the lady and obtained the much-coveted ring from Bertram, giving him her own in its place. On his return to his native land, Bertram was asked by the king where he had obtained the ring which he wore. On his inability to give a satisfactory answer, he was confronted with Helena. Helena explained the mystery of the rings and became the beloved wife of her dear Bertram.

Page 197.

Para. 1. Rousillion—some place in France. Come to—acquired; attained; obtained. Explain—He has come unto himself. For—on account of. Late—deceased. Bore to—cherished for; had for. To

grace—to distinguish. His especial favour and protection—his care and kindness shown to him in a marked way.

Para. 2. Absolute monarch—a sovereign who is supreme in everything and does whatever he likes, his powers being unlimited in everything. **When Lafeu.....the king**—an adverbial sentence modifying *was living*. **To conduct**—to lead or guide. **Absolute** (Latin *ab*, from, and *solvere*, to lose)—possessed of unlimited power; despotic. **A royal mandate**—an authoritative command issued by the King. **Mandate** (Latin *mandatum*, from *mando*, *manus*, the hand and *do*, to give) is literally something put into one's hand. **Might**—could; had the power. **Seemed a second time to bury her husband**—appeared to feel at the time of parting with his son the same degree of grief which she felt at her husband's death; in parting with her son, all her grief for the death of her husband revived in her mind. (Her son would not have been removed to the King's Court, had his natural guardian been alive). **In a courtier's flattering manner**—in the coaxing way of a courtier.

Page 198.

Befriend the fortunes of Bertram—help him to rise in the world. **Had fallen into a sad malady**—had become subject to a painful disease; had contracted a grievous disease. **Incurable**—past cure. **Present in attendance**—attendance or waiting. **In sad and mournful silence**—without venting her grief in words or cries.

Paras. 3—7. Unseasoned courtier—(*Unseasoned*—unripe) *Unseasoned courtier* therefore means a courtier not yet thoroughly versed in all the ways of the court. **Make much of her**—show her love and respect; be kind and attentive to her; take a pleasure in seeking her ease and comfort. **In the present feeling of a deeper love**—in her present state of mind in which she was under the influence of a love more intense than what she felt for her deceased father. **Humble birth**—low parentage. **No note**—no distinction or celebrity. *Passal* is from low Latin *passalus*, a youth, servant. **Height of dignity**—high rank. **Lowly fortunes**—humble position

of love. Unseen working Providence—the invisible ways of God by which He does things. The secret manner or the incomprehensible ways in which God effects His ends.

Page 201.

Para. 10. Obtained an audience—got a hearing. Prevailed on—influenced or persuaded. To try—to use with the view of testing the efficacy of the medicine. Darling treasure—a favourite and highly valued thing. Essence—substance. The essence...skill—all the experience and skill of his father were brought into requisition in discovering and preparing the medicine. Engaged to forfeit her life—consented to undergo the punishment of death if she failed to cure the monarch. Choice—the power of choosing. *Fee* (Anglo-Saxon *feh*, cattle, money, allied to Latin *prens*, cattle)—price paid for services; gratuity; recompense.

Para. 11. Did not deceive herself in the hope, &c.—was not mistaken in thinking that her father's medicine would effect the wished-for cure. The promised reward of a husband—the reward promised her by the king of being allowed to select her husband from among the courtiers. *Parcel* (French *parcelle*, Latin *particular* diminutive of *pars*, a part)—part. Explain :—Whereof by parcels she had something heard.—*Othello*. Ever whilst I live—as long as I shall live. Guiding power—the power to rule and direct. Self-offered Helena—Helena who offered herself and her services to Bertram. A dependant on his mother's bounty—one living on his mother's charity; one having no means to live independently; a person who depended for his subsistence on the charity of his mother. The power of bestowing their nobles in marriage—the heirs of great fortunes were formerly the king's wards. This prerogative was a branch of the fental law. A forced and uneasy marriage—a marriage which Bertram was obliged to contract in obedience to the wishes of the king, and which he was wholly averse to. Of no promising hope—holding out no prospect of being a happy one.

Let the rest go—you need not trouble yourself with the other things, namely, the offer of the reward promised.

Page 202.

A splendid blank—something very grand to look at, but in reality nothing; a gaudy bauble; a prize which looked very grand, but was in reality valueless as being void of all comfort and happiness. Not being a gift.....bestow—the king could force Bertram to marry Helena, but he had no power of making him feel a love for her. As he was...marriage—as he had never thought before of the possibility of such a marriage, and as it was consummated with great haste. Unsettled—discomposed. True observance—marks of fidelity; obedience of a faithful wife. Desert—Helena means to say that her life at home would be a desert to her in the absence of her husband. *Elke out* (Anglo-Saxon *eacuu*, akin to Latin *augere*, to increase.) Literally, piece out, add to. Here, improve; make as comfortable as she could. Wherein my.....fortunes—an adjective sentence to *desert*. Homely—plain; humble. Cf. ‘Home-keeping youths have ever homely wits.’—*The Two Gentlemen of Verona*. *Homely* is applied both to persons and things. The meaning is her good luck in having got Bertram for her husband has been marred by the stars that overruled her destiny, i. e., though she had the good fortune of being married to Bertram, yet she was not destined to enjoy the happiness that she expected from the high rank to which she had been elevated by her marriage.

Paras. 13—16. Accomplished the purport of her journey—gained the object she had in view when she undertook the journey. Common civility—customary politeness. Dejected—cast down by grief. Broke her heart—crushed her spirit; made her totally despondent. Cordial welcome—hearty greeting. Choice—the wife of Bertram’s own choice or selection. Unkind neglect—a disregard which showed a hardness of heart. When thou canst...finger—when you can get the ring, which is on my finger, into your possession. Which shall never come off—which shall ever remain on his

finger. But in such a then I write a never—never shall that time come when you will get the ring from my finger. *Then* and *never* are adverbs here used substantively. *Deserved a lord, etc.*—was worthy of being the wife of a noble personage on whom twenty unmannerly youths like Bertam might attend. *Condescension*—kindness and courtesy to inferiors. *Kind flattery*—tender attention.

Page 203.

Till I have no wife—till my wife is dead and gone. Till I have no wife, I have nothing in France—I shall have nothing to do with France, nor think I have anything in it, till my wife is dead. *Was missing*—was not to be found. *Atone* (to cause to be at one)=expiate. *Pilgrimage* (German *pilger*, Latin *peregrinus*, a traveller, from *per*, through, and *ager*, land) a journey to a shrine. *Acceptable tidings*—agreeable news. *Weeds* (Anglo-Saxon *wead*, clothing, connected with *water*.) You have the expression “palmer’s weed” in *Milton*, a palmer being a pilgrim.

Para. 17. *Curious*—of elegant and nice workmanship. Among the curiosities of Florence may be mentioned the celebrated Florentine Gallery, which contains the richest collection of paintings, sculptures, and antiquities in the world. *Helena wanted no second invitation*—Helena did not require to be twice requested. *To make a part of the show*—to be one of the many attractive sights of the day. *Talkative*—garrulous. *Was all of Bertram*—altogether in reference to Bertram.

Page 204.

Done—finished. *Sunk deep*—made a firm impression; took a deep root; entered deeply. Cf. :—

A little learning is a dang’rous thing,
 Drink deep or taste not the Pierian spring.

—*Pope*.

Para. 18. *Stationed with the army at Florence*—assigned a post in the army that remained at Florence. *With music of all*

sorts—the student should be careful to avoid such expressions as—‘Those sort.’ ‘these kind of things,’ which are gross solecisms. Say—‘That sort,’ ‘this kind of things.’ **Solicit**—respectfully request. And every night.....**love**—the nocturnal music performed by a gentleman under a lady’s window is called *serenade*. **Suit**—request. That she would...**rest**—a noun sentence—Forming with ‘was’ the predicate of the subject ‘suit.’ After the family were retired to rest—an adverbial sentence, extension of *to visit*. To visit—how? By stealth—when? After the.....rest. ‘To grant this improper request—to agree to this wrong or unbecoming proposal. Knowing him to be a married man—an adverbial phrase. Knowing—since she knew that marriage was out of question. In reduced circumstances—impaired circumstances, i. e., the mother’s condition was grown comparatively worse.

Paras. 19--24. Discreet—sensible. Particularly importunate—very pressing in (his) solicitations. To admit him...that night—adverbial enlargement of *importunate*. He so much desired—adjectival enlargement of *visit*. **Ardent** (Latin *urdeo*, to burn)= Fiery, here, very hopeful. **Truant** (French *truant*, vagabond)= wandering from duty. Explain—To play the truant. To pass himself upon Bertram for Diana—to deceive Bertram into taking her (Helena) to be Diana. To pass upon—to palm off. **Secret meeting**—a meeting under the cover of night. **Assist** is literally to stand by—to give support, here, the same as *help*. “Help implies more done by the helper and less by the person helped than *aid* or *assistance*. Assistance implies co-operation. Two persons are said to assist each other, not to aid each other.”—WATKINS’S *Synonyms*. **Wife**—wife is *wife-man*, meaning *woof-man* in allusion to the woof or web on which women were generally employed. “Man, one of human kind whether male or female, a person, or woman.”—Bosworth. Won over to her interest—persuaded to take up her cause. In earnest of her future favour—as a pledge of the kind services she will do to them in future. *Earnest* meaning ‘money paid

in advance in token of the pledge that more would be paid, money given in token of a bargain must not to be confounded with earnest or earnestness meaning seriousness.

Page 205.

Free to make a second choice—at liberty to select a second wife. Feigned character—disguise; impersonation. Come of it—to grow out of it. Flattering compliments—words of regard and admiration intended to please the person to whom they are addressed. Love discourse—language or speech expressing love. Would be prophetic of a real affection—would foretell that Bertram would feel true love for her. Regardless of—inattentive to; indifferent to. Overlooked—failed to notice. A face which.....of plainness—Cf. the proverb—Too much familiarity breeds contempt. Plainness—a woman of plain or simple features. Face, Case Absolute. Endearing sweetness of her manners—her lovely and pleasing deportment. Vowed—pledged. With all the speed she could make—with all possible haste.

Page 206.

Paras. 25—26. Should be so slightly passed over—should be allowed to be forgotten so easily. Whose words took all ear captive—whose conversation charmed every one who heard it. Whose deep.....serve her—whose solid accomplishments turned those who came in contact with her into her adorers. Deep is opposed to superficial. Praising what is lost makes the remembrance dear—we sincerely and heartily cherish the memory of the dead when we hear them praised. Dear—heart-felt; sincere. An improbable story—a story not deserving of credence or belief. Distinguish between *improbable* and *impossible*. Feared—suspected. I am wrapped in dismal thinking—vague suspicions relating to the perpetration of some horrid deed have taken possession of my mind; my mind is filled with dark suspicions, i. e., I strongly suspect that there was some foul play. Foully snatched—wickedly robbed (murdered).

Support—hear. **Searee** believing for joy—the joy was so great as to lead him to distrust the reality of what he saw. **Unacknowledged wife**—a wife not claimed as such by her husband. **The name ...thing**--the nominal, but not the actual, wife. **But the shadow... thing**—Helena means to say that she is scarcely worth being called a wife since she has only the name, but not the rights and privileges of a wife. She is, therefore, the shadow of a wife—a wife only in name. Distinguish between *shadow* and *shade*. Do you say ‘he stood under the shade’ or ‘the shadow of a tree?’ Explain—to cast into the shade. **Both, both**—by this Bertram means to say, “You are not only my wife in name, but in reality also.” **Personated**—represented; passed for. **Done**—accomplished; effected. **This is done**—this has been accomplished; the condition has been fulfilled. **You are doubly won**—i. e., by her getting off the ring from Bertram’s finger as well as by Bertram’s vowing that Helena should be his wife when she personated Diana. **Make it plain**—prove it. **Sanctified**—made holy.

THE TWO GENTLEMEN OF VERONA.

Summary.—Valentine and Protheus were two great friends, who lived in the city of Verona. Protheus was in love with the fair Julia, and would on no account leave his native place, while Valentine in search of fortune and to see the wonders of the world abroad went away to the Duke of Milan’s court. Protheus’s father was a man who would allow no body to dispute his will. Once having determined that Protheus too should go to Milan, his father had no rest till he actually sent him there. On arrival at Milan, Protheus found Valentine in high favor with the Duke of Milan, and though hitherto much averse to love-making fell madly in love with the lady Silvia, daughter of the Duke of Milan. So charming was Silvia that though Protheus was an admirer of Julia and Valentine’s love was reciprocated by her, he determined to forsake Julia and become

the rival of his friend. Indeed, Protheus went so far as to betray his friend's secret to the Duke that by the help of a ladder of ropes he meant to elope from the palace with lady Julia after it was dark. The Duke upbraided Valentine for his ingratitude, and he was forced to depart without even seeing Silvia. About this time Julia came to Milan in disguise all the way from Verona, and her heart broke when she saw her lover making offers of love to Silvia. Silvia of course rejected the offers with scorn, but her vexation had no bounds when her father, the Duke, insisted upon her marrying a certain gentleman, named Thurio. To avoid the marriage, Silvia escaped from Milan and, while passing through the forest where dwelt Valentine and a band of robbers whose chief he was forced to become, was seized by one of the banditti. Protheus had followed Silvia to the forest, himself being followed but Julia. Thus it was that in the forest they all came across Valentine. Seized with remorse Protheus apologised to Valentine, but Valentine was so high-minded that he not only accorded him full pardon, but offered him Silvia too. At this time Thurio reached the forest in pursuit of Silvia, but when Valentine challenged him he drew back and relinquished every claim of love. The Duke, who was a very brave man himself, when he came to know of the gallant and generous action of Valentine, freely bestowed his daughter on him; and Julia was married to Protheus.

Page 207.

Para. 1. *Between* is used when two persons, and *among* when more than two are intended. **Firm**—strict. **Uninterrupted**—lasting for a long time. **Subsisted**—existed. **Between whom.....subsisted**—an adjective sentence to *Valentine and Protheus*. **Pursued their studies**—real. **Hours of leisure**—vacant hours. **Passed in each other's company**—spent together. *Each other* is used when two, and *one another* when more than two, persons, are meant.

Page 208.

Mistress—sweetheart. **Passion**—love. **Topics**—(Greek *topos*, a place) subjects of discourse. **Disagreed**—had a difference of opinion.

A little weary. *A little*—somewhat. *Little*—nothing. So, a few, and few. Weary—tired; sick. Terms—words. In pleasant terms—jestingly. And in pleasant.....love—would facetiously expose the folly of falling in love. Idle fancies—vain, unprofitable thoughts. Enter his head—come into his mind. The free and happy life, *i. e.*, the life of a bachelor. Greatly preferring—having much more liking for. *Auxious*, from Latin *auxius*—*ango*, to press tightly, means,—holding the mind in a state of pressure, and therefore full of uneasiness.

Para. 2. For a time—for a short time; temporarily. Part with—separate from. Cease to persuade me—do not try to keep me. Sluggard—an idle man. Wear out—waste. Home keeping..... wits—youths who have never travelled abroad can never be remarkable for great intelligence and judgment, since their experience is very limited. Changed to the sweet glances—riveted (or fastened) to the tender looks (*i. e.*, if you were not deeply enamoured of Julia). Abroad—outside. Love on still—continue to love. May your love be prosperous—may you be happy in winning the love of Julia.

Para. 3. Mutual—reciprocal. Unalterable—not changing. Prevail upon—persuade. They parted.....friendship—they took leave of each other after exchanging assurances of being constant in their friendship. Rare—uncommon. Worthy of notice—remarkable. Partaker—sharer.

Para. 4. Which he.....mistress—A co-ordinate sentence to *Porthenus sat down*. Which he—and which. To deliver to—to give into the hands of. To deliver to her mistress—an adverbial extension of *gave*.

Para. 5. A noble spirit—an exalted character. Become—suit. It did not...won—she thought that to show some coyness would be becoming to her honour as a virgin. Affected—pretended. To be insensible of his passion—not to notice his courtship. Uneasiness in, &c.—*In*—arising from.

Para. 6. Would not receive it—expressed her unwillingness to receive it. Chid—rebuked. 'O clock is a contraction of—on the clock. Who knew her mistress more—This is an adverbial extension of the predicate offered. Who—since she (knew). The rejected letter—the letter which Julia haughtily declined to receive.

Page 209.

Take the liberty of seeming.....wanted—presume to show that she understood what Julia really longed to have. Retiring—withdrawing from the room. Fragments—bits; pieces. Who meant..... them—whose intention was that they should not be taken away by Lucetta. Pretended anger—counterfeited or feigned anger; anger that she did not feel. Go—Imperative mood. Go implies a rebuke. Get you gone. You is here used reflexively for—yourself. But to use *yourself* would not be idiomatic. The sense is—Be off from my sight. Fingerling—handling.

Para. 7. Piece together—join together. As well as she could—to the best of her power or, as was possible for her to do. Fragments—pieces. Made out—found out. Love-wounded—wounded by love; pierced by the arrows of Cupid. Figure metaphor. Loving words—words breathing love. Loving—tender; affectionate. Or. "If in speaking of something, it is needful to mention it under two names, we then connect the name by 'or' simply; we say—'He went to Van Diemen's Land or Tasmania.' But if we wish to speak of two places, we repeat the preposition, and say—'He came from New York or from Baltimore; or we repeat the article and say The tongue or the pen; or we prefix the words 'either' to the former of the two and say:—"either now or unusual forms."—Moon. Here wounded is another word for *torn asunder*, Julia preferring the poetical expression *wounded* to the prosaic term *asunder*. Made out—deciphered; discovered. Lodge—harbour. Bosom—the folds of the dress covering the breast. Till their wounds were healed—Figure, personified metaphor. The meaning is—till they were pieced together. Not that they would be actually pieced together, but her

love leads her to break forth in the flight of hyperbole. To make amends—to make reparation for; to compensate for any wrong done; to atone for her cruelty in tearing the letter in pieces.

Paras. 8—14. A pretty...childishness—an agreeable frivolity characteristic of a lady. Sweet lines—an agreeable letter. Sweet life—the letter has made my life agreeable. What letter are you reading there?—The indirect question would be—He asked what letter he was reading there. What is an adjective. Let me see what news, i. e., what news it contains. News—In Shakespeare news is used sometimes as a plural, as here. Of—by. Graces—favour. Graces him with—bestows on him. Favours—kind acts. The partner of his fortune—i. e., (He wishes that I were with him) in order to share his good luck. How stand you affected to his wish?—how has his wish influenced or moved you; are you disposed to comply with his wishes or not? *How stand you* in modern English should be. *How do you stand*. As on.....wish—as one whose actions are not to be influenced or decided by the kind wish expressed by Valentine. Protheus says that the course he should adopt is to be decided by his father and not by his friend.

Paras. 15—17. Just—a moment ago. He wondered his lordship ...abroad—The direct form would be—"I wonder your lordship suffers your son to spend his youth at home, while most men are sending their sons to seek preferment abroad."

Page 210.

Preferment—good fortune. Explain *preferment*, used in the following :—

Why, there's no remedy; 'tis the curse of service.

Preferment goes by letter and affection.

And not by old gradation, where each second

Stood heir to the first.

—Othello.

To try their fortunes—to see what is in store for them. Upon Protheus telling— it would be better to say : upon Protheus' telling.

Sudden resolution—a determination formed on the spur of the moment. **Positive**—over-bearing. My will is.....wish—I desire the same thing that Valentine does. Perhaps *will* is taken here in the senso of *pleasure, command*. What I will I will—what I wish to do, I must get done, and I receive no excuse; so the matter must end here. *Will* is used here as a principal verb having *what* for its object. **Will**—determine; resolve to do. And there is an end—and it is final; nothing more is to be said about it. **Peremptory**—authoritative; positive. To dispute—to contradict. Suffered him to dispute his will—allowed him the liberty of arguing with him as to the reasonableness or otherwise of his commands. Had brought.....necessity—had made it necessary for him to adopt the hard course.

Paras. 18—25. Now that Julia.....time—an adverbial sentence to *pretended*. (*That*) she was going.....time. Object noun sentence of *fountl*. Feigned to his father—stated to his father without being aware of the truth of what he said. Given up the freedom, etc.—had become a slave to love. Wrought this wondrous change—made him so passionate.

Page 211.

If I had wished...here—if I could want anything it was to see my friend. **Pretended indifference**—feigned an unconcern, i.e., dissembled her love for Protheus. *Mournful farewell* is the same as *sorrowful leave*. **Feigned**—falsely represented (invented). **Freedom**—state of mind not affected by (i.e., insensible to) love. **Passionate**—ardent. Were on a visit to—he called on. **Turning into ridicule**—representing in a ridiculous light; making sport of. A truant of my time—one who has idled away or wasted his time; one who has made no good use of his time. **Complete in person.....mind**—of handsome features and an accomplished or well cultivated mind. Cf. "She is a gallant creature and complete in mind and feature."—*Henry VIII*. **Graces**—qualities of a charming or pleasing nature. To grace a gentleman—an adjectival infinitive phrase, meaning—

which grace (adorn) a gentleman. **Welcome him then according to his worth**—give him a reception as warm as his merits are great. **To be my fellow-servant to your ladyship**—*servant* is a term of gallantry, expressive of the homage which a gentleman pays to a lady with whom he converses. **How all does.....came**—*Does* comes from Anglo-Saxon *dugan*, to thrive, to avail. "In the phrase, 'How do you do' the first *do* is an auxiliary, the second is the verb *dugan*, 'lare,' 'prosper.' The same verb is seen in such expressions as 'that will do;' 'it did very well.'—*Adams*. **From whence**—is objected to by grammarians as being tautological. **Thrives**—prosper. **How thrives your love**—how far have you been successful in winning the love of your lady. **You joy not 'in a love discourse**—you take no pleasure in discoursing or talking of love. **That life is altered now**—I am now a changed man. **I have done penance for condemning love**—*Penance* is the punishment inflicted by a penitent upon himself. The meaning is—For the transgression I have made in slighting love I have put myself to voluntary punishment or simply—I have repented for despising love. **Chased**—driven away. **Enthralled**—brought into bondage or captivated. **Enthralled eyes**—eyes fascinated by love. *Enthralled* literally means—reduced to the condition of a thrall, hence enslaved. "Thrall and thralldom descend to us from a period when it was the custom to thrill or drill the ear of a slave in token of servitude; a custom retained by our Anglo-Saxon forefathers who were thus wont to pierce at the church-door the ears of their bond-servants." *Trench*. **Humbled me**—reduced me so low; subdued my pride. **Correction**—chastisement. **Now I can.....of love**—figure hyperbole. A person is said to *break* his fast when he partakes of food after abstinence, especially in the morning. *Valentine* means to say that love has become a part of himself. Words formed like *breakfast* (n.) of verbs and noun are *sew-crow*, *spit-fire*. **But friend.....tongue**—but *Protheus* must no longer be called a friend; but *Protheus* had ceased to be a friend, for he cherished vile thoughts. **Working in the heart of**—carrying on its operations in and influencing the mind of. *Pattern* (French

patron) is literally a patron or one whom we imitate; hence; a model. A false.....lover—false to Valentine and faithless to Julia. Vanished away—disappeared.

Page 212.

Deter is from Latin *deterreo*, *de*, from, and *derreo*, to frighten. *Supplant*—(Latin *supplanto*, to trip up one's heels, *sub*, under, and *planta*, the sole of the foot) displace. *Unjust*—here, false; perfidious. When people...unjust—when men who are naturally just want to do any wicked act. *Yielded himself up to, &c.*—allowed himself to be overpowered by, &c. *Yielded* (from Anglo-Saxon *gildan* to pay; guilt, which literally means the fine paid for an offence, is from the same root) surrendered. *Unhappy passion*—*Unhappy* is here used in a subjective or active sense, meaning, causing unhappiness.

Paras. 26-33. Imparted to him—told him. In confidence—in full hope that he would not betray him; in strict privacy. A ladder of ropes—*The genitive of material; of*=made of. To get out—to come out. Recital—account. Dearest secrets—secrets dearly or fondly cherished in the mind. Artful speeches—words full of cunning and deceit. Worldly good—earthly preferment such as, rank, honour, and riches. Draw—extract; draw from him—make him disclose. Not omitting—also mentioning. A miracle of integrity—a wonderfully honest man. Rather than he would conceal—to concealing. Betray—divulge; give out. Whither away so fast—where are you going so quickly. The same meaning would be expressed by—*Whither so fast*; *away* is used redundantly.

Page 213.

Had no better success than—proved useless as. In the event—in what happened; in the issue. Be they—are they. Import—consequence. No matter—it is of no consequence; it is all one. Council—advice. Nearly—closely. Prelude—(Latin *præ* before, and *ludus*, play.) Literally, anything played beforehand; a preface.

Drawn for withdrawn—*I had thought.....duty.* I indulged in the hope that she would be a comfort to me in my old age by her behaving to me as becomes a child. **Turn her out**—to discard her. i. e., to dispose of her. **To whosoever**—to him who. **Let her beauty be her wedding dower**—she will receive no dower from me on her marriage. As she prides herself on her beauty and has proved herself an undutiful daughter, let her beauty be the only attraction that will gain her a husband.

Para. 34—43. Where all this would end—what the conclusion or upshot of this speech would be. **Would have me to do in all this**—wants me to do in this matter. **Nice**—affectedly modest or reserved. **Coy**—shy; inaccessible to love. **Aged eloquence**—the eloquence of a man of my age. **The fashion of courtship**—the mode of courting. **A general idea**—an account which gives the broad features of a case without entering into details. **The like**—*Like* may be parsed here as a noun put for things of the same kind. **Might have**—could gain. **Artful**—cunning. **Who was now... discourse**—who after all this prefatory discourse was now entering on the real subject of his conversation. **Unfortunately proposed**—made the unfortunate suggestion; *unfortunate* because the proposal led to his own detection.

Page 214.

Feigned this long story on purpose, &c.—invented this long story with the object of seeking a pretext on which to pull off the cloak from Valentine's person. **Elopement**—(Anglo-Saxon *hleapan*, to run) a secret departure of a woman with her lover. **Overcame her sense of propriety**—blinded her to the course of conduct which was becoming to a maiden. **To see...melancholy**—an adverbial extension of the predicate was *sorry*. **Serenade**—(Italian *serenata*, from *sereno*, Latin *serenus*, serene, cloudless. Originally, music performed in the open air on a *serene* night). To entertain with a serenade or music performed at night.

Paras. 44—49. Imprudent step—unwise course: Julia acted inconsiderately in coming to Milan disguised as a male. Her 'noble maiden pride and dignity of character—her high sense of her worth as a maiden and her exalted character. She should lower herself in his esteem—she would fall in his good opinion. That made her wear a sad and thoughtful countenance—that caused her to look pensive and anxious. By the way—on the road. Whither—to which. Conducted—led; carried. Very different—sad. To what—strictly speaking, it should be *from what*.

Page 215.

Inconstant—faithless in one's love. Window—"a window, formerly *windore*, was intended for the admission of air as well as light, and took its name from being the door for the wind to enter."—*Dean Houtre*. Others say that *window* is from Icelandic *vindr*, 'and *auga*, eye; a window being an eye or opening for the wind. Ungenerous conduct—base or dishonourable course of action. Witnessed—seen. A parting gift—a gift made at the time of taking leave of a person. Suit—love proposal. Putting in a good word for Julia—dropping or introducing a favourable remark about Julia. Julia is.....complexion—Julia is nearly of my stature and appearance. Boy's attire—page's dress. The more shame for him—the more shameful is his conduct. Cheered the.....lady—inspired some hope in the disguised Julia that her rival (so she had thought Silvia to be) would not encourage the suit of Prothens. To return to—to again take up the story of. Which way to bend her course—which way or where to go. To bend her course is to direct her steps. ,

Page 216.

Heart's dear treasure—Silvia, whom he dearly loved. *Treasure* comes from French *tresor*, Latin *thesaurus*—a treasury or repository. Set upon—attacked.

Paras. 50—57. Crossed by adversity—subject to misfortune. Valentine told him.....riches—The direct form would be—Valentine said to them:—I am a man crossed by adversity, I am going

into banishment and I have no money, the clothes I have on being all my riches. **Struck with**—strongly moved at the sight of. **Noble air**—dignified bearing. **Outrage**—(Old French, *outrage*, low Latin *ultragium*, from *ultra*, beyond) wanton mischief. **Robin Hood**—an outlaw who lived in the days of Richard I. He was very generous by nature and kind to the poor. **Ballads**—(Italian *ballata*, from *ballare*, German *ballizein*, to dance.) Originally, songs sung in dancing. Here, popular songs. Read the old ballad of 'Chevy Chase' in the *Spectator*, and Goldsmith's ballad of "Edwin and Angelina." **Outlawed**—proscribed by the law. **Banditti**—(Italian *bandito*, low Latin *bandire*, to proclaim—akin to *ban*) men put under the ban of the law. The plural of *bandit* is *bandits* or *banditti*; so, the plural of *formula* is *formulas*, or taking the latin inflexion *a*, *formulae*. Words retaining the foreign plurals are not yet naturalized in the language. **Mantua**—a town in Italy, the birth-place of Virgil. **Situation**—position. **Came to pass**—happened. **Depredations**—(Latin *de*, intensive, and *preda*, plunder) acts of plundering or pillaging. **Prey** comes from the same root. Distinguish between *prey* and *booty*. **Authority** is either rightful power or the power divided from opinion, respect, or esteem. In the latter sense you speak of the authority of an historian. **Robbed**—Old French *rober*, German *rouben*, connected with Latin *rapio*, to seize, and Saxon *rap*, *reave*, *ribe*) plundered. Never say—He robbed my purse, but—he robbed me of my purse, or, he stole my purse. **An honourable mind**—a mind full of noble sentiments. **Humanity**—kindness. **Found little comfort in hearing**—became anxious when she heard. **Endure**—suffer. **For thee**—for thy sake.

Page 217.

He began to distress her afresh with his love-suit—he began to trouble her by again pressing her to return his love. **Win**—persuade.

Paras. 58-62. **Courting**—wooing; making proposals of love to. **Being caught**—being found out (what a faithless friend he was).

Lively—deep ; acute. **To a romantic degree**—to an extraordinary or fabulous extent ; to an extravagant degree. **In a sudden flight of heroism**—suddenly led away by noble disinterestedness or disregard of his personal ends. **Interest**—claim. **Strange offer**—a proposal of an odd nature. **With this new-found virtue**—at a time when his mind had just taken a turn towards virtue ; when he was not perfectly reformed ; notwithstanding Prothous' recent reformation shewn by his penitence for his falseness to Valentine. **Recovering her**—restoring her from her swoon. **Would long.....friendship**—would long insist on putting into execution the proposal which he made from a feeling of romantic friendship, i. e., a friendship carried to an extravagant degree. **Earnestly**—steadfastly. **Wrought in him**—operated on his mind. **Pretensions**—claims. **Deserved her**—shown himself worthy to have her.

Page 218.

Spirited manner—bold tone. **Keep back**—withhold. **Embrace**—(French *embrasser*, Latin *em*, in, and *bras*, an arm) to meet. **Take but.....touch**—establish your claim on her by so much as touching her. **To breathe upon my Silvia**—to come very close to Silvia, so that his breath may touch her. **Light conditions**—terms which are of no weight or moment, i. e., the threat of having been challenged by Valentine. **Worthy of an empress's love**—deserve to have an empress for your wife. This is said in admiration of Valentine's conduct. **State offences**—acts of treason against the state ; political offences. **Black crimes**—heinous crimes, such as murder, robbery, &c. **The ready duke**—the duke whose mind was prepared to show mercy to the robbers on account of Valentine's late connection with them. **Love prompted faults**—faults which he was led to commit from his love of Silvia. **Awakened conscience**—conscience roused from a state of lethargy and made to perceive the wickedness of a wrong action. **Triumphs**—stately shows or pageantries.

CYMBELINE.

Cymbeline, king of Britain, had by his first wife three children, Imogen, a daughter, and two sons who were stolen away, when quite young. His second wife was a heartless woman, who treated Imogen very badly. Without the knowledge of the king or the queen, Imogen married a certain accomplished gentleman, named Posthumus, who was the best scholar of that age; and this enraged the king so much that Posthumus was banished. Posthumus fell into company at Rome with some gay young men, and one of these, by producing Imogen's bracelets, artfully persuaded him that Imogen was a dishonorable lady, who had proved disloyal to her husband. Posthumus in a jealous rage wrote to a friend that he should prevail upon Imogen to go to Wales and there put her to death. The friend took her near Milford Haven, communicated to her the design of Posthumus, and asked her to wait with patience till Posthumus saw and repented his injustice. Left alone, Imogen wandered about till she came across her two brothers, who had been stolen away in their infancy, and their reputed father, one Bellarius. While she lived in their company she one day took a medicine, from the effects of which she fell into a deathlike sleep, was taken by Bellarius to be dead, and carried by her brother to a shady cavern, where they mourned her loss and finished her funeral obsequies. When Imogen shook off the effects of the drug, and proceeded on her way, she fell into the hands of the Roman general, who was advancing to invade Britain. Thanks to the extraordinary valour of Posthumus, the two lost sons of Cymbeline, and Bellarius, Cymbeline gained victory in the battle that followed. Imogen and her master, the Roman general, were taken prisoners; and Iachimo, too, who had tricked Posthumus into a false belief against the honor of Imogen, was a prisoner. To save his life, Iachimo made a full and free confession of the base trick he had played, and relieved Imogen and Posthumus from the weight of guilt and woe.

Page 218.

Introduction.—**Cymbeline**.—"Cunobelin, the Cymbeline of Shakespear, was king of the Trinobantes, whose territory embraced a large portion of South Britain. His capital Camalodnum is now considered to have been Colechester, or the immediate neighbourhood. That Cunobelin was surrounded by some attributes of a later civilisation may be gathered from the various coins of his reign which still exist. There is abundant evidence that the great idea of Imperial Rome was familiar to the rulers of England, although they were yet free from her chain."—**Knight's History of England**. According to Holinshed, Cymbeline ascended the throne in the nineteenth year of the reign of *Augustus Caesar*, the first emperor of Rome, and the nephew of *Julius Caesar*.

Paras. 1—14. **Time**—reign. **Reigned**—ruled. **Britain**—the name is said to be derived from *Brutus*, the mythic coloniser of Britain. *Emperor* comes from French *empereur*, Latin *imperator*—a commander, from *impero*, to command.

Page 219.

A strange chance.—a singular degree of fate. **Nursery**—an apartment where young children are brought up. **But—only. Quite**—altogether. **Conveyed**—carried. **Plotting**—intriguing. **Posthumus**—(Latin *posthumus*, *postumus*, superlative of *posterus*, coming after, from *post*, after) one born after the death of either parent. *Posthumus* owes the 'h' which has found its way into it to the notion that, instead of being a superlative of 'posterus,' it has something to do with 'post humans'—*Trench*. **His father.....Cymbeline**—his father was killed in one of the battles which were waged in behalf of Cymbeline. **Helplessness**—destitute condition. **Orphan**—from Greek *orphanos*, akin to Latin *orbus*, bereaved. **Play-fellows**—playmates. **With their years**—as they grew up. **Disappointed queen**—queen whose purpose was frustrated. **Learnt this secret**—came to hear of this private marriage. **Of her high dignity**—of the circumstance that she was a princess.

Page 220.

Seeming—outward. **Lawful**—valid. **In watch**—on the lookout. **Bracelet**—(Diminutive of Old French *brachel*, armour for the arm) an ornament for the wrist. **Remained a solitary and dejected lady**—passed her days alone and in grief. **Fell into..... nations**—joined the society, &c. **Iachimo**—Iachimo is represented not as an ancient Roman, but as a modern Italian. “*Anachronism* is an error in computing time by which events or scenes are misplaced with regard to each other.” **Altercation**—(Latin *altercor*, to have a debate with any one) wrangling. **Posthumus consented.....Imogen**—(cf. “While the Roman army lay encamped around the walls of Ardea, in order to reduce it by famine, the princes of the Tarquin family and their kinsmen, Brutus and Collatinus, happening to feast together, began to boast each of the beauty and virtue of his wife. Collatinus extolled his wife Lucretia beyond all rivalry. While every one was warm with the idea, it was agreed to leave the camp and go to Rome to ascertain the veracity of their respective assertions.” The rape of Lucretia by Sextus Tarquin led to the expulsion of the Tarquins from Rome and the abolition of the kingly form of government. **Laid a wager**—bet. **Ran no hazard... honour**—ran no risk in thus putting her virtue to the test.

Page 221.

Paras. 15 –18. Gained admittance—had access to the palace. **Professions**—declarations. **Repulsed him**—drove him back. **Stratagem**—(Latin *stratos*, an army and *ago*, to lead.) Literally, a piece of generalship: here, an artifice. **Mole**—a dark brown spot marked on the human body. **Unloosing**—untying. *Unloose* is the intensive of *loose*; *un* has no negative meaning here; so *disannul* *dissever*, where *dis* is an intensive. **Chest** (Anglo-Saxon *cyst*, *cest*)—a large strong box. **Expedition** (Latin *ex* out, and *pes*, *pedis*, foot)—speed. **Tapestry**—(French *lapisserie*, *tapis*, a carpet) a kind of carpet-work with wrought figures. **The proud Cleopatra..... Anthony**—Cleopatra was the daughter of Ptolemy Antiochus, king of

Chimney—(French *cheminée*, Latin *caminus*, a furnace, probably from Greek *kaino* to turn) a fire-place. **Chimney-piece**—the ornamental part of a fire-place. **Diana bathing**—it is said that Acteon was turned into a stag for having inadvertently seen Diana and her attendants bathing near Gargaphia. **The chimney-piece is Diana bathing**—the figure of Diana bathing is the ornamental piece set round the fire-place. **Liveller**—more truly represented to the life.

Paras. 19-29. It is much talked of—people generally speak of it. **Accurately**—(Latin *ad, to, cura*, care; done with care) correctly. **Added**—also said. **Andiron** (Anglo-Saxon *brandiscen*, brand—iron) the iron in which a spit turns. **Cupid**—the god of love. **Winking cupids**—because Cupid was represented as blind; *winking*—having the eyes closed. Statues of cupids formed among the ancients great objects of *vertu*. **I see her yet**—the graceful act is yet impressed on my mind. **Her pretty.....it too**—the grace with which she made it over to me is worth more than the gift itself, and made it more valuable than what it actually is; the graceful manner in which she handed her bracelet to me, not only enhanced its value, but was more pleasing to my eyes than the gift itself. **She prized it once**—*Once, i. e.*, when she loved Posthumus. **Mole**—a dark spot on the skin. **Artful recital**—a story recited with great art or cunning. **Agony of doubt**—extreme torture in a state of suspense or uncertainty. **Broke out** burst forth.

Page 222.

Passionate exclamations—denunciations uttered loudly. **Jealous rage**—anger excited by jealousy. **Disloyalty**—unfaithfulness. **Deceitful letter**—a letter tending to deceive or mislead. **Unsuspecting**—confiding. **And the same.....set out**—the construction is—And she received the letter the same night on which she set out. **Was not faithful to serve him in an evil deed**—was not true to him as far as carrying out his wicked orders was concerned. **Doomed**—sentenced. **Uncertain fortune**—the sense is—Nothing was known

as to what would befall her in this unprotected state. *Cordial*—a medicine or drink for refreshing the spirits. (From Latin *cor*, the heart.) *Sovereign*—potent; efficacious.

Page 223.

To try its effects—to make an experiment with it. *Malleious*—spiteful. Trust her with—give her. To sleep with every appearance of death—see notes on *Romeo*. The friar gave a similar sleeping draught to Juliet. To take it—to drink it. *Deliverance*—riddance. Undeserved troubles—misfortunes which came upon her from no fault of her own. Directed Imogen's steps—led Imogen. *Treason*—an attempt against the king. They grew up fine youths—*Youths* is in the same case with *they*. Were alwaysin the wars—were constantly urging Bellarius whom they took to be their father, to permit them to try their luck in the profession of arms. A young lady tenderly brought up—so, in *Twelfth Night* you have—For the faithful service you have done for me so much beneath *your soft and tender breeding*. *Pressing*—important; distressing. A man's life—(1) the life of a human being; (2) the life of a human being belonging to the male sex. I have made the ground my bed—I have slept on the bare ground. Or—if my resolution did not help me. *Mandate*—command. Came across her—returned in her mind. A false one—deceitful.

Page 224.

Paras. 30—39. *Reputed*—supposed; in common opinion. It eats our victuals—*It*—because Bellarius thought Imogen to be a fairy. *Victuals*—Latin *victualis*, relating to living, from *vivo*, *victum*, to (love) food. Or—otherwise. *Jupiter* (*Dies* or *Diovis*=*divum*, heaven, and *pater*, -father.) The chief god among the Romans. *Strewed* and *strewn* are the two passive participles of *strew*, to spread. Parted with prayers for the provider—(I would not have) left this place without first praying for the welfare of him who had kept the food in store. *Earnestness*—a determination sincerely

and ardently expressed. If I had not made it—if I had not committed the fault. **Whither** are you bound? Whither are you going? **Kinsman**—relative. **To whom** being going—in my journey to meet him. **Spent**—exhausted; enfeebled. I am fallen into this offence—I have been led to commit this fault. *Prithee* is a corruption of (*I*) *Pray thee*—*Thee* is in the dative case. **Churls**—(Anglo-Saxon *ceorl*, a countryman) rude and ill-bred fellows. **Nor** measure our good minds by this rude place we live in—nor think that we must be rude and churlish because we live the life of foresters. *Good* does not stand here as an epithet to *minds*, but only serves to make *minds* emphatic. **Well encountered**—fortunately met (for it is almost night). **Cheer**—food. **Thanks to stay and eat it**—you will confer an obligation on us by staying with us and partaking of our food. **Bid him welcome**—receive him with warmth. **Venison**—beasts of the chase, such as, deer, hare, etc. **Neat housewifery**—nice management of home affairs.

Page 225.

To understand cookery—to know how to cook. **Cut their roots in characters**—carved the roots which were served out to them for food in the figure of letters. **Sauced their broth**—put in savoury condiments into their *broth*. **Juno**—the wife of Jupiter, and the queen of the gods and mistress of heaven and earth. The meaning is: *Fidele* served them like an angel preparing dishes which would be relished even by the queen of Heaven were she on her sick bed, and, therefore, of a squeamish taste. **Dieter**—one who prepares food by medicinal rules. **As if grief.....him**. *Patience* is the suffering of an evil with a calm, untroubled temper. The meaning is—Her face indicated both the deep grief which preyed upon her heart and the patience or calmness with which she bore it. **For these her gentle qualities**—for these endearing qualities of hers. **Doting-piece**—an object of excessive love; an object of extreme love and affection. In *Lear* you meet with the expression—"O ruined piece of nature." **But for the memory of**—except that she remembered and loved. **Till she was enough rested**—till she had taken sufficient rest.

Paras. 40-49. Her husband's cruel usage—the inhuman treatment which she had received at the hands of her husband, *i. e.*, her husband's ordering Pisanio to put her to death. **Parts**—ability. **Pulled off**—took off. **Princely foresters**—foresters or dwellers in the forest who were king's sons. **Concluded her to be dead**—eventually thought that she was dead. **Brotherly regret**—sorrow felt by a brother for a dead sister. **Celebrate her funeral**—perform her obsequies. **Dirges**—mournful songs.

Page 226.

Shady covert—a place concealed and shaded by trees. **They sang repose to her departed spirit**—a *requiem* is a hymn sung for the quiet of the soul of the dead. **I will daily strew thy sad grave**—I will scatter flowers every day over thy grave. **The pale primrose...corse**—*Cf.* :—

With fairest flowers

Whilst summer lasts and I live here, Fidele,
I'll sweeten thy sad grave : thou shalt not lack
The flower that's like thy face, pale primrose, nor
The azured harebell, like thy veins, no, nor,
The leaf of eglantine whom not to slander,
Out-sweeten'd not thy breath : the ruddock would,
With charitable bill—O bill, sore-shaming
Those rich-left heirs that let their fathers lie
Without a monument !—bring thee all this ;
Yea, and furred moss besides, when flowers are none
To winter-ground thy corse.—(*Cymbeline*.)

Going off—disappearing. **Shaking off**—removing. **Cave-keeper**—one who lives in a cave. **Concluded**—considered. **Weary-pilgrimage**—tiresome journey. **Find her way to**—reach. **Get a passage**—secure a berth. **All her thoughts were still with**—she yet continued to think of. **Happening**—taking place. **Landed**—disembarked. **Mean**—propose.

Paras. 50-59. **False**—disloyal ; faithless. **Too**—also. **Pisanio**was dead—an adverbial sentence modifying the predicate—

sat heavy on his heart. Sat heavy on his heart—filled his mind with grief.

Page 227.

Fell into the hands—was captured. Recommending her—bringing her into favourable notice. Engage—take part in. But—except. But for—had it not been for. Turned the fortune of the day—caused the victory to declare itself in favour of the Britons. Sought for—courted. Surrendered—delivered. Strange juncture of time—a remarkable crisis. With different hopes and fears—actuated by hopes and fears varying according to the respective position of the parties. Likewise—also. A beating heart—a heart throbbing with fear and suspense.

Page 228.

Did not know—could not recognize. Author—cause. Of war—captured in war. Let the time run on to good or bad—let good or bad time follow, *i. e.*, whatever be the upshot of the trial. Run on—pass on. One sand does not, *etc.*—as one particle of sand resembles another in every point, so does this beautiful and rose-like lad resemble Fidele, who is dead. The same dead thing alive—the very person whom we saw dead is now living. Peace, peace—keep quiet.

Paras. 60-78. Posthumus waited.....death— as life was now become insupportable to Posthumus he would receive with joy the sentence of his death for which he waited in silence. Move—determine. Ransom—a sum received from a prisoner for his liberation. A Roman heart—the courage and magnanimity which distinguished the ancient Romans. Read the account of the death of Regulus. A Briton born—Compare the memorable words of George III. “Born and educated in this country, I glory in the name of a Briton.” Duteous—respectful to those who have authority to require service or duty. Never master, *etc.*—he is a most dutiful page. Wrong—injury. Spare—forgive. Beside—(adverb) else. All powerful nature spake in his heart—he felt in his heart the irresistible working of an instinctive love for his daughter. Why or

wherefore I say—a noun sentence object of *know*. Boon—favour. The noblest prisoner I have—i. e., the Roman general.

Page 229.

Other work in hand—another favour to ask for. With torture—to put her to the torture. Came by—happened to be in possession of. Wager—betting. Imposing upon his credulity—deceiving him with a false story which he too easily believed. Discovering herself—telling who she was. Relieved from a weight of guilt and woe—delivered from the consciousness of having done wrong and the remorse consequent thereon. Was restored to the good graces—regained the love and favour. Overwhelmed—confounded; filled. This time of joy and reconciliation—this joyful occasion when all the parties were reconciled to one another.

Page 230.

At a season of such universal happiness—when every one was so happy. Who could think of.....happiness—the thought of inflicting punishment can never enter the heart at a time of general rejoicing, i. e., the king could not but forget and forgive the offence of Bellarins when all his lost children were thus happily restored to him. Mediation—intercession. Inviolable—unbroken. Despair—hopelessness; desperation. Projects—schemes. To pass—to succeed. Through despair.....pass—disappointed of carrying her schemes into execution. Touched...conscience—stung with the pangs of conscience. Sickened—felt sick. In a...provoked—in a quarrel of his own seeking. Tragical—sad. To interrupt—to break the narration of. Conclusion—end. By more than merely touching upon—by more than a passing reference. Were deserving—had any virtue. In consideration and.....aim—by reason of his wicked designs having failed in their intended object. Dismissed—allowed to go. Dismissed without punishment—permitted to escape scot-free.

READY FOR SALE

“The Essayist”

BY

J. N. SEN

Price Re. 1.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

The A. B. Patrika.—We have perused this book, and have no doubt that it will prove of great use to those for whom it is intended. The book is divided into six chapters, comprising 120 essays on a large variety of subjects written in simple and chaste English. Another feature of the book, which adds to its importance, is the table of outlines, which the author has appended to it. The printing and get up of the book is also excellent and the price (Re. 1) seems moderate.

The Punjab Educational Journal.—This little book is designed to help young students preparing for departmental and University examinations. It contains 120 essays more or less developed, with an outline of each essay at the end of the book. These outlines will be useful to beginners in assisting them to put their ideas into some kind of order. The compiler's arrangement groups together essays dealing with the same subject. The compiler has undertaken an exceedingly difficult task, but he has done it well.

The Bande Mataram.—We are indebted to Lala Ram Narain Lal of Allahabad for a copy of the *Essayist* by Sjt. Jatinendra Nath Sen. On an examination of the *Essays* we find that they have been compiled with special reference to the syllabus as laid down for essay-writing, vide *Gazette of India* of August 1906. We have much pleasure in recommending the book to Matriculation candidates.

The Bengalee.—Babu Jatinendra Nath Sen of the Allahabad *Citizen* has brought out a handy volume entitled as above, in which are given specimen essays on a wide variety of subjects generally set to lower form students to test their powers of original

composition in English. We have gone to a great many of these essays, and we can unhesitatingly say that the book will benefit those for whom it is intended.

The Telegraph.—The book under review is intended for students preparing themselves for the Matriculation Examination. It covers the syllabus laid down for essay writing. The book contains six chapters. Chapter I.—contains 19 essays on animals. Chapter II.—19 essays on objects natural, artificial, natural phenomena, etc. Chapter III.—30 well-written essays on towns, important places, etc. Chapter IV.—20 essays on festivals, wedding, social manners, etc. Chapter V.—20 biographical essays. and Chapter VI.—12 moral essays grouped into three different heads, namely, --(a) Our duty towards God ; (b) Our duty towards ourselves ; and (c) Our duty towards our neighbours. All the essays are nicely written ; they are sure to serve our students as excellent models in the production of essays at university examinations. The get-up of the book is excellent. We recommend the book to the University authorities for a text-book on essay writing.

The Mahratta.—We have received a copy of the *Essayist* by Mr. Jatindra Nath Sen from Mr. Ram Narain Lal, Bookseller Allahabad. The *Essayist* is essentially a school-book written with a view that it may serve as a guide in composition to the students of the secondary schools. The book is very well written and we are sure it would be found to be useful by even College students. The book has nothing provincial about it and consequently it may get the all-India support which it deserves.

READY FOR SALE ❧
**Matriculation Grammar and
Composition**

—: BY :—

A PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH.

372 Pages, Double Crown 16mo., Cloth
Bound.

CONTENTS:

Part I.—Grammar (Accidence and Syntax, Figures of Speech,
etc.).

Part II.—Idioms.

Part III.—Colloquial Phrases.

Part IV.—Letter-Writing.

Part V.—Narrative and Descriptive Composition.

Part VI.—Indian English.

Part VII.—Word-building and Derivation.

Part VIII.—Question Papers of the Allahabad University (1889-
1910) in Grammar and Composition with full Answers.

PRICE Re. 1-8.

❧ No candidate for School-Leaving or
Matriculation Examination should be
without this book.

Apply to *THE MANAGER,*

Educational Book Depot, Allahabad